



~~19~~

1823

1734

91

front, wanting

7919. aaa. 35

Sp

R

Wi

Ext

Larg

Illust
the
ma

Print
bo

THE

Dictionary 85959
[MAY]

Sportsman's Dictionary:

OR, THE

Country Gentleman's Companion,

In all Rural

RECREATIONS:

With full and particular Instructions for

HAWKING,
HUNTING,
FOWLING,
SETTING,



FISHING,
RACING,
RIDING,
COCKING.

With the Method of breeding, curing, dieting,
and ordering of *Horses, Dogs, Pigeons, Cocks, &c.*

Extracted from the most celebrated *English* and
French AUTHORS, Ancient, and Modern:

WITH

Large IMPROVEMENTS, made by several
Gentlemen well experienced in these noble Exercises.

Illustrated with near thirty COPPER-PLATES, representing
the different kinds of NETS, ENGINES, and TRAPS, that are
made use of in taking all sorts of Game.

420. VOL. I. *London*

L O N D O N:

Printed for C. HITCH, at the *Red Lion*, and C. DAVIS,
both in *Pater-Noster-Row*; and S. AUSTEN, at the
Angel and Bible in *St Paul's Church-Yard*.

M DCC XXXV.

®
S

THE
Sportsman's Dictionary:
OR THE
Country Gentleman's Companion
In all Rural
RECREATIONS:

With full and particular Instructions for

HAWKING,
HUNTING,
FOWLING,
SETTING,
FISHING,
RACING,
RIDING,
SHOOTING.



With the Method of
and ordering of Horses, Dogs, Pigeons, Cocks, &c.

Extracted from the most celebrated English and
French Authors; Ancient, and Modern:

WITH
Large IMPROVEMENTS, made by several
Gentlemen well experienced in these noble Exercises.

Illustrated with near thirty
the different kinds of Nets, Engines, and Traps, that are
made use of in taking all sorts of Game.

VOL. I.

L O N D O N:
Printed for C. HITCH, at the Red Lion, and C. DAVIS,
both in Pall-mall-Road; and S. ADAMS, at the
Angel and Bible in St. Paul's Church-Yard.
M DCC XXXV.



THE
PREFACE.

A*S the recreations comprehended in this work, have such a tendency to improve the pleasures of the country, and are so salutary in themselves, to a human constitution; we imagined that our endeavours to represent them in a proper light, would obtain a candid reception from the public.*

The mind of man is incapable of a constant application, either to study or business; it is therefore highly necessary to relieve it, at convenient seasons, by such relaxations as may refresh it's faculties, and recruit the animal spirits that have been dissipated by laborious pursuits, or a length of strict attention. And when the Amusements to which we have recourse, on such occasions, are friendly to health, delightful to the senses,

THE PREFACE.

senses, and perfectly consistent with innocence, they have all the recommendations we can possibly desire.

The diversions that are the subject of these volumes, are entirely of this nature, and are so peculiarly adapted to scenes of rural life, that a just knowledge of them is considered as a necessary accomplishment in gentlemen, who devote their vacant hours to the country.

It would be needless to enlarge on the satisfactions and advantages they are capable of affording us. No prospect of nature can awake more pleasing ideas in the imagination, than a landscape, distributed into verdant woods, and opening lawns, with the diversity of extended plains, flowery meadows, and clear streams; the heart of a contemplative beholder, melts into secret raptures at the enchanting view, and he is immediately prompted to hail the great benefactor who sheds such a profusion of beauties around him. But when he likewise regards them as so many rich magazines, intended for the accommodation of his table, as well as for the improvement of his health, and the solace of his mind; he begins to think it a reproach to him to be unacquainted with the manner of acquiring these enjoyments that were created for his use with so much liberality; and he is then convinced that Hunting, Fowling, Fishing, and Riding, are more necessary to his welfare, than he might at first imagine.

In

The PREFACE.

In order therefore to render these, and other rural recreations, as intelligible and familiar as possible, we have carefully collected the best observations that have been made on each article in our title page; we have consulted all the valuable English and French authors on this occasion, and have selected every particular from them, that we thought would contribute to the pleasure and improvement of our readers: and as we were desirous to render this work as compleat as possible, we have prevailed upon several gentlemen of distinguished abilities and experience, to favour us with a great number of curious passages, that we are persuaded will be very acceptable and instructive to those who have an inclination to gain a competent knowledge of these agreeable subjects.

As our intention was to make this performance equally perspicuous and regular, we have digested it into the form of a Dictionary, in which we have been careful to range under each head, every particular peculiar to it, and by which it can be illustrated in the most effectual manner: By which means, we have rendered the whole so methodical and familiar, even to a common comprehension, that we flatter ourselves we shall not be taxed with obscurity or defectiveness, in any material circumstance, necessary to be represented and understood. We may likewise venture to add, that the plan we have pursued, through the whole course of these volumes, will ease the curious of the expence and trouble of consulting a number of books written on these subjects,

The P R E F A C E.

subjects, since, as we have already intimated, all imaginable care has been taken to extract from the most approved authors, whatever observations may be necessary to give our readers a clear and expeditious knowledge of all the different branches of these pleasing recreations.



As our intention was to give a complete and accurate knowledge of the various amusements of the mind, we have endeavored to present a full and correct account of each, every particular, and by which it can be illustrated in the most effectual manner. By which means, we have rendered the whole so methodical and familiar, that to a common comprehension, that we might encourage, we shall not be taxed with obscurity or darkness. In any material circumstance, necessary to be represented and understood. We may likewise venture to add, that the plan we have pursued, through the whole course of this volume, will not only remove the errors of the common and trivial, but containing a number of books written in the

THE

THE

Sportsman's Dictionary.

A C O

ABATE; a horse is said to abate, or take down, his curvets, when working upon curvets, he puts his two hind legs to the ground both at once, and observes the same exactness in all the times.

ABCESS, [*in horses*] proceeds from a blow, hurt, or some violence; the cure is to anoint the injured part, with lime reduced to a fine powder, mixt with wine and oil, in equal quantities, brought to a pretty thick consistence, or else to apply wheat flour, steeped in vinegar, and half an ounce of manna.

ACHE, [*in horses*] a pain in any part of the Body; a disease that causes numbness in the joints, and proceeds from cold, taken upon hard and violent exercise or labour; for which there are several remedies:

ACOPUM, *a fomentation to allay the sense of weariness; also a medicine for horses, used for the same purpose, and prepared thus:* Take half an ounce of Castoreum, Adraces two ounces, of Bdelium half an ounce and half a quarter, Opopanax an ounce, fox grease half an ounce, pepper an ounce, Laserpitium three quarters of an ounce, Ammoniacum two ounces, pigeons dung as much, half an ounce of Galbanum, one ounce and a quarter of Nitre, three quarters of an ounce of Spuma Nitri, Ladanum two ounces, Pyrethrum and bay-berries, of each three quarters of an ounce, Cardamum two ounces, rue seed two ounces, seed of Agnus castus one ounce, parsley seed half an ounce, dried roots of flower-de-luce an ounce and quarter and half, oil of bay as much, oil of Spikenard three quarters of a pound, Oleum Cyprinum fourteen ounces, the oldest olive oil a pound and half, pitch six ounces, turpentine four ounces; every one of them that will dissolve, melt separately by themselves, then mingle them together with the rest of the ingredients, first beating to fine powder; after they have boiled a little on the fire, take off the pan, and strain the liquor

B

into

A G E

into a clean gallipot, to be kept for use: in administering this medicine, give not above two spoonfuls at a time, in a pint of sack or muscadine, and if by long keeping it hardens, soften it with cypress oil.

It is both a medicine, and an ointment helping convulsions, string-halts, colds, &c. in the sinews and muscles, draws forth all noisom humours, and being put up into the nostrils of a horse, by means of a long goose feather, anointed therewith, disburthens the head of all grief.

It dissolves the liver, troubled with all oppilations, or obstructions, helps siccidity and crudity in the body, banishes all weariness; and, lastly, cures all sorts of inward diseases, if given by way of drench, in wine, beer, or ale.

ACTION of the mouth, is the agitation of the tongue, and the mandible of a horse, that by champing upon the bridle, keep his mouth fresh. You may see by the white ropy foam, that a horse has the action of the mouth, which is a sign of vigour, mettle, and health.

ACULER, a French word, used in the academies, importing that a horse working upon volts in the Manage, does not go far enough forwards at every time or motion, so that his shoulders embrace, or take in, too little ground, and his croupe comes too near the center of the volt.

This horse has *acute*, because the horseman did not turn his hand, and put him on with the calf of the inner leg.

Horses have a natural inclination to this fault, in making demi-volts.

When the Italians work a horse upon the demivolts, called repolons, they affect to make them *acute*, or cut short. See **ENTABLER**, and **RELOPON**.

To AFFOREST, is to turn land into forest; and, on the contrary, to **DISAFFOREST**, is to turn land from being forest, to other uses.

AGE of an horse; to know how old a horse is, there are several outward characters; 1. his teeth, whereof he has in his head just forty; that is, six great wong teeth above, and six below on one side, with as many on the other, that make twenty four, called *grinders*; then six above, and as many below in the fore part of his mouth, termed *gatherers*, and making thirty six; then four tushes on each side, named *bitt-teeth*, which make just forty.

Now, the first year, he has his foal-teeth, that are only grinders and gatherers, but no tushes, and they are small, white, and bright to behold.

He changes the four foremost teeth in his head the second Year; that is, two above, and as many below, in the midst of the rows

A G E

of the gatherers, and they are browner and bigger than the others.

The third year the teeth next them are changed, and leave no apparent foal teeth before, but two above, and two below on each side, which are all bright and small.

The fourth year, he changes the teeth next them, and leaves no more foal-teeth before, but one on each side, both above and below.

The year following, all his foremost teeth will be changed, but then he has his tushes on each side compleat, and those that come up in the place of the last foal-teeth, which he cast, will be hollow, and have a little black speck in the middle, which is called, *the mark in the horse's mouth*, and continues till he be past eight years old.

The sixth year, he puts up his new tushes, near about which you will see growing, a little new and young flesh at the bottom of the tush; besides, the tush will be white, small, short, and sharp.

In the seventh year, all his teeth will have their perfect growth, and the mark in his mouth will be plainly seen.

The eighth Year, all his teeth will be full, smooth, and plain, the black speck, or mark, being no more than just discernable, and his tushes will be more yellow than ordinary.

The succeeding year, his foremost teeth will be longer, broader, yellower, and fouler than at younger years, the mark gone; and his tushes bluntish.

In the tenth Year, on the inside of his upper tushes, will be no holes at all to be felt with your fingers ends, which till that age you may ever feel; besides, the temples of his head will begin to be crooked and hollow.

In the next, his teeth will be exceeding long, very yellow, black, and foul, only he may then cut even, and his teeth will stand directly opposite to one another.

In the twelfth, they will be long, yellow, black, and foul; but then his upper teeth will hang over his nether. And,

In the thirteenth year, his tushes will be worn somewhat close to his chaps, if he be a much ridden horse; otherwise they will be black, foul and long, like the tushes of a boar.

2. See that the horse be not too deep burnt of the Lampas, and that his flesh lie smooth with his bars; for if too deep burnt, his hay and provender will stick herein, which will be very troublesome to him.

3. Look to his hoofs, which, if rugged, and as it were seamed one seam over another; or if they be dry, full and crusty, or crumbling, it is a sign of very old age; on the contrary, a smooth, moist, hollow, and well sounding hoof, betokens youthfulness.

A G E

4. His eyes, which, if round, full, staring, and starting from his head, if the pits over them be filled, smooth, and even with the temples, and no wrinkles either about his brow, or under his eyes, then he is young; but, if otherwise, he has the contrary characters, and it is a sign of old age.

5. His hair; for if a horse that is of any dark colour, grows grisley only about his eye-brows, or underneath his mane, or any horse of a whitish colour should grow meannelled, with either black or red meannels, all over his body, then both are signs of old age.

6. Lastly, the bars in his mouth, which, if great, deep, and handling, rough and hard, shew he is old; but if they be soft, shallow, and gentle in the handling, he is young and in good state of body.

The following particular remarks about this affair, are taken out of *M. de Solleysel's compleat horseman*.

1. When a horse is two years and a half old, he has twelve foal-teeth, in the forepart of his mouth, and about that time or soon after, four of them do fall, viz. two above and two below, in the very middle; tho' in some horses, they do not fall till three years: in their stead four others appear, called *nippers* or *gatherers*, much stronger and larger than the foal teeth; and then he is commonly two years and a half old, or at most but three.

2. At three and a half, and sometimes at four years, he casts, the next four foal-teeth, viz. two above and two below; and in their room come four teeth called *seperaters*.

There remain then but four foal-teeth in the corners, which he commonly changes at four years and a half: it is therefore necessary to keep in memory, two and a half, three and a half, and four and a half; that is to say, when a horse has cast two teeth above, and as many below, he is but two years and a half old: when he has cast four teeth above, and as many below, he has attained to the age of three years and a half; and as soon as he has cast six above, and as many below, which is to have them all changed, he is then come to four years and a half.

3. It is to be observed, that the corner teeth in the upper gums, are cast before those in the nether; on the contrary, the under tusshes grow out before the upper; and horses are often sick when the tusshes of the upper gums cut, but are never so, when the others below come forth.

4. The tusshes are proceeded by no foal-teeth, but grow up when a horse is about three years and a half old, and generally appear before the corner-teeth are cast.

So soon as the *gatherers* and *seperaters* have pierced and cut the gums, they make all their growth in fifteen days, but the corner teeth do not grow so suddenly: yet that does not hinder,

but

A G E

but that at their very first appearing, they are as thick and broad as the others, but are no higher than the thickness of a crown piece, and very sharp and hollow.

5. When a horse has no more foal-teeth, and that his corner teeth begin to appear, he is in his fifth year; that is, he is about four years and a half, and is going in his fifth.

When he first puts out his corner teeth, they are of equal height with the gums on the outside, and the inside of them is filled with flesh, till he be near five; and when he comes to be five years old, that flesh disappears, and there will remain in the place of it a hollow; that is, they are not so high on the inside as on the outside, which they will come to be, about a year after their first appearing.

So that when a horse's corner teeth are filled with flesh, you may confidently affirm that he is not five.

6. From five to five and a half, the corner teeth remain hollow on the inside, and that part which was filled with flesh is empty.

7. From five and a half to six, the hollow on the inside fills up, and the teeth become flat and equal at top, only a little cavity remains in the middle, resembling the eye of a dry bean, and then they say the horse is entering six.

And so long as a horse's corner teeth are not so high on the inside as the out, he is still said to be but five, tho' he be five and a half, and sometimes six.

8. You may also take notice, that at four years and a half, when the corner teeth appear, and are filled on the inside with flesh; the outside of them will then be about the thickness of a crown piece above the gums, and will so continue till five; and from thence to five and a half, the outward edge will be about the thickness of two crown pieces above the gums: at six they will be near the breadth of one's little finger above the gums, and his tusshes will be at their full length.

At seven years, they will be about the thickness of the second or ring finger above the gums, and the hollow almost quite worn and gone.

9. At eight years old, the horse will be raz'd; that is, none of his teeth will be hollow, but flat quite over, and near the thickness of the middle finger above the gums.

10. After a horse is raz'd, one cannot judge of his age, but by the length of his fore-teeth, or by his tusshes.

As the gums thro' time grow lean, so they make the teeth appear long; and it is certain, that so much the longer a horse's teeth are, he is so much the older; and as he grows old, his teeth gather rust and become yellow: not but that there are some old horses who have very short and white teeth; and people say of such horses, they have a good mouth considering their age.

A G E

Some also have a black speck in their teeth, resembling the true mark, a long time after they have passed eight or nine, but then it is not hollow.

11. The tusshes are the most certain mark, whereby to know a horse's age.

If a horse be but six, the upper tusshes will be a little channelled, or somewhat hollowed and grooved on the inside; and when he is above six they fill up, and become a little round on the inside.

This observation never or rarely fails.

If you feel the tusshes of his upper jaw with your finger, and find them worn equal with the palate, the horse is then at least ten years old: this remark seldom proves deficient, unless the horse when young has carried a bigger mouthed bitt, than was proper for him.

Young horses always have their under tusshes sharp and pointed, pretty long, somewhat edged on both sides, and without any rust upon them; but as they become aged, their tusshes grow big and blunt, round and scaly, and in very old horses, they are extremely thick, round, and yellow.

12. A horse is said to be *shell-toothed*, when he has long teeth, and yet black specks in them, and this mark lasts during life; it is easily known, because the mark appears in the other fore-teeth as well as in the corner teeth.

13. In advanced age, the points of the *gatherers* stand outward a little; and when the horse is extremely old, they point almost strait forward; but while he is young, they stand almost strait up, and are just equal with the outer edges of those above.

Sometimes the upper teeth point forwards in this manner; but for the most part the under do it.

14. After the mark is gone, recourse may be had to the horse's legs, to know whether they be neat and good, to his flank if it be well trussed, not too full or swallowed up; as also to his feet and his appetite.

15. In young horses, that part of the nether jaw-bone, which is three or four fingers breadth above the beard, is always round but in old horses sharp and edged; so that a Man who is accustomed to it, will, before he opens a horse's mouth, judge pretty near of his age. This is a good remark.

16. Some pull the Skin of the nether jaw-bone or shoulder a little to them, and if the skin continue long without returning to it's place, 'tis a sign, they say, the horse is not young, and the longer it is in returning, the older he is: a man should not trust much to this observation, because the skin of a lean horse, tho' young,

A G E

young, will be longer in returning to it's place, than the skin of an old horse that is fat and plump.

17. You may also judge of a horse's age, by looking on his palate; because as he grows old, the roof of his mouth becomes leaner and drier towards the middle; and those ridges which in young horses are pretty high and plump, diminish as they encrease in age; so that in very old horses, the roof of the mouth is nothing but skin and bone.

This remark is good, especially in mares, that seldom have any tushes to know their age by.

18. Grey horses become white as they grow old, and when very aged are white all over; yet it is not to be inferred from thence, that no horses are foaled white, tho' it happens but very rarely: however those that are foaled grey, are known by their knees and hams, which, for the most part, still continue of that colour.

19. If you do not require exactness, but only to know whether the horse be young or old, lift up the upper lip; and if his upper teeth be long, yellow, and over passing those below, it denotes age, as the contrary signs, *viz.* short and white teeth, and the teeth of the upper jaw not over passing those below, betoken youth.

20. There are some sort of horses, whose teeth always continue white and short, as if they were but six years old.

When such horses fall into the hands of cheats, they often countermark them, by hollowing the corner teeth with an engraving iron, putting some double ink immediately into the hole, and letting it dry there, which will remain as long as the teeth continue hollow.

Others with a red hot iron, burn a grain of rye in the hollows of the teeth, which makes them perfectly black; for there issues from the rye a kind of oil that by means of the burning, cleaves fast to the hollows of the teeth newly cut.

To prevent being cheated by those villains, observe if there be any scratches on the outside of the hollows of the teeth, because the graver sometimes slips and scratches the other parts of the teeth; for then you may conclude him counter-marked; and an artificial hollow, is much blacker than a natural one: take notice also of his upper tushes; the inside of which should be grooved or hollow, till the horse be seven years old: and farther, observe whether he has any signs of age, such as the upper teeth long, over passing those below, and yellow; the lower part of the nether jaw-bone, sharp and edged; the under tushes worn, big and scaly; if he have these tokens, and yet appear marked, 'tis very probable that he is counter-marked. Thus far our author. For other particulars; see *Seeling, and teeth of a horse.*

A I D

As to a *hunting*, or *race-horse*, he ought to be 5 years old, and well weigh'd before you begin to hunt him.

For tho' it be a frequent custom among noted horsemen to train their horses up to hunting at 4 years old, and some sooner, yet at that age his joints not being full knit, nor he come to his best strength and courage, he is disabled from performing any matter of speed and toughness: and indeed put to sore labour and toil so young, he runs a very great hazard of *strains*, and the putting out of *splents*, *spavins*, *curbs*, and *wind-galls*; besides the daunting of his spirit, and abating his natural courage, insomuch that he will become melancholly, stiff, and rheumatick, and have all the distempers of *old age*, when it might be expected he should be in his *prime*.

AGIST, properly a bed, or resting-place; whence to agist, signifies to take in and feed the cattle of strangers in the king's forest, and to gather money due for the same: 'Tis also extended to the taking in of other men's cattle into any man's ground, at a certain rate *per week*.

AGISTOR, an officer that takes in cattle of strangers to feed in a forest, and receives for the king's use such tack-money as becomes due upon that account.

In English they are otherwise called Guest-takers, or Gift-takers, and made by letters-patent to the number of 4, in every forest where his majesty has any pannage.

AID; to aid, assist, or succour, a horse, is to sustain and help him to work true, and mark his times or motions with a just exactness. Hence they say

Assist your horse with the calves of your legs, help him with a nice tender heel, aid him with your tongue: 'tis not enough to aid this horse with the rod, he must have harsher aids.

Aids are the helps or assistance that the horseman gives from the gentle and moderate effects of the bridle, the spur, the cavesson, the pincion, the rod, the action of the legs, the motion of the thighs, and sound of the tongue.

We give these aids to prevent the correction and chastisement that is sometimes necessary in breaking and managing a horse.

You'll never ride well unless you be very attentive and active, without precipitancy, in not losing or missing your times, and in giving the aid seasonably, for without that you'll accustom your horse to dose upon it. If your horse does not obey the aids of the calves of your legs, help him with the spur, and give him a prick or two.

This sorrel horse has his aids very nice; that is, he takes them with a great deal of facility and vigour: this gentleman gives his aids very fine, that is, he imitates and rouses up the horse seasonably, and helps him at just turns, in order to make him mark his

A I R

his times or motions justly. The barb knows the aid, he obeys or answers the aids, he takes them finely. You do not give the aids of the cavesson with discretion, you make a correction of them, which will baulk your horse. See *Brouiller*.

INNER AIDS, OUTER AIDS. See *inside in large and narrow*.

AIR is a cadence and liberty of motion, accommodated to the natural disposition of the horse, which makes him work in the manage, and rise with obedience, measure, and justness of time. Some riding-masters take the word Air in a strict sense, as signifying the manage that is higher, slower, and more artful or designed than the *terra a terra*; but others give it a larger signification, including under that sense, *a terra a terra*; for if a horse manages well in a *terra a terra*, they say the horseman has happily hit the air of the horse; in general the walk, trot, and gallop, are not accounted airs, and yet some very good riding-masters would understand by air, the motion of the horse's legs upon a gallop. For instance, they will say such a horse has not the natural air; that is, he bends his fore-legs too little; you should give or form an air to your horse, for he has no natural air, and since his haunches are very good he is capable of the manage, if you do but learn him an air.

All your horses have an air naturally; that is, they have motion enough with their fore-legs to take a cadence, if they are put to work at *terra a terra*: this horse always takes his lesson with his own air: fix or confirm that horse in the air he has taken: this sorrel takes the air of the curvets, but that presents himself with an air caprioles: this mare has no inclination nor disposition to these airs: are terms us'd in the manage. See *PESATE*.

High airs, or high manage, are the motions of a horse that rises higher than *terra a terra*, and works at curvets, balotades, croupades, and caprioles. In regard that horse has the beginning or first steps of raised airs, and of himself affects a high manage, you ought to use this his disposition discreetly, that he may not be disheartened or baulked; for your high airs make a horse angry when he is too much put to it, and you ought to supply his shoulders very well before you put him to leap. See *PESATE* and *LEAPING*.

AIRING of Horses. Airing brings several advantages to horses.

First, It purifies their blood, (if the air be clean and pure) it purges the body from many gross and suffocating humours, and so hardens and enfeams a horse's fat, that it is not near so liable to be dissolved by ordinary exercise.

Secondly, It teaches him how to let his wind rake equally, and keep time with the other actions and motions of his body.

Thirdly,

Thirdly, It sharpens the appetite, and provokes the stomach, (which is of great advantage both to *Gallopers* and *Hunters*, which are apt to lose their stomach either thro' excess or want of exercise :) for the sharpness of the air will drive the horse's natural heat from the outward to the inward parts, which heat, by furthering concoction, creates an appetite.

Markham directs, if a horse be very fat, to air him before *sun-rise*, and after *sun-setting*; and another author says, that nothing is more wholesome than early and late airings: others again do not approve of this, and urge, that as all things that any ways hinder the strength and vigour of nature are to be avoided; now that extremity of cold, and being out early and late do so, is evidently seen by horses that run abroad all winter, which however hardily bred and kept with the best care and fodder, yet cannot by any means be advanced to so good case in winter, as an indifferent pasture will raise them to in summer: and as this holds true of nocturnal colds, it must needs be verified in some proportionate measure of the morning and evening dews, and that piercing cold which is observed to be more intense at the opening and close of the day, than any part of the night.

Besides that, the dews and moist rimes do as much injury to a horse as the sharpest colds or frosts, and if a horse is any ways inclinable to *catorrhus*, *rheums*, or any other cold distempers, he is apt to have the humours augmented, and the disease sensibly increased by these early and late airings.

But if he be not had forth to air till the sun be risen, it will cheer his spirits; and it is seen that all horses love the sun's warmth, as in those that lie out a-nights, who will repair to those places where they can have most benefit of the beams of the sun, after he is risen, to relieve them from the coldness of the preceding night.

And besides the benefit of the sun, the air will be more mild and temperate, as that it will rather invigorate than prey upon his spirits, and more increase his strength than impair it.

And as for bringing down a horse's fat, we need not be at a loss for that, and to keep him from being purfivè, and too high in flesh, to reduce him to cleanness, and a more moderate state of body: for it is but keeping him out so much longer at a time, both morning and evening, and you will undoubtedly obtain your end by such long *airing*, join'd with true sound heats; and it is from the length of airings that you must expect to bring your horse to a perfect wind and true courage.

◦ **AMBLING**; a motion in a horse that is much desired, very useful, but not easily to be obtained the right way, notwithstanding the vain confidence of the various professors of it, who, tho' they so confidently assert the success, yet differ in their methods to affect it: for some would do it by new ploughed fields, others

A N B

others will teach a horse to amble from the gallop; many use no better way for it than by weights.

Some amble in hand, not ridden; others by the help of hinner shoes, made on purpose: many fold fine soft lifts about the gambrels of the horse; some amble by the hand only, others use the tramel, which indeed if rightly managed is good: but the best way of all is to try with your hands, by a gentle and deliberate racking and thrusting of the horse forward, by helping him in the weak part of the mouth with your snaffle, which must be smooth, big, and full; and correcting him first on one side, then on another, with the calves of your legs, and sometimes with a spur.

If you can make him of himself fall into an amble, tho' shuffling disorderly, there will be much labour saved; for that aptness to amble will make him with more ease and less danger in the use of the tramel, and find the motion without stumbling or amazement: but if you find he will by no means either apprehend the motions or intentions, then struggle not with the animal, but fall to the use of the tramel, which see for that purpose under TRAMEL. See *rules for buying horses*.

AMPHIBIOUS Animals, are such as live partly on the land and partly in the water, as badgers, otters, ducks, &c.

ANBURY, a kind of wen, or spungy wart, growing upon any part of a horse's body, full of blood, the manner of curing whereof is to tie it about hard with a thread, or rather with a horse-hair, and in eight days it will fall off, then strew upon it the powder of verdigrease to kill it at the root, and heal it up again with green ointment; but if it be so flat that nothing can be bound about it, then take it away with an incision-knife close to the skin, or else burn it with a sharp hot iron, cutting it round about so deep as to leave none of the root behind, and after having applied turpentine and hog's lard melted together, heal it up as before: but if this wart grows in a finewy part, where a hot iron is improper, eat out the core with oil of vitriol, or white sublimate, then stop the hole with flax dipt in the white of an egg, for a day or two, and at last dry it up with unslaked lime and honey.

2. For these warts put 3 ounces of powder of copperas in a crucible, with 1 ounce of arsenic powder'd, place the crucible in the middle of a charcoal fire, stirring the substance, but carefully avoiding the malignant steams: when the matter appears somewhat reddish, take the crucible off the fire, and after it is cool, break and beat the matter into a very fine powder, incorporate 4 ounces of this powder, 5 ounces of album rasis, and make an ointment to be applied cold to warts, anointing them lightly every day, and they will fall off like kernels of nuts, without causing any swellings in the legs, if the application be ordered so as only the warts

A N G

warts be anointed, and the horse be not worked or ridden during the cure; and after the warts fall off, dress the sore with the Countess's ointment; which see described under the proper head.

This is one of the best secrets in the world for warts.

ANGLING, is an excellent art, which as it pleads great antiquity, so the knowledge thereof is with much difficulty to be obtained; but some observations concerning it will not be amiss. And *first*, the angler must remember by no means to fish in light and dazzling apparel, but his cloathing must be of a dark sky colour; and at the places where he uses to angle, he should once in four or five days cast in corn boiled soft, if for carp or tench, oftner: he may also cast in garbage, beasts livers, worms chopt in pieces, or grains steeped in blood and dried, which will attract the fish thither: and in fishing, to keep them together, throw in half a handful of grains of ground malt, which must be done in still water; but in a stream you must cast your grains above your hook, and not about it, for as they float from the hook, so will they draw the fish after them. Now if you would bait a stream, get some tin boxes made full of holes, no bigger than just fit for a worm to creep through, which fill therewith, and having fastned a plummet to sink them, cast them into the stream, with a string fastned thereto, that they may be drawn out at pleasure; by the smallness of the holes aforesaid, the worms can crawl out but very leisurely, and as they crawl the fish will resort about them.

Now if in a stream you would bait for salmon, trout, umber, or the like, take some blood, and therewith incorporate fine clay, barley and malt, ground, adding some water thereunto, all which make into a paste with ivy gum, then form it into cakes and cast them into the stream: if you find your bait take no effect in attracting of the fish, so you may then conclude some pike or perch lurk there to seize his prey, for fear of which the fish dare not venture thereabout; take therefore your troll, and let your bait be either brandlings or lob-worms, or you may use gentles or minnows, which they will greedily snap at.

As for your rod, it must be kept neither too dry nor too moist, lest the one make it brittle, and the other rotten; and if it be sultry dry weather, wet your rod a little before you angle, and having struck a good fish, keep your rod bent, and that will hinder him from running to the end of the line, whereby he will either break his hold or hook: and if you would know what bait the fish loves best, at the time of your fishing, when you have taken one, slit the gill, and open and take out the stomach, opening it without bruising, and there you'll find what he fed on last, and had a fancy to, whereby you may bait your hook accordingly.

When

A N G

When you fish, shelter yourself under some bush or tree, so far from the brink of the river, that you can only discern your float; for fish are timorous, and very easy to be affrighted: and you will experimentally find the best way of angling with a fly, is down the river, and not up; neither need you ever to make above six trials in a place, either with fly or ground-bait, when you angle for trout, for by that time he will either offer or take, or refuse the bait, and not stir at all; but if you would have fish bite eagerly, and without suspicion, you may present them with such baits as they are naturally inclined to, and in such manner as they are accustomed to receive them; and if you use pastes for baits, you must add flax or wool, with which mix a little butter to preserve it from washing off the hook: and lastly, *Note,*

That the eyes of such fishes you kill, are most excellent baits on the hook for almost all sorts of fish.

Cautions to be observed in ANGLING, as to the seasons of the weather, the time of the day and year, &c.

In angling you ought so to place your self, that your shadow do not at any time lie upon the water, if shallow; but in deep waters that is not so necessary to be observed, yet that you may be exact, you should make use of all the advantages that the place will afford.

In a pond it is best to angle near the ford where the cattle go to drink, and in rivers in such places where such sort of fish you intend to angle for, do usually frequent; as for *breams*, in the deepest and quietest part of the river; for *eels* under hanging over banks; for *chub*, in deep shaded holes; for *perch*, in scowrs; for *roach*, in the same places as *perch*; for *trouts*, in quick streams, and with a fly upon the stream on the top of the water.

And if you fish in such places where you can discern the gravelly bottom, then be sure that you conceal your self as much as is possible.

In such waters as are pestered with weeds, roots of trees, and such like, fish lie close and warm, and do resort thither in great shoals, and there they will bite freely; but take great care how you cast in the *hook*, and how you strike a bite, for the least rashness loses *hook* and *line*.

And if the *hook* happens to be entangled, you should be provided with a ring of lead, about 6 inches round, fastened to a small pack-thread, and thrust the ring over the rod, letting it go into the water, holding fast by the other end of the pack-thread, and work it gently up and down, and it will soon disengage the hook.

It

A N G

It is good angling in whirlpools, under bridges, at the falls of mills, and in any place where the water is deep and clear, and not disturbed with wind or weather.

The best times are from *April* to *October*, for in cold, stormy and windy weather, the fish will not bite; and the best times in the day are from 3 till 9 in the morning, and from 3 in the afternoon till sun-set.

If the wind be easterly, it will be in vain to go to angle; but you may angle well enough if it blow from any other point, provided it do not blow hard; but it is best in a southerly wind, and a close, lowring, warm day, with a gentle wind, and after a sudden shower to disturb the water, at which time they will best rise at the fly, and bite eagerly; and the cooler the weather is in the hottest months, the better it is.

In winter, all weathers and all times are much alike, only the warmest are the best.

It is very good *angling* a little before the fish spawn, for then their bellies being full they frequent sandy fords, to rub and loosen their bellies, at which time they will bite freely.

It is also very good *angling* in a dull, cloudy day, after a clear, moon-shiny night, for in such nights they are fearful to stir to get food, lying close, so that being hungry the next day, they will bite boldly and eagerly.

At the opening of sluices and mill-dams, if you go with the course of the water, you can hardly miss of fish that swim up the stream to seek for what food the water brings down with it.

It is best *angling* at the ebb, in waters that ebb and flow; but yet the flood is to be preferr'd, if the tide is not strong.

Directions and Cautions to be observed in ANGLING.

It is usual for every *angler* to have his peculiar haunt. Now for the attracting and drawing together the fish into such a place, it will be proper once in 4 or 5 days to cast in some corn boiled soft, or garbage, or worms chopt to pieces, or grains steep'd in blood and dried; but for *carp* and *tench*, ground malt is the most proper to keep them together.

If you fish in a stream, it will be best to cast in the grain above the hook, down the stream.

The best way of angling with the fly is down the river, not up, and in order to make them bite freely, be sure to use such baits as you know they are naturally inclined to, and in such manner as they are accustomed to receive them.

If your baits be of paste, for the keeping them on your hook, add a little flax, or wool.

The

A N G

The eyes of fish are said to be good baits for all fish.

Wear not light coloured and dazling apparel when you are fishing, but rather black or dark coloured; and if possible, shelter your self under some bush or tree, or stand so far from the bank-side that you can but discern the float; for fish are timorous, and fearful of every thing they see.

The next thing to be observed is the floating for scale-fish, in pond or river. *First*, take notice that the seed brings the fish together; and there is no better in all angling than blood and grains, tho' paste is good, but inferior to these.

Remember to plumb your ground angling with fine tackle, as single hair for half the line next the hook, round and small plumb-ed, according to the float.

There is a small red worm, with a yellow tip on his tail, which is an excellent bait for this sort of fish, or any other.

Other special baits are these; brandlings, gentles, paste, or caddis, (otherwise called cock-bait) they lie in gravelly husk, under the stones in the river.

The natural fly is a sure way of angling to augment the angler's diversion: with the palmer, may-fly, and oak-fly the angler must use such a rod as to angle with the ground-bait; the line must not be so long as the rod.

Let the angler withdraw his fly as he shall find it most convenient and advantageous in his angling: when he comes to deep water, whose motion is slow, let him make his line about 2 yards long, and drop his fly behind a bush, and he will find excellent sport.

The way to make the best PASTE, is to take a convenient quantity of fresh butter, and as much fresh sheep's suet, and a good quantity of the strongest cheese that can be gotten, with the crumb of an old stale white loaf, beat all these in a mortar till they come to a perfect paste; and when the angler intends to spend some time in angling, let him put the quantity of a green pea of this paste upon his hook, and take notice what pleasant effects it will produce.

ANGLING *by hand*

Is of three sorts.

The first is performed with a line about half the length of the rod, a good weighty plummet, and three hairs next the hook, which is called a *running line*, and with one large *brandling*, or a dew worm of a moderate size, or two small ones of the first, or or any other sort proper for a trout, or indeed almost any worm whatsoever; for if a trout be in humour to bite, he will bite at any worm, and if you fish with two, bait your hook thus.

First,

A N G

First run the point of your hook in at the very head of your first worm, and so down thro' his body, till it be past the knot, and then let it out, and strip the worm above the arming, (that you may not bruise it with your fingers) till you have put on the other, by running the point of your hook in below the knot, and upwards thro' his body, towards his head till it be just covered with the head, which being done, you are then to slip the first worm down over the arming again, till the knots of both worms meet together.

The second way of *angling by hand*, and with a running line, is with a line something longer than the former, and with tackle made after the following manner.

At the utmost extremity of your line, where the hook is always placed in all other ways of angling: you are to have a large pistol or carbine bullet, into which the end of your line is to be fastened with a peg or pin even and close with the bullet, and about half a foot above that, a branch of line of two or three handfuls long, or more for a swift stream, with a hook at the end thereof, baited with some of the forementioned worms; and another half a foot above that armed and baited after the same manner, but with another sort of worm, without any lead at all above; by which means you will always certainly find the true bottom in all depths, which with the plummets upon your line above you can never do; but that your bait must always drag, while you are sounding (which in this way of angling must be continually) by which means, you are like to have more trouble, and perhaps less success. And both these ways of angling at the bottom, are most proper for a dark and muddy water, by reason that in such a condition of the stream, a man may stand as near as he will, and neither his own shadow, nor the nearness of the tackle will hinder his sport.

The third way of *angling by hand* with a ground bait, and much the best of all other, is with a line full as long or a yard longer than your rod, with no more than one hair next the hook, and for two or three lengths above it, and no more than one small pellet of shot for a plummet, your hook little, your worm of the smallest brandlings, very well scoured, and only one upon your hook at a time, which is thus to be baited; the point of your hook is to be put in at the tag of his tail, and run up his body quite over all the arming; and still stript on an inch at least upon the hair, the head, and remaining part hanging downwards, and with this line and hook thus baited, you are ever more to angle in the streams, always in a clear rather than a troubled water, and always up the river, still casting out your worm before you, with a clean light, one handed rod, like an artificial flie, where it will be taken sometimes at the top, or within

A N G

within a very little of the *superficies* of the water, and almost always before that light plumb can sink it to the bottom; both by reason of the stream, and also that you must always keep your worm in motion, by drawing still back towards you, as if you were angling with a flie.

And indeed whoever shall try this way, will find it the best of all others, to angle with a worm in a bright water especially; but then his rod must be very light and pliant, and very true and finely made, and with a skillful hand it will succeed beyond expectation; and in a clear stream, is undoubtedly the best *angling* for a *trout* or *grayling* with a worm by many degrees, that any man can make choice of, and the most easy and delightful to the angler.

And if the angler be of a constitution that will suffer him to wade, and will slip into the tail of a shallow stream to the calf of the leg, or knee, and so keep off the bank he shall take almost what fish he pleases.

The second way of *angling at the bottom* is with a cork, or float, and that is also of two sorts.

With a worm; or,

With grub, or caddis.

With a worm, you are to have your line within a foot or a foot and a half as long as your rod, in a dark water with two, or, if you will, with three; but in a clear water, never with above one hair next the hook, and two, or three, or four, or five, lengths above it, and a worm of what size you please; your plumbs fitted to your cork, and your cork to the condition of the river, (that is to the swiftness or slowness of the stream) and both when the water is very clear, as fine as you can, and then you are never to bait with more than one of the lesser sort of *brandlings*; or if they be very little ones indeed, you may then bait with two after the manner before directed.

When you angle for a trout, you are to do it as deep, that is as near to the bottom, as you can, provided your bait do not drag, or if it do, a trout will sometimes take it in that posture: if for a grayling, you are then to fish further from the bottom, he being a fish that usually swims nearer to the middle of the water, and lies always loose: or however is more apt to rise than a trout, and more inclined to rise than to descend even to a groundling. With a grub or caddis, you are to angle with the same length of line; or if it be all out as long as your rod, 'tis not the worse with never above one hair for two or three lengths next the hook, and with the smallest cork, or float, and the least weight of plumb you can, that will but sink, and that the swiftness of your stream will allow; which also you may help, and avoid the violence of the current, by angling in the returns of a stream,

A N G

or the eddies betwixt two streams, which also are the most likely places, wherein to kill a fish in a stream, either at the top, or bottom.

Of *Grubs* for a *Grayling*; the *ash Grub* which is plump, milk white, bent round from head to tail, and exceeding tender, with a red head; or the dock-worm; or the grub of a pale yellow, longer, lanker, and tougher than the other, with rows of feet all down his belly, and a red head, also are the best, *i. e.* for a *Grayling*; because tho' a *trout* will take both these, (the *ash Grub* especially) yet he does not do it so freely as the other; and a certain author, says he, has usually taken two *graylings*, for one *trout* with that bait; but if he happened to take a *trout* with it, it was commonly a very good one.

These baits are usually kept in bran, in which an *ash Grub* commonly grows tougher, and will better endure baiting; tho' he is still so tender, that it will be necessary to warp in a piece of stiff hair with your arming, leaving it standing out about a straw's breadth at the head of your hook, so as to keep the grub either from slipping totally off when baited, or at least down to the point of the hook, by which means your arming will be left naked and bare, which is neither so lightly, nor so likely to be taken, tho' to help that (which will often however fall out) you may arm the hook designed for this bait, with the whitest horse hair that you can get, which itself will resemble, and shine like that bait, and consequently will do more good, or less harm, than arming of any other colour.

These grubs are to be baited thus; the hook is to be put in, under the head, or the chaps of the bait, and guided down the middle of the belly, without suffering it to peep out by the way, for then (the *ash grub* especially) will issue out water and milk, till nothing but the skin shall remain, and the bend of the hook will appear black through it) till the point of your hook come so low; that the heart of your bait may rest, and stick upon the hair that stands out to hold it, by which means it can neither slip of itself, neither will the force of the stream, nor quick pulling out, upon any mistake, strip off.

Now the *Caddis*, or cod bait (which is a sure killing bait, and for the most part surer than any of the other) may be put upon the hook two or three together, and is sometimes (to very great effect) joined to a worm, and sometimes to an artificial fly, to cover the point of the hook; but is always to be angled with at bottom (when by itself especially) with the finest tackle; and is for all times in the year, the most holding bait of all other whatsoever both for *trout* and *grayling*.

ANGLING

A N G

ANGLING *in the middle, for trout or grayling,*

Is of two sorts; 1. with a pink, or minnow, for a trout.

2. With a worm, grub, or caddis, for a grayling.

As for the first it is with a minnow, half a foot, or a foot, within the *superficies* of the water; some indeed use *minnows* kept in salt; but others disapprove of them, unless where living ones are not possibly to be had; nor are artificial ones to be used, where the natural ones are to be had: but a bullhead with his gill-fins cut off is by some recommended as a better bait for a trout, (at some times of the year especially) than a minnow, and a loach much better than that.

The second way of angling in the middle is with the worm, grub, caddis, or any other ground bait for a grayling; he taking it much better there than at the bottom, as has been said before; and this is always in a clear water, and with the finest tackle.

To which may be added also, and with very good reason, a third way of *angling* by hand with a ground bait, as a third way of fishing in the middle, which is common to both trout and grayling, and the best way of angling with a worm of all other.

The times for ANGLING, seasonable and unseasonable.

Calm and clear weather is very good to angle in; but cool cloudy weather in summer is best; provided it be not so boisterously windy, as that you cannot guide your tackle.

The cooler the weather is in the hottest months, the better it is: and if a sudden violent shower hath disturbed and muddied the river, then is the time for angling in the stream at the ground with a red worm.

In like manner it is a very good time for angling before the fish spawn; for then their bellies being full, they come into sandy fords, and there rub their bellies to loosen them, at which time they will bite very freely.

If you would fish for *carp* and *tench*, you must begin early in the morning, fishing from sun rising till eight of the clock, and from four in the afternoon till night, and in hot months till it is very late.

In the heat of the summer, *carps* will shew themselves on the very rim of the water, at which time, if you fish with a lob worm, as you do with a natural fly, you have excellent sport, especially if it be among reeds.

In *March*, *April*, *September*, and all the winter (in which season fish swim very deep near the ground) it is best fishing in a serene warm day, for then they will bite fastest: but all the

A N G

summer time mornings, evenings, and cool, cloudy weather, are the best times for angling.

Here take notice, that you will find that fish rise best at the *fly* after a shower of rain, that has only beaten the gnats and flies into the river, without muddying it.

The proper months and times of the day for the *fly*, are *March*, *April*, *May*, and the beginning of *June*. In which months fish in the morning about nine of the clock; and in the afternoon between three and four. A warm evening is also very seasonable, if the gnats play much.

It is also a very good time for angling after a clear moon shiny night, if the succeeding day prove cloudy; for the fish having abstained from food all night, (for in bright nights they will not stir for fear) they next day they are hungry and eager, and the gloominess of the day will make them bite boldly.

It is a good time for *angling*, when you perceive the trouts to leap pleasantly at the flies above water; or the pikes to pursue other fish.

In a word, an experienced angler, observes the times, seasons, and places; otherwise, tho' his baits are never so good, they will have but little effect.

If you go along with the course of the water, at the opening of sluices or mills, you will find that trouts, and other fish will then come out to seek for what food the water brings down with it.

And *first*, in the extremity of heat, when the earth is parched with a drought, there is but little sport to be had especially in either muddy, or clear shallow rivers.

Secondly, in the *winter*, or *spring* time, when any hoary frost happens, the fish will not bite kindly all that day, except it be in the evening, and if that prove serene and pleasant. But it is not proper to fish at any time, when the wind blows so high that you cannot manage your tackle to advantage.

Thirdly, it is not good fishing in the time of *Sheep shearing*, for then the fish glut themselves with what is washed off the sheep, and will scarce bite till that season be over.

Also sharp *east* and *north* nipping winds, do very much obstruct the recreation of anglers: nor is it good to fish immediately after spawning time: for at that time their appetite is much palled.

It is very strange to be observed, what a natural instinct there is in fish, in foreknowing the approach of a shower of rain, for upon the approach of a cloud that threatens a shower, they will not bite; and the observation of this has saved several anglers from being wet to the skin.

Lastly,

A N G

Lastly, if the preceding night prove dark and cloudy, the succeeding day, will be no good day to angle in, unless it be for small fish; for at such time the larger prey abroad for the lesser; who by instinct knowing the danger, hide themselves till the morning; and having fasted all night, become then very hungry while the larger having gorged themselves, lie absconded all the day.

ANGLING LINE; to make this line, the hair should be round and twisted, even for that strengthens it, and should also be as near as may be of equal bigness; then lay them in water for a quarter of an hour, whereby you will find, which of them shrink, then twist them over again, and in the twisting, some intermingle silk which is not good, but a line of all silk is not amiss, also a line made of the strongest lute string is very good, but that will soon rot with the water: now the best colour for lines, is sorrel, white, and grey; the two last colours for clear waters, and the first for muddy rivers, neither is the pale watry green despiseable, which colour may be made thus; put a pint of strong allum, half a pound of foot, a small quantity of juice of walnut leaves, with the like of allum into a pipkin, boil them about half an hour together, then take it off the fire when it is cool, steep your hair in it; or else thus boil in a bottle of allum water, somewhat more than a handful of marigold flowers, till a yellow scum arise; then take half a pound of green copperas, with as much verdegrease, and beat them together to a fine powder; and with the hair, put them into the allum water, and let it lie ten hours, or more: then take the hair out, and let it dry.

ANGLING ROD, the time to provide stocks is in the winter solstice, when the trees have shed their leaves, and the sap is in the roots, for after *January* it ascends again into the trunk and branches, at which time it is improper to gather stocks, or tops; as for the stocks they should be lower grown, and the tops the best rush ground shoots as can be got, not knotty, but proportionable and slender, for otherwise they will neither cast nor strike well, and the line, by reason of their unpliableness, must be much endangered; now when both stock and top are gathered in one season, and as strait as may be, bathe them (saving the tops) over a gentle fire, and use them not till fully seasoned, which is a year and four months; but they are better if kept two years; and for the preserving, both from rotting, or worm eating, rub them over thrice a year with fallet, or linseed, oil; sweet butter will serve if never salted; and with any of these you must chafe your rods well; if bored, pour in either of the oils, and let them soak therein twenty four hours, then pour it out again, this will preserve the tops and stocks from injuring. See **LIME, HOOK, FLOAT, and FISHING-ROD, &c.**

Night ANGLING, and Ground ANGLING.

Great fish (but chiefly trouts) are shy, and fearful of ensnarements; and do observe the most secure season to seek their food, and that is a-nights.

For *night-angling* you must provide large garden-worms; or instead of them, black snails: and having baited your hook with them, cast them off at a distance, and then draw your line to you again upon the surface of the water, not suffering the bait to sink; with which use not a leaden plummet, but only a float; but in *ground-angling* you must use a plummet without a float: And this method of ground-angling is very good in cold weather, for then the fish lie low.

You may easily hear the fish rise, and therefore give him time to swallow the bait; and then gently give him a twitch to secure him.

If you find that the fish does not freely take the bait at the top of the water, then put some lead to it, and sink your bait, and proceed as in day-angling.

It has been observed, that the best trouts bite in the night, and do most commonly rise in the still-deeps, seldom in the quick streams.

ANTICOR, (*or* *advant-coeur*,) is a preternatural swelling of a round figure, almost as big as the half of one's fist, which being occasioned by a sanguine and bilious humour, appears in the horse's breast, and opposite to the heart: if a horse has got an anticor it may kill him, unless you bring it to suppuration by good remedies.

ANTLER, a start or branch of a deer's attire.

Bes **ANTLER**, the start or branch next above the brow-antler.

Brow-**ANTLER**, the start or branch next the head.

APOPLEXY, *or* *Falling Evil*, a disease that seizes the heads of hawks, commonly by reason of too much grease and store of blood; or because they have been too long in the heat of the sun, or have made too long a flight in the heat of the day; and as it is very customary with them to be full of grease in the mew, it is very good when they are empty to give them a little lard, or sweet butter, soak'd in rose-water, sweetned with a little sugar-candy pounded; but the best thing of all is to draw their meat through black cherry-water.

APOPLEXY, *in* *Horses*. See **PALSY**.

APOSTHUME, [*in* *Hawks*] a disease in the head, attended with swellings therein; occasioned by divers ill humours, and the heat of the head: it may be discovered by the swelling of the eyes,

A P R

eyes, by the moisture that comes from their ears, and by their slothfulness.

For cure, give them a pill of *butter*, as big as a nut, well washed in *rose-water*, and mix'd with *honey of roses* and *fine sugar*, for 3 or 4 mornings, when they have meat: they must be held on the fist till they have made one or two mewts, then take four drams of the seed of *rue*, two drams of *hepatic aloes*, and one scruple of *saffron*; reduce all to fine powder, and mix them with *honey of roses*, and make a pill, and give them: it will purge and scour their heads; then about two hours after give them some good hot meat.

When the *nares* of a hawk are stuffed up with filth; after a convenient scouring, take *pepper* and *mustard-seed*, beaten to a fine powder, put it into a linnen cloth, and steep it for a good space in strong white wine vinegar; of which put some drops upon her nares, that they may pierce in, and they will soon scour her head.

APPROACHING, in fowling, is a particular device to approach or come near those birds that are shy, and frequent marshy and watry places.

This is performed by a sort of machine, of three hoops tied together, all at proper distances, according to the height of the man that is to use it, and having boughs tied all round it, and with cords to bear on his shoulders; so that a man getting in it is concealed by the boughs, and can approach near them unsuspected till he comes within reach of shot.

As for herons, wild geese, duck, teal, &c. they are apt to keep the waters in the day-time, and on the meadows near the brinks of the rivers, and as far as they can from hedges and trees, for fear of being surprized; and when the water is 2 or 300 paces distant from trees, they will leave the middle of the stream, and muddle along the sides of the river where the water is shallow; but when they perceive any body near, even a beast to pass along, they will quit the sides and withdraw to the middle again.

Geese, ducks and teals quit the water in the evening, and pass the night in the fields, but in the morning return to the water: however you may easily approach them by the means of a machine, as represented in the following figure, carried by a man, where he is concealed; and they may be shot whenever he is within a due distance from them.

To make this machine take three small hoops, which you are to tie with a cord in this manner; take a cord D, E, M, N, tie two ends together, and doing the same by the other two, divide the whole into four parts, and yet nothing must be cut; and fasten to every quarter D, E, M, N, another cord, five or six foot long, pass the head of it through the middle, so that two of the cords

A P P

remain before and the other behind ; or else fix a piece of wood in the ground, the height of the man that is to carry the machine, put this cord upon it, and take a hoop, F, C, L, O, which you must tie to the four quarters with the four cords, exactly to the height of the cincture ; take another hoop and tie it likewise to the four cords, G, B, K, P, against the middle of the thighs, and the third in the like manner to the same cords, high as the ancles, and then place some very light branches of trees quite round these hoops, and tie them to the three hoops, ordering them so that the birds may not see the person within the machine with his gun : but in case he finds that the birds seem to discern him, he must advance very gently towards them. *See the figure in the Plate.*

The birds, which keep moving continually, seeing him come near, will fancy it is themselves that draw near the tree, and not the tree near them, by which means he may come near enough to fire upon them.

The best time to make use of this machine is in the morning, when the birds are returning out of the fields ; for he may fire upon them as they pass, because they will not pass all together but in several flocks.

APPUI, or *stay upon the hand*, is the reciprocal sense between the horse's mouth and the bridle-hand, or the sense of the action of the bridle in the horseman's hand.

The true and right *appui* of the hand, is the nice bearing or *stay* of the bridle ; so that the horse, awed by the sensibility and tenderness of the parts of his mouth, dare not rest much upon the bitt mouth, nor chack or beat upon the hand to withstand it.

Such a horse has a dull, deaf, *appui* ; that is, he has a good mouth, but his tongue is so thick that the bitt can't work or bear upon the bars ; for the tongue being not sensible, or tender as the bars, is benumbed or hardened by the bitt ; so the *appui* is not good. This and the following are terms us'd of an *appui*.

The bitt does not press the bars in the quick, by reason of the grossness of the tongue, or else of the lips.

Your horse has a rest or *stay* that forces the hand, which shews that he has a bad mouth.

This horse has no *appui*, no rest upon the hand ; that is, he dreads the bitt mouth, he is apprehensive of the hand, and he cannot suffer the bitt to press, or bear, tho' never so little, upon the parts of his mouth ; and thus it comes to pass he does not easily obey the bridle.

A horse that is taught a good *appui*, if you mean to give that horse a good rest upon the hand, it behoves you to gallop him and put him often back ; a long stretch gallop is very proper for the same end, for in galloping he gives the horseman an opportunity of bearing upon the hand.

A P R

Such a horse has too much *appui*, he throws himself too much upon the bitt; a horse that has a fine stay or rest upon the hand, *i. e.* equal, firm, and light, or one that obeys the bridle. See HAND.

A full *appui* upon the hand, is a firm stay, without resting very heavy, and without bearing upon the hand.

Horses for the army ought to have a full *appui* upon the hand.

A more than full rest or *appui* upon the hand, is said of a horse that is stopped with some force; but still so that he does not force the hand. This *appui* is good for such riders as depend upon the bridle, instead of their thighs.

A P R I L.

Of Fly-fishing in the month of April; or the flies taken for fishing in that month; or the making of artificial flies.

All the same tackles and flies that were taken in the month of *March*, will be taken in this month also; (see *MARCH*) with this distinction only, concerning the flies, that all the browns be lapped with red silk, and the duns with yellow.

1. To these, a small bright brown, made of spaniel's fur, with a light grey wing, in a bright day and a clear water, is very well taken.

2. There is also a little dark brown, the dubbing of that colour, and some violet camlet mixt; and the wing of the grey feather of a mallard.

3. From the 6th of this month to the 10th, there is a fly, called, the violet fly, made of a dark violet stuff, with the wings of the grey feather of a mallard.

4. About the 12th of this month comes in the fly, called the *whirling-dun*; which is taken every day, about the mid-time of the day, all this month through; and by fits, from thence to the end of *June*; and is commonly made of the down of a fox's cub, which is of an ash colour at the roots next the skin, and ribb'd about with yellow silk, the wings of the pale grey feather of the mallard.

5. There is also a yellow dun; the dubbing of camel's hair, and yellow camlet, and wool mixt, and a white grey wing.

6. There is also this month another little brown, besides that mentioned before, made with a very slender body, the dubbing of dark brown and violet camlet mixt, and a grey wing; which tho' the direction for making be near the other, is yet another fly, and will take when the other will not, especially in a bright day and clear water.

7. About the 20th of this month comes in a fly, called the horse-flesh fly; the dubbing of which is a blue mohair, with pink-

A R M

pink-coloured and red tammy mixt, a light coloured wing, and a dark brown head. This fly is taken best in the evening; and kills from two hours before sun-set till twilight, and is taken the month through.

AQUATIC, that lives, breeds, or grows, in or about the water; as aquatic animals, plants, &c.

ARABIAN HORSE: gentlemen and merchants who have travelled those parts, report, that the right *Arabian horses* are valued at an incredible and intolerable price; being valued at 500, and as others say, at 1, 2, and 3000 *l.* an horse. That the *Arabs* are as careful of keeping the genealogies of their horses, as princes in keeping their pedigrees: that they keep them with medals; and that each son's portion is usually two suits of arms, and one of their horses.

The *Arabs* boast, that they will ride fourscore miles without drawing bit: but this has been performed by some of our English horses: and much more was done by a highwayman's horse, who having committed a robbery, on the same day rode from London to York, being 150 miles.

Notwithstanding their great value, and the difficulty of bringing them from *Scanderoon* to *England* by sea, yet by the care, and at the charge of some breeders in the north of *England*, the *Arabian* horse has been no stranger to those parts; and perhaps at this day some of the race may be seen there, if not the true *Arabian stallion*. See **STALLION**.

ARCHED; a horse is said to have arched legs when his knees are bended arch-wise.

This expression relates to fore-quarters, and the infirmity here signified, happens to such horses as have their legs spoiled with travelling.

The horses called *Brassicourts*, have likewise their knees bended arch-wise; but this deformity is natural to them.

ARM of a horse. See **FORE THIGH**.

To ARM; a horse is said to arm himself when he presses down his head, as if he would check, and bends his neck so as to rest the branches of his bridle upon his counter, in order to disobey the bitt mouth, and guard his bars and his mouth, which are relieved by over-bending his neck.

Since your horse arms himself, give him a knee'd branch that will raise him, and make him carry his head well. See, *to carry low*.

Arm, with the lips.

A horse is said to arm himself with the lips, when he covers his bars with his lips, and makes the pressure of the bitt to deaf and firm; this is commonly done by thick-lipped horses. You must order your bitt-maker to forge you a bitt-mouth, with a cannon,

A T T

cannon, or scratch-mouth, that is broader near the bankets than at the place of it's pressure, or rest upon the bars; and this will hinder your horse from arming himself with his lips.

Sometimes we say, the lips arm the bar; *i. e.* cover, or screen it. See **DISARM**.

ARMAN, a confection of wonderful efficacy to prevent a total loss of appetite in horses.

ARRESTS, are mangy humours upon the sinews of the hinder legs of a horse, between the ham and the pastern. They seldom appear upon the shank sinew.

Their names are taken from their likeness to the arrests or the small bones of a fish. See **RAT-TAIL**.

ARZEL, a horse is said to be arzel, that has a white mark upon his far foot behind.

Your superstitious cavaliers persuade themselves, that by an unavoidable fatality, such horses are unfortunate in battle; and such is the strength of this prejudice that they do not care to use them.

ASSART, an offence committed in a forest, by plucking up those woods by the roots that are thickets or coverts to the forest.

Court of ATTACHMENTS, a Court belonging to the forest, wherein the officers do nothing but receive the attachments of the foresters, and inroll them in the verderer's rolls; that they may be in readiness against the time that the Court of *Swainmote* is kept; for that this court cannot determine any offence or trespass, if the value thereof be above four pence; for all above that value must be inroll'd in the verderer's rolls, and sent from thence to the court of *Swainmote*, to be tried there according to the laws of the forest.

For notwithstanding the greatest part of all the presentments do first begin in this court, yet this court cannot proceed farther therein: neither is a presentment in this court any conviction against the offender in those offences, because he may traverse the same, until it hath passed the court of *Swainmote*; to which, all trespasses presented at the court of Attachments, must necessarily come, before the offenders can be punished, or stand convicted, as guilty in law of their offences.

ATTAIN, is a blow, or wound, received by a horse in his inner feet, from another horse that follows him too close. This word is likewise used to signify a blow that the horse's foot receives from the fore, or hinder, opposite foot; or a blow given by one of the hinder feet striking against the coronet of the fore foot. Hence they say,

Your horse could not have given himself a ruder attain: for I find with the probe, that it penetrates between the hoof and the coffin bone, which give reason to suspect that the tendon is affected, and that the attain reaches to the coronet.

Upper

A U G

Upper attaint, is a violent blow given with the two hind feet, upon the sinew of the fore legs.

ATTIRE of a deer, of a stag, if perfect, is called the burr; the pearls, (the little knobs on it) the beam; the gutters, the antler; the fur-antler royal, fur-royal; and all at top, the croches.

Of a Buck; the burr, the beam; the brow-antler, the fur-antler; the advancer, palm, and spellers.

If the croches grow in the form of a man's hand, it is then called, a palmed head. Heads bearing not above three or four, the croches being placed aloft, all of one height, are called, crowned heads: heads having doubling croches, are called, forked heads; because the croches are planted on the top of the beam, like forks.

If you are asked what a stag bears, you are only to reckon croches he bears, and never to express an odd number: as, if he hath four croches on his near horn, and five on his far; you must say, he bears ten, a false right on his near horn, (for all that the beam bears are called rights:) but if four on the near horn, you must say he bears twelve, a double false right on the near horn: for you must not only make the number even, but also the horns even with that distinction.

AUBIN is a broken going, or pace, of a horse between an amble and a gallop; which is not esteemed.

AVERTI, a French word used in the manage, as applied to the pace or motion of a horse; signifying a motion that is enjoined, regulated, and required in the lessons.

Pas ecoute, and Pas-d'ecole, (*i. e.* listening paces, or school paces) signify the same thing.

AUGUST, the flies of this month are the same as used in *July*; which see.

1. Then another art-fly, the dubbing of the black brown hair of a cow, some red warpt in for the tag of his tail, and a dark wing: a killing fly.

2. Next, a fly called the fern-fly; the dubbing, of the fur of a hare's neck; and that is of the colour of fern, or brackin; with a darkish grey wing, of a mallard's feather. A killer too.

3. Besides these, there is a white hackle; the body of white mohair, and wrapped about with a white hackle feather; and this is assuredly taken for thistle-down.

4. We have also this month a hairy long-legs; the body made of bear's dun, and blue wool, mixt, and a brown hackle feather over all.

5. And lastly, in this month, all the same browns and duns are taken that were taken in *May*.

BACKING

B A C

BACKING a colt, after he has been exercised some time morning and evening, and you find him obedient, as directed under the head of colt; then take him to some plowed grounds, the lighter the better, and when you have made him trot a good pace about it in your hand, and thereby taken from him all his wantonness; see whether your tackling be firm and good, and every thing in it's true and proper place; when having one to stay his head, and govern the chafing rein, you may take his back, yet not suddenly but by degrees, with divers heavings, and half risings, which if he endure patiently, then settle your self; but if he shrink and dislike, then forbear to mount, and chase him about again, and then offer to mount, and do this till he be willing to receive you.

After you are settled, receive your stirrups, and cherish him, put your toes forward, let him that stays his head lead him forwards half a dozen paces, then cherish him again, shake and move your self on the saddle, then let the stayer of his head, remove his hand a little from the cavesson, as you thrust your toes forwards, let him move him forward with his rein, till you have made him apprehend your own motion of the body, and foot, which must go equally together, and with spirit, also that he will go forward without the other's assistance, and stay upon the restraint of your own hands; then cherish him, and give grass, and bread to eat, alight from his back, mount and unmount twice, or thrice together, ever mixing them with cherishings, thus exercise him, till he be made perfect in going forwards, and standing still at pleasure: this being done, the long rein may be laid aside, and the band about the neck, and only use the trenches and cavesson with the martingal, and let the groom lead the way before, or another horse going only strait forwards, and make him stand still when you please, which will soon be effected by trotting after another horse, sometimes equally with him, sometimes before, so that he fix upon no certainty but your own pleasure, and be sure to have regard to the well carriage of his neck and head, and as the martingal slackens, so straighten it from time to time.

BACK WORM, or Filander; a disease incident to hawks.

These worms are about half a yard long, trouble the birds very much, and in time will kill them; they lie wrapt up in a thin skin about the reins, and proceed from gross and viscous humours in the bowels, occasioned thro' ill digestion and want of natural heat.

.This

B A D

This distemper is easily discerned by these symptoms, *viz.* by the hawks stinking breath, casting her gorge, croaking in the night, trembling, ruffling, and writhing her tail; by the mutting, which is small and unclean; and also by keeping at a stay in a low state of health.

The backworm is rarely quite killed, but a careful falconer giving her cloves of garlic, steeped in wormwood once a month, and once a fortnight, against his putting her into the mew, will qualify the worm; without this care she will be suddenly spoiled.

But to be more particular, there are three ways of curing this distemper.

First, take a pressure made of a lamb that was flinked, and make thereof two or three pieces, which put into the gut of a dove, or the like fowl; feed your hawk therewith at such times as she is empty, and keep her fasting above two hours after.

Secondly, provide a glass full of juice of wormwood, when it is green, and in it's greatest strength, and put therein twenty or thirty cloves of garlic, as many as the juice will cover; being first cleaned, peeled and pierced through; keep them close stopped, and when you have use for any, give her one at a time, for three or four days at night for her supper: roll up two or three bits of meat in mustard-seed unbruised, and let her eat it, her casting at this should be plumage.

Thirdly, your hawk may be cured by a scouring of washed aloes hepatic, mustard-seed, agaric, of each an equal quantity, and you need not fear with these medicines to destroy them at any time, and if she voids worms, take fine filings of iron, strew them upon her meat for two or three days, and it will cure her.

There is another sort of filander, which lies in the gut or pannel being long, small, white, and red worms; for cure take *aloes hepatic, filings of iron, nutmeg*, and as much *honey* as will serve to make them into a pill, which give her in the morning as soon as she has cast, and after she has muted it clean away, then give her good hot meat. See WORMS.

BADGER, of this animal there are two kinds; the *dog Badger* so called, on account of resembling a *dog* in his feet; and a *hog Badger*, as resembling a *hog* in his cloven feet.

The latter are different from the former, being whiter and larger, and having thicker heads and snouts; they do also differ in their food, the one eating flesh and carrion like a dog; and the other roots and fruits like a hog: and these kinds of *Badgers*, where they have their earths use to cast their fiants, or dung, in a small hole, and cover it; whereas the *dog Badgers* make their

B A D

their fiants at a good distance from their burrows, which are deep with variety of of chambers, holes, and angles.

The hog Badger being fat and lazy, earths in open, easy and light grounds, whereas the other sort frequent thickets, rocks, and mountainous places, making their retreats deeper and narrower.

A *Badger* is known by several other names, as a *gray*, a *brock*, a *boreson*, or a *baufon*: the young ones are called pigs, the male is called the *boar*, and the female the *sow*.

The *Badger* is naturally a very sleepy creature, and seldom stirs out but in the night season to seek his prey, and above all other food, hog's flesh is most grateful to his palate; insomuch, that if you take a piece of pork, and trail it over the *Badger's* burrow, he will soon make his approach out.

They live to a great age, and when their sight fails them by reason of old age, they keep to their burrows, and receive their food from the younger.

They are of a very chilly and cold nature, and therefore will not go out when it snows. Their flesh is of a sweet rankish taste, but is eaten in many countries.

The best season is in *September*.

They have very sharp and venomous teeth; their legs are longer on their right side then on their left, so that when they run, they chuse the side of an hill, bank, furrow or cart-rout.

The *dog Badger's* ears, snout, and throat are yellowish, and they are longer legged than the hog badger: they accompany not together, yet they both prey on all manner of fowl, young pigs, rabbits, and the like food; doing great hurt in warrens.

They are stout and hardy in defending themselves, and will endure good blows; yet their nose and snout is so tender, that a little blow thereon will kill them.

Although the *Badger* and the *fox* are much alike in several qualities, yet they often fight with one another, especially on the account of food, so that is good sport to see the contest between them.

The hunting and pursuing them, however is much at one towards the conclusion: for the *Badger* runs to his earth or burrow, much sooner than the *fox*, and being earthed, makes good and defends his castle much longer; and to say the truth, the pleasure of the chace doth chiefly consist in the unkennelling and unearthing of them, which requires skill and labour.

You are to take notice, that altho' all *bounds*, will eagerly pursue, and hunt both the *Fox* and the *Badger*, yet there is none of them that will endure to feed on their flesh; and there are some dogs more proper for this chace than others, and those are the *terriers*, spoken of in *fox* hunting, which see.

B A D

The labour and ingenuity of *Badgers* in making their burrows, is worth observation. When they earth, after they have entered a good depth for the clearing the earth out, one lieth on his back and another layeth earth on his belly; and so taking his hinder feet in his mouth, draweth him out of his burrow; and he having unladen himself of earth, goeth to the same work again, and this they do till their chambers, or places of retreat, are finished.

Then they proceed to gather in their furniture, that is the materials for their couch, or lodging, as straw, leaves, moss, and the like, which with their feet and head they wrap up so close together, that they will get to their burrows a pretty good bundle. Some burrows have seven or eight distinct chambers.

Of hunting the BADGER.

In doing this, you must seek the earths, and burrows where he lies, and in a clear moonshine night go and stop all the burrows, except one or two, and therein place some sacks, fastned with drawing strings, which may shut him in as soon as he straineth the bag.

Some use no more than to set a hoop in the mouth of the sack, and so put it into the hole; and as soon as the *Badger* is in the sack and straineth it, the sack slippeth off the hoop and follows him into the earth, so he lies tumbling therein till he is taken.

These sacks or bags being thus set, cast off the hounds, beating about all the woods, coppices, hedges and tufts, round about, for the compass of a mile or two, and what *Badgers* are abroad, being alarmed by the hounds, will soon betake themselves to their burrows; and observe that he who is placed to watch the sacks, must stand close and upon a clear wind; otherwise the *Badger* will discover him, and will immediately fly some other way into his burrow.

But if the hounds can encounter him before he can take his sanctuary, he will then stand at a bay like a boar, and make good sport, grievously biting and clawing the dogs, for the manner of their fighting, is lying on their backs, using both teeth and nails; and by blowing up their skins defend themselves against all bites of the dogs, and blows of the men upon their noses as aforesaid. And for the better preservation of you dogs, it is good to put broad collars about their necks made of greys skins.

When the *Badger* perceives the *terriers* to begin to yearn him in his burrow, he will stop the hole betwixt him and the *terriers*, and if they still continue baying, he will remove his couch into another chamber, or part of the borough, and so from one to another

B A I

another, barricading the way before them, as they retreat, until they can go no further.

If you intend to dig the *badger* out of his *burrow*, you must be provided with the same tools as for digging out a fox; and besides you should have a pail of water to refresh the *terriers*, when they come out of the earth to take breath and cool themselves.

It will also be necessary to put collars of bells about the necks of your *terriers*, which making a noise may cause the *badger*, to bolt out.

The tools used for the digging out of the *badger*, being troublesome to be carried on men's backs, may be brought in a cart.

In digging, you must consider the situation of the ground, by which you may judge, where the chief angles are; for else, instead of advancing the work, you will hinder it.

In this order you may besiege them in their holds, or castles, and may break their platforms, parapets, casemates, and work to them with mines and countermines, until you have overcome them.

Having taken a live and lusty *badger*, if you would make sport, carry him home in a sack, and turn him out in your court yard, or some other inclosed place, and there let him be hunted and worried to death by your hounds.

There are the following profits and advantages which accrue by killing this animal. Their flesh, blood, and grease, tho' they are not good food, yet are very useful for Physicians, and Apothecaries for oils, ointments, salves, and powders for shortness of breath, the cough of the lungs, for the stone, sprained sinews, colt aches, &c. and the skin being well dressed, is very warm and good for antient people, who are troubled with paralytic distempers.

BAIT; a thing prepared to take, or bring fishes to.

There are three sorts of baits for taking fish; the natural ones, and those generally are living, as worms of all kinds, especially the red *maggots*, bobs, *frogs*, *grasshoppers*, *bees*, *beetles*, *dores*, *butterflies*, which are admirable for the chub, *wasps*, *hornets*, *snails*, *small fish*, &c.

Next the artificial baits, and they are of two sorts: first, such as imitate the living baits, especially flies for every month and season of the year; nay, almost for every fish, so great is the variety of them, that frequent the meadows and rivers.

These flies are made on the bodies of your hooks, the bodies of your flies being made of wool, and the wings of several sorts of feathers, coloured to the life, resemble those you counterfeit; and with these draw your hook gently on the top of the

B A I

water, and generally against the stream, and the fish will bite at them with so much greediness, that you can hardly miss a bite.

The second sort of artificial baits, are pastes of several compositions, of which more particularly by and by; but for the present, we are to observe, concerning the red, or earth worm (for the taking of which, consult that article) it is good for small fish all the year round, and small fish are good baits for pikes at all times; sheeps blood and cheese, are good bait in *April*; the *bobs*, dried *wasps*, *bees*, are for *May*; brown flies for *June*; maggots, hornets, wasps, and bees, for *July*; snails in *August*, grasshoppers in *September*; corn, bramble berries, and seeds, at the fall of the leaf; your artificial pastes, are for *May*, *June*, and *July*, and frogs for *March*.

Now touching your artificial flies, the great dun fly will do well enough, the latter end of *February*, if there be fair weather, for it is a sign the air is warm, and that the fish begin to partake of the sun's heat, so that in reason, you may expect they will bite freely.

The little dun fly is proper for *March*; the stone, or *May*, fly for *April*; the red and yellow for *May*; the black, dark, yellow and moorish fly for *June*; the wasp, and shell, and the cloudy, or blackish fly is for *August*; but generally fish more eagerly rise at these flies at the season, when most sorts of flies resort to the water side.

The best way to make these flies, is to get the living ones of the several kinds, thereby to imitate nature, both for shape, colour, or size, for the nearer the better.

Those fish which bite the most freely at flies; are chubs, chevins, trouts, and salmon.

To make the great dun fly; let the body be of black wool, and the wings of the dun feather of a drake's tail.

The little dun fly has his body made of dun wool, and his wing of the mail of a partridge, these are for *March*.

The body of the stone, or *May*, fly, must be of black wool, but under his wings and tail must be of a pale yellow, with some silk of that colour, and his wings must be of drake's down. This fly is for *April*.

The red or ruddy fly, must have his body made of reddish wool of the mail of a mallard, and the red feathers of a capon's tail. This fly is for *May*.

The yellow, or greenish fly, must have his body made of black wool, with a yellow list on either side, and the wings of a red cock's mail.

The moorish fly has his body made of dusky wool, and the wings of the blackish mail of a drake.

The

B A I

The tawny fly must be made of a tawny wool, the wings made contrary one against the other, of the whitish mail of a white drake. These flies are for *June*.

The wasp fly is made of black wool, capped about with yellow silk, and the wings of a buzzard's down, or of a drake's feathers. This fly is for *July*.

The shell fly, termed also the green fly, has the body made of a greenish wool, and his wing of the herle of a peacock's tail. This is also for *July*.

The cloudy dark fly must be made after a different manner, formed on a small piece of cork, bound about with black wool and black silk, and wings of the under mail of a mallard, with a black head.

When you draw it on your hook, be sure do it so that no part of the hook be discerned. This fly is for *August*.

The rougher the bodies of the flies are, and the more shining the better they are esteemed, and when you have got a set of good exact flies, they will serve you many years if kept carefully in a handsome box, free from bruising and crushing.

Take this for a rule, that the brightest flies are for cloudy and dark weather, and the dark flies, are for bright and clear weather.

It may not be proper to lay down some directions here, for artificial fly fishing. *First*, observe to have the wind in your back, and in casting off your line, be sure the fly fall first to the water.

For every sort of fly have several of the same differing in colour, to suit with the several waters and weathers.

In slow rivers, or still places, cast your line as far as you can, and let it sink a little, then gently draw it back, and let the fly float leisurely with the current: your line should be as long again as your rod, unless the river be very shallow and clogged up.

You must have a nimble hand, and quick eye, to strike presently upon the rising of the fish, otherwise the fish will be apt to spew out the hook as finding his mistake.

As to what concerns live bait, remember they are to be kept each sort by themselves, and to be fed with such things as they are wont to eat when at liberty.

The red worm takes much delight in black fat earth, if you mix some fennel chopt small with it, they will improve very much.

Give them sometimes a little ox or cow dung newly made: you may keep them in some box, or small bag.

But red worms, as also all other sorts of worms scour quickly, grow very very tough and bright by putting them into a thin clout,

B A I

clout, greased with fresh butter, or grease, before you put them into moss, which is the best to keep them in of all things; and the moss must first be washed very clean, and the water squeezed out: and for the food you are to give them, drop a spoonful of cream into the moss every three or four days, and remove the moss every week, keeping it in a cool place; and note, that a dead mans skull beaten to powder, for the worms to scour in is excellent.

White great maggots are to be fed with sheep's suet and beasts liver cut small.

Frogs and grasshoppers do well in wet moss and long grass, which must be moistened every night; cut off their legs and wings when you use them.

The bob, caddis-worm, cancer, and such like, are to be preserved with the same things where you take them.

Live flies must be used as you catch them.

The wasp, hornet, and humble-bee; may be dried in an oven, after the bread is drawn, but have a care of scorching them; then dip their heads in sheep's blood, which must be dried on, and so keep them in a clean box, and they will continue good for a quarter of a year.

Lastly, as for compound pastes, there are several sorts of these baits; particularly a way of boiling beans, with which you may take great quantities of fish.

Take a new pot glazed on the inside, and boil some beans in it, suppose a quarter of a peck, or the like, with river water, after you steeped them before for seven or eight hours in some water that was almost warm, when they are near half boiled, put in three or four ounces of honey, according to the quantity of the beans, and two or three grains of musk; let them then boil a little on, and take them off the fire morning and evening, and use them in this manner;

Seek out a clean place, where there are no weeds, that the fish may see and take the beans at the bottom of the water; and the place should be two or three hundred paces from their holes; according to the bigness thereof, throw in your beans at five or six in the morning and evening, for the space of seven or eight days, to the end you may draw the fish thither, and the day before that whereon you design to fish, bait them with the beans before ordered, except that a moment before you take them off the fire, you mix with them some of the best aloes reduced into powder about the quantity of two beans, give it a boil and then take it off.

The fish that eat it, will void all they have in their bodies, and for three days after, will fast, and then they will come to seek for food, in the place where they found the bait, therefore you

B A I

you must be ready at two or three in the afternoon to spread your nets, and when you have done so, and thrown in eight or ten handfuls of beans, then withdraw in order to return thither again pretty late in the evening, with three or four persons for casting the net.

To BAIT, or BATE, (in Falconry) is when a hawk flutters with her wings, either from perch, or fist, as if it were striving to get away.

BAITS for intoxicating fowl.

There are several artificial baits for intoxicating of fowl, and yet without tainting or hurting their flesh, so as to make it unfit to eat; some of which are composed as followeth:

Take a peck, or lesser quantity, of wheat, rye, barley, peas, or tares, to which put two or three handfuls of *Nux Vomica*, and boil them in running water very well, until they are almost ready to burst, then take it off the fire, and when they are cold strew them upon the land, where you design to take the fowl, and such as eat thereof will immediately be intoxicated, and lie as if dead, so that you may take them up at pleasure, provided you stay not too long, for the dizziness will not last long upon them, therefore be near at hand; and it were not amiss to kill them presently, and take out their entrails, although there is no great danger in it.

As the greater sort of land fowl are thus taken, so may you take small birds, only with this alteration, that instead of wheat, peas, or the like grain, you use hemp-feed, rape-feed, or canary-feed, but above all mustard-feed.

If you approve not of *Nux Vomica*, you may boil the said grains or seeds in the lees of wine (the stronger the better) as you did in the running water, and apply them to use as aforesaid, and it will work the same effect, being esteemed more wholesome, having nothing of that poisonous nature in it; but in an hour or two, the fumes will be perfectly wrought off.

Instead of boiling the said grains or seeds in the lees, you may steep them therein; but then they will require a longer time before they are sufficiently swoln and fit for use.

Or instead of *Nux Vomica*, or lees of wine, you may infuse the said grains, or seeds, in the juice of hemlock, mix therein the seeds of henbane and poppy, or either of them. These must stand two or three days infusing, before they are fit to strew on the ground for use as aforesaid.

Having shewed you how to take land fowl, I shall give some instructions for the taking of water fowl, especially at such

B A L

times as they range up and down to seek their food on land; for effecting of which,

Take the seeds, leaves, and roots of the herb called Bellenge, and having cleansed them from all filth, put them into a vessel of clean running water, and let them lie steeping therein twenty four hours at least; and then boil them in the said water until it is almost consumed; then take it off the fire, let it cool, and scatter it in such places where the fowl have their haunts; they will greedily eat it, so that they will become immediately intoxicated, and lie in a trance as if dead; but you must watch them, for the fumes will soon wear off.

Some do add to this decoction, the powder of brimstone boiled therein, which is very effectual.

For destroying of crows, ravens, kites, and such like mischievous birds that are found injurious to warrens and parks for the killing coney and lambs, as also chickens: take the garbage or entrails of any fowl, or for want thereof, of a pig or rabbit; this garbage steep in the lees of wine with *Nux Vomica*, and when it is well infused therein, cast it forth in such a place, where these birds use to prey, or resort, which must be very early in the morning, or in the evening; and having a place prepared to lie concealed in near at hand, you may take those that are intoxicated by the eating a bit or two of the said garbage.

Or instead of the garbage, you may take little pieces of flesh, and thrust therein a small piece of *Nux Vomica*, closing the place that it may not be discerned, and scatter the said pieces up and down where their haunts are, and it will have the same effect.

Having shewed how to take fowl and birds by intoxicating baits, I will give you a receipt how to recover them, that they may be made tame.

Take a small quantity of sallet oil, more or less, according to the bigness of the fowl or bird, and drop it down it's throat; then chafe it's head with a little strong white-wine vinegar, and it will soon recover, and be perfectly well.

BALOTADES are the leaps of a horse between two pillars, or upon a straight line, made with justness of time, with the aids of the hands, and the calves of the legs; and that in such manner, that when his fore-feet are in the air, he shews nothing but the shoes of his hinder feet without yerking out.

Thus it is that the air, or manage, of balotades differs from caprioles; the horse yerks, or strikes out his hinder legs with all his force, keeping them near and even; balotades differ likewise from croupades in this, that in the former the horse shews his shoes when he lifts, or raises his croup, but in croupades he draws his hinder feet under him.

BALZANE. See **WHITEFOOT.**

B A N

BANDOG; a dog for the house, bull, bear, &c. which should be chosen with such like properties and qualities, that he has a large and mighty body, well set, a great head, sharp fiery eyes, a wide black mouth, flat jaws, with a fang on either side appearing lion like faced: his teeth even on both his jaws and sharp, a great breast, big legs and feet, short tail; not too curst nor too gentle of disposition, nor lavish of his barking, no gadder; and lastly, that he hath a good shrill voice for the terrour of thieves. See **DOG**. But for the choice of them when young, See *Shepherd's* **MASTIFF**.

BANGLE EARS, an imperfection in a horse remedied in the following manner: take his ears, and place them so as you would have them stand, and then with two little boards, or pieces of trenchers three fingers broad, having two long strings knit to them, bind the ears so fast in the places where they stand that they cannot stir, then behind the head, and the root of the ear, you will see a great deal of empty, wrinkled skin, which you must pull up with your finger and thumb, and clip away with a sharp pair of scissars all the empty skin close by the head; then with a needle and red silk, stitch the two outsides of the skin together, and with your green ointment heal up the sore; which done, take away the splints that hold up the ears, and in a short time you will find them keep the same place where you set them without alteration.

BANQUET, is that small part of the branch of the bridle that is under the eye, which being rounded like a small rod, gathers and joins the extremities of the bitt to the branch, and that in such a manner, that the banquet is not seen, but covered by the cap, or that part of the bitt that is next the branch.

Banquet line, is an imaginary line, drawn by the bitt makers along the banquet in forging a bitt, and prolonged upwards and downwards to adjust the designed force, or weakness of the branch in order to make it stiff or easy: for the branch will be hard and strong, if the *Sevil* hole is on the outside of the banquet line, with respect to the neck; and the branch will be weak and easy, if the *Sevil* hole is on the inside of the line, taking the center from the neck. See **BRANCH** and **SHOULDER**.

BANDS of a saddle are two pieces of iron flat, and three fingers broad, nailed upon the bows of the saddle, one on each side, contrived to hold the bows in the situation that makes the form of the saddle.

To put a bow in the band, is to nail down the two ends of each band to each side of the bow.

Besides these two great bands, the fore bow has a small one, called the wither band, and a crescent to keep up the wither-arch.

B A R

The hinder bow has likewise a small band to strengthen it.

To BAR a vein, or strike it, is an operation performed by a Farrier upon the veins of a horse's legs, and other parts of his body, with intent to stop the course, and lessen the quantity of the malignant humours that prevail there.

In order to bar a vein, the Farrier opens the skin above it, and after disengaging it, and tying it above and below, he strikes between the two ligatures.

BARB is a horse brought from *Barbary*: such horses are commonly of a slender light size, and very clean shaped, and small legs.

The *Spanish* and *English* horse, are much better bodied, and have larger legs than the Barb.

The *Barb* is little inferior to the *Arabian*, *Spanish*, or *Turkish* horse; but he is accounted by our *modern breeders* too slender and lady like to breed on, and therefore in the north of *England* at this instant, they prefer the *Spanish* and *Turkish* horse before him.

He is so lazy and negligent in his walk, that he will stumble on carpet ground. His trot is like that of a cow, his gallop slow, and with much ease to himself. But he is for the most part finewy and nervous, excellently winded, and good for a course, if he be not over weighed.

The mountain barbs are accounted the best, because they are the strongest and largest: they belong to the *Allarbes*, who value them themselves, as much as they are prized by any other nation, and therefore they will not part with them to any persons, except to the *Prince of the band*, who can command them for his own use at any time and at his pleasure.

But as for the other more ordinary sort, they are to be met with pretty common in the hands of several of our nobility and gentry.

They may be bought in *Languedac*, and *Provence* in *France*, for forty or fifty pistoles a horse: or if you will send into *Barbary* you may have one for thirty pounds or thereabouts.

But then the charges and journey will be great; for tho' from *Tunis* to *Marseilles* in *France* be no great voyage; yet from *Marseilles* to *Calais* by land, is the length of all *France*, and from thence are to be shipt for *England*.

BARBARY FALCON, by some called the *Tartaret Falcon*, is a bird seldom found in any country, and is called a *passenger* as well as a *haggard*.

It is somewhat lesser than the *Tercel-gentle*, and plumed red under the wings, strong armed, with long talons and stretchers.

The *Barbary Falcon* is adventurously bold, and you may fly her with the haggard all *May* and *June*. They are hawks
very

B A R

very slack in mewing at first; but when once they begin, they mew their feathers very fast.

They are called *Barbary Falcons*, because they make their passage through that country, and *Tunis*, where they are more frequently taken than at any other place, namely in the Isles of the *Levant*, *Candia*, *Cyprus*, and *Rhodes*.

BARBEL is so called, on account of the barb or beard, that is under his nose or chaps, and is a leather-mouthed fish; and tho' he seldom breaks his hold when hooked; yet if he proves to be a large one, he often breaks both rod and line. The male is esteemed much better than the female, but neither of them are very good.

They swim together in great shoals, and are at their worst in *April*, at which time they spawn, but come soon in season, the places whither they chiefly resort, are such as are weedy and gravelly rising grounds, in which this fish is said to dig and rout with his nose, like a swine.

In the summer he frequents the strongest, swiftest currents of the water, as deep bridges, weirs, &c. and is apt to settle himself amongst the piles, hollow places, and moss or weeds; and will remain there unmoveable, but in the winter he retires into deep waters, and there helps the female to make a hole in the sands to hide her spawn in, from being devoured by other fish. This fish is of good taste and shape, especially his palate is curiously shaped, it is a very curious and cunning fish, for if his baits be not sweet, clean, well scoured, and kept in sweet moss, he will not bite; but if well ordered and curiously kept he will bite with great eagerness.

The best bait for him, is the spawn of a *salmon*, *trout*, or any other fish; and if you would have good sport with him, bait the places where you intend to fish with it a night or two before, or with large worms cut in pieces, and the earlier in the morning, or the later in the evening that you fish, the better it will be.

Also the lob worm is a very good bait: but you must be sure to cover the hook all over with the bait.

Green gentles are also a very good bait; and so likewise are bits of tough cheese laid in steep for twenty four hours in clarified honey; with which if you bait the ground, you can hardly miss taking them if there be any.

Your rod and line must be both long and strong with a running plummet on the line, that is a bullet with a hole through the midst, and let a little bit of lead be placed a foot or more above the hook, to keep the bullet from falling on it; so the worm will be at the bottom where they always bite, and when the fish takes the bait, your plummet will lie and not choak him;

B A R

him ; and by the bending of the rod you may know when he bites, as also with your hand you will feel him make a strong snatch, then strike, and you will rarely fail if you play him well and heave him ; but in short, if you manage him not dexterously he will break your line.

As for the best time of fishing, that is about nine in the morning, and the chiefest time for it is the latter end of *May*, *June*, *July*, and the beginning of *August*.

BARBLES are knots of superfluous flesh, that grow up the channels of a horse's mouth : that is the interval that separates the bars, and lies under the tongue.

BARKING, this Fox-hunters, call the noise made by a fox in the time of clicketting.

BARDELLE, is a saddle made in the form of a great saddle, but only of cloth stuffed with straw, and tied tight down with packthread, without either leather, wood, or iron ; they are not used in *France*, but in *Italy*, they trot their colts with such saddles, and those who ride them, are called *Cavalcadours*, or *Scozone*.

BARNACLES, horse twitchers, or brakes ; these are things which Farriers use to put upon horses noses, when they will not stand quietly to be shod, blooded, or dressed of any fore : some call them pinchers, but then they are so termed to distinguish them from the foregoing, since these have handles, whereas the others are bound to the nose with a lace or cord. Indeed there is a third sort, tho' differing very little from the first, for this is held together at the top by a ring inclosing the buttons, first having the top buttons held by an iron pin rivetted thro' them, but the meanest sort of all, is that which we called *roller barnacles*, or *wood twitchers*, being only two rollers of wood bound together, with the horse's nose between them, and for want of better, they serve instead of iron branches.

BARS of a horse's mouth, are the ridge, or highest parts of that place of the gum that never bears any teeth, and is situated between the grinders, and the tushes, on each side of the mouth : so that that part of the gum which lies under, and at the side of the bars, retains the name of gum.

The bars are that part of the mouth upon which the bitt should rest and have it's appui, for though a single cannon bears upon the tongue ; the bars are so sensible and tender, that they feel the effect of it even through the thickness of the tongue.

These bars should be sharp, ridged, and lean ; since all the subjection a horse suffers, proceeds from those parts, for if they have not the qualities but now mentioned, they will be very little and not at all sensible, so that the horse can never have a
good

B A T

good mouth: for if they be flat, round and unsensible, the bitt will not work it's effect, and consequently such a horse can be no better governed by the bridle than if one took hold of his tail.

A horse is said to fall foul of the BAR, when in the stable he entangles his legs upon the partition bar, that is put to separate two horses, and keep them from falling upon one another.

Barbs and vigorous ticklish horses, are apt to fall foul of the bar, and when they do, they struggle and sling, and wound themselves in the hocks, and thighs, and the legs, and are in danger of laming themselves, unless you speedily cut the cord that keeps up the end of the Bar, and so suffer that end to fall to the ground.

BAT, *otherwise called a REER MOUSE, or FLITTER MOUSE*, is a small bird in most of the *European* and *Asian* regions, and frequent in *England*, in summer time, feeding upon gnats, flies, flesh, candles, &c.

It is naked, or bare of feathers, it's wings whole, or webbed together, after the manner of web-footed water fowl.

These birds fly abroad chiefly in the morning and evening, their sight being best in the night, and their visory spirits being then most thin and lucid.

Their voice is loud and shrill; they breed in holes, two young ones at a time, and have teats. Tho' some authors say they are generated out of putrid matter.

BAT FOWLING is a night exercise, and takes all sorts of birds both great and small, that roost not only on the ground; but on shrubs, bushes, haw-thorn trees, and the like places, and is therefore proper for woody, rough, and bushy places.

The depth of winter, is the best season for this sport, and the darker the night, and the colder the weather, it is so much the better.

As to the manner of bat-fowling, it may be performed either with nets, or without, just as you please.

If it be without nets, and supposing the company to be twelve or fifteen: one third part of the number should carry poles, to which should be bound at the top little bundles of dry wisps of hay, or straw, (or instead of them pieces of links, or hurds dipt in pitch, rosin, or the like that will blaze) another third part are to attend upon those fires, with long poles, rough and bushy at the upper ends, to knock down the birds that fly about the lights; and another third part must have long poles to beat the bushes, and other places, to cause the birds to flie about the lights, which they will do, being as it were amaz'd, and will not depart from them, so that the
may

B A Y

may be knocked down very easily; and thus you may find good diversion for so much of the night as is dark.

One of the company should also carry a candle and lanthorn, that if all the lights should happen to be extinguished, they may be lighted again; but you must be sure to observe the greatest silence possible, especially till the lights are kindled.

BAT FOWLING with nets is performed as follows; let two or three persons, carry lanthorns and lighted candles, extended in one hand (such as are used in *low-belling*, which see) and in the other hand small nets, something like a racket, but less, which must be fixed at the end of a long pole, to beat down the birds as they sit at roost; which being surprized at the great blazing light will set still till they are knocked down: in the mean time others must gather the birds up and put them into a basket, or bag to be carried home.

A cross-bow is very useful in this sport, to shoot them as they sit.

BATHING a *Falcon* is when weaned from her ramaged fooleries, being also hired, rewarded, and thoroughly reclaimed; she is offered some water to bathe herself in, in a *bason* where she may stand up to her thighs; for doing this you must chuse a temperate clear day. When you have thus hired the hawk, and rewarded her with warm meat, carry her in the morning to some bank, and there hold her in the sun, till she has endued her gorge, taking off her hood that she may prune and pick herself: having so done, hood her again, set her near the *bason* and taking off her hood, let her bathe again, as long as she pleases, after she has done, take her up, let her pick her self as before, and then feed her; but if she does not like to bathe her self in the *bason*, then shew her some small river or brook for that purpose.

By the use of this bathing, she will gain strength, and sharp appetite, and so grow bold; but give her no washed meat on those days that she bathes.

BATTLE ROYAL, [in Cock-fighting] a fight between three, five, or seven cocks all engaged together, so that the cock which stands longest gets the day.

BAWREL, is a hawk, for largeness and shape, somewhat like a *lannier*, but hath a longer body and tail, she is generally a fast goer aforehead, and a good field hawk, and in inclosures will kill a pheasant, but being a long winded hawk is unfit for coverts.

To **BAY**, to bark as a dog does; among huntsmen deer are said to bay, when after they have been hard run they turn head against the hounds.

BAY

B E A

BAY colour. A bay horse is what we commonly call red inclining to chesnut

This colour varies several ways ; it is a dark bay, or a light bay, according as it is more or less deep : and we have likewise dapple bays. See *MIROUETTE*.

All bay horses have black manes, which distinguishes them from the sorrel, that have red or white manes.

BAYARD, a bay horse.

BEAGLES, hunting dogs, of which there are several sorts. *viz.* the southern beagle which is something less than the *deep mouthed hound*, and something thicker and shorter.

The fleet northern, or cat beagle, which is smaller, and of a finer shape than the *southern beagle*, and are hard runners.

These two *beagles* by crossing the strains, breed an excellent sort which are great killers.

There is also a very small sort of *beagles*, not bigger than a lady's *lap-dog*, which makes pretty diversion in hunting the *coney*; and also the small *hare* if the weather be dry; but by reason of their smallness, this sort is not serviceable.

BEAK, the nib, or bill, of a bird, in Falconry, the upper part of a hawk's bill that is crooked.

BEAKING; (in Cock-fighting) the fighting of those birds with their bills, or holding with the bill and striking with the heels.

BEAM; (in the head of a deer) is that part which bears the antlers, royals, and tops, and the little streaks therein called *cutters*.

BEAM FEATHERS, are the long feathers of a hawk's wing.

Of the nature and properties of a BEAR, and after what manner hunted.

There are two sorts of bears, a greater and a lesser; the last is more apt to climb trees than the other.

Bears are bred in many countries; in the *Helvetian Alpine* region, they are so strong and courageous, that they can tear to pieces both oxen and horses, for which cause the inhabitants are studiously laborious in the taking them.

A bear is of a most venereous and lustful disposition, for day and night the females with most ardent inflaming desires, do provoke the males both day and night, to copulation, and for this cause at that time they are most fierce and angry.

The time of their copulation is in the beginning of winter, and the manner of it, is like to a man's, the male moveth himself upon the belly of the female, which lieth flat on her back and they embrace one another with their fore-feet, they remain a
very

B E A

very long time in that act; infomuch, (as some have observed, how true I cannot say) that if they were very fat at the first entrance, they disjoin not themselves till they are lean.

There is a strange report in history, (if it be true) that in the mountains of *Savoy*, a bear carried a young maid into his den by violence, where in a venereal manner he had the carnal use of her body; and while he kept her in his den, he daily went forth, and brought her the best fruits he could get, presenting them to her in as courtly a manner as he could; but always when he went to forage, he rolled a very great stone to the mouth of his den, that the virgin should not make her escape from him: at length, with long search, her parents found their daughter in the bear's den, and delivered her from that bestial captivity.

They are naturally very cruel and mischievous unto all tame beasts, and very strong in all parts of their body but their head, whereon a small blow will kill them.

They go to mate in the beginning of the winter, some sooner, some later, according to their rest and feeding; and their heat lasteth not more than fifteen days.

When the she-bear perceiveth herself with whelp, she withdraws herself into some cave or hollow rock, and there remains till she brings forth her whelps; where, without meat, they grow very fat; especially the males, only by sucking her fore-feet.

When they enter into their den, they convey themselves backward, that so they may put out their footsteps from the sight of the hunters.

The nature of all of them is to avoid cold, and therefore in the winter time they hide themselves, chusing rather to suffer famine than cold, lying for three or four months together, and never see the light; whereby, in a manner, their guts are clung together; and coming forth, are so dazzled by long darkness, being in the light again, that they stagger and reel to and fro: and then by a secret instinct they remedy the streightness of their guts, by eating an herb, called *arum*, in English, *wake robin*, or *calves foot*; by the acidity whereof their guts are enlarged: and being recovered, they remain more fierce and cruel than at other times, during the time their young are with them. And this is the herb, some say, which they eat to make them sleep so long in winter without being sensible of hunger or cold.

They are whelped most commonly in *March*; sometimes two, and not above five in number: the most part of them are dead one whole day after they are whelped, but the bear doth so lick them and warm them with her breath, and hug them in her bosom, that she quickly doth revive them.

It is commonly received as a truth, (tho' it be a palpable vulgar error) that whelps of bears at their first littering, are with-
out

B E A

out all form and fashion, and nothing but a little congealed blood, like a lump of flesh; and afterwards the old one, with her tongue, frameth them by licking, to her own likeness.

This opinion may be easily disapproved; for they are only littered blind, without hair, and the hinder legs not perfect, the fore-feet folded up like a fist, and other members deformed, by reason of the immoderate humour or moistness in them; which also is one cause, why she cannot retain in her womb the seed, to the perfection of the young ones; whereof *Joachimus Rheticus* is an eye-witness.

As soon as the dam perceiveth her cubs to grow strong, she suckleth them no longer, by reason of their curstness; they will surely bite her if they cannot get suck enough.

After this she preyeth abroad upon any thing she can meet with, which she eats and casts up again to her young ones; so feeds them till they can prey for themselves: they will climb a tree for the fruit.

If they be hunted they will follow a man, but not run at him unless they are wounded.

They are very strong in their paws; they will so hug a man, or dog, till they have broke his back, or squeezed the guts out of his belly: with a single paw they will pull a lusty dog to their tearing and devouring mouth.

They bite very severely, for they will bite a man's head to the brains: as for an arm or leg, they will crush, as a dog does a slender bone of mutton.

When they are hunted, they are so heavy that they make no speed, and so are always in sight of the dogs: they stand not at bay as the boar, but fly wallowing; but if the hounds stick in, they will fight valiantly in their own defence; sometimes they will stand up straight on their hinder feet, and then you may take that as a sign of fear and cowardice, for they fight stoutest and strongest on all four.

They have an excellent scent, and will smell farther than any other beast, except a boar; for in a whole forest they will smell out a tree laden with mast.

They may be hunted with hounds, mastiffs, or grey-hounds; and they are chased and killed with bows, boar spears, darts, and swords; so they are also taken in snares, caves, pits, with other engines.

They do naturally abide in great mountains; but when it snoweth, or in hard weather, then they descend into vallies and forests for provision.

They cast their lasses sometimes in round croteys, and sometimes flat, like a bullock, according to their feeding.

They

B E A

They go sometimes a gallop, and at other times an amble; but they go most at ease when they wallow.

When they come from their feeding, they beat commonly the high ways and beaten paths, and wheresoever they go out of the high ways, there you may be sure they are gone to their dens; for they use no doubling nor subtilties.

They tumble and wallow in water and mire, as swine, and they feed like a dog: some say their flesh is very good food.

The best way of finding the bear is with a leam hound; and yet he who is without one, may trail after a bear as we do after a buck or roe, and you may lodge and hunt them as you do a buck.

For the more speedy execution, mingle mastiffs among the hounds; for they will pinch the bear, and so provoke her to anger, until at last they bring her to the bay, or else drive her out of the plain into the covert, not letting her be at rest till she fight in her own defence.

BEARD, or under beard, or chuck, of a horse, is that part underneath the lower mandible on the out side, and above the chin which bears the curb of the bridle. See **CURB** and **GENETTE**.

Beard of a horse, should neither be too high raised, nor too flat, so that the curb may rest in it's right place.

It should have but little flesh upon it, and be almost nothing but skin and bone, without any kind of chops, hardness, or swelling.

BEARING CLAWS; the foremost toes of a cock are so called by cock-fighters, which, if they be hurt or gravelled, he cannot fight.

To BEAT, [*with Hunters*] a term used of a stag which runs first one way and then another, who is then said *to beat up and down*: also the noise made by conies in rutting time, which is called *beating*, or *tapping*.

BEAT upon the hand. See **CHACK**.

Beat; to beat the dust or powder, is said of a horse that at each time or motion, does not take in ground or way enough with his fore-legs.

A horse beats the dust at *terra a terra*, when he does not imbrace, or take in ground enough with his shoulders, and makes all his times and motions too short, as if he made them in one place.

He beats the dust at curvets, when he does them too precipitantly, and too low.

He beats upon a walk, when he walks too short, and makes but little way, whether in straight lines, rounds, or passing.

BEAVER;

B E A

BEAVER; this animal differs not much from the **OTTER** (which see) excepting his tail, being of a colour somewhat yellow, interspersed with ash. There are great numbers of them in *Virginia*, *New-England*, *New-York*, and those parts: and the river *Tivy* in *Wales*, was once famous for this animal. Their skins are found a very good commodity here in *England* for making beaver hats.

They are an amphibious animal like the *otter*; living both on land, and in water; both fresh and salt; keeping in the last in the day, and on the first in the night: but without water they cannot live; for they participate much of the nature of fish, which may be gathered from their tails and legs.

They are much about the bigness of mungrel curs; their forefeet are like those of a dog, and their hinder like those of a goose, having a web to assist them in swimming: they have a short head, a flat hairy snout, small round ears, very long teeth; and the under teeth standing out beyond their lips, about the breadth of three fingers, and the upper about that of half a finger, being very broad, crooked, strong, and sharp, set deep in their mouths; being their only weapon to defend themselves against other animals, and take fishes, as it were, upon hooks; and with these they will soon cut asunder a tree as thick as a man's thigh: the tail is without hair, and covered over with a skin like the scales of a fish, about half a foot long, and six fingers broad.

BEAVER-HUNTING.

The common method of hunting them is thus: Their caves, or places of abode, being found; in which are several chambers, or places of retreat, by the water-side, built one over another for them to ascend or descend, according as the water rises or falls; and the building of them is admirable to behold; being made with sticks, and plaistered with dirt, very artificially, in form of a bee-hive; but for largeness, as big as a moderate sized oven.

These caves being found, you must make a breach therein, and put a little dog in it; which when the beaver perceives, he instantly makes to the end of his cave, and there defends himself with his teeth till all his building is raz'd or demolished, and he is exposed to his enemies, who kill him with proper instruments. The dogs used for killing them are such as for the *otter*.

The beaver cannot dive long under water, but must put up his head for breath; which being seen by those that are hunting them, they kill them with gun-shot, or spears, such as are used for killing the *otter*.

B E L

They are taken for their skins and cods, which are of a high price: those skins are best that are blackest.

One who dwelt in *Virginia*, gives the following account of them. That they dwell, or inhabit, in low, moorish, boggy places, through which runs a rill of water; and this rill, at some convenient place, they stop, by making a dam cross it; and by this dam (which is made artificially with earth and sticks) they make their caves; and to which belong commonly two or three hundred beavers, resembling as it were a town.

If this dam is at any time broken by any to take them, or otherwise becomes decayed, (the water being their chief refuge) they immediately repair it.

And that by observation, they have a chief, or king over them, who takes care thereof; and that the rest are very observant to him when he has assembled them together, which he does by flapping his tail in the water, and so making a noise.

Some say that when this beast is hunted, and in danger of being taken, he bites off his stones, knowing that he is pursued for the sake of them: but this cannot be, since they are so small, and placed like a boar's, that it is impossible for him to come at them.

BED of Snakes; a name hunters give to a knot of young ones; and a roe is said to bed, when she lodges in a particular place.

BELLING, ? [with Hunters] the noise made by a hart
BELLOWING, S in rutting-time.

BELLY; a thick-bellied, a well-bodied, a well thick-flanked horse; that is, a horse that has large, long, and well made ribs; or such as are neither too narrow nor too flat: thence they say,

Such a horse has no body, he is thin flank'd; that is, his ribs are too narrow, or short, and the flank turns up; which makes his body look flankless, like a grey-hound.

A horse of this nature is commonly called in French, an *estrac*; which generally speaking, is a fine sort of tender horses, not very fit for travelling or fatigue, unless they feed very heartily.

We reject all coach-horses that are not well bodied, all that are narrow or thin gutted, and seem to have the hide or skin of their flanks stitiched upon their ribs: but a hunter is not the worse liked for being light bellied; nay, on the contrary, he is preferred to a thicker flanked horse, provided he is well winded, of good mettle, light, and a great eater.

BELLY-FRETTING, ? is a grievous pain in the belly
BELLY-ACHE, S of an horse, besides the cholic, proceeding either from eating of green pulse, which grows on

B I R

on the ground, or raw, undried peas, beans, or oats; or else when sharp, fretting humours, inflammations, or abundance of gross matter, is got between the great gut and the panicle: the signs of which pain, is much wallowing, great groaning, &c.

The cure is to rake the horse, by first anointing your hand with sallad oil, and thrusting it into his fundament, and pulling out as much dung as can be reached; and afterwards to give him a glister of water and salt mixed together; and then give him to drink, the powder of wormwood and centaury, brewed in a quart of *malmsey*.

BEVY, of *roe-bucks*, [*with Foresters*] a herd, or company of those wild beasts.

BEVY, of *quails*, [*with Fowlers*] is a term used for a brood, or flock of young quails.

BEWITS [*in Falconry*] pieces of leather, to which a hawk's bells are fastened, and buttoned to his legs.

BILLITING, [*among Hunters*] the ordure, or dung of a fox.

BINDING, [*in Falconry*] a term used in tiring; or when a hawk seizes.

BIRD; a two footed animal, with feathers and wings. Birds are either land-fowl, or water-fowl: as for those that are brought up in cages, they require that some care should be taken of them when they happen to be hurt or fall sick; for which the following remedies may be used, as there is occasion.

For those that are hurt, gently pull off the feathers from the place, or you may cut them; and spreading a *villa magna* plaister upon soft leather, apply it thereto.

To bring birds to an appetite, take rhubarb, agaric, aloes, saffron, cinnamon, anise, and sugar-candy; of each a dram; beat all these ingredients together, and reduce them into a powder; and give them as much of this powder as will lie upon a penny, in a pellet, at night: and this will make them cast much.

To purge birds, and bring them to a stomach, give them two pills of the old liquid conserve of *province roses*, of about the bigness of a small pea.

We proceed next to the ways how to take birds that are at large: There is a way of intoxicating, and catching them with your hands; in order to which, take some lees of wine, and hemlock juice, and having tempered them together, let some wheat, for the space of one night, be steeped therein; then throwing the same into a place where the birds resort to feed, when they have eaten thereof, they will drop down dead drunk.

There are various ways of taking birds; one of which is in the night, with a low-bell, hand-net, and light; a sport used in plain, and champaign countries; also in stubble fields, especially

B I R

that of wheat, from the middle of *October* to the end of *March*; and that after this manner.

About 9 o'Clock at night, when the air is mild, and the moon does not shine, take your low-bell, which must be of a deep and hollow sound, of such a reasonable size, that a man may carry it conveniently with one hand; and which toll, just as a sheep uses to do while it feeds: you must also have a box, much like a large lanthorn, and about a foot and a half square, big enough for two or three great lights to be set in it; and let the box be lined with tin, and one side open, to cast forth the light; fix this box to your breast to carry before you, and the light will cast a great distance before you, very broad, whereby you may see any thing that is on the ground, within the compass of the light, and consequently the birds that roost on the ground.

As for the taking them, have two men with you, one on each side; but a little after you, to the end they may not be within the reflection of the light that the lanthorn or box casts forth; and each of them must be provided with an hand-net of about three or four foot square, which must be fixt to a long stick, to carry in their hands; so that when either of them sees any bird on his side, he must lay his net over them, and so take them up, making as little noise as possible; and they must not, with all, be over hasty in running to take them up; but let him that carries the light and low bell, be the foremost, for fear of raising others, which their coming into the limits of light may occasion; for all is dark, except where the light casts it's reflection: so that there must be no light by any means.

'Tis to be observed, that the sound of the low-bell causes the birds to lie close, and not dare to stir, while you put your nets over them; and the light is so terrible to them, that it amazes them: and for caution, you must use all imaginable silence, for fear of raising them.

If you would practise this sport by your self, then carry the low-bell in one hand, as before directed, and in the other a hand-net, about two foot broad, and three foot long, with an handle to it; which is to lay upon them still as you spy them: and some like this way better than the former.

If you take a companion, you may have a fowling-piece, to the end that if you espy a hare, the better way is to shoot it; for it is hazardous to take it with a net.

Some there are, who instead of fixing the light to their breast, as aforesaid, tie the low-bell to their girdle, by a string which hangs to their knees, and their motion causes the bell to strike; and then they carry the light in their hand, extending the arm before them; but the lanthorn, or box, must not be

B I R

so large as that which you fix to your breast: your best way is to try both, and use that which you like best.

Another way of taking small birds, is by bat-fowling; the same being likewise a night-exercise; by which you may take all sorts of birds, both great and small, that roost not only on the ground, but on shrubs, bushes, hawthorn trees, and the like places.

The depth of winter is the best season for this sport; and the darker the night, and colder the weather, it is so much the better.

As to the manner of bat-fowling, it may be used with nets or without, according to your pleasure or fancy: if without, suppose your company be twelve, or fifteen, let one third part carry poles, to which little bundles of dry wisps of hay, or straw, or instead thereof, pieces of links, or hurds dipt in pitch, rosin, or the like, that will blaze, must be bound at top: another third part of the company must attend at the said fires, with long poles, rough and bushy at the upper end, to knock down the birds that fly about the lights: another third part must have poles to beat the bushes, and other places, to cause the birds to fly about the lights; which they will do as if amazed, not departing from it; so that they may be knocked down at pleasure. And thus you may spend as much of the night as is dark, and find good diversion.

It will be proper for one of the company to carry a candle, that in case all the lights are extinguished, they may be kindled at pleasure; and be sure to observe the greatest silence imaginable, especially till the lights are kindled.

The other way, with nets, is performed thus: Let two or three go with lanthorns and candles lighted, extended in one of their hands, just such as is before described to carry in your hand, about the using the low-bell; and in their other hand, small nets, like a racket, but less, must be fixed at the end of a long pole, to beat down the birds as they sit at roost; which being surprized with the great blazing light, will not stir until they are knocked down: then there are others, whose business it is to gather the birds up, and put them into a basket, or bag, and carry them home: a cross-bow, for this kind of sport, is very useful, to shoot them as they sit.

Some take great and small fowl by night, in champaign countries, with a long trammel-net, which is much like the net used for the low-bell, both for shape, bigness, and mesh: This net is to be spread upon the ground, and let the nether or further end thereof, being plumbed with small plummetts of lead, lie close on the ground; and then bearing up the former end by the strength of men, at the two foremost ends only, trail it along

B I R

the ground; not suffering that end which is born up, to come near it, by at least a yard.

Then at each end of the net must be carried great blazing lights of fire, such as have been spoken on before; and by the lights men must be, with long poles to raise up the birds as they go, and as they rise under the nets, to take them: and you may in this manner go over a whole corn-field, or other champaign ground, which will yield both pleasure and profit.

There are, and may be, more ways than one for taking small birds, when the ground is covered with snow; to instance in the following one: pitch upon a place in your yard or garden, from which you may see the birds about twenty or thirty paces from some window or door, from whence the birds cannot see you, to the end they may not be frightened: clear this place of the snow, to the breadth of six or seven foot, and of the same length, so as to form a square, as represented by the lines, O, P, Q, R, place a wooden table, or door, in the middle, as at A, to which you must have fastened before at the sides, B, C, D, E, some small pieces of pipe-staves, about six inches long, and an inch broad: but before you nail them on, make a hole, exceeding the thickness of the nail, to the end it may easily turn about each nail. *See plate 2. fig. 4.*

You are, under the four ends which are not nailed, to place four pieces of tile, or slate, to hinder them from penetrating into the ground, as you may see at F, and G, in such a manner that the table may not be fixed, but with the least jog fall down.

You must make a small notch, or little stay, in the end of the table, at the place marked H, in order to put into it the end of staff marked I, which should be seven inches long, and one broad, and the other end ought to rest upon a piece of tile, or slate; so that the door, or table hanging thereon, would be ready to fall towards the house, were it not for that piece of wood which is boarded towards the middle, in order to put in and fasten the end of a small cord, whose other end is conveyed to the window or door, M, N, designed for this purpose.

This done, put some straw upon the table to cover it, with some corn underneath it, and a little about it: now, so soon as the hungry little birds see the earth free from snow, and covered with straw, they will fly thither; and when they have eat up the corn about the table, they will also proceed to feed upon that under it: You must from time to time peep through some hole in the door, or leave it a little open, and when you find the birds have got under the machine, pull the cord M, which will pluck out the stick I, and so the table will fall upon the birds, which you must presently seize, and set your machine as before.

B I R

If the table does not fall readily enough, but so that the birds may have time to escape, and if it be not heavy enough of it's self, you must lay earth, or some such thing, upon it, that may the least frighten the birds from coming near it.

Small birds may be taken in the night-time, with nets and sieves: they retire in the winter time, into coppices, hedges, and bushes, by reason of severe cold and winds, which incommode them. The net made use of for this purpose, is that which the *French* call a *carrelet*, represented in the following figure. See plate 2. fig. 5.

Take two poles, A B C D, E F G H, let them be strait, and light, ten or twelve foot long; to the end the net may be lifted up high enough wherewith to take the birds: tie the net to these two poles, beginning with the two corners, at the two small ends A, E, tie the other two corners, C, G, as far as you can toward the two thick ends of the poles, D, H, fasten packthreads all along at both the sides, or two or three places; to each as you see marked by the capital and small letters, a B, b C, F d: there must be three or four persons employed, one to carry the net, another to carry the light, and a third a long pole.

As soon in the night as you have got to the place whither you think the birds are retired, and have found a fair bush, or kind of thicket, the net must be unfolded, and pitched where it should be, and exactly to the height of the bush: and it must be so ordered, that the net be placed between the wind and the birds; for it is the nature of all birds to roost with their breasts against the wind. The other person, with the lighted torch, must stand behind the middle of the net: and the third must beat the bushes on the other side of the hedge, and drive the birds that way out, towards the light: he must lay on stoutly with his pole now, the birds supposing it to be day will make towards the light, and so falling into the net, become a prey to you: when you have taken them out, you may pitch your net again.

In great timber woods, under which holly bushes grow, birds usually roost; and there good store of game is to be met with.

By this way, twenty or thirty dozen of birds have been taken in one night.

This sport is so much the better when the weather is cold and dark.

You may divert yourself from *September* to *April*, in taking all sorts of birds in the middle of a field; and make use of the following device.

Pitch upon a place in a piece of ground, early in the morning, remote from tall trees and hedge; or stick in the ground three or four branches of coppice-wood, as A, B, T, five or six

B I R

foot high; and so intermingle the tops of them, that they may keep close and firm like a hedge, take two or three boughs of black-thorn, as C, D, let them be as thick and close as may be, and place them on the top of the coppice branches, where you must make them stick fast; provide your self with four or five dozen of small lime-twigs, nine or ten inches long, and as slender as can be got; glew them all along, within two inches of the thick end, which must be cleft with a knife; place them here, and upon the hedge, and let them be kept up by placing the cleft end slightly upon the point of the thorns, and let the middle be born up a little with some other higher thorn, so that they may stand sloping, without touching one another; ranging them all in such a manner, that a bird cannot light upon the hedge without being entangled. See *plate 1. fig. 6.*

You should always have a bird of the same sort you design to catch, and bring him up in a small cage that is light and portable: these cages must be placed upon small forked sticks, as F, G, ten inches from the ground, stuck on one side the artificial hedge, or bush, at a fathom's distance; after which retire thirty paces towards S, where you are to stick two or three leaved branches in the ground, which may serve for a lodge, or stand, to hide yourself.

When you have taken three or four birds of any sort, you must make use of a device represented by the second figure: take a small stick, I H, two foot long, and fix it quite upright in the ground, at the distance of about two fathoms from the tree; fasten a small pack-thread to the end I, which must be on a small forked stick, L M, two foot high, and fix it in the ground, four fathoms distant from the other, I H, let the end of it be conveyed to your stand, then tie the birds you have taken, by the legs, to that pack-thread, between the stick I H, and the forked one, L M: the letters N, O, P, Q, R, represent them to you: the thread made use of for this purpose, must be two foot long, and so slack that the birds may stand upon the ground. This done, retire to your stand; and when you see some birds fly, pull your pack-thread S, and the birds that are tied will fly, by which means you may take a great many birds; for those that hover in the air perceiving the others fly, will imagine they feed there, and will bring them down, and so light upon the lime-twigs; from which you may take them without any more to do.

As soon as the small birds have done with their nests, which will be about the end of *July*, you may take them in great numbers, when they go to drink along rivulets, about springs, ditches, and pools, in the fields and woods. See *Plate, 2 fig. 4. 7.*

Sup-

B I R

Suppose the place marked with the letter A, should be the middle of a ditch, or pool full of water, where birds come to drink; make choice of a bank where the sun comes but little, as at B, remove every thing that may obstruct the birds to come easily at the water, take several small lime-twigs, a foot long, which you must glew over, to within two inches of the thickest end, which must be sharp-pointed, in order to fix them in a row along the bank B, in such a manner, that they may all lie within two fingers breadth of the ground: they must not touch one another: when you have enclosed this bank, cut some small boughs or herbs, all which place all round the water at the sides marked C, L, Y, where the birds might drink, and this will oblige them to throw themselves where the lime twigs are, which they cannot discern, and leave no place uncovered round the water, where the birds may drink, but that at B; then retiring to your stand to conceal yourself, but so as that you may see all your lime-twigs, and when any thing is catched, hasten to take it away and replace the lime sticks where there is occasion. But forasmuch as the birds which come to drink, consider the place where they are to alight for it, for they do it not at once, but rest upon some tall trees if there are any, or on the top of cops, and after they have been there some time get to some lower branches, and a little after alight on the ground, in this case you must have three or four great boughs like those represented at the side Y, which you are to pitch in the ground at the best place of access to the ditch, about a fathom distant from the water; take off the branches from the middle, to near the top, and let the disbranched part be sloping toward the water, to the end you make notches therein, with a knife at three fingers distance from each other, in order to put in several small lime-twigs as you see by the cut, you must lay them within two fingers breadth of the branch, and so dispose them in respect to one another, that no bird which comes to alight thereon can escape being entangled: it is certain if you take six dozen of birds as well on the boughs as on the ground, you will catch two thirds on the branches at Y, *See plate 1. fig. 7.*

The right time for this sport, is from two in the morning, till evening half an hour before sun-set, but the best time is from about ten to eleven, and from two to three; and lastly an hour and half before sun-set, when they approach to the watering place in flocks, because the hour presses them to retire, and go to roost.

The best time for this diversion, is when the weather is hottest, you must not follow it when it rains, nor even when the morning dew falls, because the birds then satisfy themselves with the water they find on the leaves of trees, neither will it be to any purpose

B I R

purpose to pursue the sport when the water after great rains lies in some place on the ground it must first dry up, or else you will loose your labour.

Large as well as small birds are taken at such watring places. See *LOW-BELL, OWL, or HORNCOOT, and PIT-FALL.*

BIRDLIME, stuff prepared after different ways; the common method is to peel a good quantity of holly bark about midsummer, fill a vessel with it, put spring water to it; boil it till the grey and white bark arise from the green, which will require twelve hours boiling; then take it off the fire, drain the water well from it, separate the barks, lay the green bark on the ground in some cool cellar, covered with any green rank weeds, such as *dock-thistles, hemlock, &c.* to a good thickness; let it lie so fourteen days, by which time it will be a perfect mucilage; then pound it well in a stone mortar, till it becomes a tough paste, and that none of the bark be discernible; next after wash it well in some running stream, as long as you perceive the least motes in it: then put it into an earthen pot to ferment, scum it for four or five days, as often as any thing rises, and when no more comes change it into a fresh earthen vessel, and preserve it for use in this manner. Take what quantity you think fit, put it in an earthen pipkin, add a third part of capons or goose grease to it, well clarified, or oil of walnuts, which is better, incorporate them on a gentle fire, and stir it continually till it is cold, and thus it is finished.

To prevent frost; take a quarter of as much oil of *petroleum* as you do goose grease, and no cold will congeal it: the Italians make their's of the berries of the *mistletoe tree* heated after the same manner, and mix it with nut oil, an ounce to a pound of lime, and taking it from the fire, add half an ounce of turpentine, which qualifies it also for the water.

Great quantities of birdlime are brought from *Damascus*, supposed to be made of *sebestens*, because we sometimes find the kernels, but it is subject to frost, impatient of wet, and will not last above a year or two good. There comes also of it into *England* from *Spain*, which resists water, but is of an ill scent, it is said the bark of our lantona, or way faring shrubs, will make as good birdlime as any.

How to use BIRDLIME.

When your lime is cold, take your rods, and warm them a little over the fire; then take your lime, and wind it about the top of your rod, then draw your rods asunder one from another and close them again, continually plying and working them together, till by smearing one upon another, you have equally bestowed on each rod a sufficient proportion of lime.

If

B I R

If you lime any strings, do it when the lime is very hot and at the thinnest, besmearing the strings on all sides, by folding them together, and unfolding them again.

If you lime straws, it must be done likewise when the lime is very hot, doing a great quantity together, as many as you can well grasp in your hand, tossing and working them before the fire till they are all besmeared, every straw having it's due proportion of lime; having so done, put them up in cases of leather, till you have occasion to use them.

The best way of making water BIRDLIME.

Buy what quantity you think fit of the strongest birdlime you can procure, and wash it as long in a clear spring water, till you find it very pliable, and the hardness thereof removed; then beat out the water extraordinary well, till you cannot perceive a drop to appear, then dry it well; after this, put it into an earthen pot, and mingle therewith capons grease unsalted, so much as will make it run, then add thereto two spoonfuls of strong vinegar, a spoonful of the best salad oil, and a small quantity of *Venice* turpentine; this is the allowance of these ingredients, which must be added to every pound of strong birdlime as aforesaid.

Having thus mingled them, boil all gently over a small fire stirring it continually, then take it from the fire, let it cool, when at any time you have occasion to use it, warm it, and then anoint your twigs or straws, or any other small things, and no water will take away the strength thereof.

This sort of lime is best, especially for snipes and feldfares.

Of taking small BIRDS, which use hedges and bushes, with lime-twigs.

The great lime bush is best for this use, which you must take after this manner: cut down the main branch or bough of any bushy tree, whose branch and twigs are long, thick, smooth, and straight, without either pricks or knots, of which the willow or birch tree are the best; when you have pickt it and trimmed it from all superfluity, making the twigs neat and clean, then take the best birdlime, well mixed and wrought together with goose grease, or capons grease, which being warmed, lime every twig therewith within four fingers of the bottom.

The body from whence the branches have their rise must be untouched with lime.

Be sure you do not daub your twigs with too much lime, for that will give distaste to the birds, yet let none want it's proportion, or have any part left bare which ought to be touched: for as too much will deter them from coming, so too little will not hold them when they are there. Having so done, place your

B I R

your bush in some quickset or dead hedge near unto towns ends, back yards, old houses, or the like; for these are the resort of small birds in the spring time; in the summer and harvest, in groves, bushes, or whitethorn trees, quickset hedges near corn fields, fruit trees, flax and hemp lands, and in the winter about houses, hovels, barns, stacks, or those places where stand ricks of corn, or scattered chaff, &c.

As near as you can to any of these haunts plant your lime bush, and plant yourself also at a convenient distance undiscovered, imitating with your mouth several notes of birds, which you must learn by frequent practice, walking the fields for that purpose very often, observing the variety of several birds sounds, especially such as they call one another by.

Some have been so expert herein, that they could imitate the notes of twenty several sorts of birds at least, by which they have caught ten birds to another's one that was ignorant therein.

If you cannot attain it by your industry, you must buy then a bird-call, of which there are several sorts and easie to be framed; some of wood, some of horn, some of cane, and the like.

Having learnt first how to use this call, you shall sit and call the birds unto you, and as any of them light on your bush, step not out unto them till you see them sufficiently entangled; neither is it requisite to run for every single bird, but let them alone till more come, for the fluttering is as good as a stale to entice them more.

This exercise you may use from sun rising till ten a clock in the morning, and from one till almost sun set.

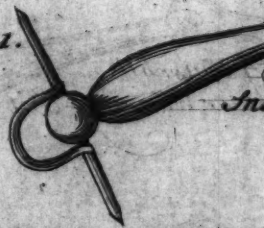
You may take these small birds, only with lime-twigs without the bush

Some boys have taken two hundred or three hundred small twigs about the bigness of rushes, and about three inches long, and have gone with them into a field where there were hemp cocks: upon the tops of half a score lying all round together, they have stuck their twigs, and then have gone and beat that field, or the next it, where they saw any birds, and commonly in such fields, there are infinite numbers of linnets and green-birds which are great lovers of hempseed.

And they flying in such vast flocks, they have caught at one fall of them upon the cocks eight dozen at a time.

But to return there is a pretty way of taking birds with lime-twigs, by placing near them a stale or two made of living baits, placing them aloft that they may be visible to the birds thereabouts, who will no sooner be perceived, but every bird will come and gaze wondring at the strangeness of the sight, and having no other convenient lighting place but where the lime-twigs are, you may

Fig. 1.



A round or Canon Mouth
a Pigeon

Fig. 4.



A plain round or Canon-
kind of Lib

Fig. 2.



A Canon with
Upset or Mou

Fig. 5.

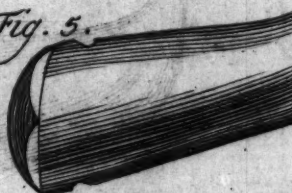


Fig. 3.



Ar
all of on
the middle, to

Fig. 6.



with an i



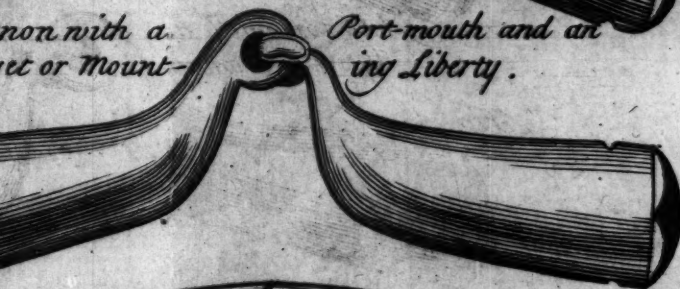
A Musroll
Snaffle or Watering-Bit.



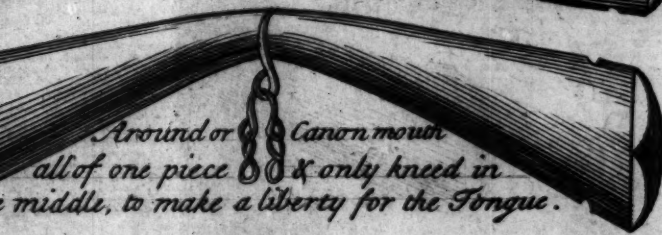
Canon Mouth
with the Liberty in form of
a Pigeon's Neck.



Canon Mouth only jointed in the middle to make a
kind of Liberty for the Tongue.



Canon Mouth with a
Port-mouth and an
ing Liberty.



Canon Mouth
all of one piece & only kneed in
middle, to make a liberty for the Tongue.



Simple
Scotch-mouth
with an Upset or Mounting Liberty.

B I R

may take what number you list of them. But the *owl* is a far better stale than the *bat*, being bigger and more easily to be perceived, besides he is never seen abroad, but he is followed and persecuted by all the birds that are near.

If you have not a living *bat* or *owl* their skins will serve as well, stuffed, and will last you twenty years, there are some have used an owl cut in wood and naturally painted, with wonderful success.

Another method of taking all manner of small BIRDS with BIRDLIME.

In cold weather, that is in frost or snow, all sorts of small birds gather together in flocks, as *larks*, *chaffinches*, *linnets*, *goldfinches*, *yellowhammers*, *buntings*, *sparrows*, &c.

All these except the *lark* do perch on trees or bushes, as well as feed on the ground.

If they resort about your house, or adjacent fields, then use birdlime that is well prepared, and not too old; which order after the following manner.

Put the birdlime into an earthen dish, adding to it some fresh lard, or capon's grease, putting one ounce of either, to a quarter of a pound of birdlime; then setting it over the fire, melt it gently together; but you must be sure not to let it boil, which would take away the strength of the *birdlime* and spoil it.

It being thus prepared, and you being furnished with a quantity of wheat ears; cut the straw about a foot long besides the ears, and lime them for about six inches from the bottom of the ears to the middle of the straw; the lime being warmed that it may run the thinner upon the straw, and therefore be the less discernable, and liable to be suspected by the birds.

Then go into the field, carrying with you a bag of chaff, and threshed ears, which scatter together for the compass of twenty yards in width (this will be best in a snowy season), then stick up the limed straws with the ears leaning, or at the ends touching the ground, then retire from the place, and traverse the grounds all round about; and by that means, you by disturbing the birds in their other haunts, they will fly to the place where the chaff, &c. has been scattered, and the limed straws set up, and pecking at the ears of corn, and finding that they stick upon them; they will straitway mount up from the earth, and in their flight the bird limed straws, lying under their wings will cause them to fall, and not being able to disengage themselves from the straw, may be taking with ease. You must not go and take them up,
when

B I T

when you see five or six entangled, for that may prevent you from taking as many dozen at a time.

If the birds that fall, where your limed straws are, be larks, do not go near them till they rise of themselves and fly in great flocks; by this method some have caught five or six dozen at a lift.

Some of these straws may be laid nearer home, for taking *finches, sparrows, yellowhammers, &c.* which resort near to houses and frequent barn-doors; where they may be easily taken by the foregoing method.

Having performed this in the morning; take away all the limed ears, that so the birds may feed boldly, and not be disturbed or frightened against next morning, and in the afternoon bait the same place with fresh chaff and ears of corn, and let them rest till the next morning; and then having stuck up fresh limed wheat ears, repeat your morning birding recreation.

BISHOPING, a term amongst Horse-courfers, which they use for those sophistications they use to make an old horse appear young, and a bad one good, &c.

BITCH, if she grow not proud so soon as you would have her, she may be made so, by taking two heads of *garlic*, half a *castor's stone*, the juice of *creffes*, and about twelve *Spanish flies*, or *cantharides*; all which boil together in a pipkin, which holds a pint with some mutton, and make broth thereof, give her some twice or thrice, and she will infallibly grow proud; the same pottage given to a dog will make him desirous of copulation.

Again, when she is lined and with puppy, you must not let her hunt, for that will make her cast her whelps, but let her walk up and down the house and court unconfined, and never lock her up in her kennel, for she is then impatient for food, and therefore you must make her some broth once a day.

If you will spay your bitch, it must be done before ever she has a litter of whelps, and in spaying her, take not out all the roots or strings of the veins, for in so doing, it will much prejudice her reins; and hinder her swiftness ever after, whereas by leaving some behind it will make her much stronger and more hardy; but whatever you do, spay her not when she is proud, for that will endanger her life, but it may be done fifteen days after; tho' the best time of all is when the whelps are shaped within her.

For the rest. See *Dogs, and choosing of them.*

BITT, or horse-bitt, in general, signifies the whole machine of all the iron appurtenances of a bridle; as the bitt-mouth, the branches, the curb, the sevil-holes, the tranchevil, and cross the

B I T

the chains ; but oftentimes it signifies only the bitt-mouth in particular.

BITT-MOUTH, is a piece of iron forged several ways, in order to be put into a horse's mouth, and to keep it in subjection.

Of these bitt-mouths, some are single cannon mouths, some are cannon mouths with an upset, or mounting liberty ; some scatch mouths, some mouths after the form of a barge, some with two long turning olives, and several other sorts ; all with different liberties for the tongue, or without liberty.

But all bitt-mouths ought still to be proportioned to the mouth of the horse, according as it is more or less cloven and wide, or more or less sensible and tender ; according as the tongue and the lips are higher or flatter, and as the palate is more or less fleshy : observing withal, that if the horse be old, the palate will always have but little flesh upon it.

A bitt-mouth all of a piece, without a joint in the middle, is called by the *French*, a bitt that presses *de l'entier*. See **BARs**.

BITTS: the iron which is put into a horse's mouth, is called a *bitt*, or *bitt-mouth* ; in the middle whereof there is always an arched space, for the lodging of the tongue ; which is called the *liberty*. 'Tis the opinion of the Duke of *Newcastle*, that as little iron as possible, should be put into a horse's mouth : and we seldom use any other than snaffles, cannon-mouths jointed in the middle, cannon with a fast-mouth, and cannon with a port-mouth, either round or jointed.

As for the bitts now in use, besides the snaffle, or small watering-bitt, at *plate 3. fig. 1.* there is the cannon-mouth jointed in the middle, at *fig. 2.* which always preserves a horse's mouth whole and sound ; and though the tongue sustains the whole effort of it, yet 'tis not so sensible as the bars ; which are so delicate, that they feel it's pressure through the tongue, and thereby obey the least motion of the rider's hand.

The larger it is towards the ends fixed to the branches, the gentler 'twill be. We should make use of this mouth to a horse as long as we can ; that is, if with a simple cannon-mouth we can draw from a horse all the obedience he is capable of giving, it will be in vain to give him another ; this being the very best of all.

The cannon with a fast-mouth, at *fig. 3.* is all of one piece, and only kneed in the middle, to give the tongue freedom : It is proper to secure those mouths that chack or beat upon the hand : it will fix their mouths, because it rests always in one place ; so that deadening the same, in a manner, thereby, the horse loses his apprehensiveness, and will soon relish his bitt-mouth better

B I T

better than the last ; which being jointed in the middle, rests unequally upon the bars : This however, because not jointed in the middle, is more rude. The middle of this bitt should be a little more forward, to give the more play to the horse's tongue ; and the bitt should rest rather on the gums, or outsides of the bars, than upon their very ridges.

The fourth sort is called, the *cannon-mouth with the liberty* ; after the form of a pidgeon's neck. When a horse's mouth is too large, so that the thickness thereof supports the mouth of the bitt, that it cannot work it's effects on the bars, this liberty will a little disengage it, and suffer the mouth of the bitt to come at, and rest upon, his gums ; which will make him so much the lighter upon the hand.

The *port-mouth*, at *fig. 5.* is a cannon, with an upset or mounting liberty ; proper for a horse with a good mouth, but a large tongue ; working it's effects upon the lips and gums : and because the tongue is disengaged, it will subject the horse that hath high bars, and in some degree sensible. This useful bitt, if well made, will never hurt a horse's head.

The *scatch-mouth*, with an upset or mounting liberty, at *fig. 6.* is ruder than a cannon-mouth, because not fully so round, but more edged ; and preferable to them in one respect ; which is, that those parts of a cannon-mouth to which the branches are fastened, if not well riveted, are subject to slip ; but the ends of a scatch-mouth can never fail, because of their being over-lapped ; and therefore much more secure for vicious and ill-natur'd horses.

Mr. *Pignatell's* cannon-mouth with the liberty, is proper for a horse with a large tongue and round bars, as being only supported a little by his lips : Care should be had, never to work a horse with one rein, as long as he has one of these bitt-mouths. The description Sir *William Hope* gives of this bitt, is, that it has a gentle falling and moving up and down ; and the liberty so low as not to hurt the horse's mouth ; and certainly the best bitt for horses that have any thing of a big tongue.

Some are of opinion, that the best way to fit a horse exactly with a bitt, is to have a great many bitts by them, and change till they hit the right : but at first, be sure to let him have a gentle one ; and be rightly lodged in his mouth, so as not to frumple his lips, or to rest upon his tusshes : then let him be mounted, and pulled two or three steps back ; whereby you will know if his head be firm, if he performs frankly, or only obeys with reluctancy ; that so you may give him another bitt, which may gain his consent. If he inclines to carry low, you are not to give him a liberty for the tongue, which will rise too high ; for that, by tickling his palate, would bring his head down between

his

B L E

his legs. *Note*, that large curbs, if they be round, are always most gentle.

BLACK, moor, or coal-black, is the colour of a horse that is of a deep, shining, and lively black.

BLACK-BIRD; this bird is known by all persons, and is better to be eaten than kept; being much sweeter to the palate, when dead and well roasted, than to the ear while living.

She makes her nest many times when the woods are full of snow, which happens very often in the beginning of *March*; and builds it upon the stumps of trees, by ditch-sides, or in a thick hedge; being at no certainty, like other birds: and the out-sides of her nest are made with dry grass and moss, and little dry sticks and roots of trees; and she daubs all the inside with a kind of clayey earth; fashioning it so round, and forming it so handsome and smooth, that a man cannot mend it.

They breed three or four times a year, according as they lose their nests; for if their nests be taken away, they breed the sooner: the young ones are brought up with almost any meat whatsoever.

This bird sings about three months in the year, or four at most, though his song is worth nothing; but if he be taught to whistle, he is of some value, it being very loud, tho' coarse; so that he is fit for a large place, not a chamber: and this bird is one of the soft singing birds we have in *England*.

When black-birds, thrushes, &c. are taken old and wild, to be tamed, mix some of their kind among them, putting them into great cages of three or four yards square, in which place divers troughs, filled, some with hawes, some with hemp-seed, and some with water; so that the tame teaching the wild to eat, and the wild finding such a change, and alteration of food, it will, in twelve or fourteen days, make them grow very fat, and fit for the use of the kitchen.

BLAZE. See **STAR** and **WHITE-FACE**.

BLAZES. It is a notion, that those horses that have white faces or blazes, if the blazes be divided in the middle, cross-ways, it is the mark of an odd disposition.

BLEAK, and bleak-fishing: some call this a fresh water sprat, or river-swallow, because of it's continual motion; and others will have this name to rise from the whitish colour, which is only under the belly.

It is an eager fish, caught with all sorts of worms, bred on trees or plants; as also with flies, paste, and sheep's blood, &c.

And they may be angled for with half a score hooks at once, if they can be all fastened on: he will also in the evening take a natural, or artificial fly; but if the day be warm and clear, no bait so good for him as the small fly at top of the water;

F

which

B L O

which he'll take at any time of the day, especially in the evening: And indeed there are no fish yield better sport to a young Angler than these; for they are so eager that they will leap out of the water for a bait: but if the day be cold and cloudy, gentles and caddis are best; about two foot under water.

There is another way of taking bleak: and that is by whipping them in a boat, or on a bank-side, in fresh water, in a summer's evening, with a hazel top, about five or six foot long, and a line twice the length of the rod: But the best method is with a drabble; that is, tie eight or ten small hooks a-crofs a line, two inches above one another, the biggest hook the lowermost, (whereby you may sometimes take a better fish) and bait them with gentles, flies, or some small red worms; by which means you may take half a dozen, or more, at a time.

BLEMISH, a hunting term; used when the hounds, or beagles, finding where the chace has been, make a proffer to enter, but return.

BLEYNE, [*in Horses*] an inflammation occasioned by the blood's putrifying in the inner part of the coffin, towards the heel, between the sole and the coffin-bone. See **HOOF-CAST**.

BLINDNESS [*in Horses*] may be thus discerned: the walk, or step of a blind horse, is always uncertain and unequal; so that he dares not set down his feet boldly, when led in one's hand: but if the same horse be mounted by an expert horseman, and the horse of himself be a horse of metal, then the fear of the spurs will make him go resolutely and freely, so that his blindness can hardly be perceived.

Another mark by which you may know a horse that has lost his sight, is, that when he hears any body enter the stable, he will prick up his ears, and move them backwards and forwards: the reason is, that a vigorous horse having lost his sight, mistrusts every thing, and is continually in alarm at the least noise he hears.

BLOOD-HOUND, is of all colours; but for the generality of a black brown, and reddish in several places, especially upon the breast and cheeks: they have long, thin, hanging down ears, and differ from other dogs only in their cry and barking.

Being set on by the voice or word of their keeper, to seek about for game, and having found it, they will never leave off the pursuit, until it be tired; nor will they change it for any other fresh game that they meet with; and they are observed to be very obedient to their masters.

These hounds are of that property, that they do not only keep to their game while living, but it being by any accident wounded,

B L O

wounded, or killed, will find it out; and that by the scent of the blood sprinkled here and there upon the ground, which was shed in it's pursuit; by which means deer-stealers are often found out.

The blood-hound differs little or nothing in quality from the *Scottish* sluth-hound, excepting that they are of a larger size, and not always of one and the same colour; for they are sometimes red, fanded, black, white, spotted, and of all colours with other hounds; but most commonly either brown or red.

The *Germans* call this dog *sanghund*, because he has long ears; and they differ not from vulgar dogs in any other outward proportion, than only in their cry and barking.

They seldom bark, except in their chace; and are attentive to the voice of their leader.

Those that are white, are said to be quickest scented, and surest nos'd, and therefore are best for the hare; the black ones are best for the boar, and the red for the hart and roe.

Tho' this is the opinion of some, yet others differ from them, because their colour (especially the latter) is too like the game they hunt; altho' there can be nothing certain collected from their colour; but indeed the black hound is the hardier, and better able to endure the cold than the white ones.

They must be tied up till they hunt; yet are to be let loose now and then a little, to ease their bellies; and their kennels must be kept sweet and dry.

There is some difficulty in distinguishing a hound of an excellent scent; but some are of opinion, that the square and flat nose is the best sign of it: likewise a small head, having all his legs of equal length, his breast not deeper than his belly, and his back plain to his tail; his eyes quick, his ears hanging long, his tail nimble, and the beak of his nose always to the earth; and especially, such as are most silent, and bark least.

You may now consider the divers and various dispositions of hounds, in the finding out of their beast.

Some are of that nature, that when they have found the game, they will stand still till the huntsman comes up; to whom, in silence, by their face, eye, and tail, they shew the game: others, when they have found the foot-steps, go forward, without any voice, or other shew of ear or tail: another sort, when they have found the footings of the beast, prick up their ears a little, and either bark or wag their tails; and others will wag their tails, and not move their ears.

Again, there are some that do none of these; but wander up and down, barking about the surest marks, and confounding their own foot-steps with those of the beast they hunt: or else forsake the way, and so run back again to the first head; but when

B L O

they see the hare, are afraid, not daring to come near her, except she start first.

These, with others who hinder the cunning labour of their colleagues, trusting to their feet, and running before their betters, deface the best mark, or else hunt counter, and take up with any false scent instead of the true one; or, which is more blame worthy, never forsake the high-ways, and yet have not learned to be silent.

To these also may be added, those which cannot discern the footing, or pricking of the hare, yet will run with speed when they see her; pursuing her very hotly at the first, and afterwards tire, or hunt lazily. All these are not to be admitted into a kennel of hounds.

But on the contrary, those hounds which are good, when they have found a hare, make shew thereof to the huntsman, by running more speedily; and with gesture of head, ears, eyes, and tail, winding to the form, or hare's muse, never give over prosecution with a gallant noise. They have good and hard feet, and stately stomachs.

And whereas the nature of the hare is sometimes to leap, and make headings; sometimes to tread softly, with a very small impression in the earth; or sometimes to lie down, and ever to leap or jump out and into her own form, the poor hound is so much the more busied and troubled to retain the small scent of her pricking that she leaves behind her; in which case it is requisite that you assist the hound, not only with voice, eye, and hand, but with a seasonable tune also; for in frosty weather the scent freezes with the earth, so that there is no certainty of hunting till it thaw, or that the sun rise.

In like manner, if a great deal of rain fall, between the starting of the hare and time of hunting, it is not convenient to hunt till the water be dried up; for the drops disperse the scent of the hare; and dry weather collecteth it again.

The summer-time also is not for hunting, because the heat of the weather consumeth the scent; and the nights being then but short, the hare travelleth not far, feeding only in the morning and evening: besides, the fragrantcy of flowers and herbs then growing, flattens and diminishes the scent the hounds are guided by.

The best time for hunting with these hounds, is in autumn; because then the former odours are weakened, and the Earth barer than at other times.

These hounds do not only chase their game while it lives, but after it is dead also, by any manner of casualty, make to the place where it lies; having in this point a sure and infallible guide; that is, the scent and savour of the blood, sprinkled here
and

B L O

and there upon the ground ; for whether the beast is wounded and lives, and escapes the hands of the huntsman, or if it be killed and carried quite out of the park (if there do but remain some marks of blood shed) these dogs, with no less facility and easiness than greediness, will discover the same by it's scent, carrying on their pursuit with agility and swiftness ; upon which account they deserve the name of *blood hounds*.

And if a piece of flesh be subtilly stolen and cunningly conveyed away, altho' all precaution imaginable is used, to prevent all appearance of blood, yet these kind of dogs, by a natural instinct, will pursue deer stealers, thro' craggy ways and crooked meanders, till they have found them out ; and so effectually as that they can discover, separate, and pick them out from a great number of persons ; nay they will cull them out tho' they intermix with the greatest throng.

BLOOD-LETTING ; the signs or indications of blood-letting in a horse are these : his eyes will look red, and his veins swell more than ordinary ; he will also have an itching about his mane and tail ; and be continually rubbing them, and sometimes will shed some of his hair ; otherwise he will peel about the roots of his ears, in the places where the head stall of the bridle lies ; his urine will be red and high coloured, and his dung black and hard ; likewise if he has red inflammations, or little bubbles on his back, or does not digest his meat well ; or if the white of his eyes be yellow, or the inside of his upper or nether lip be so, these are signs that he stands in need of bleeding.

The properest times for bleeding horses, is in the winter and cool months from *January* to *July* ; (but for *July* and *August*, by reason the dog-days are then predominant it is not good but only in case of necessity) and so from *August* to *January* again.

As to the manner of bleeding ; you must never take so much blood from a colt as from an older horse, and but a fourth part as much from a yearling foal ; you must also have regard to the age and strength of the horse, and before you bleed him, let him be moderately chafed and exercised, and rest a day, and three days after it, not forgetting that *April* and *October* are the two principal seasons for that purpose ; and he will also bleed the better, if he be let to drink before he is blooded, so that he be not heated.

Then tie him up early in the morning to the rack without water or combing ; lest his spirits be too much agitated, and draw with a pair of fleams of a reasonable breadth about three pounds of blood, and leave him tied to the rack.

During the operation, put your finger in his mouth and tickle him in the roof, making him chew and move his chops, which will force him to spit forth ; and when you find that he has

B O A

bled enough, rub his body well over with it; but especially the place he is blooded on, and tye him up to the rack for an hour or two, lest he bleed afresh; for that will turn his blood.

BLOOD RUNNING ITCH happens to an horse by an inflammation of the blood, being over heated by hard riding or other sore labour, yet gets between the skin and the flesh, and makes a horse to rub, scrub and bite himself; which, if let alone too long, will turn to a grievous mange, and is very infectious to any horse that shall be nigh him; and the cures both for this and the mange, besides the general ones, of bleeding in the neck vein, scraping him, and other things, are various.

BLOOD SHOTTEN eyes in horses are cured by steeping *Roman vitriol* in white rose water, or for want of that in spring water, and washing the eyes with it twice or thrice a day.

BLOSSOM or peach coloured horse, is one that has his white hair intermixed all over with sorrel and bay hairs.

Such horses are so insensible and hard, both in the mouth and in the flanks, that they are scarce valued; besides that, they are apt to turn blind.

BOAR *Wild*, altho' *England* affords no wild *Bears*, yet being so plentiful in *Germany* and other countries, and affording so noble achace, which is so much used by the nobility and gentry in those parts, I shall give the following account.

A wild *Boar* is called a *pig of the sounder*, the first year of his age, a *hog* the second, a *hog's steer* the third, and a *Boar* the fourth; when leaving the *sounder*, he is also termed a *singler* or *sangler*. This creature is farrowed with as many teeth at first, as he shall ever have afterwards; which only encrease in bigness, not in number; among these they have four called *tushes* or *tusks*, the two biggest of which do not hurt when he strikes; but serve only to whet the other two lowest, with which they frequently defend themselves and kill, as being greater and longer than the rest.

The common age of a *Boar* is twenty five or thirty years, they go to rut about *December*, and their great heat lasts about three weeks, and altho' the sows become cold of constitution, not coveting the company of the *Boar*, yet they do not separate until *January*; and then they withdraw themselves unto their holds, wherein they keep close three or four days, not stirring thence, especially if they meet with such places, where *fern* grows, the roots of which they delight to eat.

It is easier to take a *boar* in a Toil in *April* or *May*, than in any other season, by reason they sleep at that time more soundly, which is caused by their eating of strong herbs, and buds of trees

BOA

trees which moisten their brains, and causeth sleep. Also the spring time occasions their sleeping.

Their food is on corn, fruits, acorns, chesnuts, beech-mast and all sorts of roots; when they are in marshy and watery places, they feed on water-creffes, and such things as they can find; and when they are near the sea coast, they feed on cockles, muscles, oysters, and such like fish.

A boar most commonly lies in the strongest holds of thorns and thick bushes, and will abide the bay before he will forsake his den.

If he be hunted from a strong thick covert, he will be sure to go back the same way he came if it be possible; and when he is roused, he never stays, until he comes to the place, where he thinks himself most secure.

If it so happens that there is a sounder of them together, then, if any break *sounder*, the rest will run that way; and if he be hunted in a hold or forest where he was bred, he will very difficultly be forced to quit it, but sometimes he will take head and seem to go drawing to the outsidés of the covert; but it is only to hearken to the noise of the dogs; for he will return again, from whence, he will hardly be compelled till night; but having broken out and taken head end ways, he will not be put out of his way by man nor beast, by voice, blowing, or any thing else.

A *Boar* will not cry when he is killed, especially a great *Boar*; but the sows and young ones will. In fleeing before the dogs, he neither doubleth, nor crosseth, nor uses such subtleties as other beasts of chace do, as being heavy and slow, so that the *dogs* are still in with him.

How to hunt a BOAR at force with dogs.

The season for hunting the wild boar, begins about the middle of *September*, and ends in *December*, at which time they go a brimming.

It is not convenient to hunt a young boar of three years old at force; for he will stand up as long (if not longer) than any light deer, that beareth but three in the top; but in the fourth year you may hunt him at force as you do a hart at ten, and will stand up as long. Therefore if a huntsman go too near a boar of four years old, he ought to mark whether he went timely to his den or couch or not; for commonly those boars which tarry till day light, go into their dens following their paths or ways a long time, especially where they find fern or beech masts, whereupon they feed; they are very hardy: and in the raising of this

B O A

animal one need not be afraid to come near him, for he values him not, but will lie still, and will not be reared alone.

But if he find a *Boar* which soileth oftentimes, and which *routeth* sometimes here and sometimes there, not staying long in a place, it is a sign that he has been scared, and withdraweth himself to some resting place, and such *Boars* most commonly come to their dens or holds two or three hours before day; and the huntsman must take care how he comes too near such a boar, for if he once find him in the wind or have the wind of his *dogs*, he will soon be gone.

It is also to be observed, that if a boar intends to tarry in his couch, he makes some doublings or crossings at the entry of it, upon some high way or beaten path, and then lies down to rest; by which means a huntsman being early in the woods may judge of his subtlety, and accordingly prepare to hunt him with dogs that are either hot spirited or temperate.

If it be a great boar, and one that hath lain long at rest, he must be hunted with good store of dogs, and such as will stick close to him; and the huntsman, or spear-man, on horseback should be ever amongst them, charging the boar and as much as is possible to discourage him: for if you hunt such a boar with five or six couple of dogs, he will not regard them, and when they have chased him a little, he will take courage, and keep them at bay, still running upon any thing that he sees before him; but if he perceive himself charged and hard laid unto with *dogs*, he will be discouraged and turn head and fly to some other place for refuge.

You ought also to set relays, which should be the best old staunchest hounds of your kennel; for if they should be young hounds, and such as are swift and rash to seize him before the rest come up, they will be killed or spoiled by him.

But if he be a boar that is accustomed to flee end ways before the dogs, and to take the champion country, then you may cast off four or five couple at first, and set all the rest at relays; about the entrance of the fields, where you think he is likely to flee; for such a *boar* will seldom keep the hounds at a bay, unless he be forced, and if he do stand at bay, then the huntsman ought to ride in unto him as secretly and with as little noise as possible, and when he is near him, let them cast round about the place where he stands, and run upon him all at once, and it will be odds, but that they will give him his death's wound with their spears or swords, provided they do not strike too low; for then he will defend the strokes with his snout; but be sure you keep not too long in a place; but use a quick motion.

You

B O A

You may also take notice, that if there be collars of bells about the dogs necks, a boar will not so soon strike at them ; but flee end-ways before them, and seldom stand at bay.

It is expedient to raise a *Boar* out of the wood early in the morning, before he hath made water, for the burning of his bladder quickly makes him weary ; when a boar is first raised, he is used to snuff in the wind, to smell what is with or against him.

Now, if you strike at him with sword or boar-spear do not, as has been said, strike low, for then you will hit him in the snout, which he values not, since he watches to take blows on his tusshes or thereabouts ; but lifting up your hand strike right down, and have a special care of your horse, for if you strike and hurt him, so will he you if he can ; therefore in thus assaulting him, the Hunters must be very careful, for he will rush upon them with great fierceness.

However he very rarely strikes a man, till he is first wounded himself, but afterwards it behoves the Hunters to be very wary, for he will run fiercely without fear upon his pursuers, and if he receive not his mortal wound, he overthrows his adversary, unless he falls flat on the ground, and then he need not fear much harm ; for his teeth cannot cut upwards but downwards, whereas with the female it is otherwise ; for she will bite and tear any ways.

But further, as the hunting spears should be very broad and sharp, branching forth into certain forks, that the boar may not break through them upon the huntsman, so the best places to wound him are the middle of his forehead, between the eyelids or else upon his shoulder, either of which is mortal.

Again, in case the *Boar* make head against the Hunter, he must not fly for it but meet him with his spear, holding one hand on the middle of it the other at the end, standing one foot before another, and having a watchful eye upon the beast, which way soever he winds or turns ; for such is his nature, that he sometimes snatches the spear out of the Hunter's hands, or recoils the force back again upon him ; in these cases there is no remedy, but for another of his companions to come up and charge the *Boar* with his spear, and then make a shew to wound him with his dart, but not casting it for fear of hurting the Hunter.

This will make the boar turn upon the second person, to whose assistance the first must again come in, with which both will have work enough ; nay when the boar feels himself so wounded that he cannot live, were it not for the forks of the boar-spear, he would press upon the vanquisher and revenge his death.

And what place soever he bites, whether man or dog, the heat of his teeth causes an inflammation in the wound,

If

B O A

If therefore he does but touch the hair of the dog he burns it off; nay huntsmen have tried the heat of his teeth, by laying hairs on them as soon as he was dead, and they have shrivelled up as if touched with a hot iron.

The boar is a beast of such great force, and so slow of foot by reason of his heaviness, that he is not properly termed a beast of venery, for he chiefly trusts in his strength and tushes to be his defence and not to his feet; so that he is more properly to be hunted with stout *mastiffs*, than by grey-hounds, which cannot so well defend themselves from his fury.

Also it spoils them from hunting other flying chaces, by reason he leaves so strong a scent, so that they hunt with greater ease than at light chaces, which are more painful to them to find and to hold the scent.

The way to know a great Boar by his foot, &c.

To know him by his foot, the form or print of it ought to be great and large, the toes round and thick, the edge of the hoof worn and blunt, without cutting and paring the ground so much as the younger doth: and the *guards*, which are his hinder claws, or dew claws, should be great and open, one from the other; the treading of his foot should be deep and large, which indicates the weightiness of his body, and his steps should be great and long.

By the largeness and depth of his routing his size may be known; because a wild swine routs deeper than our ordinary hogs, because their snouts are longer; and also by the length and largeness of his foil, when he walloweth in the mire; also when he comes out of the soil, he will rub himself against a tree, by which his height will appear; as also when he sticks his tushes into it, by which the largeness of them will appear; they also observe the bigness of his *lesses*, and the depth of his den.

A boar is said to *feed* in the corn; but if in the meadows or fallow fields, they say he *routeth* or *wormeth*, or *ferneth*, but when he feeds in a close, and routeth not, they say he *graseth*.

Boar hunting is very usual in *France*, and they call it *sangler*. In this sort of hunting the way is to use terrible sounds and noises, as well of voice as horn, to make the chace turn and fly; because they are slow and trust to their tusks for defence. But this must be done after his den or hold is discovered, and the nets be pitched.

Tho' these wild boars are frequent in *France*, we have none in *England*; yet it may be supposed that we had them here formerly; but did not think it convenient to preserve that game.

In

B O D

In the *French* hunting, when the boar stands at a bay, the huntsmen ride in, and with swords and spears strike on that side which is from their horses, and wound and kill him.

But the antient *Roman* method of hunting the boar, was standing on foot, or setting their knees to the ground, and charging directly with their spears : and the nature of the boar being such, he spits himself with great fury, running upon the weapon to come at his adversary, and so, seeking his revenge, meets his own destruction.

BOAR ; A horse is said to boar when he shoots out his nose as high as his ears, and tosses his nose, in the wind. See **WIND**.

BOBBING for eels.

There is a way to take eels, *viz.* bobbing ; that is, take very large lobs, scour them well, and with a needle run some strong twisted silk thro' them from end to end, then take so many as to wrap them about a board at least a dozen times, and tie them fast to the two ends of the silk that they may hang in so many hanks, then fasten all to a strong cord, and about four inches above the worms fasten a plumb of about three quarters of a pound, and so fasten your cord to a strong pole.

Having thus made your tackle ready, chuse a muddy place to fish in, and when you think they have swallowed them as far as they can, draw up your line gently and bring them to shore.

BOTTS. See **WORMS**.

BODY of a horse. In chusing a horse you must examine whether he has a good body, and is full in the flanks. It is no good sign that he is so, when the last of the short ribs is at a considerable distance from the haunch bone, or when the ribs are too much straitened in their compass ; whereas they ought to be as high as the haunch bone, or very little less, when the horse is in good case ; but tho' such horses may for a time have pretty good bodies, yet if they be much laboured they will lose them.

A narrow chested horse can never have a good body, nor breathe well ; and such horses as have straight ribs and being great feeders, and consequently come to gulf up their bellies, so as it not being possible for the entrails to be contained within the ribs, they will press down and make a cow's belly ; these are also difficult to be saddled, but have generally good backs, and tho' their croups are not so beautiful, being for the most part pointed, yet to supply that they have excellent reins : these horses are commonly called *sow backs*.

A light bodied and fiery horse a man never ought to buy because he will soon destroy himself, but fierceness ought never to be confounded with vigour and high metal, which last does not consist

B O L

consist in fretting, trampling, dancing, and not suffering any horse to go before him, but in being very sensible of the spurs.

You ought to shun light bellied horses, which are very apt to be troubled with *Spavins*, *Fardons*, &c. and whereas painful *scratches* in the hind-legs often take away a horse's belly, this ought not to deter you from buying, unless they be in the back finew of the leg, a pretty way above the pastern joint, which is one of the most troublesome external maladies a horse can have.

Except a low cased horse eats much hay, he cannot be made plump, which will make him have a belly like a cow with a calf, and maybe remedied with a surcingle a foot and a half broad, with two little cushions to it that may answer to the top of the ribs on either side the back bone, to preserve the back from being galled. In the next place consider the flank.

You are to observe that the strongest state of *body* which is the highest flesh, provided it be good, hard, and without inward foulness, is the best; yet you must take notice, that his shape and feeding are to be considered; as to his shape and body, some that be round, plump, and close knit will appear fat, when they really are lean and in poverty; and others that are raw boned, slender and loose knit together, will appear lean deformed, and poor, when they are fat, foul, and full of gross humours.

So likewise as to their *feeding*; some will feed outwardly, carrying a thick rib, when they are inwardly clean and without all manner of foulness: and there are others (as the latter) that appear clean to the eye, shewing nothing but skin and bone, when they are full of inward fatness; in this case there are two helps, the one inward the other outward.

The inward help is only smart exercise, which dissolves and melts the foulness, and strong scourings, which will bring it away.

The outward help is handling and feeling his body, especially the ribs towards his flank, and if his flesh generally handle loose and soft, your fingers sinking or pitting in, it is a sign of his foulness; but if his flesh be hard and firm, but only upon his hindmost rib handles soft and downy, it is a sign there is grease and foul matter within, which must be removed let him appear ever so lean.

If he be fat and thick, and as it were closed up under the chaps, or if his jaws handle full and fleshy; it is a sign of much foulness; both in the head and body; but if he handle thin, clean, and only with some lumps or small kernels within his chaps, in such case, it is a sign only of some cold newly taken.

BOLSTERS of a saddle, are those parts of a great saddle which are raised upon the bows, both before and behind, to hold

B O W

hold the rider's thigh, and keep him in a right posture, notwithstanding the disorders the horse may occasion.

Common saddles have no hind bolsters. We use the expression of fitting a bolster, when we put the cork of the saddle into the bolster to keep it tight.

That part of the saddle being formerly made of cork, took first that name, tho' now it is made of wood.

BOUILLON is a lump or excrescency of flesh that grows either upon or just by the frush, insomuch that the frush shoots out like a lump of flesh, and makes the horse halt; and this we call the flesh blowing upon the frush.

Your manage horses, which never wet their foot, are subject to these excrescencies, which make them very lame.

BOULETTE; a horse is called boulette, when the fetlock, or pastern joint, bends forward and out of it's natural situation; whether thro' violent riding or by reason of being too short jointed, in which case the least fatigue will bring it.

BOUTE; a horse is called boutte, when his legs are in a straight line from the knee to the coronet.

Short jointed horses are apt to be a boutte, and on the other hand long jointed horses are not.

BOW BEARER, an under officer of the forest, whose oath will inform you of the nature of his office, in these words; *I will true man be to the owner of this forest, and to his lieutenant, and in their absence, I shall truly oversee, and true inquisition make, as well of sworn men, as unsworn, in every bailiwick, both in the north bail and south bail of this forest, and all manner of trespasss done, either to vert or venison: I shall truly endeavour to attach, or cause to be attached in the next court of attachment, there to be present without any concealment had to my knowledge; so help me God,*

BOWET } a young hawk so called by *Falconers*, when

BOWESS } she draws any thing out of her nest, and covets to clamber on the boughs.

BOWLING the first and greatest cunning to be observed in bowling, is the right chusing your bowl, which must be suitable to the ground, you design to run on. Thus for close alleys your best choice is the flat bowl. 2. For open grounds of advantage, the round byassed bowl. 3. For green swards that are plain and level, the bowl that is as round as a ball.

The next thing that requires your care, is the chusing out your ground, and preventing the winding hangings, and many turning advantages of the same, whether it be in open wide places, as bares and bowling-greens, or in close bowling alleys.

Lastly, have your judgment about you, to observe and distinguish the risings, fallings, and advantages of the places where
you

B R A

you bowl: have your wits about you, to avoid being rookt of your money; and have your understanding about you, to know your best time and opportunity for this recreation; and finally, a studious care of your words and passions; and then bowl away, and you may deserve, *well have you bowled indeed.*

BOWS of a saddle, are two pieces of wood laid arch-wise, to receive the upper part of a horse's back, to give the saddle it's due form, and keep it tight.

The fore-bow, which sustains the pommel, is composed of the withers, the breast, the points or toes, and the corking.

The withers, is the arch that rises two or three fingers over the horse's withers.

The breasts are placed where the arch, or upper part of the bows, ends.

The points, or toes, are the lower part of the bow; and the corking, are pieces of wood, formerly pieces of cork, upon which we sit and made fast to the bolsters.

The hind-bow bears the trouffequin, or quilted roll.

The bows are covered with sinews; that is, with bull's pizzles beaten, and so run all over the bows to make them stronger; then they strengthen them with bands of iron, to keep them tight; and on the lower side of the bows, nail on the saddle-straps, with which they make fast the girths.

BRACE, is commonly taken for a couple, or pair; and applied by huntsmen to several beasts of game; as, a brace of bucks, foxes, hares, &c. also a brace of grey-hounds, is a proper term for two.

BRAMBLE-NET, otherwise called a hallier; is a net to catch birds with, and of several sizes: the great meshes must be four square, those of the least size are three or four inches, and those of the biggest are five; in the depth they should not have above three or four inches, but as for the length they may be enlarged at pleasure; but the shortest are usually eighteen foot.

If you intend to have your net of four meshes deep, make it of eight; forasmuch as it is to be doubled over with another net: likewise between the said doublings; the inward net should be of fine thread, neatly twisted; with meshes two inches square, made lozenge-wise, with a neat cord drawn through all the upper meshes, and one through the lower, whereby you may fix it to the double hallier: then lastly, fasten your net to certain small sticks, about a foot and half, or two foot long, and about the same distance from each other: the inward net must be both longer and deeper than the outward, that it may hang loose, the better to entangle the game.

BRANCH

B R E

BRANCH STAND, [*with Falconers*] a term used, signifying, the making a hawk leap from tree to tree, till the dog springs the partridge.

BRANCHER, a young hawk, newly taken out of the nest, that can hop from bough to bough.

BRANCHES of the bridle, are two pieces of iron bended, which, in the interval between one and the other, bear the bitt-mouth, the cross-chains, and the grub; so that to one end they answer to the head-stall, and on the other to the reins, in order to keep the horse's head in subjection.

A hardy, bold, or strong branch, is one that brings in the head.

A weak branch, is a branch that was formerly used for raising the head, but now is rejected; especially since the discovery of the error of those, who fancied, that it raised after the same manner with the kneed-branches. See **BANQUET** and **SHOULDER**.

BRASSICOURT, or brachicourt; is a horse whose fore-legs are naturally bended arch-wise; being so called by way of distinction from an arched horse, whose legs are bowed by hard labour.

BRAYE, an obsolete French word; made use of by some to signify the entry of the horse's throat; or the extremity of the channel towards the maxillary bones.

BRAYL, a piece of leather slit, to put upon the hawk's wing to tie it up.

BREAD for horses: horses are sometimes fed with bread, to hearten and strengthen them: the way to make the same, is two-fold.

1. Take wheat-meal, oat-meal, and beans, all ground very small, of each a peck; anise-feed, four ounces; gentian, and fenugreek, of each an ounce; liquorish, two ounces: all beaten into fine powder, and searfed well; to which add the whites of twenty new-laid eggs, all well beat, and as much strong ale as will knead it up: then make your loaves, like to horse-bread, but not too thick; and let them be well baked, but not burnt; and then give it him, not too new; and let him have it five or six mornings together, without any provender, which will keep him up bravely.

2. Take of wheat-meal, rye-meal, beans and oat-meal, of each half a peck, ground very small; anise-feed and liquorice, an ounce of each; and white sugar-candy, four ounces: beat all into fine powder, with the whites and yolks of twenty new-laid eggs, well beaten; and put to them as much white-wine as will knead it into a paste; which then make into great loaves, and bake

B R E

bake them well: and when two or three days old, give him to eat thereof, but chip away the out-side.

For race-horses, there are three sorts of bread now chiefly in use; given successively, for the second, third, and fourth fortnight's feeding. 1. Take three pecks of clean beans, and one peck of fine wheat; mix them together, and grind them into pure meal; that done, bolt it pretty fine, and knead it up with good store of fresh barm and lightening, but with as little water as may be; labour it well in a trough, break and cover it warm, that it may swell: then knead it over again, and mould it into large loaves, in order to be well baked, and soundly soaked. When they are drawn from the oven, turn the bottoms upward, and let them cool: at three days old you may give your horse this bread, but not sooner; since nothing is more apt to surfeit than new bread.

2. Take two pecks of clean beans, with two pecks of fine wheat, and grind them well together; then bolt, and knead it with barm, or lightening, and make it up as you did the former bread. With this bread, having the crust cut quite away, and oats, or split beans, mingled together, or separately if you think fit, feed the horse as before, at his usual meals.

3. Take three pecks of fine wheat, and one peck of beans; grind, and bolt them through the finest bolter you can get; then knead it up with new strong ale and barm, beat together, and the whites of twenty eggs, or more, and no water at all; but instead thereof a small quantity of new milk: at last work it up, bake and order it as the former: and with this bread, having the crust cut off, adding clean oats and split beans, all mixed, or several, feed your horse at his ordinary feeding-times, as you did in the fortnight before.

BREAK; to break a horse in trotting, is to make him light upon the hand by trotting, in order to make him fit for a gallop. To break a horse for hunting, is to supple him, to make him take the habit of running.

BREAM, is of two kinds; the one a salt, and the other a fresh-water fish, but are very little different from each other, either as to taste, shape, or nature.

The bream is a very broad-shaped fish, and thick, scaled very excellently, large eyes, a little sucking mouth, dis-proportionate to his body, and a forked tail.

It is a lusty, strong fish, so that you must be sure to have good tackling.

It has two sets of teeth, is a very great breeder; the melter having two large melts, and the spawner as many bags of spawn.

That which I shall chiefly treat of, shall be the fresh-water bream; which at full growth is large and stately, breeding either

in

B R E

in ponds and rivers, but chiefly delighting in the former; which if he likes, he will not only grow exceedingly fat, and fairer in them than in rivers, but will fill the pond with his issue, even to the starving of the other fish.

They spawn in *June*, or the beginning of *July*; and are great lovers of red worms, especially such as are to be found at the root of a great dock, and lie wrapt up in a round clew: also flag-worms, wasps, green flies, and grasshoppers (whose legs must be cut off), and paste; of which there are many sorts which are found very good baits for him; but the best are made of brown bread and honey, gentles, young wasps, and red worms. The best season of angling for him, is from *St James-tide* until *Bartholomew-tide*.

BREAM-FISHING: It is a curious fish to be taken with hook and line, therefore observe these directions; which will also be of use in carp-fishing, which is much of the same nature.

Procure about a quart of large red worms, put them into fresh moss, well washed and dried, every three or four days; feeding them with fat mould, and chopped fennel, and they will be thoroughly scoured in about three weeks.

Let your lines be silk and hair; but all silk is the best: let the floats be either swan quills, or goose quills.

Let your plumb be a piece of lead in the shape of a pear, with a small ring at the little end of it; fasten the lead to the line, and the line-hook to the lead, about ten or twelve inches space between lead and hook, will be enough; and be sure take care that the lead be heavy enough to sink the float.

Having baited your hook well with a strong worm, the worm will draw the hook up and down in the bottom, which will provoke the bream to bite the more eagerly.

It will be best to fit up three or four rods and lines in this manner, and set them as will be anon directed, and this will afford you much the better sport.

Find the exact depth of the water (if possible) that your float may lie just even with the water, directly over the lead; then provide the following ground-bait: take about a peck of sweet, gross-ground malt, and having boiled it a very little, strain it hard through a bag, and carry it to the water-side where you have founded; and in the place where you suppose the fish frequent, there throw in the malt by handfuls, squeezed hard together, that the stream may not separate it before it comes to the bottom; and be sure to throw it in, at least, a yard above the place where you intend your hook shall lie, otherwise the stream will carry it somewhat down.

Do this about nine o'clock at night, keeping some of the malt in the bag; and go to the place again about three the next morning,

B R E

morning, but approach the place very warily, lest you should be spied by the fish; for it is certain that they have their centinels watching on the top of the water, while the rest are feeding underneath.

Then having dextrously baited your hook, so that the worm may crawl to and fro, the better to allure the fish to bite, cast it in at the place where you find the fish to stay most, and stay longest, (which is generally in the deepest and broadest part of the river) and so that it may rest about the midst of your bait that is on the ground.

Cast in your second line, so that it may rest a yard above that, and a third about a yard below it.

Let your rods lie on the bank, with some stones to keep them down at the great ends, and then withdraw yourself; yet not so far, but that you can have your eye upon all the floats; and when you see one bitten and carried away, do not be too hasty to run in, but give time to the fish to tire himself, and then touch him gently.

When you perceive the float sink, creep to the water-side, and give it as much line as you can: if it be a bream or carp, they will run to the other side, which strike gently, and hold your rod at a bent a little while, and do not pull, for then you will spoil all; but you must first tire them, before they can be landed, for they are very shy.

If there be any carps in the river, it is an even lay that you take one or more of them; and if there be any pike or perch, they will be sure to visit the ground-bait, though they will not touch it; being drawn thither by the great resort of the small fish; and until you remove them, 'tis in vain to think of taking the bream or carp.

In this case, bait one of your hooks with a small bleak, roach, or gudgeon, about two foot deep from your float, with a little red worm at the point of your hook, and if a pike be there, he will be sure to snap at it.

This sport is good till nine in the morning; and in a gloomy day, till night: but however it is good to withdraw, and about four o'clock in the afternoon, cast in the remainder of your malt, and proceed as before; but do not frequent the place too much, lest the fish grow too cunning for you.

BREAST of a horse. See **COUNTER**.

BREASTS, part of the bow of a saddle. See **BOWS**.

BREAST-PLATE, or **Tree**; is the strap of leather that runs from one side of the saddle to the other, over the horses breast, in order to keep the saddle tight, and hinder it to slide backwards when the horse goes upon a rising-ground.

BREATH,

B R E

BREATH, or wind.

This word signifies sometimes the easy respiration of a horse, and sometimes it implies the ease and rest, or repose of a horse.

As, give your horse breath, do not ride him down: give that leaping horse a long breathing time between the turns or repetitions of his manage.

This barb has always held his wind equally upon his manage.

This horse is master of his wind or breath. This last expression is applied to horses that snort, and our Jockeys take snorting, for a sign of a long winded horse. See SNORT.

BREED is a place where mares for breed, and stallions are kept in order to raise a stud. Hence they say,

To keep a breed, to govern and manage a breed.

All the mares in this breed have taken; *i. e.* they are with foal.

To make a good breed, you cannot chuse a better stallion than a Spanish horse, nor better stud mares than Naples mares.

BREEDING *of horses*, in order to the raising a good and beautiful race of horses, it is necessary to choose for a stallion a fine barb, free from hereditary infirmities, such as weak eyes, bad feet, spavins, purfiness, chest foundring, &c. only with this distinction, that defects which happen by accident are not to be accounted hereditary.

Having provided your self with a stallion, let him be fed for three months before he is to cover the mare, with sound oats, peas, or beans, or with coarse bread and a little hay, but a good quantity of wheat straw; leading him out twice a day to water; and after he has drank, walk him up and down for an hour; but not so as to make him sweat.

If he is not thus put into heart before he covers, he would be in great danger of being pursey and broken winded, neither would he be able to perform the task; or at best the colts would be but pitiful and weak, and notwithstanding you have thus fed him well, you will take him in again very lean.

If you put him to many mares, he will not serve so long, so that his mane and tail will fall off through poverty, and you will find it a difficult task to recover him again for the year following.

Therefore let him have mares, but according to his strength that is twelve, fifteen, or at most twenty.

Mares go with foal eleven months, and as many days as they are years old: as for example, a mare of ten years old will carry her foal eleven months and ten days; so that a person may so

B R E

order his mares to be covered, that their foals may be brought forth at a time when there will be plenty of grass.

About the end of *May* put your mares into an inclosure capable of feeding them the whole time the stallion is to be with them, or that they are in season, in which inclosure all the mares are to be put together, as well those which are barren as others.

First take off your stallion's hind shoes, but let his fore shoes remain on for the preservation of his feet, then lead him forth, and let him cover a mare twice in hand to render him more calm and gentle; after which take off his bridle and turn him loose to the rest, with whom he will become so familiar, and treat them so kindly, that at last they will make love to him; so that not one of them will be horsed but as they are in season.

In this inclosure there should be built a little lodge, into which the stallion may retire to secure himself from the scorching heats; and in the lodge there should be a manger, to give him oats, peas, split beans, bread, or whatever else he likes best; and he must be thus entertained during the whole time he is with the mares, which will be about six or seven weeks.

You must likewise take care that the stallion and the mare have the same food, *viz.* if the former be at hay and oats, which is commonly called *hard meat*, the latter should likewise be at *hard meat*; otherwise, she will not so readily hold.

Mares which are very gross hold with much difficulty; but those that are indifferently fat and plump conceive with greatest ease.

To bring a mare in season, and make her retain, let her eat for eight days before she is brought to the horse, about two quarts of hemp seed in the morning, and as much at night.

If she refuse it, mix it with a little bran or oats, and if the stallion eat also of it, it will contribute much to generation.

As for the age of the *stallion*, he should not cover before he is six years old nor after he is fifteen; but the last may be regulated according to his strength and vigour.

As for the mares they should not be covered before they are three years old; but in this respect you may take measures from the goodness of the mares, and the foals that they bring forth.

Such persons as are desirous to have a male off-spring, may observe the following rule.

“ The mare then is to be brought in season, and covered very early in the morning, at any time from the fourth of the moon to the full, but never in the decrease; and thus she will not fail to bring forth a male colt.” The truth of which will appear from a little experience.

In

B R I

In the last place you may furnish your self with young breeding mares from your own race ; which being sound and of a good breed, will bring forth more beautiful foals, than any other. But you are not to make use of your colts for stallions ; because they will much degenerate from the goodness of true barbs, and at last become like the natural race of the country,

It is therefore advisable never to chuse a stallion from your own breed ; but rather to change him for a good barb or *Spanish* horse, yet still make choice of the finest mares of your own stock to breed upon.

BRIDLE is so termed when all it's appurtenances are fixed together in the several parts of it for the government of a horse, and they are these : 1. The bitt or snaffle which is the iron work put into a horse's mouth of which there are several forts which see under the article BITT.

2. The head-stall, being two small leathers that come from the top of the head to the rings of the bitt.

3. Fillet, that which lies over the forehead under the foretop, if the horse have trappings ; this is usually adorned with a rose, or the like, or leather set with studs.

4. The throat band, being that leather which is buttoned from the head band under the throat.

5. Reins, the long thong of leather that comes from the rings of the bitt, and being cast over the horse's head, the rider holds them in his hands whereby he guides the horse as he pleases.

6. The button and loop at the end of the reins, by which it is fastned to the ring of the bitt, the other end of the reins having only a button so large that it cannot go thro' the ring of the bitt on the other side, this is called a running rein, by which a horse is led at a good distance, and has liberty to leap a ditch, or mount a hedge.

7. The nose band, a leather that goes over the middle of the nose, and through the loops at the back of the head-stall, and so buckled under the cheeks, this is usually adorned as the fillet if the horse be trapped and studded.

8. A trench.

9. A cavefan, being a false rein to hold or lead a horse by.

10. A martingal, which is a thong of leather, the one end fastned under the horse's cheeks, and the other to his girth between his legs to make him rein well to cast up his head.

11. Chaff-halter, a woman's bridle is the same only it is double reined.

BRILLANT ; a brisk, high mettled, stately horse is called brilliant, as having a raised neck, a fine motion, excellent haunches upon which he rises tho' never so little put on.

B U C

To BRIM, a fow is said to brim, or to go to brim, that is ready to take boar.

BRING, in a horse, is to keep down the nose of a horse that bores and tosses his nose up to the wind, this we do with a good strong branch. See BANQUET and WIND.

BROOK HAWKING is a sport that is managed with the *Gerfalcon* and *Jerkin*, the *Haggard Falcon*, and the *Tassel Gentle*.

There are in many places, ponds enclosed with woods, bushes, and the like obscurities, so that they are concealed from passengers, and such places *ducks* do much resort to.

For the training up a hawk to take them, observe the following directions:

The hawk being in all points ready to fly, be provided with two or three live train ducks, and let a man lie concealed in some bush by the pond with them; so that when you come to the place and the hawk being ready for the sudden flight, beat the bush where the man lies concealed with the ducks with a pole, who must cast forth one of them, to the end that the hawk may think it is put up by you, and if she takes it with a courage, reward her well.

This is the way to train up a *goss-hawk*, to catch a fowl at sowce.

The hawk being trained to this, you may boldly go with her to the ponds where the fowl lies, and creeping close to the place raise them by beating about with a pole, and when any rise, let go your hawk from your fist, and if she seize, let her take pleasure thereon and reward her well.

It is very necessary to have a spaniel with you: for if the hawk is well acquainted with the sport, she will be so nimble at the catch, that they will fall into the water together, and by that means the fowl will go to plunge, so that then the spaniel will be of good service, and will not displease the hawk neither.

BROUILLER, is when a horse, put to any manage, plunges, traverses, and appears in disorder. Hence they say,

This gentleman is not master of his legs, he makes his horse brouiller, *i. e.* he makes him traverse and cast down his head, the spur being too hard for him.

BUCK HUNTING. Having under the articles HART and STAG (which see) treated so largely, as to their nature, and the ways of hunting them, there needs the less to be said as to *hunting the buck*, and the rules for taking him: for he that can hunt a *hart* or *stag* well, will not hunt a *buck* ill.

Besides, *fallow deer* being common among us, and those usually in Parks and enclosures of divers situations and statures, different

B U C

different from one another ; it would be a difficult task to give instructions for every particular.

And indeed it is the proper business of every keeper of parks, &c. to understand the nature and craft of his deer in hunting ; all which are to be acquired by experience more than reading ; however I shall briefly inform you of what relates to *buck hunting* as now practised.

There is no such skill and art required in lodging a buck, as in harbouring a *hart* or *stag*, nor so much drawing after, but you may judge by the view, and observe what grove or coppice he enters ; for a *buck* does not wander up and down as the hart, nor change his layer so often, neither use so many crossings, doublings, shifts, and devices, nor doth he flee so far before the *hounds*, but avoids the highway and open places, as much as he can ; he is not so crafty or so strong to beat a river, or to stay so long at soil ; neither is he so free to take a great river, nor must it be deep ; but being close hunted, he will flee into such strong coverts as he is accustomed to, and it has been observed, that some bucks that have leaped over a park pale, after a ring or two, have returned of themselves, chusing rather to die where they have been acquainted, than in a strange place.

The buck *groans* and *trots* as the hart *belleth*, and with a worse noise and rattling in the throat, leaps lighter at the rut than the *stag* ; neither will these two beasts come near one another's layer, and they have seldom or never any other relays than the old hounds.

They also herd more than the *hart* does, and lie in the driest places, tho' if they are at large they herd but little from *May* to *August*.

Now the greatest subtlety a huntsman needs to use in hunting the *buck*, is to have a care of hunting counter or change, because of the plenty of *fallow deer* that use to come more directly upon the hounds than the red deer does.

The does begin to fawn about the end of *May*, and continue till *Midsummer*.

The bucks mew or shed their horns or heads every year about, or in, *April*, and part of *May*, and their new ones are burnisht about the end of *August*.

The buck makes his *Fewmishing* in divers manners and forms as the *hart*, according to the diversity of food, and the time of the day, morning and evening ; but they are most commonly round.

The buck comes in season the eighth of *July*, and goes out at *holy rood*, which is the fourteenth of *September*.

The *doe* comes in season when the buck goes out, and goes out at *Twelfth-tide*.

B U L

In buck hunting the same hounds are used as in running the stag. In forests and chaces as they lie at *layer*, so they are hunted.

In parks where they are inclosed, the sport is not so diverting by reason of the greater change and foil, unless they break out and run the country, which they seldom do.

But deer that lie out tho' near the park, make for the generality better chaces than forest deer.

The keeper shooting a BUCK to be run down.

In order to facilitate the chace, the keeper commonly selects a fat buck out of the herd, which he shoots to maim him, and then he is run down by the hounds.

As to the method of hunting the *buck*; the company generally go out very early for the benefit of the morning, sometimes they have a deer ready lodged, if not, the coverts are drawn till one is rowz'd; or sometimes in a park a deer is pitched upon, and forced from the herd, then more hounds are laid on to run the chace, if you come to be at a fault, the old staunch hounds are only to be relied upon till you recover him again: if he be sunk and the hounds thrust him up, it is called an *imprime*, and the company all sound a *recheat*; when he is run down, every one strives to get in to prevent his being torn by the hounds.

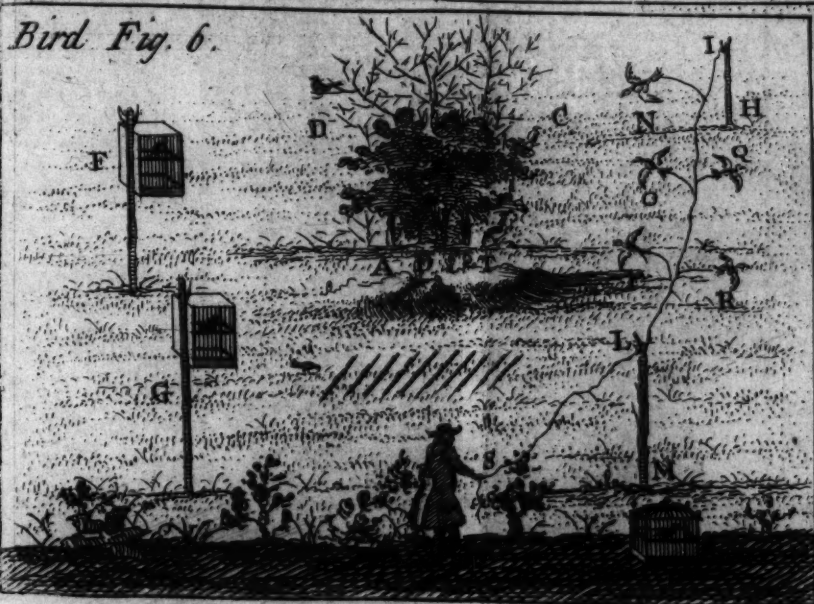
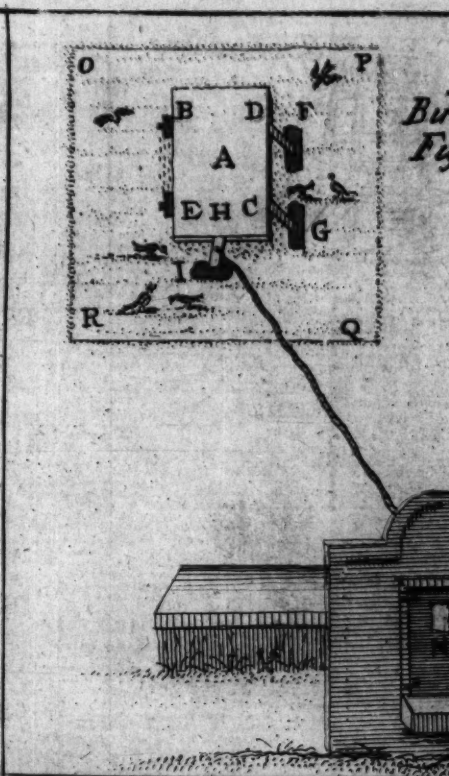
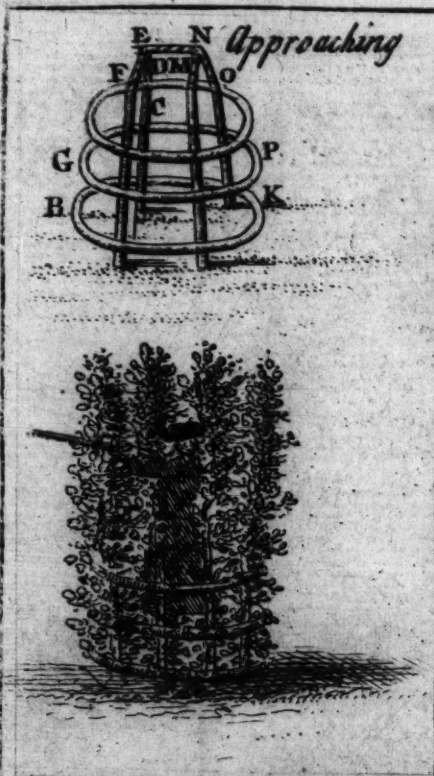
Fallow deer seldom or never standing at bay.

He that first gets in, cries hoo-up, to give notice that he is down and blows a death. When the company are all come in they paunch him and reward the *hounds*; and generally the chief person of quality amongst them *takes say*, that is cuts his belly open, to see how fat he is,

When this is done, every one has a chop at his neck, and the head being cut off is shewed to the *hounds* to encourage them to run only at male deer, which they see by the horns, and to teach them to bite only at the head: then the company all standing in a ring, one blows a single death, which being done all blow a double recheat, and so conclude the chace with a general halloo of hoo-up, and depart the field to their several homes, or to the place of meeting; and the huntsman, or some other, hath the deer cast cross the buttocks of his horse, and so carries him home.

BULLFINCH, a cage bird; but has neither song nor whistle of his own, but is very apt to learn if taught by mouth.

BULLHEAD, or **MILLER'S THUMB**; a fish that has a broad head, and wide mouth, with broad fins near the eyes, and has many under the belly; and instead of teeth, has rough lips



P
F
G
Q

Bird
Fig. 4.

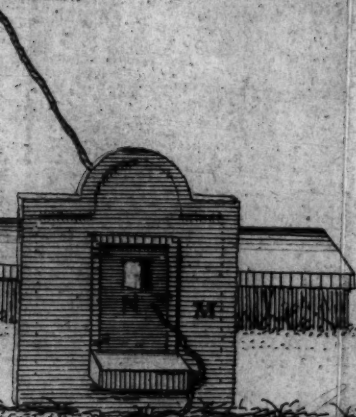


Plate 2

Bird Fig. 5

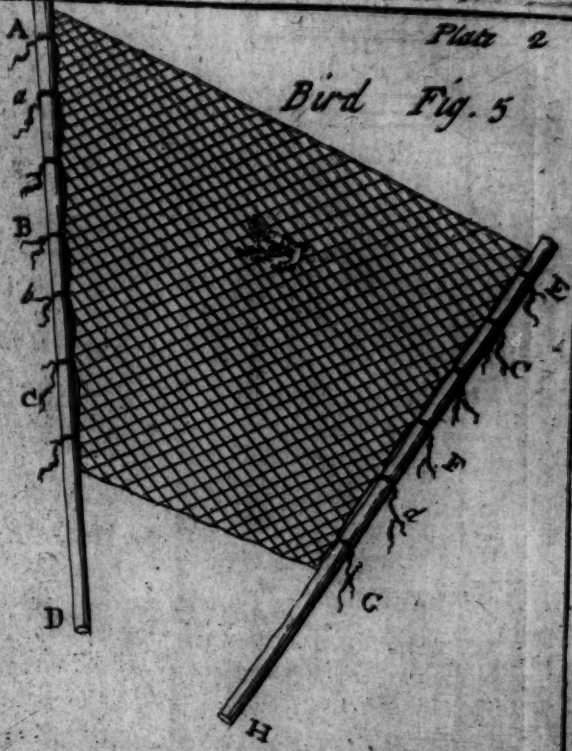
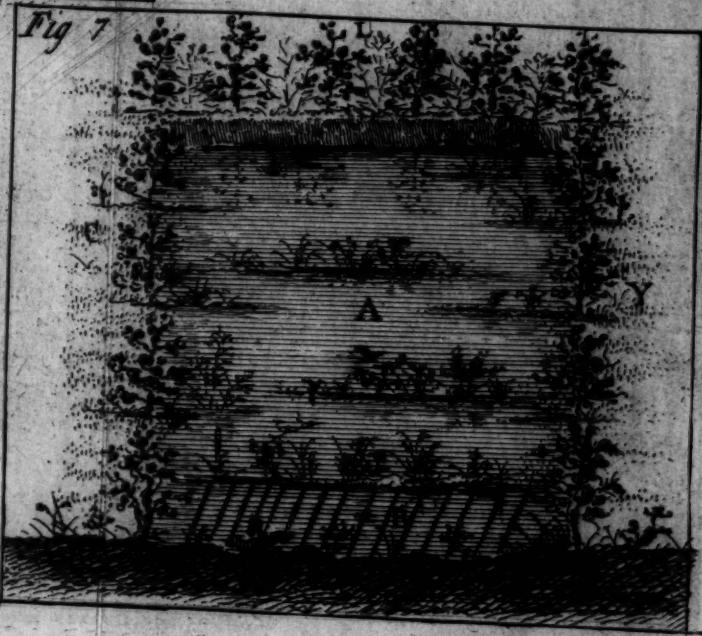


Fig 7



B U T

lips which assist him in napping at the bait: he has also fins on his back, and one below the belly, and his tail is round, and his body all over covered with whitish, blackish, and brownish spots: they begin to spawn about *April*, and are full of spawn all the summer season.

The manner of fishing for them is as follows.

The common abode or haunt of this fish is in holes, or among stones in clear water, in summer; but in winter they take up their quarters with the eel in mud. They are a simple and lazy fish, and are easily caught in summer, and you may see him in hot weather sunning himself on a flat gravelly stone, upon which you may put your hook, which must be baited, with a very small worm near the mouth, and he will seldom refuse the bait, so that the veriest bungling Angler may take him. It is indeed an excellent fish for taste; but of so ill a shape that many women do not care to dress it.

BURR the round knob of a horn next a deer's head.

BURROCK, is a small weir or dam, where wheels are laid in a river for taking of fish.

BURROWS, holes in a warren which serve as a covert for hares, rabbits, &c.

BUSTARD, a kind of great sluggish fowl.

BUTTERESS is an instrument of steel fitted to a wooden handle, with which they pare the foot, or cut the hoof of a horse.

BUTWIN or **BUTWINK**, a kind of bird so called.



CADDOW,

C A G

CADDOW, a bird, otherwise called a cough, or jack-daw.

CADENCE, is an equal measure or proportion, observed by a horse in all his motions, when he is thoroughly managed, and works justly at gallop, *terra a terra*, and the airs; so that his times or motions have an equal regard to one another; that one does not embrace, or take in more ground than the other, and that the horse observes the ground regularly.

Horsemen say, This horse works always upon the said cadence; he follows the cadence; he does not change his cadence; he remains equally between the two heels.

He is fine and gentle in all his aids; and when put to the manage, he never interrupts his cadence.

This horse has so fine a mouth, and works with so much liberty in his shoulders and haunches, that he keeps his cadence with great facility: nay, he takes a very good cadence upon his airs, without stepping false, without jumbling, and works equally in both hands. See COUNTER-TIME and TIME.

CADEW, the straw-worm, an insect.

CADGE, a round frame of wood, upon which Falconers carry their hawks.

CAGE for partridges; a device to keep them, and of which there are several sorts.

We shall begin with that invented to contain a hen partridge, that serves to call cock partridges to her in order to take them.

This cage is pretty enough, takes up but little room, is very portable, and is but little seen: 'tis made of an old hat, whose brim is cut off, and the bottom is wood, which shuts and opens, to put in and take out the partridge; and a hole must be made in the bottom of the hat, which is uppermost, through which the bird puts out it's head to call.

You have also a hook at it, made of a thick iron wire, to hang the cage upon as there is occasion; and you must make one or two at the place marked V, to the end the bird may eat and drink; and therefore a piece of wood is fastened or nailed at the door below, of about half a foot in length, pointed at the ends, in order to fix it in the ground, that so the cage may be kept in good order when you have a mind to use it.

This sort of cage is very proper for the purpose 'tis designed.

And yet you keep the partridges in it only when you carry it to call; for in the day-time you are to keep them in a great cage, or room.

The

C A G.

The following figures represent other sorts of cages; and the most common is that we are about to describe next, and may in short serve for a model to make others by.

The cage is made of two pieces of the bottom of a cask, marked with the letters AHC, and BGD, cut round at the top, AB.

They should be nine inches long, and a foot broad; they fasten them at the lower part to another piece of wood of the same breadth, and fifteen or eighteen inches in length: you have a lash, or small wooden ligature at top, marked with the letters AB, fifteen or eighteen inches long, and half an inch broad, and thick; which is nailed to two round boards, in order to keep them together: you must cover the void part of the cage with a green, or some dark grey coloured cloth, inclining to brown, and tacked with small nails: leave two or three holes at top, for the partridge to put her head through, when she has a mind to call or hearken.

A little door must be made at F, one of the end-boards; for example, at that marked with the letter G, that you may put in, and take out the birds: you must make two openings in the other board, as you see represented by the letter H, they must be long and narrow, that the partridge may be able to eat and drink: you must fasten a thong, girth, or cord, to the ends AB, and put the same about your neck, when you have a mind to carry the cage from one place to another.

You may observe the rest from the cut.

We present you next with another very useful sort of cage for the bird, when wild, because she will struggle in the carriage, and be so fatigued when you come to the designed place, (as has been frequently experienced) that she will not vouchsafe to call: so you must be obliged to set the cage on the ground, in order to use her the next morning; because a fox, or some other voracious animal, may kill the bird: Here is a cage set forth by two figures; the second shews you the particular parts; and it is not yet covered with iron wire, as it ought to be when it is compleat: you may therefore take the model by it.

You must take two boards, EGAD, and EHYC, each of them about fifteen inches square, and have two bows of thick iron wire, made like a door, or rather like the two boards at the ends of the preceding cage; nail both the boards at the ends of the two square boards, and fix a board over, of the same breadth as the other two, and a foot and a half square; in such a manner, that the side of the bows which is square, may be level with the great board; then sew the cloth over the two bows, in order to form a cage, quite the same as the second above, between the two boards, AK, BY, so that the three boards

C A L

boards are extended quite round about, three or four fingers breadth over; and pieces of wood, as at GHEF, must be placed at all the corners, to keep the sides tight, and bind the cloth in the middle; then cover the whole with brass or iron wire, of the thickness of a common little pin; and to accommodate your bird with food, you must have a small drawer, or little trough, with an eating and drinking-place, at the side C, between the cage and iron wire, at the little letter *a*; and therefore that cloth side of the cage adjoining to the feeding-place, must be open with bars, so distanced from each other, that the partridge may easily put her head between them in order to eat and drink.

CALADE, or *Basse*; is the descent, or sloping declivity, of a rising manage ground; being a small eminence, upon which we ride down a horse several times, putting him to a short gallop, with his fore-hams in the air, to make him learn to ply and bend his haunches, and form his stop upon the aids of the calves of his legs, the stay of the bridle, and the cavesson, seasonably given: for without these aids he would throw himself too much upon his shoulders, and not bend his haunches.

Horsemen say, Work your horse in a calade, after the Italian way; ride him straight, and then you make good use of the calade.

These calades will discourage your horse, and perhaps ruin his hams; for you have pitched upon too deep a declivity: and besides, you do not make the aids of the bridle accord with those of the calves of your legs.

CALF, [*among Hunters*] a male hart, or a hind of the first year.

CALKINS, a sort of horse-shoes for frosty weather, are apt to make horses tread altogether upon the toes of their hind feet, and trip; they also occasion bleyemes, and ruin the back-finews; nevertheless they are necessary in a time of frost: and it is more expedient that a horse should run such a risk, than that the rider should be in continual danger of breaking his limbs.

Whenever there is occasion to use them, order the Farrier to pare the horn a little low at the heel, and turn down the sponge upon the corner of the anvil, so as to make the calkin in the form of the point of a hare's ear; which will do little damage: whereas the great square calkins quite spoil the foot.

CALL, [*with Hunters*] a lesson blown upon the horn to comfort the hounds.

CALLS, natural and artificial; a sport practised much during the wooing season of partridges, especially for taking cock partridges;

C A L

partridges; for which they put a hen into a cage, to call and bring them near.

This way in general of taking them, is indeed laborious, and requires much exactness, as to the artificial part in imitating their voices; and at least, you can commonly pretend to take but one at a time.

Partridges begin to pair about *February*, or the beginning of *March*, if the weather is not cold, and continue in their wooing till the end of *July*.

A great many are of opinion, that you will destroy the breed by taking the cocks in this manner; but it is a mistake, for they do more mischief to the hens they couple with, than good, hindering them to sit; and will break their eggs if they cannot find them: and in the nest we often find but small coveys of young partridges; which happens so, because the cock being too hot, and too assiduously pursuing the hen that would lay, she cannot disengage herself from him, and get to her nest; and so chuses rather to lose her egg, than go thither in sight of the cock that would break all the nest.

'Tis farther to be observed, that the cock never knows his hen's nest; and therefore 'tis more easy to take him when she sits; for believing she is lost, he goes to the first he meets with.

This sport may be practised every day, during the aforesaid wooing season, from day-break until sun-rising, and from sun-setting until night.

The ensuing figure represents the manner how to make them. Suppose the space from K to I, to be a hedge that incloses some piece of wheat, barley, or other grain; set your hen partridge in a thin, open, fine wire cage, so that she may be seen at a good distance out of the cage; the letters T U X, is the spot where she should be placed; then place your net, called a hallier, quite round, as you see it formed by the letters K L M N O P Q R S, each part about twenty foot distant from the cage, then retire behind the hedge: If any cock partridge on the ground calls, the hen will presently answer; nor will the cock fail to come to her; and five or six will sometimes come together, and fight with each other just under the net, which of them shall have the hen, until at length some of them finds themselves entangled: you must not presently fall forth in this case, for perhaps some more may be likewise ensnared, nor can they soon dis-entangle themselves.

The observing one caution will save a great deal of pains to the sportsman; and that is, let him never pitch in any place, but where he has heard some cock call; then pitch within sixty or eighty paces, that they may be within hearing of each other.

Let

C A L

Let the cage be coloured green, and let the bars be at such a distance, that the hen may thrust out her head and neck to hearken and call; and if you have well trained her to this sport, she will be industrious at it.

But as for cages for partridges, the reader is referred to that article.

Having done with the natural calls, we proceed to the artificial ones.

The following figures represents the form of them.

The first shews the outside, the second the inside; they are best made of box, walnut-tree, or such kind of hard wood, and formed of the bigness of an hen's egg, with two ends, A B, bored through from end to end; and about the middle D C, there must be a hole about the bigness of a six-pence, hollowed within to the bottom; then have a pipe, of a swan's quill, and the bone of a cat's foot, opened at one end, which you must convey into the hole A, and so thrust it into the hole D, the other end of the bone A, must be stopped; then take a goose quill opened at both ends, which must be put in at the hole B, until the end C be the end D of the bone; then blowing at the end B, you make the noise as the cock partridge does, which varies much from the call of the hen; and you must remove farther or nearer the end C of the quill, from and to the end of the bone B, until you have found the exact note; for it is not soon done: The call being fixed, and you expert in the notes, get a net, called a pocket net, the form of which is here described.

To this net fix a pliant stick, of about four or five foot long; and so you may go abroad early in the morning, and late in the evening, or as occasion serves: when you hear a partridge call, you have the manner of pitching the net, and the placing your self, represented in the said figure: For example, suppose you hear the partridge call at A, hide your self flat upon your belly at B, having planted your net just in the way, or furrow, between your self and the partridge, but within ten or twelve foot of the net; especially if there be any bush, or advantage of ground to shelter you. The way to set the net, is to tie the packthread number 1. which passes into the buckle, number 2. of the net, into the end of the stick, which must be stuck in the ground; and so bending it like a bow, fasten the other thread to the said stick in the ground, to the other side, or furrow: having in like manner tied it to the end of the packthread, numb. 3. which passes through the buckle, numb. 4. so that the two buckles 2. and 4. may come pretty near each other; then take one end of the pocket net, numb. 5. and 6. and cast it over the bended stick, so that it may lie thereon: the other end may lie on the ground,

C A N

ground, in such manner, that if any thing endeavours to pass by that way, it must needs run into the net.

Every thing being in order, and hearing the partridge call, you must return two or three answers louder or softer according to the distance from whence you hear the call, only as loud as to be heard, and the partridge will presently make near you, then give him a soft call: when he has answered the first call, he will begin to run, and coming near, the net will make a little pause and rush on so, that the upper part will fall on him, and entangle him, then take him out, and you may be able to take several after this method: but this way of taking them lasts only during the time of their breeding, which is *April May, June, and July*.

There is another way of taking partridges with the call and a broad net; having found out your partridge with a call aforesaid, pitch your broad net, which should be fourteen or fifteen yards long, seven or eight deep; spread this over the ground near them, the length ways to them, then peg down the net to the ground on all sides except that towards them, and raise them up in the midst, by a stick about four foot long with a notch in the top, the better to hold the line or net from slipping, and bend the stick from the net to make it stiffer, which stick must be thrust into the ground the better to hold.

When you have in this manner fixed your net, you must either have a natural or artificial stalking horse to drive them into your net, but the natural one is reputed the best if trained up for the sport.

CANARY-BIRD, an admirable singing bird, of a green colour, that takes it's name from the place from whence they first came, *viz.* from the *Canary Isles*, and no where else; but of late years, there is a sort of birds, that are brought in abundance from *Germany*, especially from *Tirol*, and are therefore called *German birds*; being a much better sort than the other, tho' their originals are supposed to have been first brought from the *Canaries*.

These birds, that is the cocks, never grow fat, and they cannot be distinguished by some country people from common green-birds; tho' the *Canary-birds* are much lustier, have a longer tail, and differ much in the heaving of the passages of the throat, when they sing.

But to make a right choice of this bird, and to know when he has a good song; in the first place, let him be a long bird, standing strait and not crouching, but sprightly like a sparrow-hawk, standing with life and boldness, and not subject to be fearful.

These

C A N

These birds being so much esteemed for their pleasing song are sometimes sold at a high price, at ten or fifteen shillings a piece, more or less according to the goodness and excellency of their notes, there being a great difference in them.

It is very advisable before you buy, first to hear them sing, for the buyer will then please his ears; for one fancies a song bird, another a very harsh bird; if he be not so sweet: tho' undoubtedly the best *Canary-bird* in general, is that which has the most variety of notes, and holds out in singing the longest.

In order to know whether a bird is in health before you buy him; take him out of the store cage, and put him in a clean cage singly, and if he stand up boldly without crouching or shrinking in his feathers, and look with a brisk eye, and not subject to clap his head under his wing, it is a sign that he is in good health; but yet he may be an unhealthy bird still.

But the greatest matter is to observe his dunging; if he bolts his tail like a nightingale, after he has dunged, it is a great sign that he is not in perfect health, tho' he may sing at present and look pretty brisk, you may assure your self, it will not be long before he is sick; but if his dung be very thin like water, or of a slimy white without any blackness in it, it is a sign of approaching death.

When a *Canary-bird* is in perfect health, his dung lies round and hard, with a fine white on the outside and dark within; dries quickly, and the larger the dung is the better it is with him, so that it be long, round and hard; but as to a seed bird; he very seldom dungs so hard, unless he be very young.

Canary-birds are subject to many diseases, as imposthumes, which affect the head and cause them to fall suddenly from the perch, and die in a short time if not speedily cured.

The most approved medicine is an ointment made of fresh butter and capons grease, melted together, with which anoint the top of the bird's head, for two or three days together, and it will dissolve it, and cure him; but if you have let it alone too long, then after you have anointed him three or four times, see whether the place of his head be soft; and if so open it gently and let out the matter, which will be like the yolk of an egg, when you have done this, anoint the place, and this will immediately cure him without any more to do.

And if you find the imposthume at any time return, do as before directed; you must also give him *figs*, and in his water let him have a slice or two of *liquorish*, with white sugar candy in his water.

Some are so curious as to breed these birds in *England*, and they have excelled all others; now for the ordering of these birds when

C A N

when they begin to build, or are intended for breeding, make a convenient cage, or prepare a room that may be fit for that purpose, taking care to let it have an outlet towards the rising of the sun; where you must have a piece of wire; that they may have egress and regress at their pleasure: when this has been done, set up some brooms, either *beath* or *frail*, in the corners of it, opening them in the middle, and if the room be pretty high two or three brooms may be set under one another, but then you must make partitions with boards over the top of every broom, otherwise they will dung on one another's heads; neither will they endure to see themselves so near each other's nests; for the cock and hen will be apt to fly on an hen that is not matcht to them, when they see them just under their nest; which many times causes the spoiling of their eggs and young ones.

In the next place you must cause something to be made so convenient, and of such bigness, as may hold meat a considerable time, that you may not be disturbing them continually, and a proper vessel for water also; and the place where the seed is intended to be put, must be so ordered that it may hang out of the reach of the mice, for they are destroyers of them: you must likewise prepare some stuff of several sorts of things, such as cotton, wool, small dead grass, elk's hair, and a long sort of moss that grows a long by ditch sides or in the woods, for them to build their nests withal.

Dry them well before you put them together, then mingle all well, and put them up into a net like a cabbage net, hanging it so that they may with ease pull it out.

You must also set perches about the room, and if it be large enough set a tree in the middle of it, that so they may take the more pleasure, and always remember to proportion your birds, according to the largeness of the room, or rather let it be understocked than overstocked, for they are birds that love their liberty.

When you perceive them to begin to build and carry stuff, give them once a day or in two days at least, a little greens and some coarse sugar; for that will cause a slipperiness in the body; that so the eggs may come forth without injuring the birds; for they die many times in laying the first egg, which is a loss to the breeder; first in respect to his first breed, then to the unpairing of the cock, to which you ought to put another hen, whether he will pair or no: but it would be much better if that cock were taken out, than suffered to continue in the breeding place, especially if it be small; but in a large place with pairs he cannot do that injury, and it will be a difficult matter to distinguish which is the cock of that hen that died, and as difficult to take him in a large place, without doing more

H

injury

C A N

injury than the bird comes to : so that it will be best to let him rest to the end of the year, when if you leave but two or three pair together, it will be the best way to take him out, and match him with another hen, and then put him in again.

Besides when you find that they have built their nests, the nets that have their breeding stuff in them, may be taken away for they will be apt to build upon their eggs with new stuff, if they do not lay presently.

As to the time of their breeding, it is usually three times a year viz. in *April*, *May*, and *June*, and sometimes in *August*: and as for ordering the young ones, they must not be left too long in the nests ; for if so they are very apt to grow sullen, and will not feed kindly ; therefore they are to be taken out at about nine or ten days old, and put into a little basket and covered over with a net, or else they will be apt to jump out upon the first opening of the basket and be hurt, if they fall down.

They must also be kept very warm for the first week : for they will be very tender, subject to the cramp, and not digest their meat, if they take cold.

And when they are taken from the old *Canaries*, let it be in the evening, and if possible, when the old ones are out of fight ; otherwise they will be very apt to take distaste, when they sit again and have young ones, and ready at every fright to forsake both their young and their eggs.

Then as to the preparation of their meat ; soak some of the largest rape-seed in water for twenty or twenty four hours ; but if the water be a little warm twelve hours may be enough, then drain the water from the seed, and put a third part of white bread to it, and a little canary-seed in flower, and mix them all together.

Then with a small stick, take up a little at the end of it, and give every bird some, two or three times over ; for if you overcharge their stomachs at first, they seldom thrive after it.

For you must know that the old ones give them but a little at a time, and the meat they receive from them, is warmed in the stomach before they give it them, and then all rape is hulled, which lies not so hard at the stomach, as those seeds which have the skin on.

Neither must their meat be made too dry ; for then they will be apt to be vent burnt, because all seeds are hot.

For it is observable that the old ones, constantly drink after they have eaten feeds, and a little before they feed their young ones : and they commonly sit a quarter of an hour or more feeding them, to keep them warm, that the meat may the better nourish them ; therefore

C A N

therefore when you have fed them, let them be covered up very warm, that their meat may the better digest with them.

Lastly, not to admit the several names of these birds at different times and ages: such as are above three years old are called *Rants*, those above two are named *Erisses*, and those of the first year that the old ones bring up are called *Branchers*; those that are new flown and cannot feed themselves *Pushers*, and those that are bred up by hand *Nestlings*.

CANCELLIER, a term used in Falconry, when a light flown hawk in her stooping, turns two or three times upon the wing, to recover her self before she seizes.

CANKER [*in hawks*] a distemper breeding in the throat and tongue, proceeding from foul feeding, and their meat not being washed in cold water in summer time, and in warm in winter, which engenders a gross, slimy matter in their guts, which when moved fumes up into the head, and distilling thence down again produces heat of the liver, and so breaks out in the throat and tongue.

The cure; anoint the throat of the hawk with oil of almonds or olives two or three times a day together, and feed her with mutton, pullets, or flesh dipt in oil.

When you perceive that the canker is grown white, slit it open along the side of her tongue with a sharp penknife, and gently scrape away the whiteness, and dry up the blood with cotton or lint, and let her meat be washed in oil till she is cured.

CANKER [*in horses*], is a very loathsome sorrhance, which if it continue long uncured, so festers and putrifies the part, that it will eat to the very bone; and if it happens to come upon the tongue, will eat it asunder; lighting upon the nose, it devours the gristle through, and if it comes upon any part of the flesh, it will fret and gnaw it a great breadth. It will be easily known, for the places where it is will be raw and bleed much, and a white scurf will often grow upon the infected part.

This disease may be caused many ways, either by the engendering of melancholy and foul blood in the body, by unwholesome meat and by some sharp and salt humours, proceeding from cold not long before taken, which will render his breath very stinking.

When this disease is in the mouth, it will be full of blisters, and the beast will not be able to eat his provender.

It proceeds from crude and undigested meat, rankness of food, or unnatural heat coming from the stomach, and sometimes from cold taken in the head; where the rheum binds upon the roots and kernels of the tongue, which has, as it were strangled and made straight the passages of the stomach; when the eyes

C A N

are infected with it, which proceeds from a rank blood, descending from the head, it breeds a little worm like a pismire, that grows in the corner next his nose, and it will eat it in time, &c.

It may be known by the great and small pimples within and without the eyelids.

The cure; there are many things in general good for the cure of this distemper, in any part of a horse's body; but more particularly for that in the mouth and nose.

Take half a pint of white-wine, the quantity of a walnut of roch alum, half a spoonful of bay salt, one spoonful of English-honey, red sage, rue, rib-wort, bramble leaves, of each a like quantity; boil them in the white-wine till one fourth part be consumed, and inject this water into the fore, or if it be in the mouth, wash the place with a clout fastened to a stick, and dress him with it twice a day or oftner.

2. Take the juice of plantain, as much vinegar, and the same weight of the powder of alum, and anoint the fore with it two or three times a day.

3. Reduce a like quantity of ginger and alum to a fine powder, mix them well together till they are like a salve, and very thick, and anoint the part after it has been very well washed with alum water and vinegar.

4. Take half a pound of alum, a quarter of a pint of honey, columbine and sage leaves, of each a handful; boil all in three pints of running water, till one point be consumed; this is good for a canker in the mouth particularly being washed with it morning and night.

5. *For foul ulcers, and to make the hair grow*: take a quart of tar, put to it half a pound of bear'sgrease, and an ounce of green copperas, a quarter of a pound of saltpetre, two ounces of wax, a quart of honey, a quarter of a pound of rosin, two ounces of verdegrease, and a quart of linseed oil, boil it till half be consumed, then strain the liquor and keep it close in a pot, to be used on occasion, warming it when you apply it to the fore.

CANKER in dogs; a distemper that seizes their ears: but does not much incommode them.

The cure, take two ounces of soap, the same quantity of oil of tartar, sulphur, sal-armoniac, and verdegrease, incorporate all together with vinegar and aquafortis, with this rub the parts affected and it will cure.

CANNON-MOUTH of a bitt, is a round but long pieces of iron, consisting sometimes two pieces that couple and bend in the middle and sometimes only of one piece that does not bend, as in the cannon mouth a *trompe*.

Cannon mouths of all sorts are contrived to keep the horse in subjection; and are so contrived that they rise gradually towards

C A P

wards the middle, and ascend towards the palate; to the end that the void space left underneath may give some liberty to the tongue.

CAPARASSON, or horse cloth, is a sort of cover for a horse.

For led horses it is commonly made of linnen cloth, bordered round with woollen, and inriched with the arms of the master upon the middle which covers the croupe, and with two cyphers on the two sides.

The caparassons for the army are sometimes a great bear's skin, and those for stables are of single buckram in summer, and of cloth in winter.

CAPELET, a disease in horses, when the tip of the hock is moveable, and more swelled than ordinary; when it is small it does no great damage, but if it grow large it will be painful, and make a horse lose his belly.

CAPON, a cock chicken gelded as soon as left by the dam that being the best time, if his stones be come down, or else as soon as he begins to crow. They are of two uses.

The one is to lead chickens, ducklings, young turkeys, pea-hens, pheasants, and partridges, which a capon will do altogether both naturally and kindly, and by means of the largeness of his body will cover and brood thirty or thirty five of them.

Nay he will lead them forth more safely, and defend them much better against kites and buzzards than the hen.

Therefore the way to make him like them, is with a small fine briar, or else sharp nettles at night, beat and sting all his breast and nether parts, and then in the dark to seat the chickens under him, the warmth of which will take away the smart, so that he will much fall in love with them.

CAPRIOLES differ from croupades in this, that in a croupade the horse does not show his shoes; and from a balotade in this, that in a balotade he does not jerk out.

Your horse will never work well at caprioles unless you put him between two pillars, and teach him to raise first his fore quarters, and then his hind quarters, while his fore are yet in the air; for which ends you must give the aids of the whip and the poinson.

If you would teach your horse to make caprioles, and jerk out handsomely with his hinder feet, stay and help with your hand, and your heels.

This leaping horse takes to caprioles himself, for he makes equal leaps, and that upon the hand, *i. e.* without forcing the hand, and resting heavy upon the bridle. See to **YERK**.

C A R

CARACOL, is an oblique piste or tread traced out in a semi-round, changing from one hand to another, without observing a regular ground.

When horses advance to charge in battle, they sometimes ride up in caracols, to perplex the enemy, and make them doubtful whether they are about to take them in the front, or in the flank.

Caracol is a Spanish word ; and in that language signifies the motion that a squadron of horse makes when, upon an engagement, the first rank has no sooner fired their pistols, but they divide, and open into two half ranks, the one wheeling to the right, the other to the left, along the wings of the body, to the rear. Every rank observes the same order of firing ; and turning or wheeling from the front to rear, is called a caracol.

To caracol, is to go in the form of half rounds.

CAREER ; this word signifies both the ground that is proper for the manage and course, and race of a horse that does not go beyond two hundred paces.

This barb makes a very good career, from pacing to stopping.

This English horse does not finish his career ; that is, he does not finish his course with the same swiftness ; and does not move so short and swift at the middle and end, as at the beginning.

This Spanish horse is fit for the ring ; he has a short and swift career, and holds it an hundred paces.

CARP, is generally taken for the queen of fresh-water fish ; being subtil, and living longest of all fish (excepting the eel) out of it's proper element.

They are observed to breed several months in one year ; for which reason you shall scarce take either male or female without melt or spawn : but they breed more naturally in ponds than in running-water, and in the latter, very seldom, or never ; and where they frequent, their stock is innumerable.

CARP-FISHING.

A person who angles for a carp, must arm himself with a bundance of patience, because of his extraordinary subtilty and policy : they always chuse to lie in the deepest places, either of ponds or rivers, where there is but a small running stream.

Further, observe that they will seldom bite in cold weather ; and you cannot be either too early or too late at the sport in hot weather ; and if he bite you need not fear his hold, for he is one of those leather-mouthed fish, that have their teeth in their throat.

Neither

C A R

Neither must you forget, in angling for him, to have a strong rod and line ; and since he is so very wary, it will be proper to entice him, by baiting the ground with a coarse paste.

He seldom refuses the red worm in *March*, the caddis in *June*, nor the grasshopper in *June*, *April*, and *September*.

This fish does not only delight in worms, but also in sweet paste ; of which there is great variety : the best is made up of honey and sugar, and ought to be thrown into the water some hours before you begin to angle ; neither will small pellets, thrown into the water two or three days before, be the worse for this purpose ; especially if chicken's guts, garbage, or blood mixed with bran and cow-dung, be also thrown in.

But more particularly, as to a paste very proper for this use, you may make it in the manner following : take a sufficient quantity of bean-flour, or any other flour, and mingle it with the flesh of a cat, cut small, making it up with a compound of honey ; then pound all together in a mortar, so long, till they are so tough, as to hang upon the hook without washing off.

In order to effect which the better, mingle whitish wool with it ; and if you keep it all the year round, add some virgin's wax, and clarified honey.

Again, if you fish with gentles, anoint them with honey, and put them on your hook ; with a deep scarlet dipped in the like, which is a good way to deceive the fish.

Honey and crumbs of white bread mixed together, is also a very good paste.

To make carp fat, and very large ; when your pond, in *April*, begins to grow very low in water, rake all the sides of it with an iron rake, where the water is fallen away, then sow hay-seeds, and rake it well ; by this means, at the latter end of summer, there will be a good growth of grass ; which, when winter comes, and the pond begins to rise by rain to the top, it will overflow all that grass, and be a feeding-place for them, and make them exceeding fat. As for the way of taking a carp in a muddy pond, see *TENCH*.

In taking a carp either in pond or river, if the Angler intends to add profit to his pleasure, he must take a peck of ale-grains, and a good quantity of any blood, and mix with the grains, and bait the ground with it where he intends to angle.

This food will wonderfully attract the scale-fish, as carp, tench, roach, dace, and bream.

Let him angle early in a morning, plumbing his ground, and angling for a carp with a strong line, the bait must be either paste, or a knotted red worm, and by this means he will have sport enough.

C A S

CARRY *low*; a horse is said to carry low, that has naturally a soft, ill-shaped neck; and lowers his head too much.

All horses that arm themselves, carry low; but a horse may carry low without arming; for when he arms himself, his neck is too supple, and he wants to evade the subjection of the bridle: but when he carries low, he has his neck ill-placed, and ill-made.

To carry well, or in a becoming posture, is said of a horse, whose neck is raised, or arched; who holds his head high, without constraint, firm, and well placed.

To **CARRY**, [*with Falconers*] is a term used of a hawk; who is said to carry, when she flies away with the quarry.

CARRYING, [*with Hunters*] a term used of an hare; of which, when she runs on rotten ground, or in a frost sometimes, and it sticks to her feet, the huntsmen say, *She carries*.

CASTINGS, [*in Falconry*] a term, by which is understood any thing that is given an hawk, to cleanse and purge his gorge; of which there are two sorts.

1. Plumage, *i. e.* feathers, or cotton; the latter of which is most commonly given, in pellets about the bigness of an hazle nut, made of fine soft, white cotton, which, after she hath supped, you must convey into her gorge; and in the morning, observe diligently how she hath rolled and cast it, by which you will know whether she be in a good or bad condition; more particularly, if she cast it round, white, not stinking, nor very moist, or waterish, she may be concluded to be sound.

But if she roll it not well, but cast it long, with properties contrary to the former, then she is unsound, and full of diseases.

Besides, if her casting be either black, green, yellowish, slimy, or stinking, it shews that she is diseased.

The former casting is remedied by hot meats, and the latter by feeding her well, and washing her meats in cooling waters, as of endive, &c.

Give her also one or two castings of cotton, incorporating therewith incense and mummy; but if she still continue in the same condition, give her upward scourings, made as follows: *Take one scruple of aloes powdered, powder of cloves, four grains, and three of the powder of cubebs, all incorporated and wrapped in cotton.* Give it the hawk empty, having no meat in her pannel.

Then for the other casting of plumage, it is to be observed as the former: that is, in the morning, if you find the feathers round, and not stinking, it is a good sign; but if it be long, and slimy, with indigested flesh sticking thereto, and having an ill scent, 'tis exceeding bad. See MEWTS.

CASTING,

C A T

CASTING, or overthrowing, a horse: the way to do this, is to bring him upon some even ground, that is smooth and soft, or in the barn, upon soft straw; then take a long rope, double it, and cast a knot a yard from the bow; put the bow about his neck, and the double rope betwixt his fore-legs, about his hinder pasterns, and under his fet-locks; when you have done this, slip the ends of the rope underneath the bow of his neck, and draw them quick, and they'll overthrow him; then make the ends fast, and hold down his head, under which you must always be sure to have good store of straw.

If you would brand a horse on the buttock, or do any thing about his hinder legs, that he may not strike, take up his contrary fore-leg; and when you brand him, take care that the iron be red hot, and that the hair be both seared away, and the flesh scorched in every place, before you let him go.

CASTING-NET; there are two sorts of these fishing-nets, but much alike in use, and manner of casting out, wherein the whole skill of the work consists. *For the figure, see the plate.*

When this net is exactly thrown out, nothing escapes it, bringing all away within it's extent, as well weeds, sticks, and such like trash; but it is thereby often broke, therefore you must take great care in what bottoms you cast it, and how it is cast off, that the net may spread it's self in it's due dimensions.

Draw a loop, S, of the main cord, over your left arm, and grasp with your left hand, all the net from T to V, about three foot from the bottom, where the leads hang, and let the leads just rest on the ground: with your right hand take up about a third part, as from D to L, and cast it over your left shoulder, like a cloak; then take another third part, from A to I, in your right hand, and let the residue remain hanging down: when you have done this, stand upright, and being at the place where you intend to cast it off, incline yourself first, a little towards the left hand, that you may afterwards swing your self about to the right with the greater agility; and so let the net launch out into a pond: and take care that the threads, or meshes of the net, be not entangled with your buttons, lest you be in danger of being drawn in after it.

CASTREL, ζ a kind of hawk, which much resembles the

KASTREL, ς lanner in shape, but as to size is like the hobby: her game is the growse, a fowl common, and well known, in the north of England, and elsewhere: she will also kill a partridge; but yet is a bird of a very cowardly nature, and a slow goer afore-head, and therefore not much in use.

CAT, is a beast of prey, even the tame one; and said to be of three kinds. 1. The tame cat. 2. The wild wood cat. 3. The cat a mountain.

All

C H A

All which are of one nature, pretty much of the same shape, but differ in size; the wild cat being much larger than the tame, and the mountain cat larger than the wild cat.

The tame cat is a creature subtil and watchful, very familiar and loving to mankind, and a mortal enemy to rats, mice, &c. which it seizes on as it's prey.

Authors say, their eyes shine in the night; and that they see better at the full, and more dimly at the change of the moon; and that their eyes vary with the sun, the apple of it being long at sun-rising, round towards noon, and not to be seen at all at night; but the whole eye shining in the dark: which appearances are certainly true, but whether they answer to the times of the day is not so certain.

These animals usually generate in the winter-season, making a great yawling or crying; go fifty-six days, or eight weeks, with young; bring forth several at a time: they cover their excrements, and love to keep their old habitations. See **POLE-CAT**.

CATARACT, is a malady in the eyes of an hawk, not easily removed; and sometimes incurable, when it is too thick, and of a long continuance.

It proceeds from gross humours in the head, which frequently do not only dim, but extinguishes the sight; and sometimes the hood is the cause of this mischief.

The cure is to be effected, by scouring her two or three days with aloes or agaric: then take the powder of washed aloes, finely beaten, one scruple, and two scruples of sugar-candy; mingle these together, and with a quill blow it into the hawk's affected eye three or four times a day.

This is the gentlest, and most sovereign medicine of any yet known; but if this will not do, you must use stronger remedies, as the juice of celandine roots, bathing their eyes often with warm rose-water, in which the seed of fenugreek has been boiled.

CAVALCADOUR, is a word used at the court of *France*, and among the Families of the Blood, signifying the Querry; that is, Master of the horse.

Thus we say, the Querry Cavalcadour of the Queen's stables; of Monsieur, or the duke of *Orleans's* stables.

In *Italy*, this word signifies the persons who trot colts with bardelle saddles. See **BARDELLE**.

CAUTING-IRON, an iron with which farriers sear those parts of a horse that require burning.

CAWKING-TIME, [*in Falconry*] a hawk's treading time.

CHACK,

C H A

CHACK, or beat upon the hand : a horse is said to chack, or beat upon the hand, when his head is not steady, but he tosses up his nose, and shakes it all of a sudden, to avoid the subjection of the bridle.

A **CHACE**, \int is a station for wild beasts of the forest:

A **CHASE**, \int from which it differs in this respect; that it may be in the possession of a subject, which a forest, in it's proper and true nature cannot; neither is it commonly so large, nor endowed with so many liberties, as the courts of attachment, swain-mote, justice seat of Eyre, &c. On the other hand, a chace differs from a park, for that it is of a larger compass, having a greater variety of game, and more overseers, or keepers.

What sort of Chace is most proper first to train a hunting-horse to.

Some would have a horse that is designed either for a buck-hunter, or fox-hunter, to be used at first, and trained up in that sort of exercise: others are of opinion, that those chaces are too violent for a young horse, and therefore chuse to train him after harriers; which last seems to be the most eligible.

As for the stag, buck, and hind there is not much difference in the hunting of them; so that the inconveniencies from each chace, are in a manner the same also: for which soever you hunt, 'tis either in *covert*, or at *force*.

Now if a deer be hunted in a park, they usually chuse the most woody parts of it, as a refuge from the pursuits of their enemies; which is both unpleasant to the rider, and troublesome to the horse, to follow the dogs through the thick bushes: and besides, in parks the ground is usually full of mole-banks, trenches, &c. which is dangerous for a young horse to gallop on, till he has attained to some perfection in his stroke.

But if they be turned out of the park, and hunted at force, you will find, that as soon as you have unharboured, or rouzed them, they will immediately make out end-ways before the hounds, five or six, nay, sometimes ten miles; they following in full cry, so swiftly, that a horse must be compelled to run up and down hill without any intermission, leaping hedge, ditch, and dale; nay, often crossing rivers, to the great danger of the rider, as well as of the horse.

So that it should seem altogether improper to put a young horse to such violent labour at the first, till he hath been inured to hard service by practice and degrees.

And besides, the seasons for these chaces beginning about *mid-summer*, and ending at *holy-rood-tide*, is a part of the year in which the sun's heat is excessive; that besides the swiftness and

C H A

and violence of this chace, and the danger of cracking his wind, and bursting his belly; besides the straining of his limbs by such desperate riding, and creating in a young horse a loathsomeness to his labour, by undergoing such violent and unusual service; the sun's excessive heat does so scorch the earth, that a violent chace would hazard the melting of his grease: and the weight of the rider, by reason of the hardness of the ground, would occasion foundering, splints, and windgals; insomuch, that in a short time the horse would prove altogether useless.

Therefore it would be best, that those horses that are employed in this violent exercise, be horses of stayed years; and which have been trained to hunting by long practice and experience.

Young horses, (says the Duke of *Newcastle*) being as subject to diseases as young children: therefore he advises, that any man that would buy an horse for use in his ordinary occasions, as for journies, hawking or hunting, never to buy a horse till the mark be out of his mouth; and if he be sound of wind, limb, and sight, he will last you eight or nine years, with good keeping, and never fail you: And therefore, (he adds) I am always ready to buy for such purposes, an old nag, of some *Huntsman* or *Falconer*, that is sound; and that is the useful nag: for he gallops on all grounds, leaps over hedges and ditches; and such an one will not fail you in your journey, or any where, and is the only nag of use for pleasure or journey.

The next *chace* is that of the fox; which, altho' it is a recreation much in use, and highly applauded by the generality of the nobility and gentry, yet it is inconvenient for the training of a young horse; it being swift without respite, and of long continuance too; both which are distastful to a horse: but the greatest inconvenience that happens to a horse in this case, is, that when a fox is unkennelled, he seldom or never betakes himself to a champion country, but remains in the strongest coverts and thickest woods; so that a horse can have but little pleasure in accompanying the hounds, without running the risk of being stubbed, or other as dangerous accidents.

The fittest horses for this chace, are horses of great strength and ability; this chace beginning at *Christmas*, which is the worst time of riding, and ends at *Lady-day*, when the ground is best for it.

The next chace is the otter; which is not convenient for a horse, because he that will truly pursue this amphibious animal, must often swim his horse, to the equal hazard, both of the rider and the horse.

The

C H A

The hare therefore should seem the best chace, both for pleasure and delight ; and the most beneficial for training a young horse.

It is indeed swift, and of some indurance, like that of the fox, but far more pleasant to the horse, because hares commonly run the champion country ; and the scent not being so hot as that of the fox, the dogs are oftner at default, and by that means the horse has many sobs ; by which means he recovers wind, and regains new strength.

This chace begins at *Michaelmas*, and lasts till the end of *February*.

The best dogs to bring a horse to perfection of wind, and speed, are fleet, *northern hounds* ; for they, by means of their hard running, will draw him up to that extraordinary speed, that he will not have time to loiter ; and by continual practice, will be inured and habituated to the violence of their speed, that in a short time he will be able to ride on all sorts of ground, and be at such command upon the hand, that he will strike at what rate you please ; and three quarters speed will be less troublesome to him than a *Canterbury* gallop.

This may probably be one of the reasons why your northern breeders, for the generality, excel those of the south ; since certainly the speed of their hounds contributes much to the excellence of their horses, and renders them able to endure a four mile course without sobs ; which some horsemen call whole running.

CHAFFINCH, a singing bird, that takes it's name from it's delighting in chaff ; and by some admired for it's song, tho' it has not much pleasantness, or sweetness in it.

They are caught in plenty in flight-time ; but their nests are rarely found, tho' they build in hedges and trees of all sorts, and make them of moss and wool, or any thing almost they can gather up : they have young ones twice or thrice a year, which are seldom bred from their nest, as being a bird not apt to take another bird's song, nor to whistle ; so that it is best to leave the old ones to bring them up.

The *Essex* finches are generally allowed to be the best sort, both for length of song and variety, they ending with several notes that are very pretty.

It is an hardy bird, and will live almost upon any seeds, none coming amiss to him ; and he is seldom subject to any disease, as the canary bird and linnet are ; but he will be very lousy, if not sprinkled with a little wine, two or three times a month.

CHALLENGED COCK-FIGHT, is generally to meet with ten staves of cocks, and to make out of them
twen-

C H A

twenty-one battles, (more or less) the 'odd battle to have the mastery.

CHALLENGING, [*hunting-term*] is used of hounds and beagles, when at first finding the scent of their game, they presently open and cry; the huntsmen then say, they challenge.

CHANFRIN, is the fore part of a horse's head, extending from under the ears, along the interval, between the eye-brows, down to his nose.

CHANFRAIN-BLANCE. See **STAR**, or **BLAZE**.

CHANGE a horse, or change hand; is to turn, or bear the horse's head from one hand to another, from the right to the left, or from the left to the right.

You should never change your horse, without pushing him forward upon the turn; and after the turn, push him on straight, in order to a stop.

This horse changes from the right with an ugly grace. See **ENTIER**, **NAILS**, **WALK**, and a **PASSADE** of five times.

CHANNEL of a horse, is the hollow between the two bars, or the nether jaw bones, in which the tongue is lodged: for this purpose it should be large enough, that it be not pressed with the bitt-mouth, which should always have a liberty in the middle of it.

CHAPE, [*with Hunters*] the tip at the end of a fox's tail; so called, as the tail it self is termed breech, or drag.

CHAELET, is a couple of stirrup-leathers, mounted each of them with a stirrup, and joined at top in a sort of leather buckle, called the head of the chapelet, by which they are made fast to the pommel of the saddle, after being adjusted to the rider's length and bare: they are used, to avoid the trouble of taking up or letting down the stirrups, every time that a gentleman mounts on a different horse and saddle, and to supply the want of the academy saddles, which have no stirrups to them.

CHAPERON of a bitt-mouth, is a word only used for scatch-mouths, and all others that are not cannon-mouths, signifying the end of the bitt that joins to the branch, just by the banquet.

In scatch-mouths the chaperon is round, but in others it is oval; and the same part that in scatched, and other mouths, is called chaperon, is in cannon-mouths called, froncean.

CHARBON, (*i. e.* coal,) is an obsolete French word; signifying that little black spot or mark, that remains after a large spot, in the cavity of the corner teeth of a horse, about the seventh or eighth year, when the cavity fills, and the tooth, being smooth and equal, is said to be raised.

CHARGE,

C H E

CHARGE, is a preparation of an ointment, of the consistence of a thick decoction, applied to the shoulders, splaits, inflammations, and sprains of horses.

The parts affected are rubbed and chafed with this composition, after which you may cover them with sinking paper, if you will.

Charges are made two ways, *viz.* either with emmiellures, *i. e.* a mixture of honey, turpentine, suet, and other drugs; or with remolade, which is a mixture of the lees of wine, with the drugs of emmiellure.

Your Farriers confound the names of charge, emmiellure and remolade, and indifferently use one for the other.

CHASTISEMENTS, or corrections; are the severe and rigorous effects of the aids; for when the aids are given with severity, they become punishments.

CHAUSSE trop-haut; a white footed horse is said to be such, when the white marks run too high upon the legs.

CHECK, [*in Falconry*] a term used of a hawk, when she forsakes her proper game, to fly at pyes, crows, rooks, or the like, crossing her in her flight.

CHEST-TRAPS, a kind of boxes, or traps, used to take pole-cats, fitchets, martens, and the like vermine, that are injurious to warrens, dove-houses, or hen-roosts: the first of them being with a single, and the other with a double entrance, are represented thus: Now for the making and using them, take three pieces of oak or elm-boards, of an equal bigness, like to that which is in the first figure, and marked with A B C D; let them be four foot long, one over, and about an inch thick; which nail together just like a coffin, and close up one end with a piece of the board, which must be nailed fast on, as A C E F; likewise nail over three main boards, another piece, as A F G H, which must be as large as any of the rest, but not so long by two parts in three: and for the rest of the covering, you must have another piece of the same board: on the other side of the boards, make a little hole with a gimlet, at the places marked G, H, where fasten two nails, that may be driven into the board that lies on the top, so as to serve for sockets, or as the axle of a coach; so that the board may easily be lifted up and let down: and at the other end I K, nail another piece of timber, just equal to that marked A F G H, which must only be fastened to the upper boards in such manner, that being let down, the whole may seem to be a chest close shut; then get two pieces of wood, as L M, P Q, two foot long, and one inch and an half thick, and pierced at the end L M, with a hole big enough to turn one's little finger in, nail these on the two side boards, about the middle of them, just opposite to each other,

C H E

other with a piece of wood an inch square, shaped at both ends like an axletree, which put easily into the two holes L M; at the middle of the said axletree, frame a mortice or hole to fasten and tye a stick O N, which may fall down upon the moving plank, when it is let down; and this is intended to prevent any beast from lifting up the cover when once it is down.

Before you nail all the boards together, make a hole in that plank marked A, B, C, D, at the place marked U X; which hole should be two inches long, and half an inch over just opposite thereto, and in the other plank bore a little hole with a gimlet as at R, that you may put in a small cord; at the end whereof you tie your tricker R N, S N, T, made of a stick as big as ones little finger, which tho' fastned at the end R, may however have liberty enough to move up and down, and must pass through the hole U, about two inches out with a notch or two at T, about the end of it tie your bait on this tricker within the chest trap, which ought to be appropriated to the nature of the beast, or vermine you intend to take.

For the setting this trap, you must have a strong cord upon the moving plank, near the middle of it marked Y, towards the end at the other end, of the said cord, tie a small stick marked U, an inch an half long and half as big as ones finger, formed at one end like a wedge, so the trap being lifted half a foot as you see it represented in the figure, and the cord which passeth over the axletree, Z O, the little stick may have one end in the notch T of your tricker, and the other end in the hole X, and then is your trap or engine set right as it should be: If your tricker be a quarter of an inch clear from the bottom when any vermine is once in, and gives but one touch to the bait, which is on the tricker that gives way, and down falls the moving plank with the door fast shut.

The other trap with the double entrance, is much the best because the vermine you intend to take may see through it to be hold the prey, and come in at which side they please, and therefore will sooner venture.

It is made much after the same manner with the former, having two turning planks, and the tricker ought to be in the middle at Z, so there needs no farther directions to be given about it. *See the plate.*

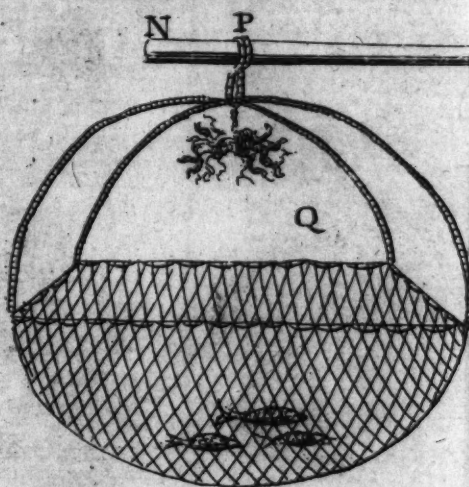
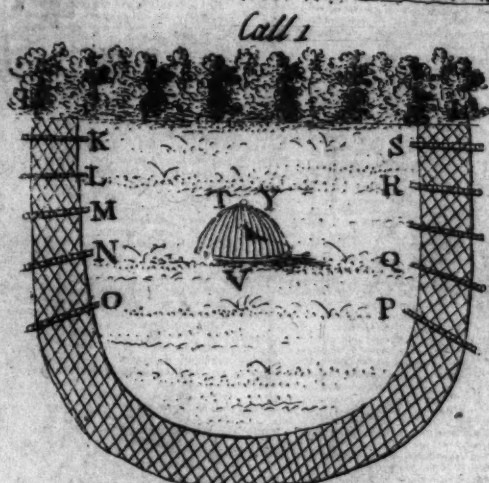
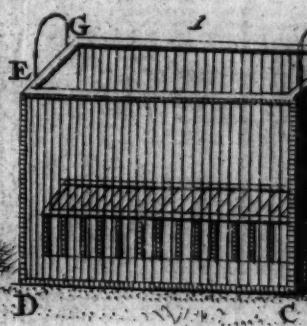
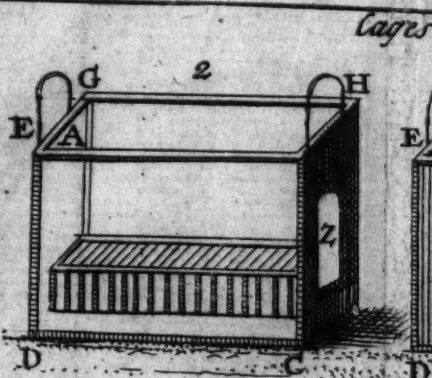
CHEVALER: (a French word) a horse is said to chevaler, when in passing upon a walk or a trot his far fore leg crosses or overlaps the other fore leg every second motion. See to **PASSAGE**.

CHEVIN

CHUB-FISH

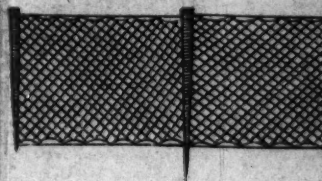
} A fresh water fish, having a great head.

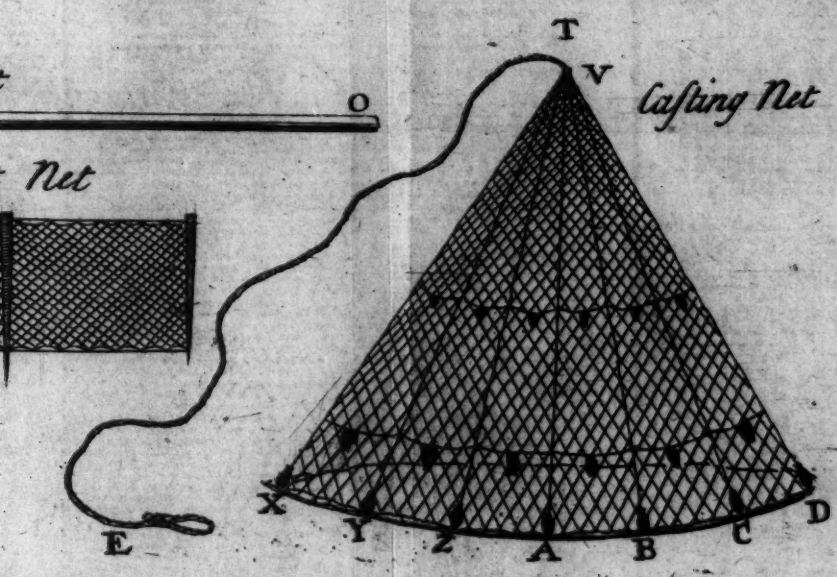
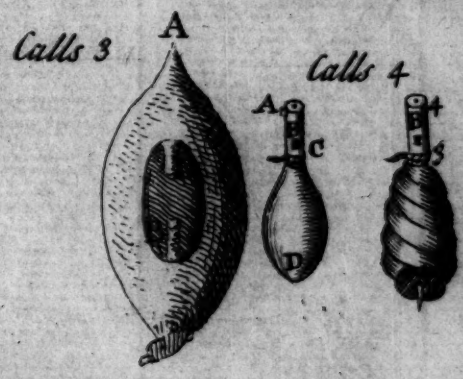
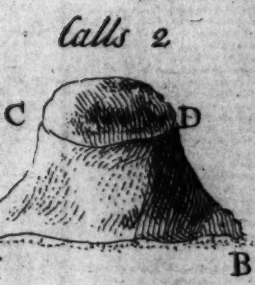
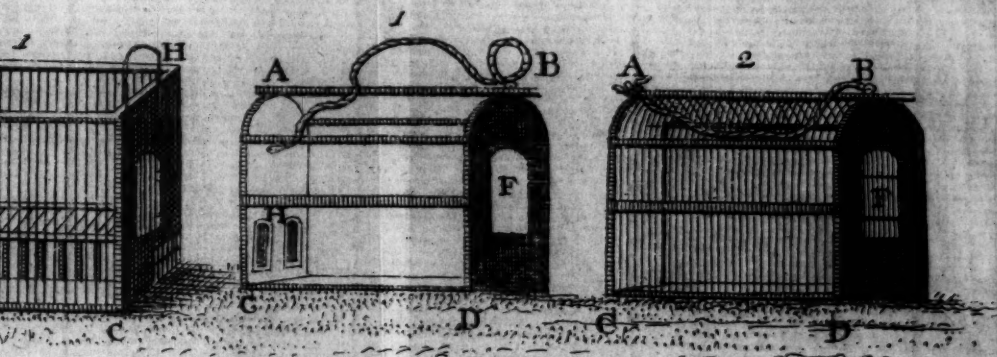
CHEVIN



Carrelet

Pocket Net





C H O

CHEVIN FISHING; this fish spawns in *March* is very strong, tho' unactive, yielding in a very little time after he is struck, and the larger he is the more quietly he is taken.

As for his food, he loves all sorts of worms and flies, also cheese, grain, black worms, their bellies being slit that white may appear. He affects a large bait, and variety of them at one hook; but more particularly he delights in the pith that grows in the bone of an ox's back; but you must take care to take off the tough outward skin, without breaking the inward tender one.

This fish is to be angled for early in the morning with snails; but in the heat of the day, make use of some other bait, and in the afternoon fish for him at ground or flie, of the last of which there is none he covets more, than a great moth with a large head, whose body is yellow, with whitish wings, which is commonly found in gardens about the evening: nay, this fish will not stick sometimes to snap at a lamprey.

CHEWING BALLS *for horses*: these balls are used for restoring lost appetite, an infirmity to which horses are very incident, proceeding from a salt humour, and bitter flegm, which obstructs the passages of the throat, and makes them loath their food.

The composition of these balls is as follows.

Take a pound of *Assa Foetida*, as much *liver* of *antimony*, and half a pound of the wood of a *bay-tree*, an equal quantity of *Juniper* wood, and two ounces of pellitory of *Spain*.

Pound all the ingredients apart to a gross powder, in order to which the woods must be first very well dried, then put them all together in a mortar, and incorporate them with a large quantity of good grape verjuice well clarified, pouring it in by degrees, till they are reduced to a mass; of which make balls of the weight of an ounce and a half, and dry them in the sun, wrap one of these balls in a linen clout, and tying a thread thereto make the horse chew it for two hours in the morning; and he will eat as soon as you unbridle him: do the same at night, and continue this method till the horse recovers his appetite.

When one ball is consumed put in another.

These balls may be used on the road, as you travel being tied to the bridle; balls of *Venice-treacle* may be used in the same manner with good success.

CHOPS } are maladies in the palate of an horse's mouth,
CLEFTS } caused either, by eating coarse and rough hay
RIFTS } full of thistles and other prickly stuff; or by
 foul provender full of sharp seeds, which by frequent pricking
 the bars of his mouth causes them to wrinkle and breed

C H U

corrupt blood, which may turn to a canker: which if it should come to that, it is to be cured as a canker: but to prevent it, wash his mouth with vinegar and salt, and anoint it with honey.

And for the removing of these distempers pull out his tongue, slice it with an incision-knife, and thrust out the kernels or corruption, then wash the parts as before directed.

But to prevent their coming at all, the best way is to wash his mouth or tongue often with wine, beer, or ale, and so blisters will not breed in it, or any other disease.

CHOPS do also often happen in a horse's legs on the

CRACKS bought of the pastern, accompanied with pain, and a very noisom stench: which is sometimes caused by a sharp malignant humour that frets the skin.

The cure may be affected by first shaving away the hair from the forrance, in order to keep it clean, and applying the white honey charge, or coachman's ointment, which will speedily heal the chops, if the application be constantly renewed.

CHUB FISHING, this fish is full of small forked bones, dispersed every where through his body; eats very waterish, and, being not firm, is in a manner tasteless; it is the best of any to entertain a young Angler, as being easily taken: in order to which you must look out for some hole, where you shall have twenty or more of them together in a hot day, floating almost on the surface of the water:

Let your rod be strong and long, your line not above a yard long and very strong, baited with a grasshopper; which bob up and down on the top of the water, and if there be any chub there he will rise.

But you must place your self so as not to be seen, for the chub is a timorous fish, and the least shadow will make him sink to the bottom; tho' he will rise again suddenly, and this is called bobbing.

When your hook is baited, drop it gently about two foot before the chub you have pitched upon by your eye to be the best and fairest, and he will instantly bite greedily at it, and be held fast, for he is a leather mouthed fish, so that he can seldom break his hold; and therefore it will be best to give him play enough and tire him; or otherwise you may endanger your line.

If you cannot get a grasshopper, you must bait your hook with any kind of fly or worm, and if you will fish with a fly, grasshopper, or beetle, it must be at the top of the water: but if with other baits underneath it.

In *March* and *April* you should angle for the chub with worms; in *June* and *July* with flies, snails and cherries; but in *August* and *September*, use a paste made with Parmesan or Holland's

C H U

Holland's cheefe pounded in a mortar with saffron; adding to it a little butter.

Some use a paste made of cheefe and turpentine for the winter season, at which time the chub is in his prime: for then his forked bones are either lost or turned into gristles; and his flesh is excellent meat baked; his spawn is admirable and if he be large, the throat when the head is well washed is the best part of the fish.

However in hot weather you must angle for this fish in the middle of the water or near the top of it; but in cold weather near the bottom.

CHUSING of dogs: in order to chuse a dog and bitch for good whelps, take care that the bitch come of a generous kind, be well proportioned, having large ribs and flanks; and likewise that the dog be of a good breed and young; for a young dog and an old bitch breed excellent whelps.

The best time for hounds, bitches, or bratchets to be lined in, are the months of *January*, *February*, and *March*; also let the dog and bitch couple, when the moon is in *Aquarius* or *Gemini*; for such as are then engendered will never run mad; and the litter will be more dog than bitch whelps; nay, double (as some say); it is not advisable to preserve the first nor second, but third.

The bitch should be used to a kennel, that she may like it after her whelping, and she ought to be kept warm.

Let the whelps be weaned after two months old; and tho' it be some difficulty to chuse a whelp under the dam, that will prove the best of the litter, yet some approve that which is last, and account him to be the best.

Others remove the whelps from the kennel, and lay them several and apart one from the other; then they watch which of them the bitch first takes and carries into her kennel again, and that they suppose to be the best.

Others again imagine that which weighs least when it sucks to be the best: this is certain that the lighter whelp will prove the swifter.

As soon as the bitch has littered, it is proper to chuse them you intend to preserve, and drown the rest; keep the black, brown, or of one colour; for the spotted are not much to be esteemed, tho' of hounds the spotted are to be valued.

Hounds for chace are to be chosen by their colours; the white with black ears and a black spot at the setting on of the tail, are the most principal to compose a kennel of, and of good scent and condition.

The black hound, or the black tanned, or the all liver coloured, or all white, the true talbots are the best for the stronger

C L A

line: the grizzled whether mixed or unmixed, so they be shag-haired are the best verminers, and a couple of these are proper for a kennel.

In short, take these marks of a good hound; that his head be of a middle proportion rather long than round; his nostrils wide, his ears large; his back bowed; his fillet great, haunches large, thighs well trussed, ham strait, tail big near the reins; the rest slender; the leg big, the sole of the foot dry, and in the form of that of a fox, with large claws.

CINQUE PORT, a square net resembling a cage, taking it's name from the five entrances into it: it is of excellent use for any pond or river, swift or standing water, for catching of fish, and the way to set it is represented in the figure.

To make use of this net, provide four strait, strong poles, answerable in length to the depth of the water; sharpen the great ends like stakes, and notch them within a foot of the ends, to fasten the four corners of the net as EFGH; make the like notches on the same poles at a convenient distance, for the fastening the four upper corners in the same manner, as ABCD.

The bottom of the net is four square without any entrance; in order to this with the greater conveniency get a boat to place the net in the water, for the poles must be driven fast into the ground, and at such a proper distance, that the net may be stretched out stiff, each pole answering to his fellow in an exact direct line; and this may suffice in any standing water; and if it be in a swift stream, the motion of the water will always move the net, and so frighten away the fish.

Now in order to prevent this inconvenience, fasten certain strong sticks at the very top of the four poles, to straiten and strengthen one another, and to keep all tight; as for example, observe the same pointed and marked with little *a b c d*, and you will easily comprehend it; but then if you fasten two other cross ways from A *a*, unto great D and little *d*, and from C *c* to great B and little *c*: you need not fear it, for the water can have no power over it. See plate IV. fig. 7.

CLAP [*in Falconry*] the nether part of a hawk's beak.

CLAP-NET, and looking-glass, otherwise called *doring* or *daring*, is a device to catch larks with; for which end you are to provide four sticks very straight and light about the bigness of a pike, two of which should be four foot nine inches long, and should all be notched at the ends, as in the figure of these sticks marked with the little *a* and *b*; at the end *b*, fasten on one side a stick of about a foot long, of the same bigness with the other four sticks, and on the other side a small peg of wood, marked A, three inches long; then get four sticks more, each a foot long, as the letter *f*, each must have a cord nine foot long,

fastned

CL A

fastned at the bigger end thereof, as *ef*; every one of them should have a buckle at the end *e*, for the commodious fastening of them to the respective sticks, when you go about to spread your net, which is plainly represented in the figure following.

You are also to provide a cord, *a, k, b, g*, which must have two branches, *a, k*, one of them is to be nine foot and a half long, the other ten, with a buckle at each end; the rest of the cord, from *b* to *g*, must be between twenty two and twenty four yards long; and all these cords, as well the long ones, as those with the sticks, should be strong twisted, about the bigness of one's little finger. The next thing to be provided, is a staff, *m, n*, about four foot long, pointed at the end *m*; and at the end *n*, fasten a little ball of wood, for the convenient carrying of these many necessaries, in some sack or wallet; you must also have a small iron spade to level the ground, as you see occasion, and two small rods, like that marked, *l, m, n, o*, each eighteen inches long, having a great end *L*, and thereto a small stick fixed, as *p*, with a packthread near the end of the said rod; and about the letter *m*, being near nine inches from it, tie another packthread with two ends, each hanging clear a foot long: at each end tie a little pecked stick, as *q, r*, and at the smaller end of the said rod, tie a packthread with four doubles, which must form two loops, as *o*, which tie to the legs of some larks: you must also have two small reels, as *F, G*, by the help whereof, you may make the larks fly, as there is occasion; the next thing you are to prepare, is a looking-glass according to the following figure 6.

Take a piece of wood about an inch and an half thick, and cut it like a bow, but so as that there may not be above nine inches space between the two ends, *e* and *c*, and let it have it's full thickness at the bottom, to the end it may receive into it, that false piece marked, *1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6*, in which the figure 6, is the lowest, and the upper 3, is but half an Inch large; the five corners, *1, 2, 3, 4, 5*, must be let in, to receive as many pieces of looking-glass. In the middle of the said piece of wood, in the bottom, or under part thereof, by the letter *b*, make a hole to receive a little wooden peg, as *b, j, p*, 6 inches long, and about the bigness of one's finger, pointed at *l*, and a little hole in the middle *j, p*; you must likewise have another piece of wood, *n, m, o, q*, a foot long, and about two inches square, sharpened at the end *q*; make a little engraving therein at *o*, about two inches high, and one inch and a half broad; then bore or pierce a hole in the said piece above the end *n*, to receive the peg *r*, which must come down an inch into the hole *o*, and so turn easily about. See plate V. fig. 1, 2.

C L A

When it is thus fixed, put a small line into the hole *j*, and your glass is finished; you must place it between the two nets, near the middle of them, at the letter *j*, and carry the line to the hedge, so that pulling the line you may make the looking-glass, play in and out, as children do a whirligig, made of an apple and a nut. Always keep it turning, that the twinkling of the glass against the sun, may provoke the larks to come to view it.

When you intend to pitch your nets, be sure to have the wind either in front or behind them, lest if it be on either side, it hinders their playing, chuse some open place, and let it be remote from trees or hedges, at least an hundred paces; then the ground being clear from all stones and rubbish, spread the net after the manner expressed in the figure, *viz.* the longest sticks fastened to that part of the net which is largest; as for example: in the figure, that on your right hand is bigger than the other; you must drive the peg *e*, into the ground, and pass the end *a*, of the stick, into the buckle of one of the cords of the net; and the peg *d*, into the other loop of the same end; also do the same to the other stick, at the end *l*, but before you drive your peg into the ground, strain the cord *c*, *t*, as much as you can; then take two of the sticks, as *f*, *e*, whereof one has a cord nine foot and a half long, and the other half a foot less; put the knot *e*, of the strongest cord, about the end of the farther stick, and retiring, drive your peg *f*, into the ground, just opposite to the two little pegs *c*, *t*; that done, coming to the other end, pass your stick *a*, into one of the shorter cords, and so drive your pegs just with the others, in a direct line, as *c*, *t*, *f*, that your cord *a*, *e*, of the net, may be thoroughly strained. Being thus directed to set one net, you cannot well fail to set the other; only observe so to place them, that when they are drawn, one may clap about half a foot over the other.

The next thing to be done, is to take the grand cord, which is to make your net play; place the large branch *a*, about the end of the stick *d*, and the other branch *k*, about the stick *k*; then tie the knot *b*, so that it may rest in the middle, and carry the end to your lodge; strain it a little, and fasten it with a peg *A*, and about *B*, make some kind of hold fast, for the better straining it, and that it may not slip again through your hands; just even with the said holdfast, make two holes *D*, *E*, in the ground, to thrust against with your heels, as for your lodge it must be made with boughs, in such a manner, that you may have a full and clear view on your nets before; and the same should be covered over head, and not very high, that you may have a prospect of all birds going and coming.

The last thing upon this occasion, is the placing your calls, (for so are the live larks termed here) and the figures direct you in what place to set them, set your little stick *p*, in the first place, and let the upper part be about six inches out of the ground; then place the two others *q*, *r*, on the right, and the other on the left, just at *m*, of the rod, where the cord of the said pegs is fixt; that done, tie the end of one of the packthreads of one of the reels, about three or four inches from *m*, near the place marked *n*, and carry your reel to the letter F; the like you must do with the other rod, tied at the end *o*, and at equal distances tie the call-larks by the feet, so that when you see any birds near you, 'tis but twitching your cords, and you force the larks to mount a little, that thereby the others may take notice of them; and when they are within your distance, pull your main cord and your net flies up, and claps over them.

CLAMPONNIER, or Claponnier; an obsolete word signifying a long jointed horse, that is one whose pasterns are long, slender, and over pliant.

The word is properly applicable only to bulls or cows, for la Claponniere in French, is in them what the pastern is in a horse.

CLEAR WALK, a term relating to game cocks; and signifies the place that the fighting cock is in, and none other.

To **CLOSE** a *passade justly*, is when the horse ends the passade with a demivolt, in good order, well narrowed and bounded, and terminates upon the same line upon which he parted, so that he is still in a condition to part from the hand handsomely at every last time or motion of his demivolt.

CLOYED } a term used by Farriers of a horse, when

ACCLOYED } he has been pricked with a nail in shoeing.

COACHMAN'S OINTMENT, take common *honey* and *powder of copperas*, of each a pound and a half, set them over a gentle fire in a pot mixing them well together, by stirring them constantly till they boil: then take the pot off instantly, and when it is grown half cold, put in an ounce of *arsenic* in powder, then set it on the fire again, stirring it continually till it begins to boil; then take it off the fire immediately, and keep stirring it till it grows cold; but take care to avoid the noisom smell.

Anoint the part slightly with this ointment once every two days, after it has been shaved and rubbed with a wisp. This is good for sore legs that are not gourdy, pains, mules, clefts, and rat-tails.

COCK, a domestic bird, and the male of the hens. It is the common opinion that a cock should never grow fat, and that

C O C

he ought to supply a dozen of hens, from which he is distinguished by his spurs and comb: the eggs which hens lay without being trod, must not be hatched, for they will be addle; cocks are gelt, when young, to make capons.

This bird in geneneral is the most virile, stately, and majestic of all others; and is very tame and familiar with mankind; naturally inclined to live in habitable houses: he is hot and strong in the act of generation, and delights in open plains, where he may lead forth his hens into green pastures and under hedges, that they may warm and bask themselves in the sun; for to be put up within walled places, and paved courts is most unnatural to them, neither will they thrive.

Now in the choice and shape of a dunghil cock, he should be, according to our *English* authors, of a large and well sized body, long from his head to the rump, thick in the girth, his neck should be long, loose, and erected up high, as the pelican, and other birds of prey are; his comb, wattles, and throat large, of a great compass, ragged and of a very scarlet red; his eyes round and large, the colour answerable to the colour of his plume or main, as grey with grey, red with red, and yellow with yellow; his bill crooked, sharp or strongly set on his head; the colour suitable to the colour of his feathers on his head; his mane or neck feathers very long, bright, and shining, covering from his head to his shoulders; his legs strait and of a strong beam; with large long spurs, sharp and a little bending, and the colour black, yellow, or brownish; his claws strong, short, and well wrinkled; his tail long, bending back, and covering his body very close, his wings very strong: and for the general colours of a dunghil cock, he should be red; he should be valiant within his own walk; and if he is a little knavish so much the better; he should be often crowing, and busy in scratching the earth to find out worms, and other food for his hens, and invite them to eat.

COCK FEEDING is when a cock is taken from his walk, he should be fed a month before he fight: for the first fortnight feed him with ordinary wheaten bread, and spar him for four or five days that he has been in the pen; afterwards spar him daily or every other day, till about four days before he is to fight.

For the second fortnight, feed him with fine wheaten bread, kneaded with whites of eggs and milk, and give him every meal twelve picks, or corns, of barley.

He should not have water stand by him, for then he will drink too much; but let him have water four or five times a day.

If he be too high fed stive him, and give him a clove of garlic in a little sweet oil, for some few days; if too low fed,
give

C O C

give him the yolk of an egg, beat and warmed (till it be as thick as treacle) with his bread.

For four days before fighting, give the cock hyssop, violet, and strawberry leaves; chopt small in fresh butter; and the morning he is to fight put down his throat a piece of fresh butter mixt with powder of white sugar candy.

COCKING CLOTH, a device for catching pheasants with, for which take a piece of coarse canvass, about an ell square, and put it into a tan pit to colour; then hem it about, and to each corner of the cloth sow a piece of leather about three inches square, and fix two sticks crosswise, to keep it out as A B C D, in the figure, see the plate; there must also be a hole in the cloth to look out at, as at E, which is represented in the figure; and being provided with a small short gun, when you are near enough, hold out the aforesaid cloth at arm's end, and put the muzzle of the gun out at the hole, which serves as a rest for the gun, and so let fly, and you will seldom miss; for by this means the pheasants will let you come near them, and the cocks will be so bold as to fly at it. *See plate V. fig. 3.*

COCK-PIT, a place made for cocks to fight in, being usually a house or hovel covered over.

The place on which they fight is a clod, that is, the green sod; which is generally made round, that all may see, and about which there are seats and places for the spectators to sit of three heights, or more, one above another.

COCK-PIT-LAWS. 1. In setting of a cock, none are to be upon the clod, but the two setters chosen for that office; and when the cocks are set beak to beak in the middle of the clod, and there left by the setters, if the set cock do not strike in counting twenty, and six times ten, and twenty after all, then the battle is lost.

2. If he strike, then they are to begin counting again.

3. In betting, if any offer a mark to a groat, or forty shillings to one, or ten pounds to five shillings; if any take the wager, then the cock is to be set, and they are to fight it out.

4. Done and done is a wager, or sufficient betting, when the cocks are cast in the clod or in fighting.

COCKREL, a young cock bred for fighting.

COCK ROADS, a sort of net contrived chiefly for the taking of wood-cocks; the nature of which bird is to lie close all day under some hedge, or near the roots of some old trees, picking for worms under dry leaves, and will not stir without being disturbed; neither does he see his way well before him in a morning early; but towards evening he takes wing to go and get water, flying generally low; and when they find

find any thorough-fare in any wood, or range of trees, they use to venture through; and therefore the cock-roads ought to be made in such places, and your cock-nets planted according to the figure. *Which see in plate V. fig. 4, 5.*

Then supposing that your range of wood be about thirty paces long, cut a walk through it, about the middle, about thirty six or forty broad, which must be directly strait, with all the shrubs and under-wood carried away; in like manner should all the boughs that hang over the said walk, be cut off; then chuse two trees, opposite to each other, as represented in the figure marked A B, and prune, or cut off all the front boughs, to make way for the net to hang and play.

In the next place, provide two strong logs of wood, which open or cleave at the biggest ends, as marked C D, the middle parts tie fast to some boughs of the tree, as the letters E F direct, and let the tops hang over, as G H represent.

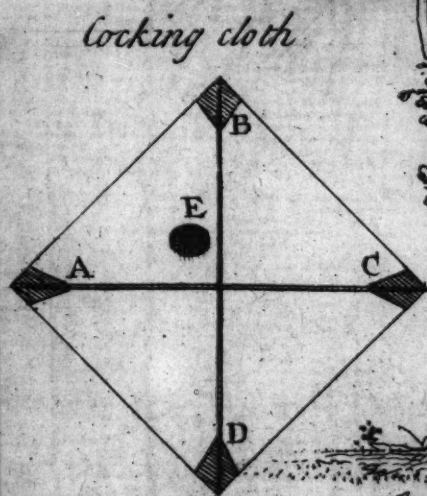
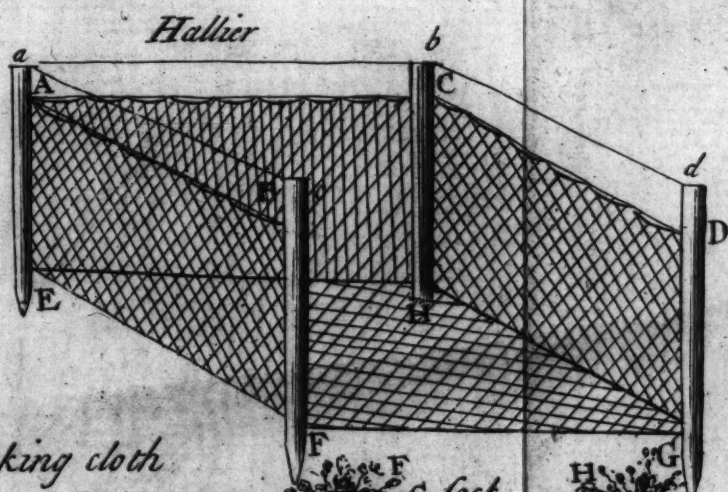
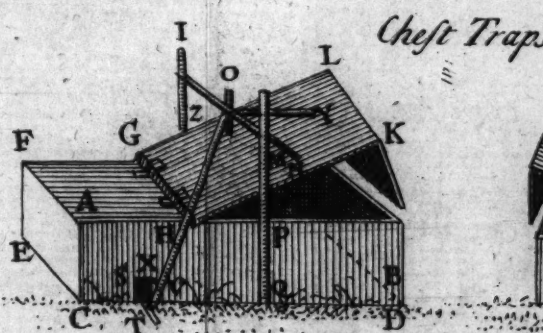
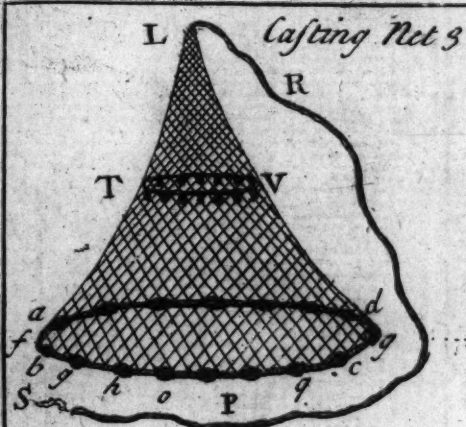
You should always have ready good store of pullies, or buckles made of box, brass, or the like, according to the form designed by the figure, which should be about the bigness of a man's finger, and fasten one at each end of the perches or legs, G, H, having first tied on your pullies, about the two branches marked 3, a certain cord, of the thickness of one's little finger; then tie another knot on the said cord, about the distance of an hand's breadth from the first knot, marked 4, and so let the two ends of the cords hang down about a foot long, that therewithal you may fasten them to the pullies which are at the ends of the two perches or legs, as are marked I, L, close to the notches G, H: clap a small packthread into each pully, which should reach to the foot of the trees; that by the help thereof, you may draw up two stronger cords into the said pullies, where you hang the net, and not be forced always to climb up into the tree.

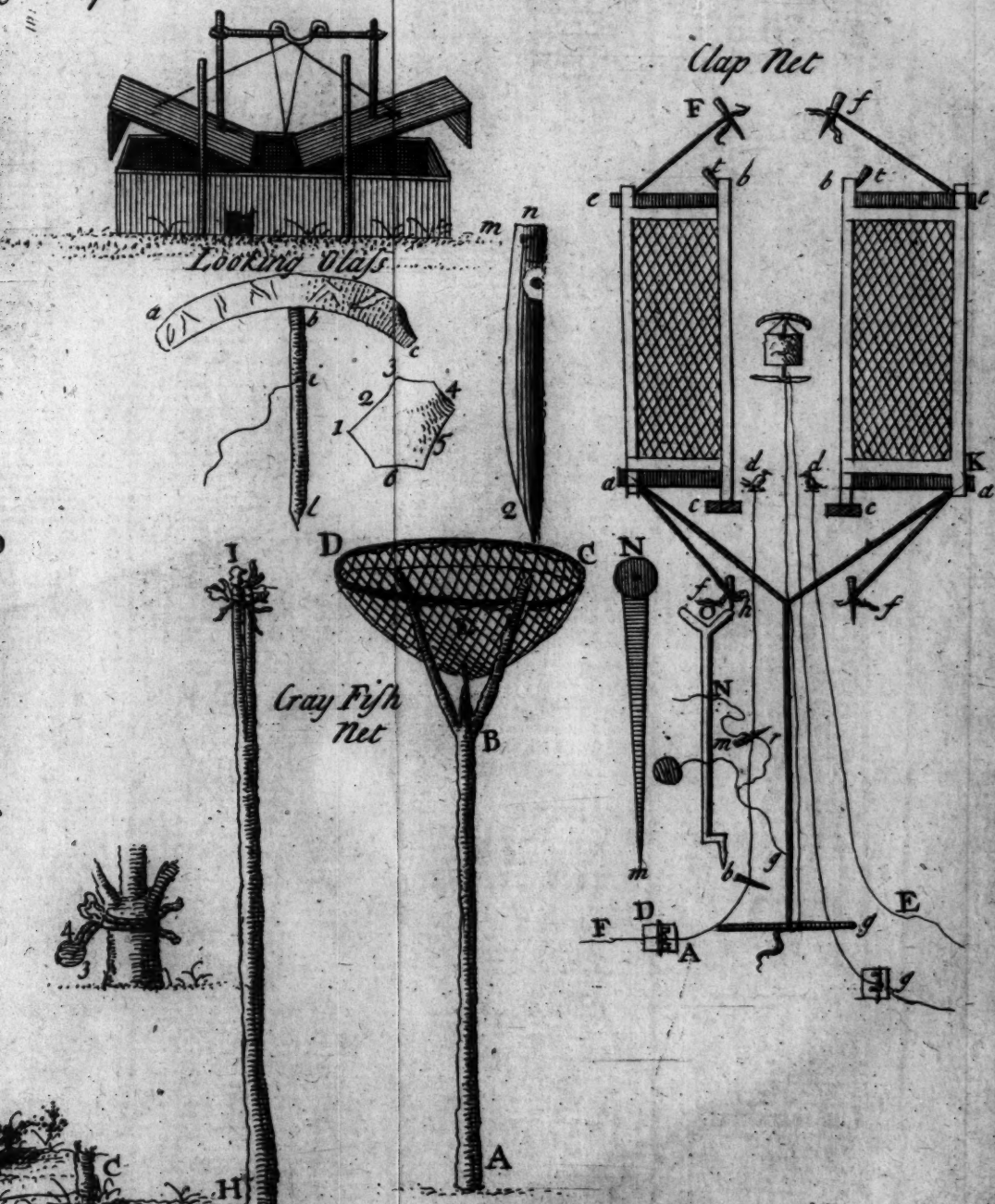
Lastly, provide a stand to be concealed; about half a dozen boughs pitched up together, may serve for that purpose; with a strong crooked stake forced into the ground, just by the stand, on which fasten the lines of the net.

When it is drawn up, remember to tie a stone to the ends of each of the two cords, about four or five pounds weight each, that when you let go, the stones may force down the net with a strong fall, and pull up both the stones, and upper part of the net, close to the pullies I L: the stones are marked M, N, and the figure represents the whole net ready for use.

The ends of both lines must be drawn to your lodge, or stand, and wound two or three times about the crooked stake, to prevent the falling of the net, till some game flies against it.

COCK'S WALK, the place where a cock is bred; to which usually no other cock comes.





C O L

CODS, or stones swelled; a malady in horses that comes many ways, either by wounds, blows, bruises, or evil humours, which corrupts the mass of blood that falls down to the cods; or from a rupture, &c.

For the cure, take bole-armoniac reduced to a fine powder, vinegar, and whites of eggs well beaten together, and anoint the part with it daily, till the swelling abates; and if it imposthume, where you find it to be soft, open it with a hot iron, or incision-knife, if it does not break of it self, and heal it up with green ointment.

COFFIN, or hoof of a horse, is all the horn that appears when he has his foot set to the ground; and the coffin-bone is that to the foot, as a heart or kernel: the latter is quite surrounded, or over-spread by the hoof, frush, and sole, and is not perceived, even when the horse's sole is quite taken away; being covered on all sides by a coat of flesh, which hinders the bone from appearing.

COILING of the Stud, is the first making choice of a colt, or young horse, for any service; which by no means must be done too early: for some horses will show their best shape at two or three years old, and lose it at four; others not till five, nay, not till six; but then they ever keep it: some again will do their best day's work at six or seven years old, others not till eight or nine.

COLICK; the most peculiar sign of the wind colick in horses, is the swelling of their body, as if it was ready to burst, accompanied with tumbling and tossing.

It is also known by his stretching his neck, or legs, by his striking at his belly, by his lying down and rising often, stamping with his feet, &c.

There are many remedies proper for this disease, of which I shall mention but one.

Take half a pint of white-wine, warm it, put to it six ounces of oil, and fifty drops of spirits of hartshorn; and give it the horse; but if he be full of blood, first bleed him: if this dose does not cure him, give him another, with an hundred drops of spirits of hartshorn.

COLOURS of a horse; the terms by which we call a horse's coat, or outward appearance, in *England*; and they are these following, with the explanation of such as seem obscure.

1. White. 2. Black. 3. Sad iron-grey, which is black, with the tips of the hairs whitish. 4. Grey; which is a darkish white. 5. Dark, or black-grey; that is, a deep coloured brownish red, a chesnut colour. 6. Bay; *i. e.* a light, whitish brown red. 7. Flea-bitten; that is, white, spotted all over with sad reddish spots; grey flea-bitten. 8. Dapple-grey; that is, a light grey,

C O L

grey, spotted, or shaded with a deeper grey. 9. Dapple-bay; spotted with a deeper colour. 10. Dun; a light hair colour, next unto a white. 11. Mouse-dun; a mouse colour. 12. Sorrel; lighter than a light bay, inclining to a yellow. 13. Bright sorrel; lighter than the former. 14. Rount; a kind of flesh-colour, or a bay, intermixed with white and grey; a *Roan* colour. 15. Grissel; a light rount, or light flesh-colour. 16. Pybald; that is, a horse of two colours, as some part of him white, and the other parts bay, iron grey, or dun colour.

The colours of horses are thus distinguished by the *English*: The *French*, upon this subject, say as follows:

1. The *sorrel bay*, inclining to red, is as red haired as a man; all are good horses of this colour, especially when the tail and legs are black; but they are very subject to be choleric, and consequently have much fire in them.

2. *Sorrel* with cow's hair, and the hair of the same colour, or white: this is not so choleric as the last, having white marks, which proceed from flegm, of which he is full; which very much qualifies the fiery nature of a horse, and makes him good.

3. A *bright sorrel*: a horse with this coat has white hairs, and is not good, because he has too much flegm in him; which is the reason that he is always heavy.

4. The *common sorrel*, which is neither brown nor bright; those of this coat are much esteemed.

5. The *flaming sorrel*: a horse with this coat is very fine, has always his extremes, and his black hairs; and is much esteemed.

6. The *dark sorrel*: those of this colour are always very melancholy; but yet much disposed to apprehend whatsoever you would have them learn.

7. The *dapple*: this colour is very pleasing to the sight.

8. *Bay, chefnut-colour*: the most common of all, and that to which nature has given qualities, that may make them excel others.

9. *Bright bay*: not so good, by reason of the flegm which predominates.

10. The *gilded bay*: is better than the last, because he has more choler, which animates him.

11. *Brown bay*: almost black; this colour shews the beast to be choleric, and commonly to have fire at the end of his flank.

12. *White*: all of this colour are sluggish.

13. *Starling*: a colour that borders upon a brown grey, or black, saving that there are many white hairs to be met with therein, and hinders it from being altogether black; horses of this colour are good enough.

14. *Fire*

C O L

14. *Fire-brand grey*: a coat marked with black hairs, here and there in great spots; horses of this colour are very nimble and active.

15. *Dapple-grey*: a very common colour, and is not so good as the last but one.

16. *Silver grey*: a lively and beautiful grey; horses of this colour as good as any.

17. *Sallow grey*: a grey mixed almost throughout with black; better than dapple.

18. *Brown grey*: horses of this colour are good.

19. *Red grey*: a better coat than all the rest, because of choler, which is mixed with the flegm.

20. *Isabella*: a colour that denotes good horses.

21. *Wolf-colour*: bright in some horses, and brown in others; the last are the best, and come near the *Isabellas*.

22. A very lively *black* is the best of any.

23. *Pyed-black*: this colour denotes the horses to be good.

24. *Pyed-bay*: this denotes them still to be better.

25. *Pyed-forrel*: all these three different *pyeds* have some white hairs, as far as the ham, or hoof, and are all excellent horses; and it is to be observed, that those which have the least white, are the most coveted, by those who understand horses.

26. *Porcelane*: so called, because of their white bodies mixed with red spots; horses of this colour are very rare.

27. The *vinous Roan*: a colour that reaches so far, that you would believe it to be that of white.

28. Another *Roan*: has his head and extreme parts black, and is very good.

29. A *Rubican*: is when a black or forrel horse, has white hairs here and there, especially upon the flanks; horses of this colour are very mettlesome.

30. *Mouse-colour*: is easily understood; some of these have a black stripe upon the back, others on the legs and hams: horses of this colour, and whose extreme parts are black, are to be chosen before many others.

31. *Tiger*: is the same as the fire-brand, except that the spots in these are not so large, and that they are not so good as the others.

COLT, a word in general, signifying the male and female of the horse kind; the first likewise, for distinction sake, being called a horse colt, and the other a filly.

After the colts have been foaled, you may suffer them to run with the mare till about *Michaelmas*, sooner or later, according as the cold weather comes in; then they must be weaned; tho' some persons are for having them weaned after *Martinmas*, or the middle of *November*, and that three days before the full of the

C O L

the moon: but the Author of the *Compleat Horseman* is of opinion, that the reason why most foals advance so slowly, and are not capable of service till they are six or seven years old, is because they have not sucked long enough; whereas if they had sucked the whole winter over, they would be as good at four or five years old, as they are now at eight.

They ought to be kept in a convenient house, with a low rack and manger for their hay and oats, which must be sweet and good; with a little wheaten bran mixed with the oats, to cause them to drink, and to keep their bodies open.

But since there are some who alledge, that oats make foals become blind, or their teeth crooked; the same Author is of opinion, that oats will wear their teeth, and make them the sooner to change, and also to raze; therefore he judges it to be the best way to break them in a mill, because that by endeavouring with their jaws to bruise and chew them, they stretch and swell their eye and nether jaw-veins, which so attract the blood and humours, that they fall down upon the eyes, and frequently occasion the loss of them: so that it is not the heating qualities of oats, but the difficulty in chewing, that is the cause of their blindness.

Further, that colts thus fed with grain, do not grow thickish upon their legs, but grow broader, and better knit, than if they had eaten nothing but hay and bran, and will endure fatigue the better.

But above all they must be kept from wet and cold, which are the hurtfullest things imaginable to them, nothing being more tender than they are.

For proof of this, take a Spanish stallion, and let him cover two mares, which for age, beauty, and comeliness, may admit of no difference between them; and if they be both horse colts, or both fillies, which is one and the same thing, let one run abroad, and the other be housed, every winter, kept warm, and ordinarily attended, as aforesaid; and that colt that has been kept abroad shall have large fleshy shoulders, flabby and gouty legs, weak pasterns, and ill hoofs; and shall be a dull, heavy jade, in comparison to the other which is housed, and orderly kept, as before; and which will have a fine forehead, be well shaped, have good legs and hoofs, and be of good strength and spirit: by which you may know, that to have the finest stallion, and the beautifullest mare, is nothing, if they are spoiled in the breeding up.

It is worth observation, that some foals, under six months old, tho' their dams yield abundance of milk, yet decay daily, and have a cough, proceeding from certain pellicles, or skins

that

COL

that breed in their stomachs, which obstruct their breathing, and at last destroy them intirely.

To remedy this malady, take the bag wherein the colt was foaled, dry it, and give him as much of it in milk as you can take up with three fingers : but if you have not preserved the bag, procure the lungs of a young fox, and use it instead of the aforesaid powder.

It will be proper to let the colts play an hour or two, in some court-yard, or the like place, when it is fair weather, provided you put them up again carefully, and see that they take no harm.

When the winter is spent, turn them into some dry ground, where the grass is short and sweet, and where there is good water, that they may drink at pleasure ; for it is not necessary that a colt should fill his belly immediately, like a horse that labours hard.

The next winter you may take them into the house, and use them just as your other horses ; but let not your horse-colts and fillies be kept together, after the first year.

This method may be observed every summer and winter, till you break them, which you may do after they have been three years old ; and it will be a very easy thing, if you observe the aforesaid method of housing them, for ordering them the second year as you do other horses, that they will be so tame and gentle, that you need not fear their plunging, leaping, kicking, or the like coltish tricks ; for they will take the saddle quietly.

As for all those ridiculous ways of beating and cowing them, they are, in effect, spoiling them, whatever they call it, in ploughed fields, deep ways, or the like ; instead of which, let the rider strive to win them by gentle usage, never correcting them but when it is necessary, and then with judgment and moderation.

You will not need a cavesson of cord, which is a head-strain, nor a pad of straw ; but only a common saddle, and a common cavesson on his nose, such as other horses are ridden with ; but it ought to be well lined with double leather, as the rest are ; and if you please you may put on his mouth a watering-bitt, without reins, only the head-stall, and this but for a few days ; and then put on such a bitt as he should be always ridden with : and be sure not to use spurs for some time after backing.

Take notice, that as yearlings must be kept abroad together, so those of two years old together ; the like for those of three yearlings, which ordering is most agreeable to them. See FOAL and STUD.

In

C O L

In order to make him endure the saddle the better, the way to make it familiar to him, will be, by clapping the saddle with your hand as it stands upon his back, by striking it, and swaying upon it, dangling the stirrups by his sides, rubbing them against his sides, and making much of him, and bringing him to be familiar with all things about him; as straining the crupper, fastening and loosening the girths, and taking up and letting out the stirrups.

Then as to the mouthing of him, when he will trot with the saddle obediently, then wash a trench of a full mouth, and put the same into his mouth, throwing the reins over the fore part of the saddle, so that he may have a full feeling of it; then put on a martingal, buckled at such a length, that he may but just feel it when he jirks up his head; then take a broad piece of leather and put about his neck, and make the ends of it fast by platting of it, or some other way, at the withers, and the middle part before his weasand, about two handfuls below the thropple, betwixt the leather and his neck: let the martingal pass so, that when at any time he offers to duck, or throw down his head, the cavesson being placed upon the tender gristle of his nose, may correct and punish him; which will make him bring his head to, and form him to an absolute rein: then trot him abroad, and if you find the reins or martingal grow slack, straiten them, for when there is no feeling, there is no virtue. See **BACKING a COLT**.

COLT-EVIL, a disease to which both, stone-horse and gelding, are subject: it happens to the first, by an unnatural swelling of the yard and cods, proceeding from wind filling the arteries, and hollow finew, or pipe of the yard; and also through the abundance of feed: and it effects a gelding, for want of natural heat to expel the feed any farther.

There are several things very good for this distemper; as the juice of rue mixed with honey, and boiled in hog's-grease: bay leaves, with the powder of fenugreek added to it; with which the part affected is to be anointed and sheathed.

A soft salve made of the leaves of betony, and the herb *art* stamped with white wine, is proper to anoint the fore; the sheath also must be washed clean with luke-warm vinegar, and the yard drawn out and washed also; and the horse ridden every day into some deep running water, tossing him to and fro, to allay the heat of his members, till the swelling be vanished; and it will not be amiss to swim him now and then: but the best cure of all, is to give him a mare, and to swim him after it.

COLT-

C O N

COLT-TAMING, is the breaking of a colt, so as to endure a rider, &c.

These animals being naturally of themselves unruly, you should make them familiar to you from the time they have been weaned, when foals; and so winter after winter, in the house, use them to familiar actions, as rubbing, clawing, haltering, leading to water, taking up their feet, knocking their hoofs, and the like; and so break him to the saddle.

The best time is at three years, or four at most; but he who will have the patience to see his horse at full five, shall be sure to have him of a longer continuance, and much less subject to diseases and infirmities.

Now in order to bridle and saddle a colt, when he is made a little gentle, take a sweet watering trench, washed and anointed with honey and salt, which put into his maw, and so place it that it may hang about his tush; then offer him the saddle, but with that care and circumspection, that you do not fright him with it, suffering him to smell at it, to be rubbed with it, and then to feel it; and after that, fix it on, and girt it fast: and at what part and motion he seems most coy, with that make him most familiar of any other.

Being thus saddled and bridled, lead him out to water, bring him in again; and when he has stood a little, reined, upon the trench, an hour or more, take off the bridle and saddle, and let him go to his meat till the evening, and then lead him out as before; and when you carry him in again to set him up, take off his saddle gently, and dress him, clothing him for all night.

To **COMMENCE**, or *initiate, a horse*, is to put him to the first lessons, in order to break him.

To commence this horse you must work him round the pillar. See **ROPE**.

The **CONEY**, tho' it yield not so great pleasure in hunting, as the hare, it not being endowed with any of the flights and cunning of that, yet it is of greater profit, both in regard of their flesh and their skins, which exceed those of the hare.

Before we speak of the hunting of this animal, it will not be amiss to take notice of it's nature and properties, which are these that follow.

The doe goes with young, a month, or thirty days, and then she kindles; and if she take not buck presently, she loseth her month, or at least a fortnight; and often kills her young, and eats them.

They begin to breed in *England*, at a year old; but sooner in other places, at about half a year old; commonly breeding, two, three, or four, and sometimes seven times a year, and about five, six, or seven at a litter, if they litter in *March*;

K

and

C O N

and this is the reason that a small stock will serve to increase a large warren.

The does cannot suckle their young till they have been with buck, which must be done presently, or she will not be inclined fourteen days after.

When the buck goes to the doe, he beats and stamps with his feet very hard, which, (as 'tis said) causeth heat in him; and having struck, or buck'd, her, falls down backwards, so lying some time, as it were in a trance, until he hath recovered himself; at which time it is easy to take him.

The bucks will kill the young ones, if they can come at them, like our boar cats; and therefore nature hath so decreed it, that the does prevent them, by stopping or covering their stocks or nests, (if in warrens) with earth or gravel; which they close up so artificially with their breeches, that it is hardly to be discerned: and they never suckle them but early in the morning, and late at nights; closing the holes every time after their coming out, for eight or ten days; after which time they begin to leave it a little open, and by degrees, as the young grow big, (which is at about three weeks old) they leave it quite open for them to come out, they being then fit to eat grass.

Those who keep conies tame, for profit, provide them hutches, especially for the breeders; which hutches must have divers cells, or nests, and must be kept neat and clean, otherwise diseases will breed amongst them.

Likewise the bucks must be kept apart from the does, until they have just kindled, and then (as has been said) the does must be taken from the young, and put to the buck; and you may easily know when she is struck enough, for she will then shun the buck.

In the choice of tame rabbits, take the biggest and fairest you can get; and black, or silver haired, for these skins do exceed the other in price.

Their food may be coleworts, cabbage-leaves, carrots, parsnips, clivers, apples, apple-parings, green corn, and vetches in the time of the year, *i. e.* summer, and such like moist food; also vine-leaves, fruits, herbs, grass, bran, oats, oatmeal, mallows, milk-thistles: but you must always take care to give them a proportionable quantity of dry meat, as bran, bread, hay, oats, and the like, otherwise they will be pot-bellied, and die: you may also give them bran and grains mixed together, which is very good food.

In winter they eat hay, oats, and chaff, being given them thrice a day; but when they eat green things, they must not drink at all, because it will bring them into a dropsy: at all
other

C O N

other times, a little drink must serve their turn, and that must always be fresh.

Great care must be taken, when any grass is cut for them where there are weeds, that no hemlock grow among it; for tho' they will eat it with great greediness, yet it is present poison, killing suddenly.

The infirmities tame rabbits are subject to, are two-fold.

1. The *rot*, which is caused by giving them too much green meat, or gathering greens, and giving them with the dew on; therefore let them have it but seldom, and then the driness of the hay you give them, will dry up the moisture, knit them, and keep them sound, without danger.

The best food you can give them, is the shortest, sweetest, and best hay that can be got; of which, one load will serve two hundred couples, a year; and out of the stock of two hundred, two hundred may be spent in the house, as many sold in the market, and yet maintain a good stock to answer all casualties.

The hay must be kept in little cleft sticks, that they may easily reach and pull it out, so as not to scatter or waste any.

2. They are subject to a certain rage or madness, engendered by corrupt blood, proceeding from the rankness of their feeding. This may be known, by their wallowing or tumbling with their heels upwards, and leaping into their boxes.

The cure is effected by giving them tare-thistle to eat.

One buck may very well serve nine or ten does, but not more.

The way of taking wild Conies.

There are divers ways of doing this, either by small curs, or spaniels bred up to the sport; and the places for hunting them who straggle from their burrows, are among bushes and hedges, corn-fields, or fresh pastures; or else by coursing them with small greyhounds: and tho' you may miss killing them, yet thereby you drive them back to their burrows, and preserve them from being a prey to others.

You may also drive them into their burrows, and spread purse-nets upon the holes, so that when they come out, they will be entangled in them, and so be taken: Now to force them out, it will be proper to have a ferret or two, whose mouths must be couped and muffled up, and so put into the holes, which will cause the conies to bolt out into your purse-nets; for the conies will easily smell the ferrets, and at their approach, (being of a timorous nature) dare not stay to see them. See the *Article FERRET and WARREN*.

C O R

And for the more certain taking them, it would be proper to have a hay net or two, which should be pitched up at a small distance, against the burrows you intend to hunt.

I should here speak of the lurcher and tumbler; a dog so called, by reason of his wiles and circumventing tricks to take them; but shall omit it here, and refer you to the articles, **LURCHER** and **TUMBLER**.

I might also treat of the taking the coney with engines, traps, snares, nets, &c. but they being treated of in the articles, **BADGER**, **FOX**, **HARE**, **OTTER**, &c. I chuse rather to refer you to them.

For want of a ferret, you may take powder of orpine, and some brimstone, and therewith make a smother in the burrows, and then the conies will bolt out: but this way is not to be approved of, for by that means the conies will forsake those burrows, and so in a little time a warren would be destroyed, if this method were frequently practised.

COP, the top of any thing; also a tuft on the head of birds.

COPING-IRONS, instruments used by Falconers, in coping or paring a hawk's beak, pounces, or talons, when they are over grown.

CORNERS, or angles of the volt, are the extremities of the four lines of the volt when you work in square.

CORNER teeth of a horse, are the four teeth that are placed between the middling teeth and the tusshes, being two above, and two below, on each side of the jaw; which shoot when the horse is four years and an half old.

CORONET, or cronet of a horse, is the lowest part of the pastern which runs round the coffin, and is distinguished by the hair which joins and covers the upper part of the hoof. Or

CORONET, of a horse's foot, is that part on the very top

CRONET, of it where the hair grows, and falls down upon the hoof: the coronet should be no more raised than the hoof; for if it makes a ridge, or height round it, it is a sign that either the foot is dried up, or that there are a great many humours in the coronet, that may occasion the crown-scab, and other sores, to which that part is subject.

CORRECTIONS, and helps for a horse.

Before he is taught any lessons you ought to take notice, that there are seven helps for his furtherance therein, or to punish him for faults committed in his lessons.

1. The voice; which when sweet, and accompanied with cherishings, is helpful: but when rough and terrible, and accompanied with strokes or threatnings, a correction.

2. The rod; which is a help in the shaking, and a correction in the striking.

3. The

C O U

3. The bitt; an help in it's sweetness, the snaffle in it's smoothness, but both corrections; the one in it's hardness, and the other in it's roughness; and both in flatness and squareness.

4. The calves of the legs; which being gently laid to the horse's sides, are helps; but corrections when you strike them hard, as giving warning that the spurs are about to follow.

5. The stirrup and stirrup-leather; which are corrections when struck against the hinder part of the shoulder, but helps when thrust forward in a quick motion.

6. The spur; that is helpful when gently delivered in any motion that calls for quickness and activity, whether on or above the ground; and a correction, when it is struck hard in the side, upon any sloth or fault committed.

7. The ground; that is an help, when plain and smooth, and not painful to tread upon; and a correction, when rough, deep, and uneven, for the amendment of any vicious habit contracted.

CORVET, } [*in the Manage*] an air, when the horse's legs

CURVET, } are more raised than in the *demivolts*, being a kind of leap up, and a little forward, wherein the horse raises both his fore-feet at once, equally advanced, (when he is going strait forward, and not in a circle) and as his fore-legs are falling, he immediately raises his hind-legs, as he did his fore; that is, equally advanced, and not one before the other: so that all his four legs are in the air at once; and as he sets them down, he marks but two times with them.

Horses that are very dull, or very fiery, are improper for corvets; they being the most difficult air that they can make, and requiring a great deal of judgment in the rider, as well as patience in the horse, to perform it.

COSSET, a colt, calf, lamb, &c. taken and brought up by hand, without the dam.

COUCHING, [*hunting term*] the lodging of a boar; as the dislodging of that beast is called, *Rearing of a boar*.

COUPLE, two things of the same kind set together; a pair; thus a couple of conies, or rabbits, is the proper term for two of them: so it is likewise used by Hunters for two hounds, and a couple and an half, for three. Couple is also a sort of band to tie dogs.

COURSING *with grey hounds* is a recreation in great esteem with many gentlemen. It affords greater pleasure than hunting in some respects. As, First, because it is sooner ended. Secondly, it does not require so much toil. Thirdly, the game is for the most part always in sight. Fourthly in regard to the delicate qualities and shape of the greyhound.

C O U

There are three several courses with greyhounds, *viz.* at the deer, at the hare, and at the fox.

For the deer there are two sorts of courses, the one in the paddock, and the other either in the forest or purlieu.

For the paddock, there must be the greyhound, and the terrier, which is a kind of mongrel greyhound, whose business is to drive away the deer before the greyhounds are slipt, and most usually a brace or leash are let slip; seldom more than two braces. See GREYHOUND.

As for the paddock course. See PADDOCK.

The course of the deer in the forest or purlieu.

There are in this two ways in use, the one is coursing from wood to wood, and the other upon the lawns by the keeper's lodge.

If you course from wood to wood, you are first to throw some young hounds into the wood to bring out the deer, and if any deer come out that is not weighty, or a deer of antler, which is buck, fore, or forel, then you are not to slip your greyhounds, which are held at the end of the wood, where the deer is expected to come out, which the keepers have good judgment to know.

And if you mistrust, that the greyhounds will not kill him, then you may way-lay him with a brace of fresh greyhounds.

For the coursing upon the lawn, when you have given the keeper notice, he will lodge a deer for your course, then by coming under the wind, you may come near enough to slip your greyhounds for a fair course.

Coursing the HARE.

The best way in this, is to go and find out one sitting, which is easily done by walking cross the lands, either stubble, fallow or corn, and casting your eye up and down; for in the summer season they frequent such places for fear of ticks, which are common in woods; also the rain and the fall of the leaf offends them.

The rest of the year, you must beat up and down with poles to start them out of their forms and retreats, and some hares will not stir, until they are almost touched, and it is a certain sign that such hares will make an excellent course.

If a hare sit near any close or covert, and have her head towards the same with a fair field behind her, you may ride with as much company as you have between her and the covert before

C O U

before she be put up, and then she is likely to make her course towards the champain, for she seldom takes the same way that her head his, when she sits in her form.

When a hare is first started, you give her ground or law, which commonly is twelvescore yards or more; according to the ground where she sits, or else you lose much of your sport by putting an end to it too soon; and it is very pleasant to see the turnings and windings, that the hare will make to save her self, which sometimes prove effectual to her.

Courfing the FOX.

In courfing a fox, no other art is required than standing close, and on a clear wind on the outside of some grove, where you are to expect his coming out, and then give him head enough, otherwise he will turn back to the covert: for the slowest greyhound will be swift enough to overtake him; and all the hazard of this course, is the spoiling your dog by the fox, which oftentimes happens; and for this reason, you should not run any that are worth much at this chace; but such that are hard bitten dogs that will seize any thing.

The laws observed in COURSING.

The following were established by the Duke of Norfolk, in the reign of Queen *Elizabeth*, and were subscribed unto by the chief gentry, and thence held authentic.

1. That he that is chosen Fewterer, or that lets loose the greyhounds, shall receive the greyhounds matched to run together into his leash as soon as he comes into the field, and follow next to the hare-finder, or he who is to start the hare until he come unto the form, and no horseman or footman is to go before, or on any side but directly behind, for the space of about forty yards.

2. You ought not to course a hare with more than a brace of greyhounds.

3. The hare-finder ought to give the hare three so-hoes before he put her from her form or seat, to the end the dogs may gaze about, and attend her starting.

4. They ought to have twelvescore yards law before the dogs are loosed, unless there be danger of losing her.

5. That dog that gives the first turn, if after that there be neither cote, slip, or wrench, he wins the wager.

6. If one dog gives the first turn, and the other bears the hare, he that bears the hare shall win the wager.

C O W

7. A go by, or bearing the hare, is accounted equivalent to two turns.

8. If neither dog turn the hare, he that leads last to the covert wins.

9. If one dog turns the hare, serves himself and turns her again, it is much as a cote, and a cote is esteemed two turns.

10. If all the course be equal, he that bears the hare shall win; and if he be not born, the course shall be adjudged dead.

11. If a dog take fall in a course, and yet perform his part, he may challenge the advantage of a turn more than he gave.

12. If a dog turn the hare, serve himself, and give divers cotes, and yet in the end stand still in the field, the other dog, if he turns home to the covert, altho' he gives no turn, shall be adjudged to win the wager.

13. If by misfortune, a dog be rid over in his course, the course is void, and to say the truth, he that did the mischief ought to make reparation for the damage.

14. If a dog give the first and last turn, and there be no other advantage betwixt them, he that gives the odd turn shall win.

15. A cote is when the greyhound goeth endways by his fellow, and gives the hare a turn.

16. A cote serves for two turns, and two trippings or jerkins for a cote; and if she turneth not quite about she only wrencheth.

17. If there be no cotes given between a brace of greyhounds but that one of them serves the other at turning: then he that gives the hare most turns wins the wager: and if one gives as many turns as the other, then he that beareth the hare wins the wager.

18. Sometimes the hare doth not turn, but wrench; for she is not properly said to turn, except she turn as it were round, and two wrenches stand for a turn.

19. He that comes in first to the death of the hare, takes her up, and saves her from breaking, cherisheth the dogs, and cleanses their mouths from the wool, is adjudged to have the hare for his pains.

20. Those that are judges of the leash, must give their judgment presently before they depart out of the field.

COWRING [in *Falconry*] a term used of a young hawk when she quivers and shakes her wings in token of obedience to the old ones,

CRABBING

C R A

CRABBING [in *Falconry*] is when hawks stand too near and fight one with another.

The **CRAMP** and convulsions are the contractions of the sinews, veins, and muscles, in any member or part of the body.

The signs of knowing it are, that the horse will be so stiff, that the whole strength of a man is not able to bow him, he will be lame and well again, as if it were in a moment.

There is also another kind of cramp that seizes upon a horse's neck and the reins of his back, and universally all over his body, which may have proceeded either from a great cold, or from the loss of blood, whereby a great windiness enters his veins and benumbs the sinews.

This distemper also may be known by his head and neck standing awry, his ears upright, and his eyes hollow, his mouth dry and clung and his back will rise like a camel's: which disorders are to be cured by giving him somewhat to make him sweat, and by loading him with warm woollen clothes.

CRAPAUDINE, or *tread upon the coronet*, is an imperfection in a horse's foot, being an ulcer on the coronet, from whence issues a filthy matter, which by it's sharpness dries up the horn beneath the part where the tread is made, and forms a kind of groove, or hollow, down to the very shoe.

CRAY, a distemper in hawks, almost the same as the *Pantas*, proceeding from cold, by reason of ill diet and long feeding with cold, stale meat; the symptoms of it are that her muting will not be plentiful, nor come freely and easily from her; but she will drop some part thereof short and dispersed, and her body will be bound.

The cure; first remove the cause, letting her diet be high, easy of digestion, and cooling meat, such as young rabbits, chickens, sheeps hearts, &c.

Use her also to the confection of fresh butter, made up with rue, and cloves, and mace, anointing her meat with it.

It would not be amiss also to give her, sometimes with her meat, the distilled water of sorrel, woodbine, horehound, and the like cooling, cleansing, and opening medicines.

CRAY-FISH NET; cray-fish, or crevices, are readily taken with the following sort of net, and other instruments represented in the figure.

Provide four or five small nets about a foot square, tie them to a round withy hoop, or the like as you see marked in the figure C D E, procure also as many staves as A B, each of them five or six foot long, with three forks at the end, to which fasten the hoop at three equal distances, in such manner that

C R E

that when you lay the net flat on the ground, the stick may stand upright on the three forks.

Provide also a dozen rods or sticks in length five or six feet, cleft at the small end marked in the figure I, wherein you may place some skinned frogs, the guts of chickens or the like; having baited the sticks go out, and where you find any likely hole in the water, there leave it, and so after this manner lay the rest in the most likely places, and walk in and out visiting the sticks; when you perceive any fixed to the baits, gently move the baited end towards the middle of the water, and doubt not that cray fish will keep their hold; when that is done, put your hand just under the bait, and softly lift up the bait, and as soon as the cray fish feel the air, they let go their hold and fall into the net.

CREANCE } A fine, small, long line of strong and even
CRIANCE } spun packthread, which is fastened to a hawk's
CRIANTS } leash, when she is first lured.

CREAT is an usher to a riding master, or a gentleman bred in the Academy, with intent to make himself capable of teaching the art of riding the great horse.

CREPANCE, is a cratch or chap in a horse's legs given by the sponges of the hinder feet crossing and striking against the other hinder foot.

This cratch generates into an ulcer.

CRESCENT [among *Farriers*]; a horse is said to have *crescents*, when the point or that part of the coffin bone, or little foot which is most advanced, falls down, and presses the sole outwards; and the middle of the hoof above the toe shrinks and becomes flat by reason of the hollowness beneath it; tho' those *crescents* be really the bone of the little foot, which has left it's place and fallen downwards, so as the under part of the foot, that is the sole and the toe appears round; and the hoof above shrinks in.

CREST FALLEN is an imperfection or infirmity in a horse, when the upper part of his neck, on which his mane grows, called the crest, hangs either on the one side or the other, not standing upright as it ought to do.

This proceeds for the most part from poverty, caused by ill keeping, and especially when a fat horse falls away suddenly upon any inward sickness.

The remedy is as follows: first raise it up with your hand, and place it as it ought to stand: then let a person standing on the side the crest falls from, hold up the crest with one hand, and thrust out the bottom of it with the other, so that it may stand upright.

This

C R O

This being done, draw a hot iron, broad on the edge, on that side thro' the skin (driving his neck first at the bottom of the crest, then in the midst of it, and lastly at the setting on of the hair) and no deeper than on the other side, from whence the crest falls; then gather up the skin with your hand and apply two plasters of shoemakers wax, laid one against the other at the edge of the wound, and with smooth splints stay the skin, that it may shrink neither upward nor downward.

Then clip away all the spare skin, which you had gathered with your hand, with a sharp pair of scissars, and stitch the skin together in divers places with a needle-full of red silk, and stitch the edges of the plaster also to prevent it from breaking.

And last of all anoint the fore with turpentine, honey, and wax, melted together, and the places which you drew with the hot iron, with a piece of grease made warm, and thus do twice every day till it be whole.

But you must be sure to take care that your splints shrink not: tho' after all the best cure for this malady is to let the horse bleed and to keep him very well; for the strength and fatness will raise the crest again.

CREVICE; *i. e.* chop, clift, or chink.

CRINETs } [with *Falconers*] small black feathers in

CRINITES } hawks, like hairs about the fore.

CROATS, or Cravats, are horses brought from *Croatia* in *Hungary*, which for the most part beat upon the hand, and bear up to the wind; that is, bear their neck high, and thrust out their nose, shaking their head.

The croats are subject to be hollow or shell toothed.

CROCHES [with *Hunters*], the little buds that grow about the top of a deer or hart's horns.

CROTELS } [with *Hunters*] the ordure or dung of

CROTENING } a hare.

CROUP *of a horse* ought to be large and round, so that the tops of the two haunch bones be not within view of each other, the greater distance between these two bones the better; but, yet it is an imperfection, if they be too high, which is called hornhipped, tho' that blemish will in a great measure disappear, if he can be made fat and lusty.

The croup should have it's compass from the haunch bone, to the very dock, or onset of the tail, and should be divided in two by a channel or hollow all along to the very dock.

A racking CROUP, is when a horse's fore quarters go right, but his croup in walking swings from side to side; when such a horse trots, one of the haunch bones will fall, and the other rise

C R O

rise, like the beam of a ballance, which is a sign that he is not very vigorous.

CROUPADE [with *Horsemen*] is a leap in which the horse pulls up his hind legs, as if he drew them up to his belly.

CROW NET is an invention for catching wild fowl in the winter season, and which may be used in the day time: this net is made of double thread, or fine packthread; the meshes should be two inches wide, the length about ten yards, and the depth three. It must be verged on the side with good strong cord, and stretched out in length very stiff, upon long poles prepared for that purpose.

When you are come to the place where you would spread your net, open it and lay it out at it's full length and breadth; then fasten the lower end of the net all along upon the ground, so as only to move it up and down; the upper end of the net must stand extended on the long cord; the further end thereof being staked first to the earth by a strong cord about five yards distant from the net; place this cord in an even line with the lower edge of the net; the other end of the cord must be at least twenty five yards, to reach unto some natural or artificial shelter, by the means of which you may lie concealed from the fowl, otherwise you cannot expect any good success.

The net must be placed in such exact order that it may give way to play on the fowl, upon the least pull of the cord, which must be done smartly, lest the fowl should prove too quick for you.

This device may be used for pigeons, crows, or the like birds, in the corn fields newly sown, as also in stubble fields, provided the stubble do conceal the net from the fowl.

It may also be used for small birds at barn doors; but then you must lay for them some train of corn or chaff to entice them to the net, lying concealed.

This crow net may also be spread to great advantage and pleasure in the mornings and evenings, where you know their haunts are, at which time in hard weather fowls are want to fly in great flocks, to and from the land, with and against the wind, and then they fly close to the ground in open countries and low lands, which generally are not full of inclosures, and when they are within reach of your net, let go and it will rise over them, and bring them back to the ground with a smart blow.

CROWNED; a horse is said to be crowned, when, by fall or other accident, he is so hurt or wounded in the knee, that the hair sheds and falls off without growing again.

CROWNED

C U R

CROWNED *top*, or tops [with *Hunters*] are the first head of a deer, so called because the *croches* are raised in form of a crown.

CROWN scab [in *horses*] a white or mealy scurf caused by a burnt, yellow, and malignant matter that breaks forth at the roots of the hair, where it sticks to the skin and makes it frizzled and stare, and at last scalds it quite off. Of this there are two kinds.

1. The dry crown scab, that is without moisture.

2. The moist one, which is so by reason of a stinking water issuing out of the pores, and communicating it's stench and moisture to the neighbouring parts.

It appears on the coronet, and often all over the pastern to the joint, the part being much swelled, and will run up almost to the knee if not timely prevented.

The cure may be effected by taking two ounces of *Brazil tobacco* cut small, or at least stripped from the stalks, and infuse it for twelve hours in half a pint of strong spirit of wine, stirring it every hour, that the spirit of wine may penetrate the substance of the tobacco, and extract all it's tincture.

Chafe the scab with this without taking off the skin, and afterwards rub it very hard with a handful of tobacco, repeating this once a day till it is well.

CRUPPER, the buttocks of a horse, the rump: also a roll of leather put under a horse's tail, and drawn up by thongs to the buckle behind the saddle, so as to keep him from casting the saddle forwards on his neck.

CRUPPER buckles, are large square buckles fixed to the saddle tree behind, to fasten the crupper, each buckle having a roller or two on to make it draw easily.

CUB, a young bear, or bear's whelp [among *Hunters*], a fox and martens of the first year are also called cubs.

CULVER an old word for a pigeon or dove, whence come culver house, or dove house.

CURB is a chain of iron made fast to the upper part of the branches of the bridle, in a hole, called the eye, and running over the beard of the horse.

CURB of a horse's bridle, consists of the following parts.

1. The hook fixed to the eye of the branch.

2. The chain of the SS, or links.

3. The two rings or mails. Large curbs provided they are round are always the most gentle.

But care must be taken that it rest in it's proper place a little above the beard, otherwise the bitt-mouth will not have the effect that may be expected from it.

C U T

To give a leap upon the CURB, is to shorten the curb by laying one of the mails or S like joints of the chains over the rest.

Curb is a hard and callous tumour which runs within side of the horse's hoof: that is to say, on that part of the hoof that is opposite to the leg of the same side.

To CURTAIL a horse, i. e. to dock him or cut off his tail.

Curtailing is not used in any nation in *Europe*, or elsewhere, so much as in *England*, by reason of the great carriage, and heavy burthens our horses are continually employed in carrying or drawing: the *English* being strongly opinionated, that the taking off these joints, makes the horse's chine or back much stronger, and more able to support a burden.

The manner of performing the operation of curtailing, is, first to feel with your finger or thumb, till you have found the third joint from the setting on of the horse's tail; having done this to raise up all the hair, and turn it backwards; then taking a very small cord, and wrapping it about that joint, and pulling it with both your own and another man's strength, as straight as possible you can; after this wrap it about again, and draw it as straight or straighter than before; and thus do three or four times about the tail, with all possible straightness, and make fast the ends of the cord; after that take a piece of wood the end of which is smooth and even, of just height with the strunt of the horse's tail, and set it between the horse's hinder legs, having first trammelled all his four legs, so that he can no way stir: then lay his tail upon it, and taking a main sharp strong knife made for that purpose; set the edge thereof as near as you can guess between the fourth and fifth joint, and with a large smith's hammer striking upon the back of the knife, cut the tail off.

If you see any blood issue, you may know that the cord is straight enough, and therefore should be drawn straighter; but if no blood follow, then it is well bound.

When you have done this, take a red hot burning iron, made of a round form, of the full compass of the flesh of the horse's tail, that the bone thereof may not go through the hole; with this sear the flesh, till it be mortified, and in the searing you will clearly see the ends of the veins start out like pap heads; but you must still continue searing, till you see all to be moist, smooth, plain, and hard, so that the blood cannot break through the burning; then you may boldly unloose the cord, and after two or three days when you perceive the sore begin to rot, then do not fail to anoint it with fresh butter, or else with hog's grease and turpentine, till it be whole.

C U T

CUT. See **INTERFERE.**

To cut or geld a horse, is to render him impotent after which he is called a gelding, by way of distinction from a stone horse.

Commonly your rouffons (*i. e.* your strong thick bodied Dutch horses) are stone horses and not geldings.

The best way to cure a horse of biting and kicking, is to geld him.

To **CUT** *the round*, or **CUT** *the volt*, is to change the hand when a horse works upon volts of one tread, so that dividing the volt in two, he turns and parts upon a right line to recommence another volt.

In this sort of manage the riding masters are wont to cry *coupez, coupez le Rond*, cut, cut the round.



DACE

D A Y

DACE } - FISHING; These two fishes, as also a
DARE } roach, are much of the same
kind; both in manner of feeding, cunning, goodness,
and commonly in size.

They will bite at any fly, but especially at the stone caddis-fly, or *may-fly*, the latter end of *April*, and most part of *May*: It is an excellent bait, floating at top of the water; of which you may gather great quantities from the reeds and sedge, by the water-side; or from haw-thorn bushes, that grow near the bank of a shallow gravel stream, upon which they greatly delight to hang: and also at ant-flies, of which the blackest are the best; found in mole-hills, in *June*, *July*, *August*, and *September*; which you may preserve for your use, by putting them alive into a glass bottle, having first put into it some of the moist earth from whence you gathered them, with some of the roots of the grass of the said hillocks, and laying a clod of earth over the bottle; but if you would preserve them above a month, put them into a large runlet, which has been first washed with water and honey on the in-side, and then you may preserve them three months: but the best time to make use of them, is when they swarm, which is generally about the latter end of *July*, and the beginning of *August*.

This sort of fish, in a warm day, rarely refuses a fly at the top of the water; but remember when you fish under water for him, it is best to be within a handful, or something more, of the ground.

But if you would find dace or dare in winter, then, about *All-hollow-tide*, wherever you see heaths, or sandy grounds ploughing up, follow the plough, and you will find a white worm, with a red head, as big as the top of a man's little finger, very soft, that is nothing but the spawn of a beetle; gather these, and put them into a vessel, with some of the earth from whence they were taken, and you may keep them all the winter for an excellent bait.

DAPPLE-BLACK, is a black horse, that in his black skin or hair, has spots and marks, which are yet blacker, and more shining than the rest of the skin.

When bay horses have marks of a dark bay, we call them dapple bays, or bays a *miroir*.

DAY-NET, a net generally used for taking such small birds as play in the air, and will stoop either to stale, prey, gig, or the like; as larks, linnets, buntings, &c. The time of the year for using this net, is from *August* to *November*; and the best time

D A Y

time is very early in the morning: and it is to be observed by the way, that the milder the air, and the brighter the sun is, the better will be the sport, and of longer continuance. The place where this net should be laid, ought to be plain champain, either on short stubbles, green lays, or flat meadows, near corn-fields, and somewhat remote from towns and villages; you must be sure to let your net lie close to the ground, that the birds creep not out and make their escape.

The fashion of this net is described in the following figure; and 'tis made of a fine packthread, with a small mesh, not exceeding half an inch square: it must be three fathom long, and but one broad; the shape is like the crow net, and it must be verged about after the same manner, with a small, but strong cord, and the two ends extended upon two small, long poles, suitable to the breadth of the net, with four stakes, tail strings, and drawing-lines.

This net is composed of two, which must be exactly alike; and are to be laid opposite to each other, so even and close, that when they are drawn and pulled over, the sides must meet and touch each other.

You must stake this net down with strong stakes, very stiff on their lines, so that you may with a nimble twitch cast them to and fro at pleasure; then fasten your drawing-cords, or hand-lines (of which there must be a dozen at least, and each two yards long), to the upper end of the foremost staves; and so extend them of such a straitness, that with a little strength they may raise up the nets, and cast them over.

Your nets being thus laid, place your gigs, or playing wantons, about twenty or thirty paces beyond, and as much on this side your nets: these gigs must be fastened to the tops of long poles, and turned into the wind, so as they may play to make a noise therein. These gigs are a sort of toys made of long goose feathers, like shuttle-cocks, and with little small tunnels of wood, running in broad and flat swan-quills, made round, like a small hoop; and so with longer strings fastened to the pole, will, with any small wind or air, move after such manner, that birds will come in great flocks to play about them; as may be seen in the figure following.

When you have placed your gigs, then place your stake; which is a small stake of wood, to prick down into the earth, having in it a mortice-hole, in which a small, long and slender piece of wood, about two foot long, is fastened, so as it may move up and down at pleasure: and fasten to this longer stick, a small line, which, running through a hole in the aforesaid stick, and so coming up to the place where you are to sit, you may,

L

by

D A Y

by drawing the line up and down with your right hand, raise up the longer stick from the ground, as you see occasion.

Fasten a live lark, or such like bird, to this longer stick, which with the line making it to stir up and down by your pulling, will entice the birds to come to your net.

There is another stale, or enticement to draw on these birds, called a *looking-glass*; which is a round stake of wood, as big as a man's arm, made very sharp at the end, to thrust it into the ground: they make it very hollow in the upper part, above five fingers deep; into which hollow they place a three-square piece of wood, about a foot long, and each two inches broad, lying upon the top of the stake, and going with a foot into the hollowness; which said foot must have a great knob at the top, and another at the bottom, with a deep slenderness between, to which slenderness you are to fasten a small packthread, which running through a hole in the side of the stake, must come up to the place where you sit. The three-square piece of wood which lies on the top of the stake, must be of such a true poise and evenness, and the foot in the socket so smooth and round, that it may whirl and turn round upon the least touch; winding the packthread so many times about it, which being suddenly drawn, and as suddenly let go, will keep the engine in a constant round motion: then fasten with glue, upon the uppermost flat squares of the three-square piece, about twenty small pieces of looking-glasses, and paint all the square wood between them, of a light and lively red; which in the continual motion, will give such a reflection, that the birds will play about to admiration, until they are taken.

Both this and the other stale, are to be placed in the midst between the two nets, about two or three foot distance from each other; so that in the falling of the nets, the cords may not touch or annoy them: neither must they stand one before or after another, the glass being kept in a continual motion, and the bird very often fluttering. Having placed your nets in this manner, as also your gigs and stales, go to the further end of your long drawing-lines and stale-lines, and having placed your self, lay the main drawing-line a-cross your thigh, and with your left, pull the stale-line to shew the birds; and when you perceive them to play near and about your nets and stales, then pull the net over with both hands, with a quick, but not too hasty motion; for otherwise your sport will be spoiled.

You must always remember to lay behind you, where you sit, all the spare instruments and implements to be used; as the stakes, poles, lines, packthread, knitting-pin and needle, your bag with stales, a mallet to knock in the stakes upon occasion; and lastly, be sure that the first half dozen of birds you take,

be

D E C

be kept alive for stales; for you must not be unprovided there-
with upon any account.

Having thus amply treated of the day-net, (the same being
commonly used by all bird-men) I shall give the explanation of
the several parts by letters, *viz.*

A, shews the bodies of the main net, and how they ought to
be laid. B, the tail-lines, or the hinder lines, staked to the
ground. C, the fore-lines, staked also to the ground. D, the
knitting-needle. E, the bird-stale. F, the looking-glass stale.
G, the line which draws the bird-stale. H, the line that draws
the glass-stale. I, the drawing, double lines of the nets which
pulls them over. K, the stakes which stake down the four
nether points of the net, and the two tail-lines. L, the stakes
that stake down the fore-lines. M, the single line, with the
wooden button to pull the net over with. N, the stake that
staketh down the single line, and where the man should sit.
O, the wooden mallet. P, the hatchet; and Q, the gig.

DECEIVE; a horse is said to be deceived, upon a
demivolt of one or two treads; when working, (for instance)
to the right, and not having yet finished above half the demivolt,
he is pressed one time or motion forwards, with the inner legs,
and then is put to a reprize upon the left, in the same cadence
with which he begun; and thus he regains the place where the
demivolt had been begun to the right, and works to the left.

Thus you may deceive a horse upon any hand.

DECOY-BIRD, a bird made use of to call others of the
same species to them: they are usually kept in a cage, and from
thence decoy birds into the nets or snares prepared for them.

The hen partridge is the bird chiefly made use of in *France*
for this purpose, which is placed at the end of balks, or ridges,
where they spread their nets to draw in the cock that hears
her.

DECOY-DUCK, a duck that flies abroad, and lights into
company of wild ones; and by being become acquainted with
them, by her allurements, she draws them into the decoy-place,
where they become a prey.

DECOY-POND, a place made on purpose, by the means
of which, great store of ducks, teal, &c. are drawn into a
snare; and that by the subtilty of a few of their own kind,
which from the egg are trained up to come to hand for the
same purpose.

The manner of doing it, and the making the decoy-pond,
with the several apartments belonging to it, require a long dis-
course; but indeed no particular rules and directions can be
given therein, as being variously made, according to the situa-
tion of the place, which must be considered: so that such persons

D O C

who would make one, would do best to view some that are already made: they are frequent in divers parts of the kingdom, but especially in *Lincolnshire, Cambridgeshire*, and such like fenny countries; for the ground must be moist, moorish, and fenny, with the conveniency, if possible, of a river running through, or by it.

I shall therefore only say, that the place where these decoy-ducks entice them, must not be very broad, but set thick on both sides with osiers; and there must be nets at the top, and entrance, to be let down by the man who is to attend it, and who, when he sees the ducks all entered in, draweth the net, by which means they are taken.

And great caution is to be used, that the nets are not let down till all the ducks are within the limits of the nets; for if any should escape, it would be very prejudicial, for such a duck, or ducks, would be shy, and scarcely drawn into the like snare again, which would occasion others in the company to be shy too, and the decoy would be much prejudiced thereby.

DEER, a wild beast of the forest.

DEER-HAYES, engines, or large nets made of cords, to catch deer in.

DEER-NECKS in horses. See NECKS.

DEVUIDER, a term, in the academies, applied to a horse, that in working upon volts, makes his shoulders go too fast for the croupe to follow; so that instead of going upon two treads, as he ought, he endeavours to go only upon one: which comes from the resistance he makes in defending against the heels, or from the fault of the horseman, that is too hasty with his hand. See HASTEN.

DISARM; to disarm the lips of a horse, is to keep them subject, and out from above the bars, when they are so large as to cover the bars, and prevent the true pressure, or *appui* of the mouth, by bearing up the bitt, and so hindring the horse from feeling the effects of it upon the bars.

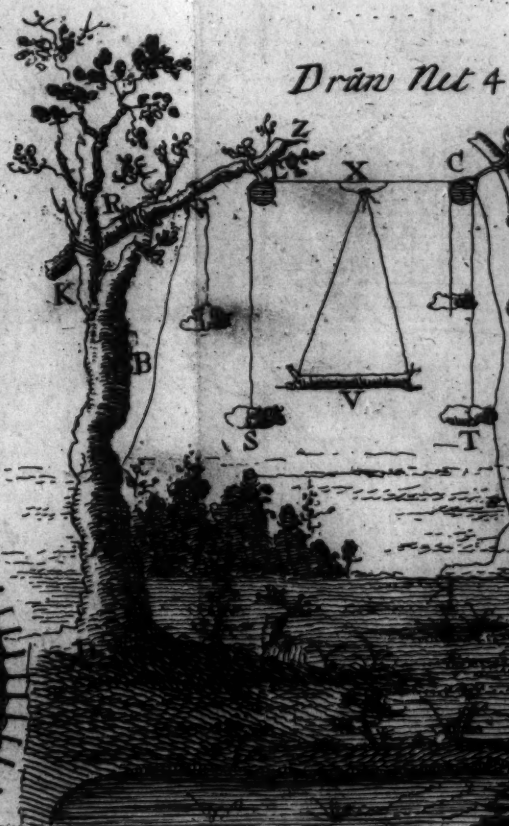
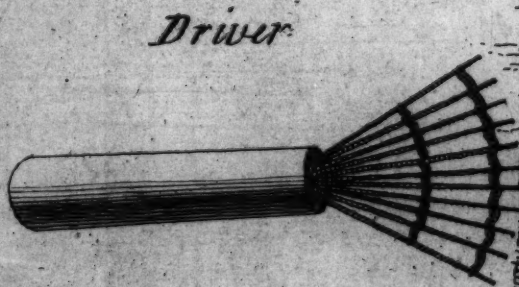
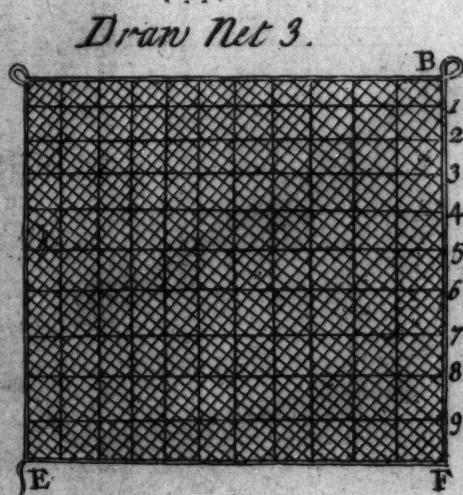
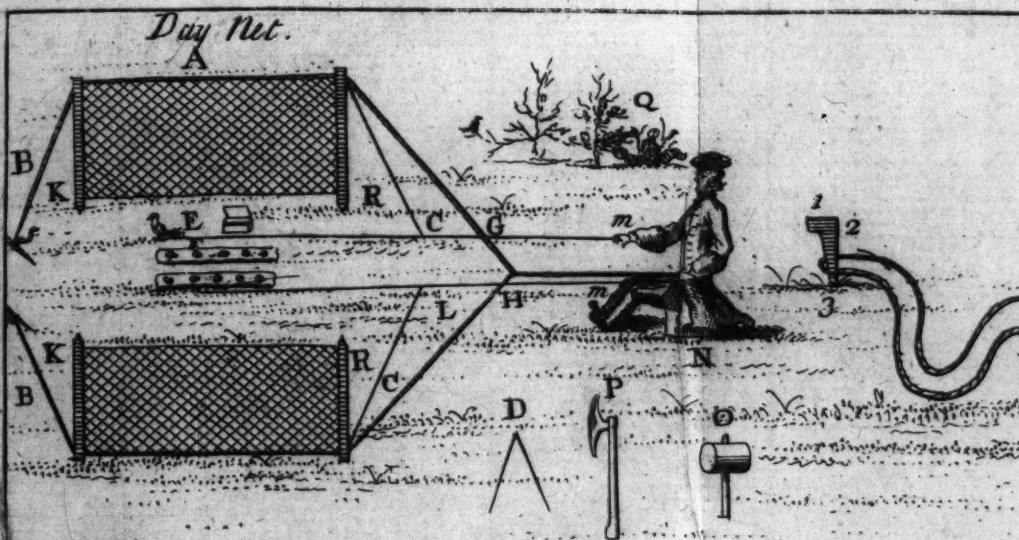
Give your horse a bitt with a cannon croupe or cut, which will disarm his lips; or else put the olives upon him, which will have the same effect.

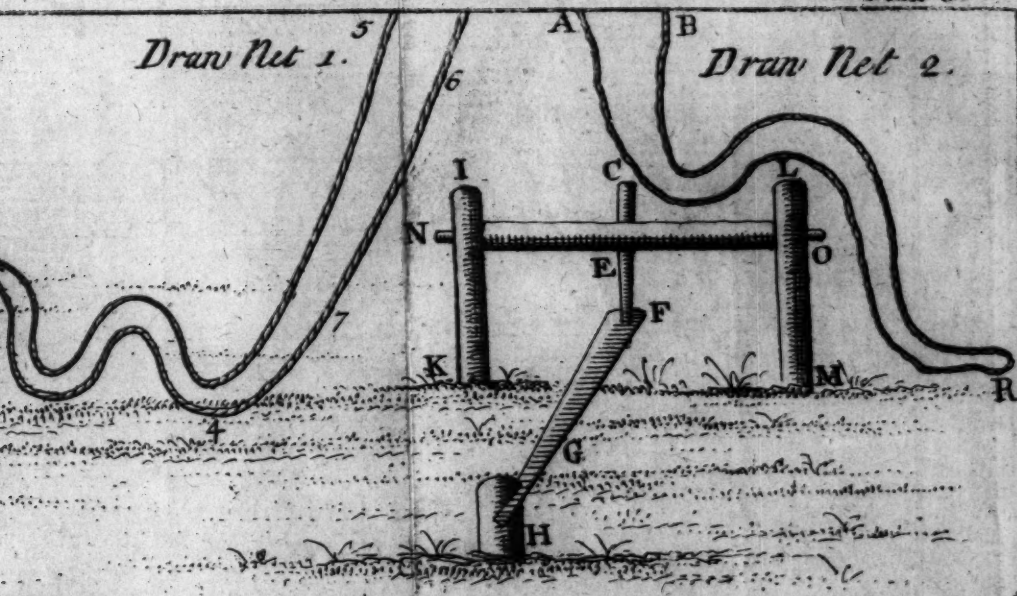
To DISGORGE, is to discuss, or disperse an inflammation or swelling. Hence they say,

Your horse's legs are gorged, or swelled; you must walk him out to disgorge them.

DISUNITE; a horse is said to disunite that drags his haunches, that gallops false, or upon an ill foot. See GALLOP FALSE.

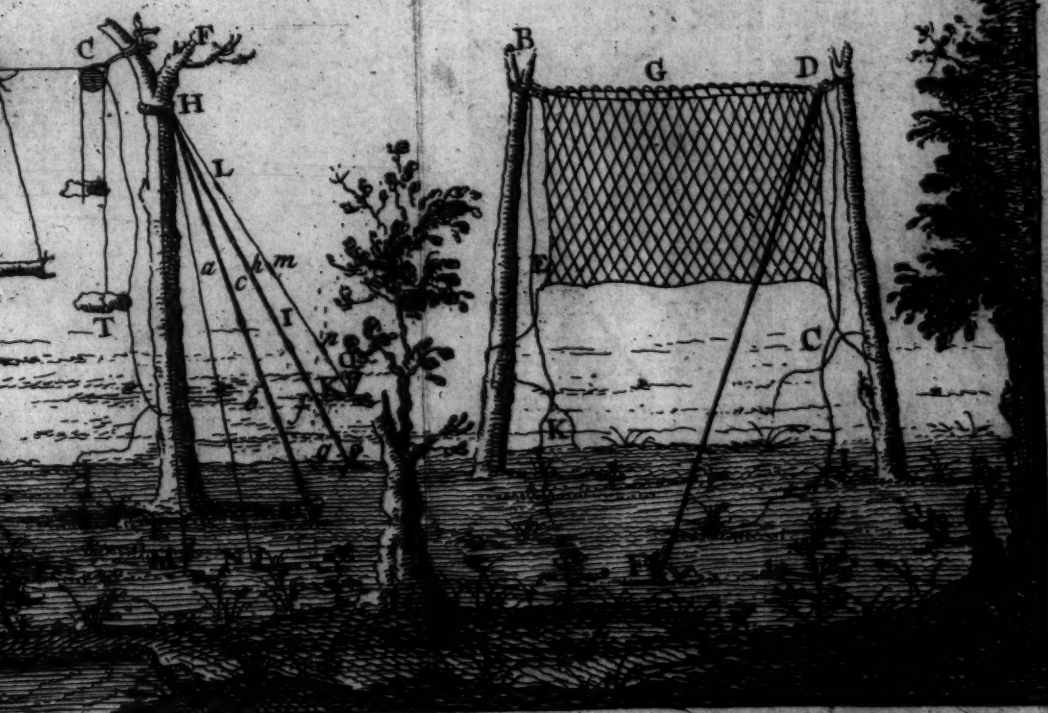
DOCK (or *Troussqueue*) is a large case of leather, as long as the dock of a horse's tail, which serves as a cover to the
tails





Draw Net 4.

Draw Net 5.



DOG

tails of leaping-horses ; and is made fast by straps to the crupper, having leather thongs that pass between his thighs, and along the flanks, to the saddle-straps, in order to keep the tail tight, to hinder it from whisking about, to make the horse appear broader at the croupe.

DOCK, [*with Hunters*] the fleshy part of a boar's chine, between the middle and the buttock : also the stump of a beast's tail.

DOCK-PIECE of a horse, should be large and full, rather than too small : if a horse gall beneath the dock, grease the part every day, and wash it with salt and water, or good brandy, but the latter is the most effectual remedy, if the horse will endure it.

DOGS: a dog is a domestic animal, made use of for the guard of a house, and for hunting : the dog is the symbol of fidelity, and amongst all irrational animals, may deservedly claim a most particular preference, both for their love and services to mankind ; using humiliations and prostrations, as the only means to pacify their angry masters who beat them, and turn revenge, after beating, into a more fervent love.

As there is no country in the world where there is not plenty of dogs, so no animals can boast of a greater variety, both in kind and shape ; some being for buck, others for bear, bull, boar, and some for the hare, coney, and hedge-hog, while others are for other uses, according to their various natures, properties and kinds ; neither are the uses and kinds of them so general, but their bringing up is also as easy, there being no great regard to be had as to their food, for they will eat any thing but the flesh of their own species, which cannot be so dressed by the art of man, but they will find it out by their smelling, and so avoid it.

Now because some Authors seem to lay a stress upon the colour of dogs, we shall briefly insert what they say, and begin with the white coloured dogs ; which for the most part are not good to run after all sorts of beasts ; but are excellent for the stag, especially if they be all over white, that is, pupped without any spot upon them : and experience has taught people to put a value upon such dogs, by reason of the natural instinct they have to perform every thing well they are designed for ; being curious hunters, having admirable noses, and very good at stratagems : in short, these dogs are valued because they are naturally less subject to diseases than others, by reason of the predominancy of flegm in them, which gives them a good temperament of body.

D O G

A black hound is not to be despised, especially if marked with white, and not red spots; seeing this whiteness proceeds from a flegmatic constitution, which hinders him from forgetting the lesson he is taught, and makes him obedient; whereas dogs that have red spots, are for the most part very fiery, and hard to be managed, by reason of the bilious humour that prevails, and causes this irregularity within them: and therefore a black dog with white spots is valuable, being usually hardy enough, will hunt well, is strong and swift, and holds out a long time: he will not forsake the chase, and when you are beating the water for sport, he will not be frightened at it: and lastly, he is the more esteemed, because those distempers incident to dogs, seldom befall him.

There are some grey coloured dogs that are good, and others you ought not to meddle with; that is, mongrels, which come from a hound bitch that has been lined by a dog of another kind, or from a bitch of another kind that has been lined by a hound: hounds cannot be good if they do not entirely retain the nature that is peculiar to them; and when they do, grey dogs are to be coveted, because they are cunning, never faulter, and grow not discouraged in the quest. 'Tis true, their sense of smelling is not so exquisite as that of those before-mentioned, but they have other qualities which make amends for it; for they are indefatigable in hunting, being of a robuster nature than others, and heat and cold, which they fear not, is alike to them.

Yellow dogs, are those which have red hairs, inclining to brown; and as choler is the most predominant humour in this animal, so he is found to be of a giddy nature, and impatient, when the beast he follows makes turns, seeing he still runs forwards to find him, which is a great fault; and therefore they are seldom made use of to hunt any other than the wolf, or such black beasts as are rarely inclined to turnings: they are too swift, open but very little, especially in very hot weather; they are naturally impatient, and therefore hard to be taught, as they are uneasy under correction. They are more subject to diseases than other dogs, by reason of that over fierceness of temper, which makes them hunt beyond their strength.

As to the proportions, sizes, and features of dogs, *M. Liger* says, the large, tall, and big hounds, called and known by the name of the deep-mouthed, or *southern-hound*, are heavy and slow, and fit for wood-lands, and hilly countries; they are of deep mouths, and swift spenders: they are generally lighter behind than before, with thick short legs, and are generally great of body and head, and are most proper for such as delight to follow

D O G

follow them on foot, as *stop-hunting*, as some call it; but by most is termed *hunting under the pole*; that is, they are brought to that exactness of command, that in the hottest scent, and fullest chace, if one but step before them, or hollow, or but hold up or throw before them the hunting-pole, they will stop in an instant, and hunt in full cry after you, at your own pace, until you give them encouragement by word of command; which much adds to the length of the sport, and pleasure of the hunters, so that a course oftentimes lasteth five or six hours.

Opposite to the deep-mouthed or southern hound, are the long and slender hounds, called *the fleet*, or *northern-hound*; which are very swift, as not being of so heavy a body, nor having such large ears: These will exercise your horses, and try their strength; they are proper for open, level, and champaign countries, where they may run in view, and full speed; for they hunt more by the eye than by the nose, and will run down a hare in an hour, and sometimes sooner: but the fox will exercise them longer, and better.

Between these two extremes, there are a middle sort of dogs, which partake of both their qualities as to strength and swiftness, in a reasonable proportion: they are generally bred by crossing the strains, and are excellent in such countries as are mixed, *viz.* some mountains, some inclosures, some plains, and some woodlands; for they will go through thick and thin, neither need they be helped over hedges, as the Huntsmen are often forced to do by others.

A true, right shaped, deep-mouthed hound, should have a round, thick head, wide nostrils, open, and rising upwards, his ears large and thin, hanging lower than his chops, the fleeces of his upper lip should be longer than those of his nether chops, the chine of his back great and thick, strait and long, and rather bending out than inclining in; his thighs well trussed, his haunches large, his fillets round and large, his tail or stern strong set on, waxing taper-wise towards the top, his hair under his belly rough and long, his legs large and lean, his feet dry and hard, with strong claws and high knuckles: in the whole, he ought to be of so just a symmetry, that when he stands level, you may discern which is highest, his fore or hinder parts.

For the *northern*, or *fleet-hound*, his head and nose ought to be slender and longer, his back broad, his belly gaunt, his joints long, and his ears thicker and shorter; in a word, he is in all parts slighter made, and framed after the mould of a greyhound.

DOG

By crossing those breeds, as before observed, you may bring your kennel to such a composition as you think fit, every man's fancy being to be preferred; and it is a well known saying,

So many men, so many minds;

So many hounds, so many kinds.

Though I shall refer the reader to the diseases incident to dogs, under their respective heads; yet their being bitten or stung by some venomous creatures, and others being not easily reducible to an article by it self, it shall be added here; and when they are stung by some adder, or other insect of that nature, you must take an handful of the herb cross-wort, gentian, and as much rue, the same quantity of *Spanish* pepper, thin broth, ends of broom and mint; of all an equal quantity; when that is done, take some white wine, and make a decoction of the whole, letting it boil for an hour in a pot; then strain the whole, into which put an ounce of dissolved treacle, and let the dog swallow it, and observe to wash the bite therewith: if a dog is bitten by a fox, anoint it with oil wherein you have boiled some rue and worms.

DOG-MADNESS, a distemper very common among all sorts of dogs; easy to be prevented, but hard to be cured: there are no less than seven sorts of madness, amongst which some are esteemed incurable; but before we proceed to particulars, it will be necessary to premise how it comes, and what are it's first symptoms.

The first cause proceeds from high feeding, want of exercise, fulness of blood and costiveness; as for the two first, you must observe when you hunt them, that they should be better fed than when they rest, and let them neither be too fat nor too lean, but of the two, rather fat than lean, by which means they will not only be preserved from madness, but also mange and scab; which diseases they will be subject to for want of air, water, or exercise; but if you have but the knack to keep them thus in an even temper, they may live long and continue sound; as for water they should be their own carvers: then for exercise and diet, it must be ordered according to discretion, observing a medium; and for the latter, give them once a week, especially in the heat of the year, five or six spoonfuls of fallad oil, which will cleanse them: if at other times they have the quantity given them of a hazle-nut of mithridate, it is an excellent thing to prevent diseases, and it is very good to bleed them under the tongue, and behind the ears. But if madness has seized them before you perceive it, they must speedily be removed

D O D

moved from the rest, for fear of an infection, and go to work with the rest.

The symptoms of this disease are many and easily discerned; when any dog separates himself contrary to his former use, becomes melancholy or droops his head, forbears eating, and as he runs snatches at every thing; if he often looks upwards, and that his stern at his setting on be a little erect, and the rest hanging down; if his eyes be red, his breath strong, his voice hoarse, and that he drivels and foams at the mouth; you may be assured he has this distemper.

The seven sorts of madness are as follows; of which the two first are incurable, *viz.* the *hot burning madness*, and *running madness*; they are both very dangerous; for all things they bite and draw blood from, will have the same distemper; they generally seize on all they meet with, but chiefly on dogs: their pain is so great it soon kills them. The five curable madnesses are;

Sleeping madness, so called from the dog's great drowsiness, and almost continual sleeping; and this is caused by the little worms that breed in the mouth of the stomach, from corrupt humours, vapours, and fumes which ascend to the head: for cure of which, take six ounces of the juice of wormwood, two ounces of the powder of hartshorn burnt, and two drams of agaric, mix all these together in a little white wine, and give it the dog to drink in a drenching horn.

Dumb madness lies also in the blood, and causes the dog not to feed, but to hold his mouth always wide open, frequently putting his feet to his mouth, as if he had a bone in his throat: to cure this, take the juice of black hellebore, the juice of *spatula putrida*, and of rue; of each four ounces; strain them well, and put thereto two drams of unprepared scammony, and being mixed well together, put it down the dog's throat with a drenching horn, keeping his head up for some time, lest he cast it out again; then bleed him in the mouth, by cutting two or three veins in his gums.

It is said that about eight drams of the juice of an herb called hartshorn, or dog's tooth, being given to the dog, cures all sorts of madness, but whether it will or not is left to trial.

Lank madness is so called, by reason of the dog's leanness and pining away: for cure give them a purge as before directed, and also bleed them: but some say there is no cure for it.

Rheumatic or flavering madness, occasions the dog's head to swell, his eyes to look yellow, and he will be always flavering and drivelling at the mouth; to cure which, take four ounces of the powder of the roots of polipody of the oak, six ounces of the juice of fennel roots, with the like quantity of the roots
of

D O G

of misleto, and four ounces of the juice of ivy: boil all these together in white wine, and give it to the dog as hot as he can take it, in a drenching horn.

Falling madness is so termed because it lies in the dog's head, and makes them reel as they go, and to fall down: for cure, take four ounces of the juice of briony, and the same quantity of the juice of peony, with four drams of stavesacre pulverized; mix these together and give it the dog in a drenching horn; also let him bleed in the ears, and in the two veins that come down his shoulders; and indeed bleeding is necessary for all sorts of madness in dogs.

To prevent dogs from being mad, that are bitten by mad dogs, this is done by bathing them; in order to which take a barrel or bucking tub full of water, into which put about a bushel and an half of foot, which must be stirred well, that it may be dissolved; then put in the dog that is bitten, and plunge him over head and ears seven or eight times therein, and it will prevent his being mad; but he should be also blooded.

When dogs happen to be bit as aforesaid, there is nothing better than their licking the place with their own tongues, if they can reach it, if not, then let it be washed with butter and vinegar made lukewarm, and let it afterwards be anointed with *Venice* turpentine: it is also good to piss often upon the wound; but above all, take the juice of the stalks of strong tobacco boiled in water, and bathe the place therewith, also wash him in sea water, or water artificially made salt: give him likewise a little mithridate inwardly in two or three spoonfuls of sack, and so keep him apart, and if you find him after some time still to droop, the best way is to hang him.

It may not be amiss to add what a late author advises every one who keeps a dog, which is to have him wormed, and is a thing of little trouble and charge, and what he believes would prevent their being mad; and if they are, he is of opinion that it prevents their biting any other creature; for he asserts he had three dogs bit by mad dogs, at three several times, that were wormed, and though they died mad, yet they did not bite, nor do any mischief to any thing he had: and having a mind to make a full experiment of it, he shut one of them up in a kennel, and put to him a dog he did not value: that the mad dog would often run at the other dog to bite him; but he found his tongue so much swelled in his mouth, that he could not make his teeth meet; that that dog, though he kept him with the mad dog till he died, yet did not ail any thing, though he kept him two years afterwards, and gave him no remedies to prevent any harm, which might come from the biting of the mad dog.

But

D O G

But as there are several sorts of madness in dogs, he was not certain whether the effects were the same in all; but his dogs seemed to die of the black madness, which is reckoned the most dangerous, and therefore he could not tell how far the following receipt might be effectual in all sorts of madness, though it had not failed in curing all the dogs that he gave it to which were bitten, and all those he gave it not to, died.

The remedy is this, take white hellebore and grate it with a grater to powder, which must be mixed with butter, and given to the dog: the dose must be proportioned to the size of the dog, to a very small lap-dog you may give three grains, to a large mastiff sixteen grains, and so in proportion to other sizes. He adds, that the best way is, to give him a small quantity at first, that it may be increased as it is found to work, or not to work; but that as it is a strong vomit, and will make the dogs sick for a little time, so they must be kept warm that day it is given them, and the next night, and they must not have cold water; but when it has done working, towards the afternoon give them some warm broth, and the next morning give them the same before you let them out of the house or kennel.

The same author says this is an extraordinary remedy for the mange; that he never knew three doses fail of curing any dog that had it, except he had a surfeit with it; which if he had, let him blood also, and anoint him two or three times over with gunpowder and soap, beat up together, and it will cure him.

That he had it of a gentleman, who had cured several creatures that had been bit by mad dogs, with only giving them the middle yellow bark of buckthorn, which must be boiled in ale for a horse or cow, and in milk for a dog; and that being bit with one himself, he adventured to take nothing else; but that it must be boiled till it is as bitter as you can well take it.

The choice of a DOG and BITCH for breeding good WHELPS.

The bitch ought to be one of a good kind, being strong and well proportioned in all parts, having her ribs and flanks great and large.

Let the dog that lines her be of a good fair breed; and let him be young, if you intend to have light and hot hounds; for if the dog be old, the whelps will participate of his dull and heavy nature.

If your bitch do not grow proud of her own accord, so soon as you would have her, you may make her so by giving her the following broth:

Boil.

D R A

Boil two heads of garlic, half a castor's stone, the juice of cresses, and about twelve *Spanish* flies, in a pipkin that holds a pint, together with some mutton, and make broth of it; and give of this to the bitch two or three times, and she will not fail to grow proud, and the same pottage given to the dog will make him inclinable to copulation.

After your bitch has been lined and is with puppy, you must not let her hunt, for that will be the way to make her cast her whelps; but let her walk up and down unconfined in the house and court; never locking her up in her kennel; for she is then impatient of food, and therefore you must make her some hot broth once a day.

If you would spay your bitch, it must be done before she has ever had a litter of whelps; and in spaying her take not away all the roots and strings of the veins; for if you do it will much prejudice her reins, and hinder her swiftness ever after: but by leaving some behind, it will make her much the stronger and more hardy.

But by no means do not spay her while she is proud, for that will endanger her life: but you may do it fifteen days after; but the best time of all is when the whelps are shaped within her.

DOG-DRAW [in the *forest Law*] a term used when a man is found drawing after a deer by the scent of a hound, which he leads in his hand. See **BACK-BEROND**.

DOLE FISH, that fish which the fishermen, employed annually in the north seas, usually receive for their allowance.

DORING ?

DARING }

See **CLAP-NET** and **LOOKING-GLASS**.

DOTTEREL, a bird so named from it's doting foolishness, in imitating the actions of the Fowlers; till it be caught in the net; of these birds there are a good store in *Lincolnshire*.

To **DOUBLE** [*Hunting term*] used of a hare who is said to double, when she keeps in plain fields, and winds about to deceive the hounds.

DOUBLE: to double the reins: a horse doubles his reins when he leaps several times together to throw his rider.

This Ramingue doubles his reins and makes pontlevis. See **PONTLEVIS**.

DRAUGHT horse, a horse destined for the cart, plough, &c. in the choice of which, for either of these purposes, being that which they call the slow draught, one is to be chosen of an ordinary height; for horses in a cart unequally sorted, never draw at ease, but the tall hangs upon the low horse. Our *English* authors say, he should be big, large bodied and strong limbed by nature, rather inclined to crave the whip, than to draw

D R A

draw more than is needful ; and for this purpose, mares are most profitable, if you have cheap keeping for them ; for they will not only do the work, but also bring yearly increase : but care must be taken to have them well *foreheaded*, that is, to have a good head, neck, breast, and shoulders ; but for the rest, it is not so regardful, only let her body be large ; for the more room a foal has in it's dam's belly, the fairer will be his members ; and be sure never to put the draught horses to the saddle, for that alters their pace, and hurts them in their labour. See **PACK-HORSE**.

Some say, that a horse designed for draught or labour, ought to have a head with large bones, and not fleshy, that so he may not be subject to diseased eyes ; that his ears ought to be small, strait, and upright, and his nostrils should be large and open enough, that he may breathe with the more ease and freedom ; that those horses that have their foreheads sunk a little downwards about the eyes, are generally good for labour ; whereas those who are designed for the saddle, ought to have them even and pretty large ; that the forehead should be always marked with a star, unless the horse be of a grey or white colour.

You must see that he has a bright and lively eye, full of fire, and pretty large and forward in his head, having large balls, and raised pits, and never sunk, which shews that the horse is old, or begot by an old stallion ; and if he has a bold look it is also a good sign : sunk eyes or elevated brows are indeed signs of some malignity in a horse ; but these sort of horses will generally undergo much fatigue.

His mouth should be pretty wide, being a quality very essential to it, the palate not fleshy, and the lips thin : the mouth also should be cool, and full of foam, by which you may discover the good temperament of a horse, and that he is less subject to be heated than another ; not that the mouth should be that which must be most regarded in a draught horse ; for if he has a bad one, he often draws the better.

We do not require fine chests in draught-horses, that being not essential ; all that is to be said on this occasion is, that such animals ought to have pretty thick and fleshy ones, but his breast should be large and open, his shoulders should be thick, that he may draw the easier, and that his harness may not so soon hurt him : if he be somewhat heavy, he is the better for draught ; for the more he is nearer the ground, the more he is valued for that purpose. He ought to have double loins, which may be seen by their being a little raised up towards both sides of the back-bone ; he ought also to have large and round sides, to the end that he may have the more guts, and a better flank : you need not be afraid of his having a great belly, provided it be

D R A

be not cow-bellied, which will make him appear deformed : he should have full, but no broad flanks, that he may not sway in the back at his labour.

That horse is esteemed which has a large and round buttock, that neither sinks down nor cuts : care should be taken that he should have a firm and strong tail, that the dock should be thick, well furnished with hair, and placed neither too high nor too low, both which contribute much to the deformity of the buttocks. The legs are parts of the body of a horse which are most to be considered, as being those which are to support the burthen of the whole body, to which they ought to suit ; therefore legs should be rather flat and broad than round, the roundness of the leg being a defect in a horse destined to labour which will soon ruin him : as for the hinder legs, the thighs should be long and fleshy, and the whole muscle that is on the outside of the thigh should be fleshy, large, and very thick ; 'tis a fault to find them fall down plum when the horse steps ; 'tis also a sign of weakness in the loins or hams : however you are not to consider the hind legs so much as the others, they being not so subject to be faulty ; the fore ones being very often bad when the others are good. Those horses whose legs are too long and too large for their height, are faulty, and you ought not to buy them. You must always observe that he stands well and plum, when he stops in any place, and if he does not, you may conclude he is not good.

The usual ways to know the age of a horse, is by his teeth, eyes, &c. for the first of which in particular, the Reader is referred to the article of *Horses age*. As to the eyes, some say, if you would not be deceived, you must not content your self to look on and examine the eyes of a horse, once, twice, thrice, but even ten times ; for the more you view them, the more you will discover what you want to know, which you should do always in a place where there is a good light, and as soon as he is brought out of the stable, sometimes standing right before, and sometimes side-ways ; but you should never examine the eyes in broad sun-shine, that being the direct way to be deceived. It is a good sign to find the vitrous part very bright and transparent ; whereas if you discover some spot, obscurity, or whiteness therein, and especially if surrounded with certain circles, you may conclude them to be bad : and have nothing to do with those of the colour of a withered leaf. You may view the eye-ball across the vitrous part, and there discover if you can discern a small white spot therein, which is called a cataract ; an evil very dangerous to the eye, if not timely remedied. That eye-ball is not good that is of a white, dark, green, transparent colour ; a troubled and very brown
one

D R A

one, and such as is less than the other, are to be rejected; the first will infallibly be lost, and the last will soon become like the other.

You are not to reject troubled eyes which are occasioned by the strangles, with which the horse is afflicted, or by the pain that is caused in the breeding of the teeth; for as those disorders cease, so will the horse's eyes brighten and become clear. Sometimes small and sunk eyes, and black ones, are to be met with, with which you should have nothing to do, unless they are very transparent, for they run more risque than others, of being lost.

The nether jaw of the horse should be examined very well, to see that it be incommoded with no gland, which may occasion the strangles, and be a means to kill him.

Something may be said in another place concerning the feeding of a draught-horse; but for the servant who looks after him, he ought to be up very early, and see that all the harness be in good order; and taking away the old hay out of the rack, lay fresh in, and clean the manger, ridding it of all ordure, earth, or foul dung; and while the horses are eating their hay, he ought to take them one after another out of the stable, to curry them, for fear if he should do this work within, the dust might fly to the other horses.

If persons would be persuaded of the necessity there is to dress horses well, they would not be so often surprized at the loss of them, for want of this care, tho' they feed them never so well.

It is from the filth, that is upon and about them, that many of the distempers which befall them, have their rise, and prove their destruction: and it may be held for a certain maxim, that a horse with less food, that is methodically dispensed, and well dressed and curried, shall be fatter, and more lightly than another who has more provender given him, and whose dressing is neglected; and therefore the master of a family ought to be on the watch, and see that his servants (if they are of themselves careless) be not wanting in this particular.

Such sort of servants ought to be good humoured, handy, tractable, nervous, and hardy; and in order to dress a horse well, they should hold the curry comb in the right hand, and the horse in the left, near the buttock, and lightly move the comb backwards and forwards along his body, and continue so to do till no more filth or dust come off; and then they must, with a dust-cloth, wipe off all the dust that lies on the horse, without forgetting to do it over his body.

They should daily, after they have dusted their horses, take a wisp of straw, and twisting the same hard, wet it in water, with

D R A

with which they should rub them all over, and especially the legs, with which they should take a good deal of pains: by this means they will remove obstructions, and facilitate the passage of the animal spirits, which cause motion: indeed it cannot be expected this second dressing should be practised every day, but it ought to be done as often as servants have any leisure for it, particularly when the weather does not permit them to labour abroad; and if they are defective therein, the master of the family ought to be careful, and make them to do it. When the horses are thus dressed, the next thing is to take the comb, and gently to comb their mane and tails; and then they are to be led out of the stable to water, and to cheer and divert them as much as possible.

Most part of the diseases to which horses are subject, proceed from their drinking bad waters; such as those that are too vivid, or too raw, muddy, and too cold. To prevent these inconveniences, you must observe, that if you are near a river, you should in summer-time, by all means, lead your horses thither; but as little as may be in the winter, if you have a well near home; for well-water fresh drawn, during the season, is warm, and consequently good for the horses: If you are remote from any river, and that in summer-time you have no other than spring-water to give your horses to drink, you must draw the same a good while before it is given them, and expose it to the sun in tubs, or very clean stone troughs, that you may by that means correct the great crudity of the waters, which is extremely injurious to them: you must seldom or never carry them to drink marshy water, which has very bad qualities, and will not agree with them.

When your labouring horses have drank their water, you must give them their oats in a manger, that has been first of all cleaned: the oats should be well sifted and cleared from dust, before you give 'em to them; you ought to take care to smell to them, and see if they smell of rats, or are musty, which will make the horses loath them. You must likewise, above all things, observe whether there are any small feathers among the oats, which may, if left therein, do the horse a great deal of injury: the quantity of oats allowed to each horse, is sometimes more, and sometimes less, but ever enough to make them keep up their flesh; and while the horses are eating their oats, the servants are to take their breakfasts, and afterwards go to harness them for the plough or cart, as their occasions require.

But before they do this, they must examine whether any thing hurts them, either at the breast, shoulders, or hams; and they must see that the collars about their necks be supplied with every thing that is requisite for them: if they are to draw in a cart, you

D R A

you must see that the pad upon the back does no way hurt them; that the same sits every way even, and that it be well stuffed with hair in the pannels, for fear it should be too hard upon the horse's back.

The horses being thus managed, and every thing in good order for the work, whether with plough or cart, those servants who do understand their business well, do not work them at first too hard, but every turn let them gently breathe; whereas if they do otherwise, they will very often find them decline their food, after their return from labour; by which ill management they sometimes run the danger of foundering, or having their grease melted; and therefore to work them gradually is the best and safest way. When the horses are returned from the plough, &c. as towards noon-tide, or the like, they are usually all in a sweat, and then the men must not fail to rub them with a wisp of straw; this is the first thing they are to do after they are brought into the stable; then let them prepare some bran which is very well moistened, and put it before them in the manger, to make them mumble the same, and this will make them eat the hay with a greater appetite; the bran being ordered as before, will cool their mouths, which are dried, through the heat occasioned within by their drawing; and notwithstanding the horses are thus hot, it is very rarely that any inconvenience happens to them, especially if the water wherein the bran has been steeped, be used rather too hot than too cold: when such precautions are not taken, it is no wonder the owners and their servants, very often find their horses loath their food, the driness of their tongues rendring all their food insipid to them; and therefore those persons who love their horses, ought carefully to observe this method, and they will find their account in it.

We daily see persons who pretend to be well skilled in the management of horses, as soon as after hard labour they are brought back to the stable, never fail to rub their legs with wisps of straw, alledging that this is the way to refresh and supple them, and consequently to refresh them very much: but they are much mistaken in the point, for the horses after hard labour, must not have their humours much agitated; and by this action they must needs fall upon their legs, which will tend to make them very stiff and useless. The Author adds, that he was willing to give them this information and caution, judging it very necessary for the avoiding those inconveniences which happen daily by that ill method, which cannot be followed after such admonition, but by those who are obstinate in their way, and will ruin their horses: Not that our Author disapproves the rubbing of their legs, which he says is very wholesome; but it

M

must

D R A

must not be done when they are too hot ; and they should confine themselves only to the rubbing of their bodies when they are in a sweat, and let their legs alone.

Their racks being well supplied with hay, you must suffer your horses to rest two hours, or thereabouts, then lead them to water, to a river, if near, or otherwise as above directed ; and then in a little time after they have eaten their oats, to work again with them : In the evening, when your ploughing or other work is over, the first thing to be done after they are tied to the rack, is to lift up their feet, and see if there is any defect in the shoes, and at the same time take out with a knife, the earth and gravel which is lodged in the foot, between the shoe and the sole, and put in some cow-dung : this your servants often neglect, and therefore the master ought to see them do it.

A thing very essential for the preservation of all sorts of horses, but more particularly needful here in respect to draught-horses, is good litter, which to these animals, is comparatively the same as clean sheets to men. There are many who suffer the dung to rot a great while under their horses ; some through laziness will not clean their stables, and others say they leave the dung there that it may receive more juice, and be the better manure for the ground ; but it is very wrong reasoning, to say we do this to save five shillings, and lose ten : but you are to understand, that the dung being heaped up for a considerable time, does so over-heat the horse's feet, that this alone is enough to ruin them entirely.

Hence also arise so many inconveniences to the owners of them, that they are often obliged to keep them in the stable without doing any work, which embarrasses either the master to whom they belong, or the servant who has the care to dress them ; and this inconvenience proceeds only from their ignorance of the cause : and therefore it is of the highest importance that the stable should be cleansed as often as possible, and the horses have fresh litter given them ; besides, it is natural to believe, that all animals hate their own ordure ; and it is absurd to think, that a horse which is one of the cleanest among them, should not do the same.

Fresh litter has a virtue to make horses stale as soon as they come into the stable, whereas when they find no such therein, they decline pissing ; and if people were sensible what refreshment it is to a horse to piss at his return from labour, they would be both more curious and careful to let him have that which will promote it, than they are.

This staling after much fatigue, will prevent obstructions in the neck of the bladder, or passage of the urine : but if otherwise

D R A

otherwise, and that this same urine comes to lodge in the bladder, it will cause some inflammations there; which are very dangerous evils for horses, and of which they very often die, without present relief: Hence you may judge of the necessity there is to let your horses frequently have fresh litter.

As to the remaining care you ought to have of your horses, so that they may pass the night as they ought, there needs no more after you have well rubbed them, than to supply their racks with hay enough, which they may feed upon after they have eaten their oats: and continuing thus daily to manage them, it will be the means to keep them in a condition to do you good service. If you would see more about buying other sorts of horses, see *RULES for buying Horses*.

DRAW-NET, a device wherewith to catch birds, and especially woodcocks; the figure of which will be found under that Article; to which something to be said here does refer. There are two ways, says a *French Author*, to hinder the cords or lines of your draw-net from hurting your hands, and to keep you from cold. Suppose the crotchet or hook R, in the said figure, numb. 2, should be denoted here by the cypher I, the ends of the two cords 2 and 3, and the two lines 5 and 6, were the cords to keep the net extended; when you sit in your lodge, hold the place marked 7, very firm in one hand, and with the other pass the two redoubled cords together, to the figure 4, between your legs, and bring them over your thigh, then keep them tight enough, quit the places, and so with either of your hands you will hold the cords without trouble; but you must be very ready in opening them, and separate your knees when the woodcock gets into the net. See plate V. No. 1.

Another way of holding the net without feeling any cold, or hurting your hands, is seen in the figure, No. 2.

Suppose the seat in the lodge be towards the letter R, drive the stick H into the ground; it must be about two inches thick, and the breadth of four fingers above ground; at a foot and a half from this little stake, as you go towards the draw-net, at the places marked K and M, drive two other thick sticks into the ground, and they must not exceed a foot above ground; a hole should be bored in them within two inches of the upper end, into which you may thrust a finger: take a turned piece of wood, N, C, O, whose ends N, O, must be no thicker than one's little finger, that they may the more easily turn in the two holes I and L, into which you must thrust them: You must make a hole in the middle of the said round piece of wood, big enough to receive a peg as thick as your finger, and five or

D R A

six inches long. This piece of wood ought to be fixed in the holes before you drive the two stakes into the ground.

Besides this, take another piece of wood, H, G, F, let it be flat like a piece of a pipe-stave, and cut at both ends in the form of a half moon, that so being joined to the stake H, it may hold. The machine being thus made, when you have spread and mounted your net, suppose the two lines A, B, were it's cords, raise them both with the same hand, and doubling them with the other at the letter C, give them a turn about the end C of the peg in the middle, then pushing the other end E on the side of the net, give the turned stick, or round piece of wood, N, O, two turns, and fasten it, by putting some of the ends of the marcher H against the stick H, and the other at F, against the end of the peg E, so that the weight of the draw-net, by this marcher or trap, will stop the turned stick and hinder it's turning. You may by this device keep your hands in your pockets, without being afraid of the net's falling; but keep the end of your foot always upon the middle part G, and when the bird comes to your draw-net, stir your foot, and the net will as readily fall as if you held it with your hands.

This *triple draw-net* serves chiefly for passes made about forests; they are very convenient, because one man can pitch several of them, without being obliged to watch the coming of woodcocks. *See the form of this net in plate V.*

In order to the making of this net, you must take measure of the breadth and height of the place where you are to use it, and fasten it to a nail, in order to measure off the square meshes; as you will find under the Article NET, and NET-MAKING, where we treat of making a net that will shut like a bag, which must consist of good thick thread, twisted four fold, and the meshes must be ten or a dozen inches broad.

It is difficult, in great forests and woods that are equally strong and tall, to make glades, without felling a great many trees; and yet you are not sure your draw-net will do, without you meet with a place of ten or a dozen arpents or more, each of which consists of an hundred perches square, without any trees, and that the glade adjoins to it.

In case you can have no such, you may try the following invention, described in plate V. following.

Pitch upon some clear place on the side of a forest; for example, suppose AD to be the forest, and the space between the tree A and the letter E, to be the void space, five or six fathom broad; pitch upon a tall and strait tree on the side of the wood, as that marked A, lop off the branches towards your clear ground, and fasten to the top of the tree a strong pole, as at K, R, Z; find out a tree in the wood of a middling bigness,

D R A

as that represented by E F, let it be as high and strait as possible: when you have taken off all the branches, carry it to the place where your draw-net is, and making a hole in the ground, as at E, four or five foot deep, and six or seven fathom distant from the edge of the forest A, put the thick end of it into this hole, lift it up, and let it stand upright, after you have first tied within two or three foot of the end F, some bands of wood, fastened end to end to one another, as you may see by the letters *a, b, c, d, e, f, &c.* and let them be kept tight, with wooden hooks fixed quite round in the ground: they should be nine foot distant from the foot E, and ordered like ropes at the mast of a ship: at the same time care must be taken that none of them reach to the glade, or space between A and E, for fear of entangling the net. You must so set your tree which you have cut, that the point F incline two foot, or thereabouts, towards the pass to the forest; and you are to fasten the pulley C to the small end, with a cord or packthread thrust through it; as also to the tree A, and through the pulley L. You may leave the thick cords there; but because thieves might be tempted to steal them, the best way is to leave only the packthreads, and even to shorten them, by tying a small packthread B to one end, and twisting the other about the trunk of the tree, at a place where they are not to be come at, especially without climbing up as far as the part E H of the cut tree: but the best way is to take with you a light ladder, six or eight foot high, by which you may more easily secure your goods.

Another invention is, after the flight is over, to tack two cords together, by the means of which you may convey up as many stones as far as the pullies; then take a stick V, two foot long, and cleft at both ends, about which fold all the rest of the cords; after which pass them both into the clefts at the ends of the stick, and let the whole mount up. Thus the stones S, T, will come down to half the height of the trees, because the cords are tied together at the letter X, and there will the stick V hang downwards: so that to order things rightly, you must have a long pole with a hook at the end, wherewith to hook the piece of wood V, and pull it; or else take a packthread, and tie a stone as big as a hen's egg to it, that you may throw it between the two cords over the stick V, and by that means to pull it as with a hook. It remains only to observe, that you may place several *draw-nets* round about the forest, and even one man can pitch ten or a dozen of the triple ones.

This article might be thought to remain imperfect, without something should be said relating to the *flying*, or *buckled draw-net*, by some called *pantine*; which is of use in all places, and especially in countries where there is nothing but coppices and

D R A

forests, whose owners will not allow the felling any trees, or cutting off branches, necessary for the use of the former nets.

Take two poles, as E, B, D, C, as thick as your arms, of twenty one foot long; they must be strait and light, and pointed at the thick end: fasten to each small end B, D, an iron, copper, or such like buckle, to serve instead of a pulley: you must also have a draw-net with buckles, into which you must pass a strong packthread, that is even, and twelve fathom long: this packthread is denoted by the letters B, G, D, F; you must fold it, that it may not be entangled with the net: You must in like manner have a wooden hook F, of a foot long, for the conveniency of carrying your implements, to use as you have occasion.

It is to be observed, that this draw-net must be pitched nowhere but on the sides of a coppice, near some vineyard, in the highways or walks, in a forest or a park; especially when these places adjoin to fields, or open grounds, in the middle, or between woods. You may likewise spread this net along a brook, at the bottom of a pond, and indeed in a manner, in all places frequented by woodcocks. You must use it in the following manner:

Suppose the tree L should be the side of the wood, or some other place where you have a mind to pitch your net, you must unfold it, and take an end of the thick packthread which passes through the buckles, and tie it to the end of the pole at the letter B; pass a small packthread E, K, into the buckle which is at the end B, and tie it to the first buckle B of the net, that you draw it like a bed-curtain; then stick the pole B, E, quite round the wood L, in such a manner, that it may stand firm in the ground, and slope a little towards the tree H. Take the other end of the thick packthread F, and pass it also into the buckle or ring D, which you are likewise to pitch in the ground, about five or six fathom distant from the wood, or other pole, B E; then withdraw seven or eight fathom distant from the net, to the foot of some tree or bush, or else to some branch which you have pitched on purpose, over-against the net, as at the place marked Z, or F; here must you fix the hook, and tie the end of the thick packthread, and then pulling the whole till the net is mounted: You must next twist the cord twice or thrice about the hook, to the end that you may keep it tight, while you go to pull the small packthread E, in order to extend the net; when this is done return to the hook, unfold the cord, and sit near the bush or cover, without stirring, having your eye always to the net, that you may let it fall when the woodcock gets into it, which you must kill as soon as taken; and setting your net readily again do as before. It would not be
amiss

D R A

amifs to put a small packthread into the laft buckle D of the net, as on the other fide, by which you will more readily adjust the draw-net.

These fort of draw-nets fhould have no other than lozenge meshes, becaufe they must glide along the cords, like a bed-curtain; the net fhould not be above five or fix fathom wide, and two and a half, or three in height. The meshes fhould be two inches broad, or two and a half or three at most; the net fhould be made of fine, but strong thread, and the copper buckles fastned to all the meshes of the laft upper row B, D; the leaver must be made twice as long as you would have the net to be in extent; then having a quarter more than the measure of the height, you must accommodate the buckles, which being adjusted in the manner wherein they ought to stand, pass a middling cord, or else a packthread as thick as a writing pen into all these buckles.

You fhould have two other small packthreads B, G, D, C, which you must pass into the laft range of the meshes of both sides, one of which must be fastned to the buckle B, and the other to that at D, in order to keep the net right when you make use of it; and therefore the two ends E and G must be loose, and longer than the height of the net by ten or twelve foot: this net must be of a brown colour.

The draw-nets are usually made with lozenge meshes, becaufe there are few persons who know how to make them otherwise, but others advise to make them as much as you can of square meshes; for when they are thus wrought and pitched in the passes, they are scarce to be seen, and when entangled with some sprigs or pieces of wood, you may easily get clear of them, which otherwise will contract the nets too much in some places, and darken the space, which frightens the woodcock, and will either make him go back or pass over it.

You are to observe concerning draw-nets with lozenge meshes, that more thread and labour is required, than for those with four square ones, which are made sooner, and have no superfluous meshes. However, every one is at liberty in their choice either of one or the other.

If you would have a draw-net with lozenge meshes, measure the breadth of the place where you are to spread it, and make the net near twice as long as that measure. It's height fhould be from that branch where the pully is, to within two foot of the ground; and that you may comprehend it the better, consult the first figure under the article WOODCOCK. The breadth is from the letter V to the letter X; being the places where the stones fhould fall, which are supposed to be fastened at M and

D R I

N, when the net is spread, the height should be taken from the pully to come down near to the letter X; the net must therefore be made one third part longer than the height; for being extended in breadth, it will shorten one third; when the whole net is meshed, you must have a cord that is not quite so thick as your little finger, thro' all the meshes of the last range MN; you must fasten both sides, tying the first six meshes of the row together to the cords so that they may slip along; do the same by the other side: These two places must be distanced, according to the width of the pass, leaving the rest of the meshes of the net above loose, so as to slip, or be drawn from one side to the other like a bed-curtain: Then to each of these cords tie a packthread, which you must pass into, the last range of meshes on the sides, that so you may fasten the net as it should be, to the two Trees A, B; a foot or two of the cord should be suffered to hang down at each end of the net, wherewith to tie the stones, when you would spread the net.

If you would have a draw-net with square meshes, take the breadth and height, and work as aforesaid: when the net is finished, verge it above with a pretty strong cord, and pass two packthreads thro' the meshes, on both sides, in the same manner as in that made lozenge-wise, and leave also both ends of the cord so that the stones may be tied therewith.

DRAWING [with *Hunters*] is beating the bushes after a fox; drawing-amiss, is a term used when the hounds or beagles hit the scent of their chace contrary, so as to hit it up the wind, whereas they should have done it down; in that case it is said, they draw amiss.

DRAWING on-the spot, is when the hounds touch the scent and draw on till they hit on the same scent.

DRENCH: is a sort of decoction prepared for a sick horse, and composed of several drugs mentioned in Mr Solleysel's *Compleat Horseman*.

They put the drench upon the end of a bull's pizzle, and thrust it down his throat in order to recover his appetite and strength.

DRIFT of the forest, is an exact view and examination taken at certain times, as occasion shall serve to know what beasts are there; that none common there, but such as have right; and that the forest be not overcharged with foreigners beasts or cattle.

DRINKING of horses immediately after hard riding, &c. is very dangerous; and therefore they should not be suffered to do it, till they be thoroughly cooled, and have eat some oats; for

D R I

for many by drinking too soon have died upon it, or become extreme sick.

A horse after violent labour, will never be the worse by being kept half a day from water; but may die by drinking an hour too soon.

DRIVING of *pheasant powts*; for the driving and taking of powts or young pheasants in nets; when you have found out an eye of pheasants; place your nets cross the little paths or ways they have made, which are much like sheep tracks, possibly you shall find out one of their principle haunts, which may be done by the barrenness of the ground, their mutings and the feathers that lie scattered about.

To do this you should always take the wind with you, it being customary for them to run down the wind; and place your nets hollow, loose and circularly, the nether part of which must be fastened to the ground, and the upper side lying hollow, loose and bending, so that when any birds rush in, it may fall and intangle them.

Having fixed your net go to the haunts, and if you find them scattered, call them together with your call: and when you find them begin to cluck and pip one to another, then forbear calling, and take an instrument by some called a driver made of good strong white wands or oziars, such as are used by basket makers, which is to be set in an handle, and in two or three places twisted or bound with small oziars, according to the figure, see the plate. With this *driver*, as soon as you perceive the pheasants gathered together make a gentle noise on the boughs and bushes about you, which will so fright them that they will get close together, and run away a little distance, and then stand; after this make the same noise a second time, and this will set them a running again; taking the same course till you have driven them into your nets; for they may be driven like so many sheep.

If they happen to take a contrary way; then make a raking noise, as if it were in their faces; and this noise will presently turn them the right way.

But in using the *driver* observe.

1. Secrecy, in keeping your self from their sight; for if they espy you they will run and hide themselves in holes under shrubs, and will not stir, till night.

2. You must have regard to due time and leisure; for rashness and over haste, spoils the sport.

DROPPING ?[in *Falconry*], is when a hawk mutes direct-
DRIPPING Sly downwards in several drops, not jerking her dung strait forwards.

DRY,

D U C

DRY, to put a horse to dry meat is to feed him with corn and hay after taking him from grass, or housing him.

DUBBING of a cock [with cock masters] a term used to signify, the cutting off a cock's comb and wattles.

DUCKS are amphibious birds, that live on land and water, of which the male is called a *drake*: there are two sorts of them, *viz.* the *wild* and the *tame*; the tame duck is fed in the court-yard, walks slowly, delights in water, swims swiftly, but scarce ever rises from the ground to fly. This fowl is exceeding necessary for a husbandman's yard, requiring very little charge to keep, but lives on scattered corn, and other things of less value: she is once a year a great layer of eggs, which are larger than those of a hen; the shells are also thicker, and they are good food. Hens will hatch duck eggs, but the ducklings will give them a deal of uneasiness when they go into the water.

When the duck sits, she does indeed require both attendance and feeding; for being restrained from seeking her food, she must be helped with a little barley, or other over-chaving of corn. She sits, hatches, and feeds her ducklings in the same manner as geese do, for which, See **GOOSE**; only after the ducklings are abroad, they will shift better than goslings for their food. As for *wild ducks*, those who are disposed to employ part of their time in taking them with nets, &c. should ever have some wild ones made tame for that purpose; for the wild never associate themselves with those that are of the real tame breed: therefore be always provided with seven or eight ducks, and as many drakes, for fear of wanting upon any occasion; because they are often lost, and much subject to miscarry.

The nets must never be placed but where you have a foot of water at least, nor much more; so that marshes, sands, flats, overflown meadows, and the like, are the most proper places for this sport.

The nets used are the same with those for plovers, and they are set after the same manner, only these are under water, and you need no border to conceal the net. The following figure will shew you the net spread; your main sticks should be of iron, and strong in proportion to their length.

But if the main stick be of wood, fasten good heavy pieces of lead along the cord at about a foot distance on the sides of the net to sink it down into the water, that the ducks may not escape by diving: these pieces of lead are represented in the cut along the cord Q, S. See plate VI. fig. 1.

Several small wooden hooks are likewise fixed all along the verge of the net A, B, C, D, opposite to the person that holds

D U C

holds the cord to keep it tight, or else they also place some lead there, to hinder the birds from rising, that are caught.

The hooked stake X, and the pulley U, ought to be concealed under the water, that the ducks may not see them. The lodge should be made of boughs, as under the word *Plover*, which the reader may consult. Upon the brink of the water, when all is ready, take the ducks and drakes, and place the first in this manner: tie some of them before your net S, and as many behind at Y, by the legs, but so that they may swim up and down, eating such grain or chippings as you shall throw to them for that purpose. Keep the drakes by you in your lodge; when you perceive a flock of wild ducks come near you, let fly one of the decoy-drakes, which will presently join the wild ones, in expectation of his mate; and not finding her there, he will begin to call; which being heard by the female tied by the legs, she will begin to cry out, and provoke the others to do the same: upon which the drake flies to his mate, and generally draws the whole flock with him, which greedily fall to eat the bait laid for them. Now the ducks being once come within your draught, pull your cords with the quickest motion you can; and having thus taken them, let go your decoy-duck, and feed them well; you may kill the wild ones, and so set your nets again as you see occasion.

The wind happens sometimes so contrary, that the drake cannot hear his mate when she cries; in which case you must let go a second and a third to bring in the flock you design to surprize; and your decoy-ducks should have some mark of distinction, for the more readily knowing them from the wild ones, as the sewing something about their legs, or the like; when the water is troubled, and that it has rained a little, or that the weather is misty, it is the best time to take ducks with nets.

A second way of taking ducks with nets is thus; cast your eye upon the following figure (2) which represents two nets, and which must be set in a place where there is at least half a foot water, that they may be concealed; and therefore those who catch ducks in the water should always be booted. The staves or sticks BC, ED, ought to be made of iron, seven feet or seven feet and a half long, and proportionably thick; the pickets, or sticks AF, should be made strong, and half a foot long; the others, DH, should be of the same strength, each having a cord DC, three fathom long: the staves of the net MO, should be longer than the others by three inches or half a foot; the lodge K, should be sixteen or eighteen fathom distant from the nets; the knot N of the cord, where two other cords are made fast, as NG, NO, should be five or six toises distant from the first staves; and so much as all these cords of the nets should be fastened

D U C

fastened with all your force, sticks or pieces of wood half a foot long should be fixed slopingly in the ground, on the side of the letters I L, M O, to keep the iron staves down in the water, from whence they bring them out, by drawing the cord K N.

Manage your decoy-ducks and drakes as before ; there is no need that the wild ducks should swim on the water before you draw your nets, for you take them at the same time they alight upon it.

A third way of catching wild ducks, is with bird-lime ; of which take three or four pounds of that which is old and rotted ; to each pound put two handfuls of charcoal, burnt straw, and as much nut-oil as the shell of a hazel-nut can contain ; mix and work the whole together for a quarter of an hour, and anoint one or more cords therewith, each of them being ten or twelve fathom long ; and conveying them to the place where wild ducks frequent, get a boat, if you do not care to go into the water, and set the cords among the rushes or other herbage, whither the ducks retire : pitch the two staves in such a manner that the ends may be even with the water, and tie a very stiff cord to them, which must be born up on the water with some bundles of dry rushes ; when the ducks are got among the herbs and rushes, they will at length come to the cord, which will embarrass them, at which time they will endeavour to take wing ; but not being able to do so, they will drown themselves in endeavouring to get loose.

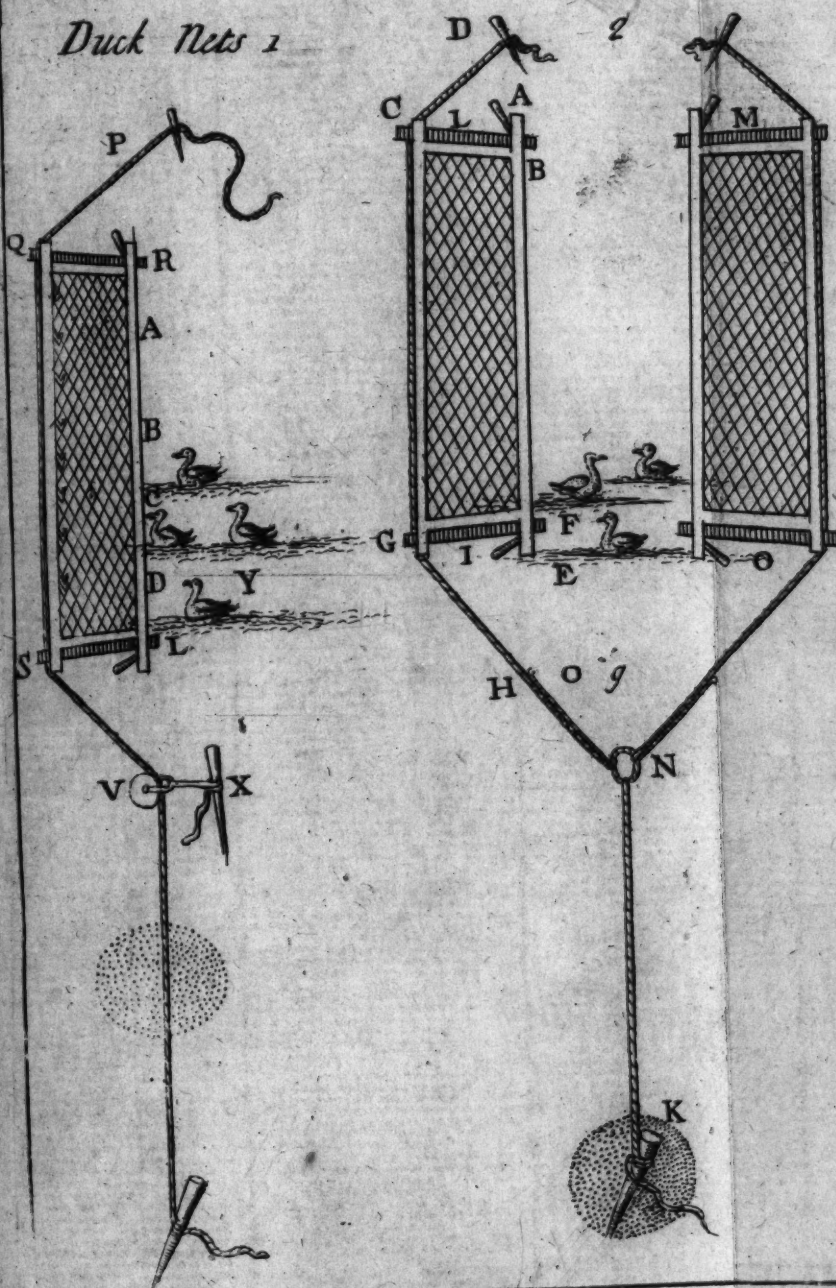
A fourth way of taking wild ducks in the water, is with nooses or springs made of horse-hair, otherwise called running slips and horse-hair collars, a cheap and easy way, especially in such low marshes as are overflown not above a foot and a half deep observe their most frequented haunts, and there throw a little corn for two or three days, to embolden and draw them on ; for having once fed there, they will not fail to return thither every day.

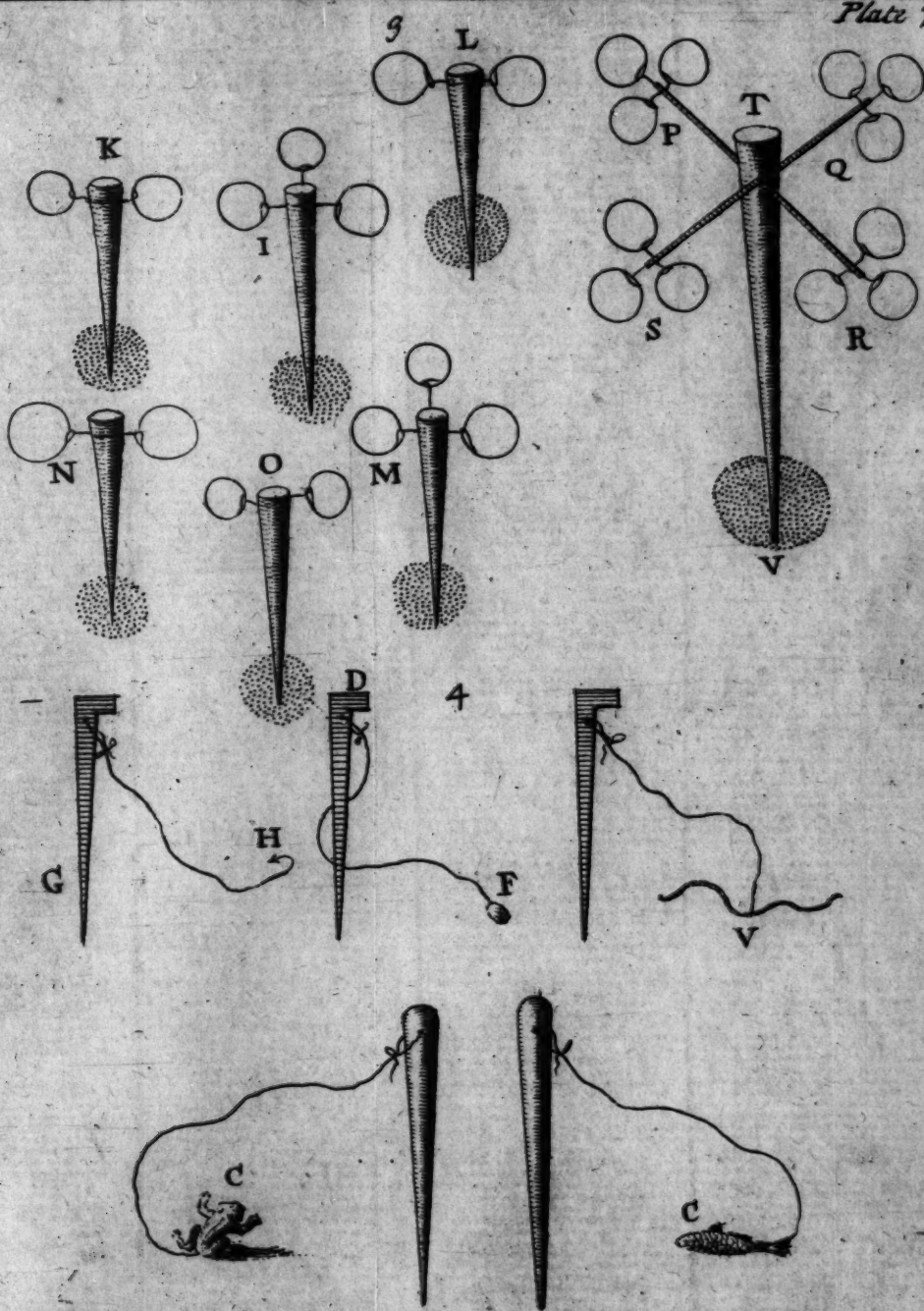
You must then plant seven or eight dozen of your running slips or horse-hair collars, tied two or three together, as in (fig. 3.) to little sharp-pointed stakes, shewn by the letters I, K, L, M, N, O, they must be fixed so far into the ground, that the upper ends of them and the collars may be just hid a little under the water ; and then throw some barley, or the like grain, amongst them, that so you may catch them either by the neck or legs : you must resort thither twice or thrice every day to see how you succeed.

The collars may in like manner be placed as in the second figure following. Take a sharp-pointed stake, about two feet long, in proportion to the depth of the water, as T U, bore two holes thro' the thick end T, into which put two sticks, as

P R,

Duck Nets 1





D U L

PR. and QS; each of them should be about the thickness of one's little finger, and two feet long; they must be firmly set in, and well pegged; fasten your collars or slipping bouges to the end of your stick, as the letters P, Q, R, S, denote: this done, and having fixed your stake TU, in the ground so far that it may be all under water, so as that your knots may just swim open on the top of it; then cast in your grain or chippings of bread in and out among the said stakes, the better to entice the ducks to come: you may make use of several of these stakes, and place them seven or eight feet asunder.

There is a fifth way of catching wild ducks, and that is with hooks and lines, as appears by (*fig. 4.*)

Fasten your lines well and firmly to sharp-pointed sticks, as shewed by the figure marked G, and stake down the sticks into the ground, then bait your hook H, with an acorn or bean F, or with a fish or frog, as at sea; you may also bait with a worm, as at U, by these you may learn to bait with pastes, or the like; and you would do well to feed the ducks two or three days before, at the place where you intend to set your lines and hooks, the better to draw them on, and embolden them; and you should also visit your sport every morning and evening, to take up what you have caught; and to rectify what may be amiss.

Some of our *English* authors having set down a method how we shall preserve wild ducks, say, we must wall in a little piece of ground, wherein there is some small pond or spring, covering the top of it all over with a strong net; the pond must be set with many tufts of ozers, and have many secret holes and creeks; which will inure them to feed there, tho' confined.

The wild duck, when she lays, will steal from the drake, and hide her nest, or else he will suck her eggs. After she has hatched, she is very careful to breed her young, and needs no attendance more than meat, which should be given twice a day, as scalded bran, oats, or fithes. The house-hen will hatch wild duck-eggs as well as tame, and the meat will be much better; yet every time the ducklings go into the water, they are in danger of the kites, because the hen cannot guard them. teals, widgeons, shell-drakes, or green plovers, may be ordered also in the same manner as wild ducks.

DUCKER, } a kind of cock that in fighting will run about

DOUCKER, } the clod, almost at every stroke he gives.

DULL; the marks of a dull, stupid horse are white spots round the eye and on the tip of the nose upon any general colour whatsoever: These marks are hard to be distinguished in a white horse; tho' the vulgar take the spots for signs of stupidity, 'tis certain they are great signs of the goodness of a horse, and the
horses

D U N

horses that have them are very sensible and quick upon the spur.

DUN. See *COLOURS of a Horse*.

DUN HOUND; these dogs are good for all chaces, and therefore of general use.

The best coloured are such as are dun on the back, having their fore quarters tann'd, or of the complexion of a hare's legs; but if the hair on the back be black, and their legs freckled with red and black, they then usually prove excellent hounds, and indeed there are few of a *dun* colour to be found bad; and the worst of them are such whose legs are of a whitish colour.

It is wonderful in these creatures, to observe how much they stick upon the knowledge of their master, especially his voice and horn, and no one's else: nay more than that, they know the distant voices of their fellow, and do know who are babblers and liars, and who not; and will follow the one and not the other.

Now for hounds the west country, *Cheshire*, and *Lancashire*, with other wood-land and mountainous countries, breed our slow hounds, which is a large great dog, tall and heavy.

Worcestershire, *Bedfordshire*, and many well mixt soils, where the champain and covert are of equal largeness, produce a middle sized dog of a more nimble compofure than the former.

Lastly, the north parts, as *Yorkshire*, *Cumberland*, *Northumberland*, and many other plain champain countries, breed the light, nimble, swift, slender, fleet hound.

After all these, the little beagle is attributed to our country; the same that is called the gaze hound: besides the mastiff, which seems to be a native of *England*; we also train up most excellent greyhounds (which seem to have been brought hither by the *Gauls*) in our open champains.

All these dogs have deserved to be famous in adjacent and remote countries, whither they are sent for great rarities and ambitiously sought for by their Lords and Princes; altho' only the fighting dogs seem to have been known to the antient authors; and perhaps in that age hunting was not so much cultivated by our own countrymen.

DUNG of a horse should be observed upon a journey; if it be too thin, it is a sign that either his water was too cold and piercing, or that he drank too greedily of it; if there be among his ordure whole grains of oats, either he has not chewed them well or his stomach is weak; and if his dung be black dry or come away in very small and hard pieces, it is a sign that he is over heated in his body.

Viscous or slimy dung, voided by a race-horse, shews that he is not duly prepared; in which case his garlic balls and exercise are

D U S

are to be continued till his ordure come from him pretty dry, and without moisture.

DUST and SAND, will sometimes so dry the tongues and mouths of horses, that they lose their appetite.

In such case give them bran well moistened with water, to cool and refresh their mouths and tongues, or moisten their mouths with a wet sponge to oblige them to eat.

DUST; to beat the dust. See **BEAT**.

E A R

EARS of an horse, should be small, narrow, strait, and the whole substance of them thin and delicate: they ought to be placed on the very top of the head, and their points, when styled, or pricked up, should be nearer than their roots.

When a horse carries his ears pointed forwards, he is said to have a bold, hardy, or brisk ear; also when a horse is travelling, he should keep them firm, and not (like a hog) mark every step by a motion of his ear.

To cure a pain in a horse's ears, first cleanse them well, for fear the horse should run mad, and then put in some honey, salt-petre, and very clean water; mix the whole together, and dipping a linnen cloth therein to attract the moisture, continue the application till the cure is effected.

To take out any thing incommodious in a horse's ear, put in an equal quantity of old oil and nitre, and thrust in a little wool: if some little animal has got in, you must thrust in a tent fastened to the end of a stick, and steeped in glutinous rosin; turn in the ear, that it may stick to it.

If it be any thing else you must open the ear with an instrument, and draw it out with an iron; or you may squirt in some water; and if it be a wound, you must at the same time drop in proper medicines to cure it.

To **EARTH**, is to go under ground, to run into a lurking-hole, as a badger or a fox does.

EARTH-WORMS, are reptiles which serve both for food for birds, and baits for fish; and as it is sometimes difficult to find them, the following methods are set down, by which you may have them almost in all seasons of the year.

The

E E L

The first, is to go into a meadow, or some other place, full of herbs or grafs, where you suppose there may be such sorts of worms, and there to dance, or rather trample with your feet, for about half a quarter of an hour, without ceasing, and you will see the worms come out of the earth about you, which you may gather, not as they are creeping out, but after they are come quite out; for if you should cease trampling for never so short a time, they would go in again.

Another time to get worms, is, when there are green walnuts upon the trees; take a quarter, or half a pound of them, and put into the quantity of a pail of water, rubbing the husks of the nuts upon a brick, or square tile, holding them in the bottom of the water; continuing to do this till the water is become bitter, and of a taste that the worms will not like: scatter this water upon the place where you judge worms to be, and they will come out of the ground in a quarter of a hour.

EBRILLADE, is a check of the bridle which the horseman gives to the horse, by a jerk of one rein, when he refuses to turn.

An ebrillade differs from a faccade in this, that a faccade is a jerk made with both reins at once.

Most people confound these two words, under the general name of a check or jerk of the bridle; but let it be as it will, 'tis always a chastisement, and no aid, and the use of it is banished the Academies.

ECAVESSADE, is a jerk of the cavesson.

ECHAPE; an echape is a horse got between a stallion and a mare of a different breed, and different countries.

ECHAPER, to suffer a horse to escape, or slip from the hand; a Gallicism used in the Academies, implying to give him head, or put on at full speed.

ECOUTE; a pace or motion of a horse. He is said to be ecoute, or listening, when he rides well upon the hand and heels, compactly put upon his haunches, and hears or listens to the heels or spurs, and continues duly balanced between the heels, without throwing to either side.

This happens, when a horse has a fine sense of the aids of the hand and heel.

ECURIE, is a covert-place for the lodging and housing of horses.

ECUYER, a *French* word, (in *English* querry) has different significations in *France*.

In the Academy, or Manage, the riding-master goes by the name of *Ecuyer*.

EEL; Authors are not agreed, whether this fish be bred by generation, or corruption, as worms are; or by certain glutinous dew-

E E L

dew drops, which falling in *May* and *June*, on the banks of some ponds or rivers, are, by the heat of the sun, turned into eels.

It is enough therefore to take notice, that some have distinguished them into four sorts chiefly, *viz.* the silver eel; a greenish eel, called a grey; a blackish eel, with a broad, flat head; and lastly, an eel with reddish fins.

The first of these is only generally thought to be produced by generation, but not from spawning, for the young come from the female alive, and no bigger than a small needle.

EEL-FISHING is of divers sorts, as **SNIGGLING**, **BOBBING**, &c. which see under their proper articles.

The silver eel may be caught with several sorts of baits, but especially with powdered beef, garden worms, or lobes, or minnows, or hen's guts, fish-garbage, &c. but as they hide themselves in winter in the mud, without stirring out for six months, and in the summer take no delight to be abroad in the day-time, the most proper time to take them is in the night; fastening your line to the bank-sides, with your laying-hook in the water; or a line may be thrown with good store of hooks, baited and plumbed, with a float to discover where the lines lie, that you may take them up in the morning.

A way of taking Eels.

Take five or six lines, (or what number you think fit) each of them about sixteen yards long, and at every two yards make a nooze to hang on a hook armed, either to double thread or silk twist, for that is better than wire: bait your hooks with millers thumbs, loaches, minnows, or gudgeons: to every noose let there be a line baited, and all the lines must lie cross the river, in the deepest place, either with stones, or pegged down, lying in the bottom. You must watch all night, or rise very early in the morning at break of day, (or else you will lose divers that were hung) and draw up the lines, upon each of which you may expect two or three eels or grigs.

EEL-SPEAR; this instrument is made for the most part with three forks or teeth, jagged on the sides; but some have four, which last are the best; this they strike into the mud at the bottom of the river, and if it chance to light where they lie, there is no fear of taking them.

But to take the largest eels of all, night-hooks are to be baited with small roaches, and the hooks must lie in the mouth of the fish.

EEL-BACK'D horses, are such as have black lists along their backs.

ELV

EFFECTS of the hand, are taken for the aids, i. e. the motions of the hand that serve to conduct the horse.

There are four effects of the hand, or four ways of making use of the bridle, namely, to push the horse forwards, or give him head; to hold him in; and to turn the hand either to the right or left. See **NAILS**.

ELK, is a wild beast twice as big as a hart; whose upper lip is so large, and hangs so far over the nether, that he cannot eat going forward, but goes backward in grazing; his mane is diverse, both on the top of his neck, and underneath his throat, which bunches out like a beard, or curled locks of hair; his neck is very short, and disproportionable to his body; he has two very large horns, bending in a plain edge towards the back, and the spires stand forward to the face in both males and females, being solid at the root and round, but afterwards branched, and broader than any hart's; they are very heavy, tho' not above two foot long, and cast every year.

As to their colour, elks for the most part resemble an hart; being cloven footed, but without joints in his fore-legs, like an elephant, so that he sleeps leaning against trees, &c. and fights not with his horns, but fore-feet.

These beasts are found in the forests of *Prussia*, but more commonly in *Lapland* and *Canada*.

ELK-HUNTING; there is no danger in hunting this animal, unless a man come right before him, for he is of a timorous nature; but if he fasten his fore-feet upon a man, there is no escaping alive; tho' if he receives any small wound he instantly dies.

They are usually taken by nets and wiles, as elephants are; for when the trees are found on which they are accustomed to lean, men so cut and saw them, that when the elk comes he throws it down, and falls together with it, and not being able to rise is taken alive.

But when these beasts are otherwise eagerly chased in hunting, and can find no place of rest to lie secret, they run to, and stand in, the water, taking some of it into their mouths, which in a little time is so heated, that spitting it upon the dogs, it scalds them so that they dare not come nigh him, or within his reach, any longer.

ELVERS, a sort of grigs, or small eels, which at a certain time of the year swim on the top of the water, about *Bristol*, and are skimmed up in small nets. By a peculiar manner of dressing, they are baked in little cakes, fried, and so served up to table.

EMBRACE,

E N S

EMBRACE the volt.

A horse is said to embrace a volt, when in working upon volts he makes a good way every time with his fore-legs.

Such a horse has embraced a good deal of ground; for from the place where his fore-feet stood, to where they now stand, he has embraced, or gone over, almost a foot and a half.

If he does not embrace a good deal of ground, he will only beat the dust; that is, he will put his fore-feet just by the place from whence he lifted them.

Thus the opposite term, to embrace a volt, is, beating the dust.

A horse cannot take in too much ground, provided his croupe does not throw out; that is, provided it does not go out of the volt.

EMPRIMED, [*Hunting term*] used by hunters when a hart forsakes the herd.

ENCRAINE; an old obsolete and improper word; signifying a horse wither-rung, or spoiled in the withers.

To ENDEW, [*in Falconry*] is a term used when a hawk so digests her meat, that she not only discharges her gorge of it, but even cleanses her pannel.

ENGOUTED, [*in Falconry*] a term used when a hawk's feathers have black spots in them.

ENLARGE a horse, or make him go large, is to make him embrace more ground than he covered.

This is done when a horse works upon a round, or upon volts, and approaches too near the center; so that 'tis desired he should gain more ground, or take a greater compass.

To enlarge your horse, you should prick him with both heels, or aid him with the calves of your legs, and bear your hand outwards.

Your horse narrows, enlarge him, and prick him with the inner heel, sustaining him with the outer leg, in order to press him forwards and make his shoulders go.

Upon such occasions, the riding-masters cry only, large, large. See **INLARGE**.

To ENSEAM a hawk ? [*in Falconry*] is a term used for

To ENSAIM a hawk \S purging a Falcon, or horse, of his glut and grease; when you draw her out of the mew, if she be greasy (which may be known by her round, fat thighs, and full body, the flesh being round and as high as her breast bone) and if she be well mewed and have all her feathers summed: then at feeding time in the morning give her two or three bits of hot meat, and less at night, except it be very cold; and if she feed well and without compulsion; give her washed meat; being thus prepared, wash the wings of an hen in two waters

E N T

for her dinner; and in the morning give her the legs of an hen very hot; having done this, let her fast till very late in the evening; and if she have put over her meat, so as that there is nothing left in her gorge, give her warm meat as in the morning; continuing to diet her after this manner, till it is convenient to give her plumage, which may be known by these tokens.

1. The flesh of the end of the pinion of the hawk's wing, will seem faster and tenderer than it did before she did eat washed meat.

2. If her mute be white, and the black thereof be very black, and not mingled with any other colour, it is proper.

3. If she be sharp set and plumes eagerly, you may give her castings, either of a hare or coney, or the small feathers on the joints of the wing of an old hen.

When you have set your Falcon or hawk on the perch, sweep clean underneath, that you may know whether the mute be full of streaks, skins or strings, and if so then continue this sort of casting three or four nights together; if you find the feathers digested and soft, and that her casting is great, take the neck of an old hen, and cut it between the joints, then lay it in cold water and give it the bird three nights together.

In the day time give her washed meat, after this casting or plumage as there is occasion, and this will bear all down into the pannel.

When you have drawn her out of the mew, and her principal feathers summed, give her no washed meat, but quick birds with good gorges, and set her out in open places.

ENSEELED [in *Falconry*] a term used of a hawk, which is said to be *enseeled*, when a thread is drawn through her upper eye-lid, and made fast under her beak, to take away or obstruct the sight.

ENTABLER; a word used in the Academies, as applied to a horse whose croupe goes before his shoulders in working upon volts: for in regular manage one half of the shoulders ought to be before the croupe. Your horse entables, for in working to the right, he has inclination to throw himself upon the right heel, but that fault you may prevent by taking hold of the right rein, keeping your right leg near, and removing your left leg as far as the horse's shoulder.

A horse cannot commit this fault without committing that fault that is called in the Academies *aculer*, which see; but *aculer* may be without *entabler*. See **ACULER** and **EMBRACE**.

To **ENTER** a hawk, a term used of a hawk, when she first begins to kill.

To **ENTER** hounds is to instruct them how to hunt.

E N T

The time of doing this is when they are seventeen or eighteen months old, then they are to be taught to take the water and swim: they are to be led abroad in the heat of the day to enable them to endure exercise; they must be led through flocks of sheep and warrens to bring them to command.

They must be brought to know their names to understand the voice of the huntsman, the sound of the horn and to use their own voices.

Noon is the best time of entering them, in a fair warm day; for if they be entered in a morning, they will give out when the heat comes on.

Take in the most advanced, that the game may not stand long before them, but that the hounds may be rewarded; you ought to do this at least once a week, for two months successively.

By this means they will be so fleshed and seasoned with that game you enter them at, that they will not leave off the pursuit.

You must also take care to enter them with the best and staunchest hounds that can be got, and let there not be one barking cur in the field.

The hare is accounted the best game to enter your hounds at, for whatsoever chace they are designed for, they will thereby learn all turns and doubles, and how to come to the hollow; they will also come to have a perfect scent and hard feet, by being used to high ways, beaten paths, and dry hills.

They must at first have all the advantages given them that may be, and when the hare is started from her form, let the scent cool a little, observing which way she went, and then let the hounds be laid on with the utmost advantage and help, that can be, either of wind, view, or hollow, or the pricking in her passage.

Nor will it be amiss, if they have the advantage of a hare tired the same morning in her course.

Care must also be taken that they hunt fair and even, without lagging behind, straggling on either side, and running wildly on head; and in case any be found committing such faults, they must be beaten into the rest of the pack, and forced to the scent along with them.

The like is to be done, if they refuse to strike upon a default, but run on babbling and yelping without the scent, by doing which they draw away the rest of the dogs, until some of the elder dogs take it, then let them be cherished with horn and hollow.

E N T

If any of the young whelps trusting more to their own scents than to the rest of the pack, and consequently are cast behind, work out the defaults by their own noses, and come to hunt just and true; in such cases they must have all manner of encouragement and assistance, and they must be left to work it out of themselves at their own pace: for such dogs can never prove ill, if they are not spoiled by over hastiness and indiscretion; for a little patience in the hunters, and their own experience will bring them to be the chief leaders.

When the hare is killed, the dogs must not be allowed to break her up; but they must be beaten off, then she is to be skinned and cut to pieces, with which the young hounds must be rewarded; and by this means in a short time the whelps will be brought to great improvements.

Some are of opinion that the best way to enter young hounds is to take a live hare, and to trail her upon the ground, sometimes one way and sometimes another, and having drawn her at a convenient distance off to hide her there, and the dog taking the wind thereof will run to and fro, till he finds her.

The huntsman ought to understand well the nature and disposition of the hounds in finding out the game; for some of them are of that nature, that when they have found out the footsteps they will go forwards without any voice or shew of tail.

Others again when they have found a head, will shew the game; some again having found the footings of the beast, will prick up their ears a little, and either bark or wag their stern or ears.

Again there are some that cannot keep the scent; but wander up and down and hunt counter, taking up any false scent; and others again cannot hunt by foot, but only by the sight of the game.

For entering the hound at a hart or buck; let him be in the prime of grease; for then he cannot stand up or hold the chace so long.

The forest pitched upon should have all the relays at equal proportion as near as may be; then let the young hounds be placed with five or six old staunch hounds to enter them, and let them be led to the farthest and last relay, and cause the hart or buck to be hunted to them; and being come up, let the old hounds be uncoupled, and having found the hart, having well entred the cry, let the young ones be uncoupled: and if any of them are found to lag behind, whip or beat them forwards.

E N T

In what place soever you kill the hart, immediately slay his neck and reward the hounds ; for it is best to do so while he is hot.

But for the more ready entering them the few following instructions may be of use.

Let them be brought to the quarry, by taking five or six nimble huntsmen, and each having two couple of dogs led in liams, and having unlodged the hart, pursue him fair and softly without tiring the hounds : and after two or three hours chace, and that you find him begin to sink, then cast off your young ones.

Another method is to take a buck or stag in a toil or net, and having disabled him by cutting one of his feet, let him loose, then about half an hour after gather the young hounds together, and having found out the view or slot of the buck or hart by the bloodhound, uncouple your young dogs, and let them hunt, and when they have killed their game, reward them with it, while it is hot ; the most usual part being the neck flayed.

Some enter their young hounds within a toil ; but that is not so good : for the hart or buck does nothing then but turn and cast about, because he cannot run an end ; by which means they are always in sight of him, so that if afterwards they were to run at force, a free chace being out of sight, the dogs would soon give over. See HUNTSMAN.

Here take notice, that with whatsoever you first enter your hounds, and therewith reward them, they will ever after love most.

Therefore if you intend them for the hart, enter them not first with the hind.

ENTERFERING, a disease incident to horses, that comes several ways ; being either hereditary or by some stiffness in the pace ; or by bad and over broad shoeing ; which cause him to go so narrow behind with his hinder feet ; that he frets one against another, so that there grows hard mattery scabs, which are so sore that they make him go lame ; the signs being his ill going, and the visible marks of the scabs.

The cure ; Take three parts of sheeps dung newly made, and one part of rie or wheaten flower, which must be dried and mixt well with the dung ; kneading it to a paste ; then let it be made up into a cake and baked, and apply this warm to the part, and it will heal it very well ; or else anoint it with turpentine, and verdegrease, mixt together finely powdered.

ENTERMEWER [in *Falconry*] is a hawk that changes the colour of her wings by degrees.

E S Q

To **ENTERPEN** [in *Falconry*]; a term used of a hawk, who they say *enterpenneth*; that is, she has her feathers wrapt up, snarled, or entangled.

ENTREVIEW [in *Falconry*] a term used for the second year of a hawk's age.

ENTIER; the *French* word for a stone horse; *entier* is a sort of horse that refuses to turn, and is so far from following or observing the hand that he resists it. *Thus they say*,

Such a horse is *entier* on the right hand, he puts himself upon his right heel, and will not turn to the right.

If your horse is *entier*, and refuses to turn to what hand you will, provided he flies or parts from the two heels, you have a remedy for him; for you have nothing to do but to put the Newcastle upon him, *i. e.* supple him with a cavesson made after the Duke of Newcastle's way.

ENTORSES. See **PASTERN**.

ENTRAVES, and **Entravons.** See **LOCKS**.

ENTREPAS is a broken pace or going, and indeed properly a broken amble, that is neither a walk, nor trot, but somewhat of an amble.

This is the pace or gate of such horses as have no reins or back, and go upon their shoulders, or of such as are spoiled in their limbs.

ENTRIES [*Hunting term*] are those places or thickets through which deer are found lately to have passed, by which their largeness or size is guessed at, and then the hounds or beagles are put to them for view.

EPARER; a word used in the manage, to signify the flinging of a horse; or his jerking or striking out with his hind legs.

In caprioles, a horse must jerk out behind with all his force; but in balotades he strikes but half out; and in croupades he does not strike out his hind legs at all.

All such jerking horses are reckoned rude horses.

ERGOT, is a stub like a piece of soft horn about the bigness of a chestnut placed behind and below the pastern joint, and commonly hid under the tuft of the fetlock.

To dis-ergot, or take it out is to cleave it to the quick with an incision knife, in order to pull up the bladder full of water that lies covered with the ergot.

This operation is scarce practised at *Paris*; but in *Holland* it is frequently performed upon all four legs, with intent to prevent watery sores and other foul ulcers.

ESQUIAVINE an old *French* word signifying a long and severe chastisement of a horse in the manage.

E Y E

ESSAY of a deer [*Hunting term*] is the breast or brisket of that animal.

ESTRAC is the *French* word for a horse that is light bodied, lank bellied, thin flanked, and narrow chested. See **BELLY**, **LIGHT BELLIED**, **FLANK**, **JOINTER**, &c.

ESTRAPADE is the defence of a horse that will not obey; who to get rid of his rider, rises mightily before; and while his fore hand is yet in the air, yerks out furiously with his hind legs, striking higher than his head was before, and during his counter time goes back rather than advances.

ESTRAY, a beast that is not wild in any lordship, and not owned by any man; in which case, if it be cryed according to law in the next market towns, and it be not claimed by the owner within a year and a day, it falls to the Lord of the Manour.

EVEK, a beast resembling a wild goat.

To **EXTEND** a horse, some make use of this expression importing to make a horse grow large.

To **EXPEDITATE**, signifies to cut out the balls of dogs feet, to hinder them from pursuing the King's game. But Mr *Manwood* says, it implies the cutting off the four claws of the right side; and that the owner of every dog in the forest unexpeditated is to forfeit 3 s. and 4 d.

The **EYES** of horses that are bright, lively full of fire, pretty large and full are most esteemed; but such as are very big, are not the best; neither should they be too goggling or staring out of the head but equal with it; they should also be resolute, bold, and brisk.

A horse to appear well should look on his object fixedly with a kind of disdain, and not turn his eyes another way.

The eye of an horse discovers his inclination, passion, malice, health, and disposition; when the eyes are sunk, or that the eye brows are too much raised up, and as it were swelled, it is a sign of viciousness and ill nature.

When the pits above the eyes are extremely hollow, it is for the most part a certain token of old age, though horses got by an old stallion have them very deep at the age of four or five years; as also their eyes and eyelids wrinkled and hollow.

In the eye there are two things to be considered. 1. The crystal. 2. The bottom or ground of the eye.

The crystal is that roundness of the eye, which appears at the first view, being the most transparent part thereof, and it should for clearness resemble a piece of rock crystal, so that it may be plainly seen through; because if it is otherwise obscure and troubled, it is a sign the eye is not good.

A reddish

E Y E

A reddish crystal, denotes that the eye is either inflamed, or that it is influenced by the moon: a crystal that is *feuille morte*, or of the colour of a dead leaf upon the lower part, and troubled on the upper, infallibly indicates that the horse is lunatic; but it continues no longer than while the humour actually possesses the eye.

The second part of the eye that is to be observed, is the ground or bottom, which is properly the pupil or apple of the eye, and to be good, ought to be large and full: it may be clearly perceived that you may know, if there be any dragon, *i. e.* a white spot, in the bottom thereof, which makes a horse blind in that eye, or will do it in a short time; this speck at first appears no bigger than a grain of millet; but will grow to such a bigness as to cover the whole apple of the eye, and is also incurable.

If the whole bottom of the eye be white, or of a transparent greenish white, it is a bad sign, tho' the horse be not quite blind but as yet sees a little: however it ought to be observed, that if you look to his eyes, when opposite to a white wall, the reflection of it will make the apples of them appear whitish, and somewhat inclining to the green, tho' they be really good; when you perceive this you may try whether his eyes have the same appearance in another place.

If you can discern as it were two grains of chimney soot fixed thereto, above the bottom of the eye, it is a sign the crystal is transparent, and if besides this, the said bottom be without spot or whiteness, then you may conclude that the eye is sound.

You should also examine whether an eye which is troubled and very brown, be less than the other: for if it be, it is unavoidably lost without recovery.

Examine diligently those little eyes that are sunk in the head, and appear very black, and try if you can perfectly see thro' the crystal, then look to the bottom of the eye, and see that the pupil be big and large; for in all eyes the small, narrow, and long pupils run a greater risk of losing the sight, than any other.

EYE of a horse, some general observations from thence to discover the quality or condition of a horse.

1. The walk or step of a blind horse is always unequal and uncertain, he not daring to set down his feet boldly when he is lead in one's hand; but if the same horse be mounted by a vigorous rider, and the horse of himself be mettled, then the fear of the spurs will make him go resolutely and freely, so that his blindness shall scarce be perceived.

2. Another

E Y E

2. Another mark by which a horse that is stark blind may be known, is that when he hears any person entering the stable, he will instantly prick up his ears, and move them backwards and forwards; the reason is, because a sprightly horse having lost his sight mistrusts every thing, and is continually in an alarm upon the least noise he hears.

3. When horses have either the real or bastard strangles, or are changing their foal teeth, or are putting out their upper tusshes, some of them have their sight weak and troubled, so that a man would judge them blind; and sometimes they actually become so.

Note, that this weakness of sight happens oftener, in casting the corner teeth, than any of the rest.

4. The colours most subject to bad eyes are the very *dark gray*, the *flea bitten*, the *white spotted*, that of *peach blossoms*, and frequently the *roan*,

EYE of the branch of a bridle, is the uppermost part of the branch which is flat with a hole in it, for joining the branch to the headstall, and for keeping the curb fast.

A horse unshod of one eye, is a rallying expression importing that he is blind of an eye.

Eye of a bean, is a black speck or mark in the cavity of the corner teeth, which is formed about the age of five and a half, and continue till seven or eight.

And it is from thence we usually say such a horse marks still; and such a one has no mark. See **TEETH**.

EYESS } a young hawk newly taken out of the nest, and
 NYESS } not able to prey for herself.

It being difficult to bring such a bird to perfection, she must be fed, first in a cool room that has two windows, one to the north, and the other to the east, which are to be opened and barred over with laths, but not so wide as for a hawk to get out, or vermine to come in; and the chamber ought to be strewed with fresh leaves, &c.

Her food must be sparrows, young pigeons, and sheep's hearts; and her meat should be cut while she is very young or little, or shred into small pellets, and she must be fed twice or thrice a day, according as you find her endue it, or put it over.

When she is full summed and flies about, give her whole small birds, and sometimes feed her on your fist, suffering her to strain, and kill the birds in your hand, and sometimes put live birds into her room, and let her kill and feed on them, and hereby you will not only neul her, but take her off from that scurvy quality of hiding her prey.

Again

E Y R

Again, go every morning into the room, and call her to your fist: As soon as she has put forth all her feathers, take her out of the chamber, and furnish her with bells, bewits, jesses, and lines: it will be absolutely necessary to feel her at first, that she may the better endure the hood and handling; and the hood should be a rufter, one that is large and easy, which must be put on and pulled off frequently, stroking her often on the head till she stands gently; and in the evening unfeel her by candle-light. See *The manner of SEELING a Hawk.*

EYRE of the forest, the justice-seat or court, which used to be held every three years by the Justices of the forest, journeying up and down for that purpose.

EYRIE [*in Falconry*], a brood, or nest, a place where hawks build and hatch their young.

F A L

FALCADE; a horse makes falcades when he throws himself upon his haunches two or three times, as in very quick corvets; which is done in forming a stop, and half stop.

A falcade therefore, is this action of the haunches and of the legs, which bend very low; as in corvets, when you make a stop or half-stop. Thus they say,

This horse stops well; for he makes two or three falcades, and finishes his stop with a pesate.

This horse has no haunches; he will make no falcades.

The falcades of that horse are so much prettier, that in making them his haunches are low.

Stop your horse upon the haunches, in making him ply them well; so that after forming his falcades, he must resume his gallop without making a pesate; that is, without stopping or marking one time: and thus he will make a half-stop.

See **STOP, HALF-STOP, HAUNCHES, and TIME.**

FALCON; } Of these there are seven kinds, *viz.*

FAULCON; } *falcon gentle, the haggard falcon, the barbary or tartaret falcon, the gerfalcon, the saker, the lanner, the Tunician.*

The

F A L

The *falcon gentle* is so called, by reason of her gentle, familiar disposition; she is also a valiant, strong bird, and better able to endure any sort of weather, than any other hawk.

She has a natural inclination to fly the *hern* every way, either from her wings to the down come, or from the fist, and aforehand.

She is most excellent at the brook or river, especially at large fowl, as the shoveler, wild goose, &c. If she be an *eyess*, you may venture her at the crane, otherwise she will not be hardy and bold.

And here you are to observe, that hawks prove valiant or cowards, according as they are first quarried; and if they are taken out of the *eyrie* before they are fully summed, and hard panned, you must never expect their wings should grow to perfection; and their legs will be apt to grow crooked, and their train, their long feathers, and their flags also, will be full of taints.

In the choice of a falcon, take one that has wide nares, high and large eye-lids, a large black eye, a round head, somewhat full on the top; a short, thick, azure beak, and a pretty high neck; barb feathers under the clap of the beak, and a good large, round, fleshy breast: Let her be strong, hard, and stiff banded, and broad shouldered; having slender sails, full sides, long and large thighs, strong and short arms, large feet, with the fear of the foot soft and blewish; black pounces, long wings, and crossing the train, which train must be short, and very pliable.

Here you may observe, that falcons of one kind differ much, and are differently named, according to the time of their first reclaiming, places of haunt, and the countries from whence they come; as *mew'd hawks*, *ramaged hawks*, *scar-hawks*, *Eyesses*; and these again are divided into *large hawks*, *mean hawks*, and *slender hawks*.

All these have different mails and plumies, according to the nature of the country from whence they come; as some are black, some blank, or russet: and they also are different in disposition, as some are best for the field, and others for the river.

Names are also given to falcons according to their age and taking.

The first is an *Eyess*; which name she bears as long as she is in the *Eyrie*. These are very troublesome in their feeding, they cry very much, and are not entered but with difficulty; but being once well entered and quarried, prove excellent hawks for the *hern*, river, or any sort of fowl, and are hardy and full of mettle.

F A L

The second is a *ramage falcon*, which name she retains from the time of her leaving the *Eyrie*, during the months of *June*, *July*, and *August*.

These are hard to be manned, but being well reclaimed, are not inferior to any hawk.

The third is a *soar-hawk*; so called, *September*, *October*, and *November*.

The first plumes they have when they forsake the *Eyrie*, they keep a whole year before they mew them, which are called *soar-feathers*.

The fourth is termed *Murzarolt*, (the latest term is *Carvift*, as much as to say, carry on the fist) they are so called *January*, *February*, *March*, and *April*, and till the middle of *May*, during which time they must be kept on the fist.

They are for the most part very great baters, and therefore little eaters: they are bad hawks, frequently troubled with *Filander* worms, and are rarely brought to be good for any thing.

The fifth are called *Enter-mews*, from the middle of *May* to the latter end of *December*; they are so called because they cast their coats.

These would be excellent hawks if they could be trusted, therefore they must be kept hard under, and you must make your fist their perch.

When you have taken a falcon, you must feel her in such manner, that as the feeling slackens, the falcon may be able to see what provision is strait before her, which she will better see so than any other way; and be sure to take care that you feel her not too hard.

A hawk newly taken ought to have all new furniture; as new jesses, of good leather, mailed leashes with buttons at the end, and new bewets.

You must have a small round stick likewise hanging in a string, with which you must frequently stroke your hawk; the oftner you do it, the sooner and better you will man her.

She must also have two good bells, that she may the better be found and heard, when she either stirreth, or scratteth.

Her hood must be well fashioned, raised and embossed against her eyes, deep, and yet strait enough beneath, that it may the better fasten about her head without hurting her; and you must cope a little her beak and talons, but not so near as to make them bleed.

Take notice, that if you take a *soar-falcon* which hath already passed the seas, altho' she be very hard to be reclaimed, yet she is the best of falcons.

Her

F A L

Her food must be good and warm, twice or thrice a day, till she be full gorged; which food must be either pigeons, larks, or other live birds: and the reason is, because you must break her by degrees off from her accustomed feeding.

When you feed her, you must hoop and lure, as you do when you call a hawk, that she may know when you will give her meat.

You must unhood her gently, giving her two or three bits, and putting on her hood again, you must give her as much more; and be sure that she be close seeled, and after three or four days lessen her diet; and when you go to bed set her on some perch by you, that you may awaken her often in the night.

Thus you must do till you find her to grow tame and gentle; and when you find she begins to feed eagerly, then give her a sheep's heart.

And now you may begin to unhood her in the day-time; but it must be far from company, first giving her a bit or two, then hooding her again gently, and give her as much more.

Take care not to affright her with any thing when you unhood her; and when you find that she is acquainted with company, and that she is sharp set, then unhood her and give her some meat just against your face and eyes, which will make her less afraid of the countenances of others. If you can reclaim her without over-watching, do so.

You must bear her continually on the fist, till she is thoroughly manned, causing her to feed in company, giving her in the morning, about sun-rising, the wing of a pullet; and in the evening, the foot of a hare or coney, cut off above the joint, flea'd and laid in water, which having squeezed, give it her with the pinion of a hen's wing.

For two or three days give her washed meat, and then plume accordingly, as you esteem her foul within: hood her again, and give her nothing till she gleam after casting; but when she has gleamed and cast, give her a little hot meat in company, and towards evening let her plume a hen's wing in company also.

Cleanse the feathers of her casting, if foul and slimy; if she be clean within, give her gentle castings; and when she is well reclaimed, manned, and made eager and sharp set, you may venture to feed her on the lure.

But three things are to be considered before your lure be shewed her,

1. That she be bold and familiar in company, and not afraid of dogs and horses.

2. Sharp

F A L

2. Sharp set and hungry, having regard to the hour of morning and evening, when you would lure her.

3. Clean within, and the lure well garnished with meat on both sides: when you intend to give her the length of a leash, you must abscond yourself.

She must also be unhooded, and have a bit or two given her on the lure as she sits on your fist; afterwards take the lure from her, and so hide it that she may not see it; when she is unfeeling, cast the lure so near her, that she may catch it within the length of her leash, and as soon as she has seized it, use your voice as falconers do, feeding her upon the lure, on the ground, with the heart and warm thigh of a pullet.

Having so lured your falcon, in the evening give her but little meat; and let this luring be so timely, that you may give her plumage, and a juck of a joint next morning on your fist.

When she has cast and gleamed, give her a little reaching of warm meat; about noon tie a creance to her leafe, go into the field, there give her a bit or two upon her lure, and unseize her; and if you find she is sharp set, and has eagerly seized on the lure, let a man hold her to let her off to the lure, then unwind the creance, and draw it after you a good way; and let him who has the bird, hold his right hand on the tassel of her hood, ready to unhood her as soon as you begin to lure, to which if she come well, stoop roundly upon it, and hastily seize it, let her cast two or three bits thereon.

Then unseize her and take her off the lure, hood her, and deliver her to him again that held her, and going farther off the lure, lure her, feeding her as before.

Thus lure her every day, farther and farther off, till she is accustomed to come freely and eagerly to the lure.

After this you may lure her in company; but take care that nothing affright her: and when you have used her to the lure on foot, then lure her on horseback; which you may effect the sooner, by causing horsemen to be about you when you lure her on foot: you may also do it the sooner by rewarding her upon the lure on horseback, among horsemen.

When this way she grows familiar, let some body on foot hold the hawk, and he that is on horseback must call, and cast the lure about his head, then must the holder take off the hood by the tassel, and if she seize eagerly on the lure without fear of man or horse, then take off the creance, and lure her at a greater distance.

And if you would have her love dogs as well as the lure, call dogs when you give her her living or plumage.

FALCONER, one who tames, manages, and looks after falcons, or other hawks.

He

F A L

He ought to consider the quality and mettle of his hawks, and to know which of them he should fly early and which late. He must also be fond of his hawks, patient, and cleanly in clearing them from lice, nits, and the like vermin; and rather keep them high and full of flesh, than poor and low, which renders them subject to divers infirmities.

Every night after flying, the falconer should give his hawk casting; one while plumage, sometimes pellets of cotton, and at another time physick, as he finds them diseased.

He must also every evening make the place clean under her perch, to the end, that by her casting he may know whether she wants scouring upwards or downwards.

Nor must he forget every evening to water his hawk, except such days wherein she has bathed, after which, at night, she should be put into a warm room, having a perch with a candle burning by her, where she is to sit unhooded, if she be not ramage, that so she may prune and pick herself, and delight herself after bathing.

The next morning he ought to weather her, and let her cast, if she has not done it already, keeping her still hooded, till he carry her into the field; but farther, in feeding her, he must take care not to do it with two sorts of meat at a time, and what is given her should be very sweet.

If the falconer has occasion to go abroad, he must be careful he do not perch his hawk too high from the ground, for fear of bating and hanging by the heels, by which means she may spoil herself.

He also should carry mummy, and other medicines with him into the fields, where a hawk frequently meets with many accidents.

Neither must he forget to take with him any of his hawking implements.

Lastly, he must be skillful in making his lures, hoods of all sorts, jesses, bewits, and other necessary furniture.

Neither ought he to be without his coping-irons, to cope his hawk's beak, if it be over-grown, or to cut his pounces and talons, as there shall be occasion. Nor ought his cauting-irons to be wanting.

FALLING-EVIL [*in horses*] a disease proceeding from ill blood, and cold thin phlegm gathered together in the fore-part of the head, between the panicle and the brain; which being dispersed over the whole brain, suddenly causes the horse to fall, and bereaves him of all sense for a time.

The symptoms of this distemper are, when the horse is falling his body will quiver and quake, and he will foam at the mouth,

O

and

F A L

and when you would think him to be dying, he will rise up on a sudden and fall to his meat.

Spanish, Italian, and French horses, are more subject to this distemper than the *English*.

The cure. Bleed the horse in the neck, taking away a quantity of blood; and bleed him again in the temple veins and eye veins, four or five days after; afterwards anoint his body all over with a comfortable friction, and bathe his head and ears with oil of bay, liquid pitch and tar mixed together, and make him a canvas cap quilted with wool, to keep his head warm, and give him a purging or scouring.

FALLOW, being of a palish red colour, like that of a brick half burnt; as a fallow deer.

FALLOW HOUNDS, are hardy, and of a good scent, keeping well their chace without change, but not so swift as the white; they are of a strong constitution, and do not fear the water, running surely, and are very hardy, commonly loving the hart before any other chace.

The best complexion for these fallow hounds is the lively red, and such as have a white spot in their forehead, or have a ring about their necks; but those which are yellowish, and spotted with black or dun, are of little value.

Those that are well jointed, having good claws, are fit to make blood-hounds, and those which have shagged tails are generally swift runners.

These hounds are fitter for Princes than private gentlemen, because they seldom run more than one chace, neither have they any great stomach to the hare, or other small chaces; and that which is worst of all, they are apt to run at tame beasts.

FALSE QUARTER [*in a horse*], is a cleft, crack, or chink, sometimes on the outside, but for the most part on the inside of his hoof, being an unsound quarter, appearing like a piece put in, and not at all intire: it is attended with a violent pain, and opening as the horse sets his foot to the ground.

This distemper, as to the inward cause, is the effect of a dry, brittle hoof, and narrow heels; it comes by ill shoeing and paring, or else by gravelling, or a prick with a nail or stub, which will occasion halting, and waterish blood will issue out of the cleft.

The cure. Cut away the old corrupt hoof, and having the whites of nine eggs, powder of incense, unflaked lime, mastic, verdigrease, and salt, of each three ounces, mix them together, and dip into them as much hards as will cover the whole hoof, and apply them to the forrance, and lay swine's grease all about it the thickness of an inch or more; do this likewise underneath, and tie on all so fast as that it may not

F A S

be stirred for a whole fortnight at least, then renew the same application, and the horse will require no other dressing to compleat the cure.

FARCIN, } a creeping ulcer, and the most loath-
FARCY, } some, stinking, and filthy disease, that a
FASHIONS, } horse can be affected with; proceeding
 from corrupt blood, engendered in the body by over-heats and
 colds, which begins first with hard knots and pustules, which
 by spreading and dilating themselves, will at last over-run the
 whole body of the horse; but it commonly arises in a vein, or
 near some master vein that feeds and nourishes the disease.

This distemper is sometimes occasioned by spur-galling, with
 rusty spurs, snaffle-bit, or the bite of another horse infected with
 the same disease; or if it be in the leg, it may come by one leg's
 interfering with the other, &c.

For the cure. First bleed the horse well, then take oil of bay
 and *euphorbium* mixed together, and anoint the knots with it;
 or bathe the place with the stale of an ox or cow, and the herb
 called *lion's-foot*, all boiled together; or tallow and horse-dung
 melted together; or burn the knots with a hot iron; or wash
 the sore with salt, vinegar, allum, verdigrease, green copperas,
 and gun-powder, boiled in chamber-lee; or a penny-worth of
 tar, two penny-worth of white mercury, and two handfuls of
 pidgeon's dung, made into a salve to anoint them with, will
 prove an effectual remedy.

Water-FARCIN happens to a horse by his feeding in low,
 watery grounds, and in pits or holes where the grass grows above
 water, who in biting the grass licks up the water with it;
 which sometimes causes them to swell under the belly and chaps,
 which being pricked with a hot iron, bent back again about the
 length of a fleam, there will issue out abundance of yellow, grey,
 and oily water.

The common way of curing this malady, is to heat a small,
 long iron rod red hot in the fire, wherewith the Farriers strike
 the swelled parts; and when the matter is out, they wash them
 (to prevent rankling, and to take out the fire) with chamber-
 lee and salt, and some powder of bole armoniac mixed among
 it, as hot as may be endured, for three or four times.

FARRIER'S Pouch, a leather bag in which they carry
 nippers, drivers, shoes for all sizes of feet, good sharp nails, and
 all that is proper for new shoeing a horse that has lost his shoe
 upon the road.

If you have no Farrier with you, you must always in your
 equipage have a Farrier's pouch well provided, and a groom that
 knows how to drive nails.

F A T

FATTENING of *Horses*: there are a multitude of things prescribed for this purpose, of which these that follow have by experience been found to be the best.

1. Take elecampane, cummin seed, tamerisks, anise-seeds, of each two ounces, and a handful of groundsel; boil all these very well with three heads of garlic, cleansed and stamped, in a gallon of strong ale: strain the liquer well, and give the horse a quart of it lukewarm in a morning, and set him up hot. Do this for four or five mornings, and afterwards turn him to grass, if the weather permit, but if it does not keep him in the house; and besides the aforesaid drink, take the fine powder of elecampane, and the same quantity of cummin seeds powdered, and every time you give him provender, sprinkle half an ounce of this powder by little and little therein, for fear he should nauseate it, until it be quite eaten up.

2. Put two spoonfuls of *diapente* in a pint of sweet wine, brew them together, and give it the horse for three mornings; for that will take away all infections and sickness from the inward parts: then feed him with provender, at least three times a day, *viz.* after his water in the morning, after his water in the evening, and at nine o'clock at night. And if you perceive that he does not eat his provender well, then change it to another, and let him have most of that food he loves best.

3. Let the horse blood; then put half a bushel of coarse barley-meal into a pail full of water, stirring it about for a considerable time, then let it stand till it sink to the bottom; then pour off the water into another pail for the horse's ordinary drink, and make him eat the meat that remains at the bottom of the pail three times a day, morning, noon, and night; and if he refuse, or seem unwilling to eat the meal alone, mix it with a little bran; the next day lessen the quantity of bran, and at last give him none at all, for it serves only to accustom him to eat the meal: or you may mix a small quantity of oats with the meal, and diminish it by degrees as before.

It is to be observed, that the barley must be ground every day as you use it, for it quickly grows sour, after which the horse will not taste it.

There are not many horses which may not be fattened by keeping them to this diet for the space of twenty days.

Barley, ground after this manner, purges the horse, and cools his inward parts; but the greatest efficacy lies in the water, which is impregnated with the most nourishing substance of the meal.

When you perceive your horse to thrive and grow lusty, you may take him off from his diet by degrees, giving him at first,
oats

oats once, and barley-meal twice a day; then oats twice, and the meal once, till the horse is perfectly weaned.

In the mean time you may give him hay, and good straw also if you please, but you must not ride him, only walk him softly about half an hour in the middle of the day.

After the horse has eaten barley-meal eight days, give him the following purgative, if you find he stands in need of it: Take an ounce of the finest aloes, and half an ounce of agaric, and roots of flower-de-luce, and of *Florence*, of each an ounce; pound all these three to powder, and mingle them with a quart of milk, warm as it comes from the cow, if it can conveniently be had, and keep the horse bridled six hours before, and six hours after the taking of it, without discontinuing his usual diet.

This purgation will operate effectually, the humours being already prepared, and the body moistened and cooled; and therefore the medicine will not occasion any disorder or heat, and the horse will visibly mend.

After the operation of the purgative is quite ceased, the horse must be kept eight days at diet as before.

If horses of value, that are full of mettle, and of a hot and dry constitution, were to be kept to this diet for a convenient space of time, once a year, it would infallibly preserve them from several distempers; and it is especially useful at the end of a campaign, or after a long journey.

If your horse loses his appetite, (as it often happens) when he begins to eat, you may tie a chewing-ball to his bitt, renewing it so often till he begin to feed heartily on the barley; for these balls not only restore lost appetite, but purify the blood, prevent diseases, and contribute to the fattening of the horse.

FAWN, a buck or doe of the first year.

FEATHER in a Horse's forehead, &c. is nothing else but a turning of the hair, which in some resembles an ear of barley, and in others a kind of oylet-hole.

When it reaches to a good way along the upper part of the neck, near the mane, it is a good mark; and if it be on each side of the neck, the mark is the better.

So likewise if there be in the forehead two or three of these oylets, separate from each other, or so joined that they form a kind of feather; or if the like mark be upon the ply of a horse's hind thigh, and upon the back part of it, near to where the end of his dock or rump reaches, it is a very good mark.

FEATHER also upon a horse, is a sort of natural frizzling of the hair, which in some places rises above the lying hair, and there casts a figure resembling the top of an ear of corn.

There are feathers in several places of a horse's body, and particularly between the eyes.

F E R

Many believe, that when the feather is lower than the eyes, 'tis a sign of a weak sight; but this remark is not always certain.

A *Roman* feather, is a feather upon a horse's neck, being a row of hair turned back and raised, which forms a mark like a back-sword just by the mane.

FEEL; to feel a horse in the hand, is to observe that the will of the horse is in the hand, that he tastes the bridle, and has a good *appui* in obeying the bitt.

To feel a horse upon the haunches, is to observe that he plies or bends them, which is contrary to leaning or throwing upon the shoulders.

FELDFARES, *the manner of taking them by water birdlime.*

Take your gun about *Michaelmas*, or when the cold weather begins to come in, and kill some feldfares; then take one or two of them, and fasten to the top of a tree, in such a manner, that they may seem to be alive. When you have done this prepare two or three hundred twigs, take a good birchen bough, and therein place your twigs, having first cut off all the small twigs, then set a feldfare upon the top of the bough, making it fast, and then plant this bough where the feldfares do resort in a morning to feed; for they keep a constant place to feed in, till there is no more food for them left.

By this means others flying but near will quickly espy the top bird, and fall in whole flocks, or a great number, to him. Some say they have seen three dozen taken at one fall.

FERME *a ferme*; a word peculiar to the manage schools signifying in the same place, without stirring or parting.

You must raise that horse *ferme a ferme*. This horse leaps upon *firma a firma*, and works well at *caprioles*.

When a young gentleman comes first to school, the rest, to play upon him, will ask him to gallop upon *firma a firma*.

FENCE MONTH, the month wherein deer begin to fawn, during which it is unlawful to hunt in the forest. It begins *June* the 9th, and continues to *July* the 9th.

There are also certain fence or defence months, or seasons for fish, as well as wild beasts, as appears by *West 2 G 13*. in these words; *all waters where salmon are taken, shall be in defence from taking any salmons; from the nativity of our lord, unto St Martin's day; likewise that young salmons shall not be taken nor destroyed by nets, &c. from the midst of April, to the nativity of St John Baptist.*

FERRÉ T is a little creature that is bred naturally in *England*, but not in *France*, *Germany*, *Italy*, and *Spain*; they are tamed for the use of those who keep warrens, and others.

F E T

The body of this animal is longer than is proportionable ; their colour is variable, sometimes black and white upon the belly ; but most commonly of a yellowish sandy colour, like wool dyed in urine.

The head is something like that of a mouse, and therefore into what hole soever she can put it, all the body will easily follow after.

The eyes are small but fiery, like red hot iron, and therefore she sees most clearly in the dark.

Her voice is a whining cry without changing of it : she hath only two teeth in her nether chap, standing out and not joined and growing together.

The genital of the male is of a bony substance, and therefore it always standeth stiff, and is not lesser at one time than another.

The pleasure of the sense of copulation, is not in the genital part but in the muscles, tunics, and nerves wherein the said genital runs.

When they are in copulation, the female lieth down, or bendeth her knees, and continually crieth like a cat, either because the male claweth her with his nails, or by reason of the roughness of his genital.

The ferret usually brings forth seven or eight at a time, carrying them in her belly for forty days : the young ones are blind for thirty days after they are littered, and they may be used for procreation, as their dam is within forty days after they can see.

When they have been tamed, they are nourished with milk, or barley bread, and they can fast a very long time ;

When they go they contract their long back, and make it stand upright in the middle round like a bowl : when they are touched, they smell like a *martel*, and they sleep very much.

The *ferret* is a bold audacious animal, an enemy to all others but his own kind ; drinking and sucking in the blood of the beast it biteth, but eateth not the flesh.

When the Warrener has occasion to use his *ferret*, he first makes a noise in the warren to frighten the conies who are abroad into their burrows, and then he pitcheth his nets ; after that he puts his ferret into the earth, having muzzled her mouth, so that she may not seize but only frighten the conies out of their burrows, who are afterwards driven by dogs into the nets or hays, planted for them.

FETLOCK is a tuft of hair as big as the hair of the mane, that grows behind the pastern joint of many horses ; horses of low size have scarce any such tuft.

Some coach horses have large fetlocks ; and others have so much hair upon theirs, that if the coachman does not take care to keep them clean and tight, they will be subject to the watery sores called *the waters*.

F I L

FIANTS, FUANTS, the dung of deer.

FIMASHING, the dunging of any sort of wild beasts.

FIG [in *horses*] a disease that takes it's name from a wart or broad piece of flesh growing upon the frush towards the heel, resembling a fig in shape.

It proceeds from some hurt received in the foot, that has not been thoroughly cured; or by a stub or nail, bone, thorn, or stone, and sometimes by an over reach upon the heal or frush.

The general method of cure, is to cut away the hoof for the more easy effecting it; and then to bind a piece of sponge close on the part, which will eat off the fig to the very root, and then they heal the fore with the green ointment.

FILANDERS a disease in hawks, of which there are several sorts; but I shall chiefly treat of that one, which sticks to the reins.

They are worms as small as a thread, and about an inch long, which lie wrapt up in a thin skin, or net, near the reins, apart from either gut or gorge.

You may know when a hawk is troubled with the filanders by her poverty, by her ruffling her train, by her straining the fist or perch with her pounces, and lastly by croaking in the night when the filanders prick her.

This malady must be remedied betimes, before these worms have enlarged themselves from their proper station, roving elsewhere to the ruin and destruction of the hawk.

They must not be killed as other worms are, for fear of imposthumes from their corruption, being incapable of passing away with the hawk's mewt, but only stupify them, that they may be offensive but seldom, which is to be done as follows.

Take a head of garlic, peel off the outermost rind, then having a bodkin heated in the fire make holes in some cloves, which steep in oil for three days, and after this give her one of the cloves down her throat, and for forty days after the filanders will not be troublesome to her.

Therefore it will be the prudence of the *Falconer*, when seeing the hawk poor and low, to give her once a month a clove of this garlic by way of prevention.

Another approved medicine for the same.

Boil half a dozen cloves of garlic in milk, till they are tender, then take them out and dry the milk out of them, and afterwards put them into a spoonful of the best oil of olives you can get, and when she hath cast in the morning give these to the hawk; feed her in two hours after, and let that be warm

F I S

meat, and not much of it, and keep her warm that day for fear of taking cold, give her the oil with the garlic, they must sleep all night.

FILLETS, the loins of a horse, which begin at the place where the hinder part of the saddle rests.

FILM *white* (upon the eye of a horse) may be removed by lifting up the eye-lid, after the eye has been washed with wine, and stroaking it gently with one's thumb with wheat flower: also common salt, or salt of lead, beaten fine and put into the eye is proper to consume a film; or you may wash the horse's eye with your spittle in the morning fasting, having first put a little salt into your mouth: but there is nothing so effectual as sal armoniac beaten and put into the eye, and repeated every day till the film is gone.

FIRE, to give the fire to a horse, is to apply the firing iron red hot to some preternatural swelling in order to disperse it; which is oftentimes done by clapping the firing iron to the skin without piercing through.

We give fire to farcy knots by running a pointed burning iron into the ulcers.

We likewise give fire for wrenches of the pasterns.

FIRING IRON is a piece of copper or iron about a foot long, one end of which is made flat, and forged like a knife the back of it being half an inch thick, and the fore edge about five or six times thinner.

When the Farrier has made his firing iron red hot in his forge, he applies the thinnest part to a horse's skin, and so gives the fire to the hams or such places as stand in need of it.

FISH as to the quality of breeding them, it is scarce to be found out by any certain symptom; for some very promising ponds do not prove serviceable that way; one of the best indications of a breeding pond, is when there is good store of rush and grazing about it, with gravelly shoals, such as horse ponds usually have; so that when a water takes thus to breeding, with a few milters and spawners, two or three of each, a whole country may be stocked in a short time. Eels and perch are of very good use to keep down the stock of fish; for they prey much upon the spawn and fry of bred fish, and will probably destroy the superfluity of them. As for pike, perch, tench, roach, &c. they are observed to breed in almost any waters, and very numerously; only eels never breed in standing waters that are without springs; and in such are neither found nor encrease, but by putting in, yet where springs are they are never wanting tho' not put in. And, which is most strange of all, no person ever saw in an eel the least token of propagation,
either

either by milt or spawn; so that whether they breed at all, and how they are produced, are questions equally mysterious, and never as yet resolved.

For the method of feeding fish, take the following remarks;
1. in a stew, thirty or forty carps may be kept up from *October* to *March*, without feeding; and by fishing with trawls or flews in *March* or *April*, you may take from your great waters to recruit the flews; but you must not fail to feed all summer from *March* to *October* again, as constantly as cooped chickens are fed, and it will turn to as good an account.

2. The care of feeding is best committed to a butler or gardiner, who should be always at hand; because the constant and regular serving of the fish, conduces very much to their well eating and thriving.

3. Any sort of grain boiled is good to feed with, especially pease, and malt coarse ground; the grains after brewing while fresh and sweet are very proper; but one bushel of malt not brewed will go as far as two of grains; chippings of bread, and orts of a table, steeped in tap droppings of strong bear or ale, are excellent food for carps; of these the quantity of two quarts to thirty carps every day is sufficient, and to feed morning and evening, is better than once a day only.

4. There is a sort of food for fish that may be called accidental, and is no less improving than the best that can be provided; and that is when the pools happen to receive the wash of commons, where many sheep have pasture, the water is enriched by the soil, and will feed a much greater number of carps than otherwise it would do; and farther, the dung that falls from cattle standing in the water in hot weather, is also a very great nourishment to fish.

5. More particularly, the most proper food to raise pikes to an extraordinary fatness, is eels, and without them it is not to be done but in a long time; otherwise small perches are the best meat you can give them. Breams put into a pike-pond, breed exceedingly, and are fit to maintain pikes, that will take care they shall not encrease over much; the numerous fry of roaches and rouds which come from the greater pools into the pikes quarters, will likewise be good diet for them.

6. Pikes in all streams, and carps in hungry springing waters, being fed at certain times, will come up and take their meat almost from your hand; and it is a diverting object, to see the greediness and striving that will be among them for the good bits, with the boldness they will attain to by constant and regular feeding.

7. The most convenient feeding place is towards the mouth of the pond, at the depth of about half a yard; for by that means the



Fishing.

O[®]

arch
ations



F I S

the deep will be kept clean and neat, as it were a parlour to retire to, and rest in: the meat thrown into the water without other trouble will be picked up by the fish, and nothing shall be lost; yet there are several ingenious devices for giving them food, especially pease; as a square board let down with the meat upon it by the four corners, whence a string comes, made fast to the end of a stick like a scale, which may be readily managed.

8. When fish are fed in the larger pools or ponds, where their numbers are also great, there will be some expence as well as pains; but as soon as they are taken out, and it appears how they are thriven, you will allow both well employed, either malt boiled or fresh grains, is the best food in this case, and what is not supplied from your own mansion-house may be had of neighbour victuallers, who will be willing for a small consideration to throw into the water, at a place appointed, a certain quantity every brewing. Thus carps may be fed and raised like capons, and tenches will feed as well, but perch are not for a stew in feeding time.

As to the benefits that redound from the keeping of fish, besides furnishing your table, obliging your friends, and raising money; your land will be vastly improved, so as to be really worth and yield more this way, than by any other employment whatsoever: for suppose it to be meadow of 2 *l.* per acre; four acres in pond, will return you every year a thousand fed carps, from the least size to fourteen or fifteen inches long; besides pikes, perch, tench, and other fry: the carps are saleable, and will bring 6 *d.* 9 *d.* and perhaps 12 *d.* a piece, amounting in all to 25 *l.* which is 6 *l.* 5 *s.* per acre, the charge of carriage only to be deducted. Now in the selling of fish, observe that it is best to be content with the market price, as most are for other vendible commodities: Thus for carps, between thirteen or fourteen and sixteen inches, measuring from nose end to tail end 12 *d.* is a good price; selling to the Nobility and Gentry, may produce 1 *d.* more, and may measure up to seventeen inches; but never promise above twenty turned of sixteen, in twelve score. Other considerable advantages, besides the main design are as follows.

1. When a great water is designed to be brought, you take the first spit of the ground upon which the bank is to stand, and form the pan of the pond. Now in case you convey the earth taken thence to some place where it may be easily removed upon your Tillage-land, let it lie there to rot the sod, and there is not a better manure to be had, being also more than pays the charge of digging and carrying it off.

2. You

F I S

2. You gain the making of stews, and it may be other ponds for the convenience of your cattle, all at one expence; for if you are obliged to dig clay and earth for your bank, it is as easily taken where it does this, as otherwise.

3. If the soil about the waters be in any wise moorish, it may be planted with osiers, which yield a certain yearly crop.

4. The feed of the pond, when laid dry, and the corn, *i. e.* oats which you may have upon the bottom, tho' meer mud, is very considerable.

5. If cattle graze near your great pools, they'll delight to come and stand in the water, which conduces much to the thriving of your beasts, as well as to the feeding of your fish by their dunging, as has been already hinted: It is therefore advisable to have ponds in cow-pastures and grazing-grounds.

6. As to the sowing of oats in the bottom of a pond, take care to dry your great water once in three, or at most four years, and that at the end of *January*, or beginning of *March*, which (if the year do not prove very unseasonable) will be time enough. After *Michaelmas* following, you may put in a great stock of fish, and thin them in succeeding years as the feed declines. See POND-HEADS.

FISHING-FLIES are both natural and artificial; the natural are almost innumerable, of which I shall name only the most principal, *viz.* the *dun-fly*, the *stone* or *may-fly*, the *tawny fly*, the *vine-fly*, the *shell-fly*, the *cloudy* and *blackish fly*, the *flag-fly*; also *caterpillars*, *canker-flies*, *bear-flies*, &c. all which appear either sooner or later, according as the spring proves forward or backward; and these flies are all good in their season, for such fish as rise at the fly.

The better to know the fly the fish covets most, when you come to the river-side in the morning, beat the bushes with your rod, and take up as many various sorts as you can, and make a trial of them, and by that means you will find which sort they bite most eagerly at; tho' they will sometimes change their fly, but this is only when they have glutted themselves with that sort they like best.

There are two ways of fishing with these natural flies, *viz.* either on the surface of the water, or a little underneath it.

If you angle for *chevin*, *roach*, or *dace*, move not the natural fly swiftly when you see the fish make at it, but rather let it glide freely towards him with the stream; but if it be in a still and slow water, draw the fly slowly side-ways by him, and this will cause him to pursue it eagerly.

As for the artificial fly, it is seldom used but in blustering weather, when the waters are so disturbed by the wind, that a natural fly cannot well be seen, nor rest upon them.

There

F I S

There are twelve sorts of artificial flies, of which these that follow are the principal.

1. For *March*, the *dun fly*; made of dun wool, and the feathers of the partridge's wing; or the body made of black wool and the feathers of a black drake.

2. For *April*, the *stone-fly*; the body made of black wool, dyed yellow under the wings and tail.

3. For the beginning of *May*, the *ruddy fly*; made of red wool, and bound about with black silk, with the feathers of a black capon hanging dangling on his sides, next his tail.

4. For *June*, the *greenish fly*; the body made of black wool, with a yellow list on either side, the wings taken off the wings of a buzzard, bound with black broken hemp.

5. The *moorish fly*; the body made of dusky wool, and the wings of the blackish mail of a drake.

6. The *tawny fly*; good till the middle of *June*; the body made of tawny wool, the wings made contrary one against the other, of the whitish mail of a white drake.

7. For *July*, the *wasp-fly*; the body made of black wool, cast about with yellow silk, and the wings of drakes feathers.

8. The *steel-fly*, good in the middle of *July*; the body made with greenish wool, cast about with the feathers of a peacock's tail, and the wings made of those of the buzzard.

9. For *August*, the *drake-fly*; the body made with black wool, cast about with black silk, his wings of the mail of a black drake, with a black head.

Directions for artificial Fly-fishing.

1. Fish in a river that has been somewhat disturbed by rain, or in a cloudy day, when the waters are moved by a gentle breeze; if the wind be gentle, the best angling will be in swift streams, but if it blow somewhat strong, but not so but that you can conveniently guard your tackle, the fish will rise in plain deeps.

2. Always angle with a small fly and clear wings, in clear rivers; but use larger in muddy places.

3. Keep at as good a distance from the water-side as you can, and fish down the stream with the sun at your back, and touch not the water with your line.

4. When the water becomes brownish after rain, use an orange fly; and in a clear day, a light coloured fly, and a dark fly for dark waters, &c.

5. Have several of the same of every sort of fly, differing in colour, to suit the colours of several waters and weathers.

6. Let

F I S

6. Let the fly fall first into the water, and not the line, which will be apt to fright the fish.

7. Let your line be twice the length of your rod, unless the river be encumbered with wood.

8. In slow rivers, or still places, cast the fly over cross the river, and let it sink a little in the water, and draw it gently back with the current.

9. Make use of a quick eye and nimble hand, to strike presently with the rising of the fish, lest he should have time to spew out the hook.

Every one that delights in fly-fishing, ought to learn the way of making two sorts of artificial flies; the *palmer*, ribbed with silver or gold, and the *may-fly*, both which are the grounds of all flies.

In the making of the *palmer-fly*, you must arm your line on the inside of the hook, then with a pair of scissars, cut off so much of a mallard's feathers as you shall think sufficient to make the wings.

Then lay the outermost part of the feather next the hook, and the point of the feather toward the shank of the hook, whip it three or four times about the hook with the same silk you armed your hook, then make the silk fast.

Then take the hackle of the neck of a cock, or capon, (but a plover's top is best) and take off one side of the feather, and then take the hackle, silk, or gold or silver thread, and make all these fast at the bent of the hook, working them up to the wings, shifting your fingers every bout and making a stop, then the gold will fall right, which make fast; then work up the hackle to the same place, and make it fast.

After this, take the hook betwixt your finger and thumb, in the left hand, and with a needle or pin part the wings in two, then with the arming silk, (having fastened all hitherto) whip it about as it falls cross between the wings, and with your thumb turn the point of the feather towards the bent of the hook, then work it three or four times about the shank, and fasten it; and view the proportion for other flies.

If you make the grounds of hog's-wool, sandy, black, or white, or bear's wool, or of a red bullock two years old, work these grounds on a waxed silk, and arm and set on the wings as before directed.

The body of the *may-fly* must be wrought with some of these grounds, which will be admirably well when ribbed with black hair or silk.

Others make them with sandy hog's wool, ribbed with black silk, and winged with a mallard's feather, several ways, according to the Angler's fancy.

The

F L A

The *oak fly* must be made with orange tawny, or orange coloured cruel, and black for the body; and the brawn of the mallard's feather for the wings.

Lastly, there is another fly, the body of which is made of the strain of a peacock's feather, which is very good in a bright day.

March is the month to begin to angle with the fly, but if the weather prove windy or cloudy, there are several sorts of palmer that are good at that time: the first is a black palmer, ribbed with silver; the second a black palmer with an orange tawny body; thirdly, a palmer whose body is all black; lastly, there is a red palmer, ribbed with gold, and a red hackle mixed with orange cruel.

These flies serve all the year long morning and evening, whether the weather be windy or cloudy.

Observe, that the lightest flies are for cloudy and dark weather, and the darkest for bright and light; and the rest for indifferent seasons, in which the Angler must use his own judgment, discretion and experience must guide him.

Salmon flies should be made with their wings standing one behind the other, whether two or four, and of the gaudiest colours that can be, for he delights in such; and this chiefly in the wings, which must be long as well as the tail.

Note, The several sorts of palmer flies, the may-fly, and the oak fly, will serve the whole year, observing the signs and seasons.

The may-fly is to be found playing at the river-side, especially against rain.

The oak-fly is to be found on the butt of an oak, or an ash, from the beginning of *May* to the end of *August*; it is a brownish fly, and stands always with his head towards the root of the tree, very easily to be found.

The black fly is to be found upon every haw-thorn, after the buds are come forth.

FITCH, } a pole-cat; also the skin or fur of that
FITCHOW, } creature.

FLAG-WORM, an insect so called, because it is found and bred in staggy ponds or sedgy places, hanging to the fibres, or small strings that grow to the roots of the flags, and they are usually inclosed in a yellow or reddish husk or case.

FLEAM, is a small instrument of fine steel, composed of two or three moveable lancets for bleeding a horse; and sometimes making incisions upon occasion, and so supplying the room of an incision-knife.

FLANKS,

F L O

FLANKS, the sides of an horse.

In a strict sense, the flanks of a horse are the extremities of his belly, where the ribs are wanting, and below the loins. They should be full, and at the top of them on each side, should be a feather; and the nearer those feathers are to each other, so much the better: but if they be as it were within view, then the mark is excellent.

The distance between the last rib and haunch-bone, which is properly the flank, should be short, which is termed *well-coupled*: such horses are most hardy, and will endure labour longest.

If a horse have a flank full enough, you are to consider whether it be not too large; that is, if over-against that part of the thigh, called the *stifle*, the flank fall too low; for in that case it is a great advance to pursiness, especially if the horse be not very young.

A horse is said to have no flank, if the last of the short ribs be at a considerable distance from the haunch-bone; altho' such horses may for the time have very good bodies, yet when they are hard laboured, they will lose them.

A horse also is said to have no flank when his ribs are too much streightened in their compass, which is easily perceived, by comparing their height with that of the haunch-bones, for they ought to be as high, and equally raised up as them, or but very little less, when the horse is in good case.

A horse is likewise said to have little flanks, to be sorrily bodied, to be gaunt-bellied and thin gutted, when his flank turns up like a greyhound, and his ribs are flat, narrow and short.

A well flanked horse, is one that has wide and well made ribs, and a good body. In this case the word flank is used in the room of gut.

To FLING, is the fiery and obstinate action of an unruly horse.

To fling like a cow, is to raise only one leg, and give a blow with it.

To fling, or kick with the hind-legs, see **YERK**.

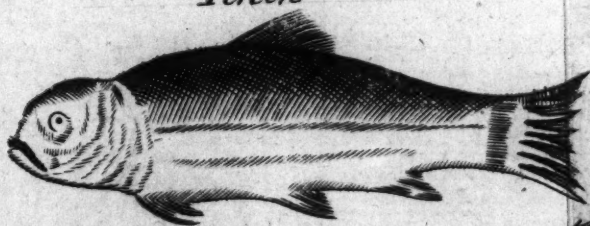
FLOATS for *fishing*, are made divers ways; some use the quills of *Muscovy* ducks, which are the best for slow waters, but for strong streams cork floats are the best; therefore take a good sound cork, without flaws or holes, and bore it through with a hot iron, into which put a quill of a fit proportion; then pare the cork into a pyramidal form, of what size you please, and then grind it smooth.

FLOUNDER, may be fished for all day long, either in a swift stream, or in the still deep; but best in the stream, in the months of *April*, *May*, *June*, and *July*: the most proper baits, are all sorts of worms, wasps, and gentles.

Barbel



Tench



Roe



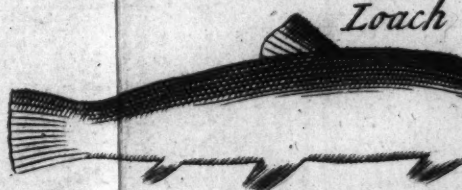
Dace



Pearch



Loach



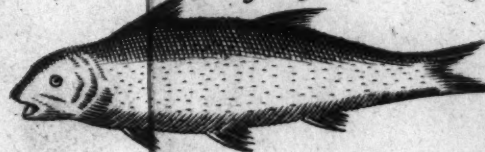
Eel



Gudgion



Grayling



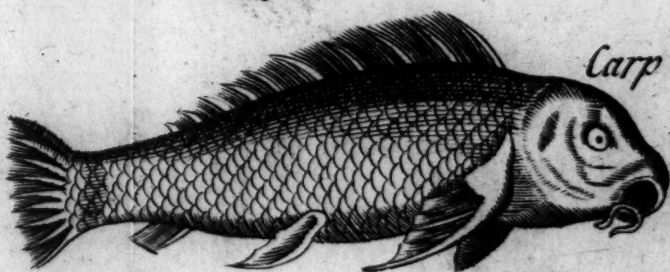
Salmon



Trout



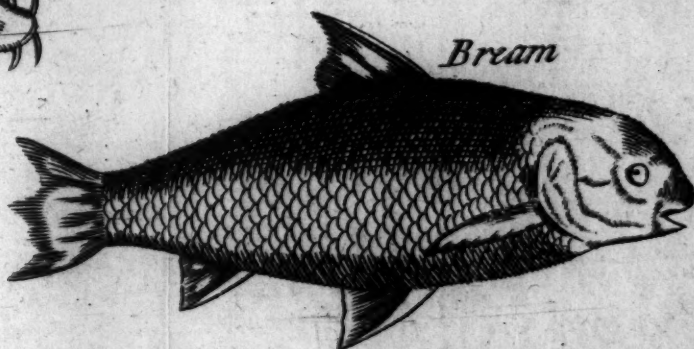
Carp



Loach



Bream



Pike



F O L

To FLY ON HEAD, [*in Falconry*] is, when a hawk missing her quarry, betakes herself to the next check, as crows, &c.

To FLY GROSS [*in Falconry*], is said of a hawk when she flies at great birds, as cranes, geese, &c.

To FLY the heels: a horse is said to fly the heels when he obeys the spur. See **SPUR** and **HEELS**.

FOAL, or young colt: It is no difficult matter to know the shape that a foal is like to be of, for the same shape he carries at a month, he'll carry at six years old, if he be not abused in after-keeping; and as the good shape, so the defects also.

And as to height, it is observed, that a large shin-bone, long from the knee to the pastern, shews a tall horse; for which, another way is, to see what space he has between his knee and withers, which being doubled, it will be his height when he is a competent horse.

There are also means to know their goodness; for if they are stirring spirits, free from affrights, wanton of disposition, and very active at leaping and running, and striving for mastery, such generally prove good mettled horses; and those on the contrary are jades.

And if their hoofs be strong, deep, tough, smooth, upright standing, and hollow, they cannot be bad; therefore the *Barbary* horse is well known by his hoof.

Lastly, as to the weaning of foals, it is ordinarily done at the end of seven months, but the better sort at a year or two; but let them not be in the hearing of one another: keep them very high the second year, but in the third and fourth put them to grazing.

FOLD-NET, a sort of net with which small birds are taken in the night, and is represented in plate VI.

The first of them may be carried by one man, but the other must have two to manage it, and is used as follows.

When the net is fixed on both sides to two strong, strait, and light poles, you must have, at least, two or three lusty men to assist you, all very silent; the poles whereon your nets are tied, should be about twelve foot long, that so they may hold up the higher.

He who bears the lights, which are small bundles of straw set on fire, or torches, must carry them behind the nets, in the midst of them, about two yards from them; and so order it as to carry the nets between the wind and the birds, who all naturally roost on their perches with their breasts against the wind; by this means, he that beats the bushes on the other side of the hedge, will drive them out that way towards the light, with a

F O R

good pole in his hand, wherewith after some silent signal given, he must lay on stoutly.

Now if the first of these nets be used, when you find any bird therein, you need not make much haste, for it will ensnare them of it self, and they cannot get away suddenly.

FONCEAU, is the bottom, or end, of a cannon-bitt-mouth; that is, the part of the bitt that joins it to the banquet. See **CHAPERON**.

FOOT of a horse, consists of the hoof or coffin; which is all the horn that appears when the horse's foot is set on the ground.

It is a great imperfection to have feet too large and fat, or to have them too little: such horses as have them too large, are for the most part very heavy, and apt to stumble, especially if with such feet they have weak legs, and too long pasterns; on the other hand, too small feet are much to be suspected, because they are often painful and subject to cloven quarters, and other imperfections.

FOOR of a horse, is the extremity of the leg, from the coronet to the lower part of the hoof.

The four feet are distinguished by four different names; the two fore feet are by some called the hands of a horse, but that term is in disuse, the common expression being the far fore foot, to denote the right foot before; the near foot, the stirrup foot, and the bridle hand foot, to denote the left before.

Of the two hinder feet, the right is called the far hind foot; and when spears were used, 'twas called the spear-foot, because in resting the spear, the socket of it answered the right foot.

The left hind foot, is called the near foot behind.

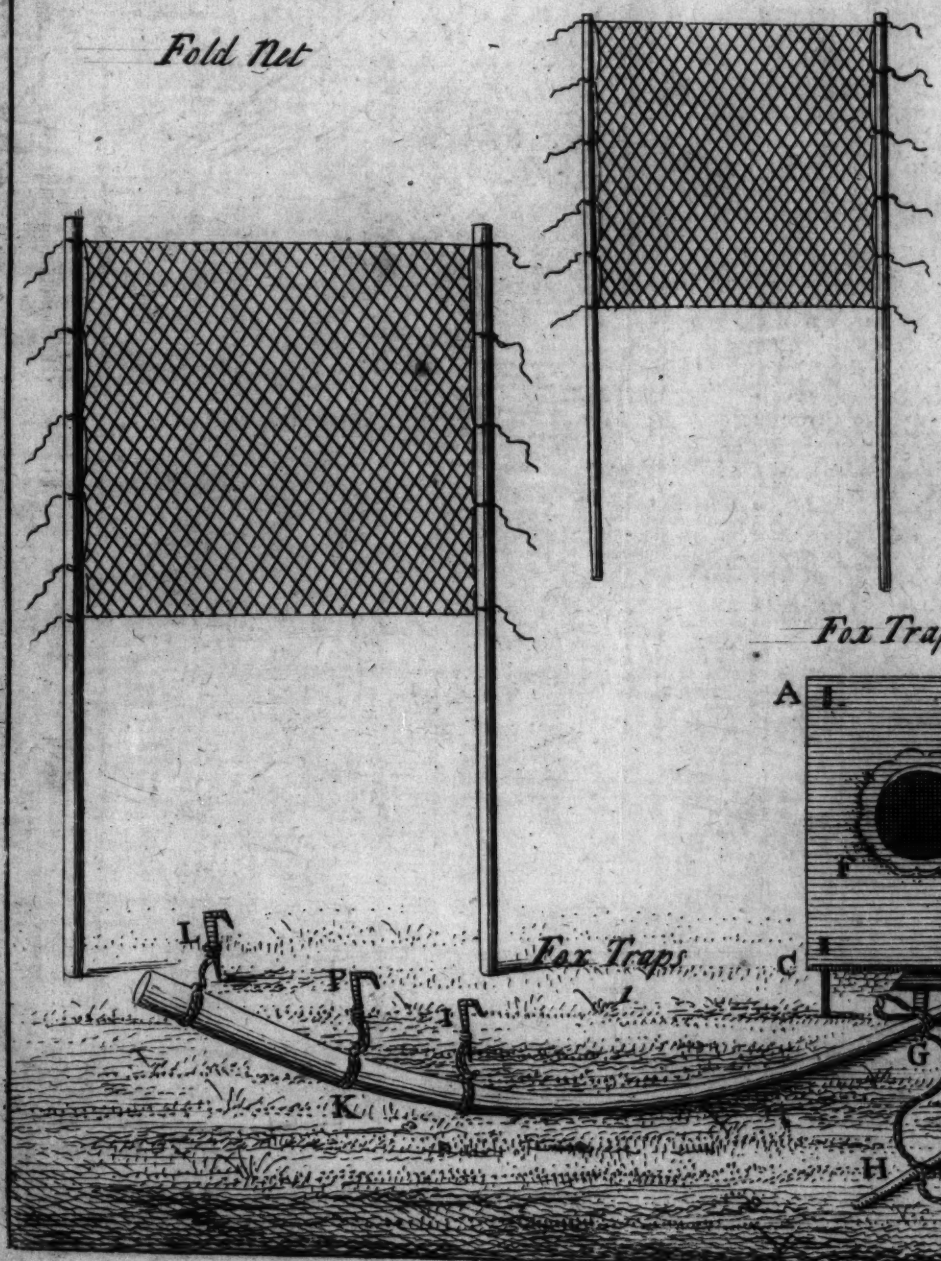
Fat-FOOT; a horse is said to have a fat foot, when the hoof is so thin and weak, that unless the nails be drove very short, he runs the risk of being pricked in shoeing: the *English* horses are very subject to this disorder. A horse's foot is said to be derobe, *i. e.* robbed, or stolen, when 'tis worn and wasted by going without shoes, so that for want of hoof 'tis a hard matter to shoe him.

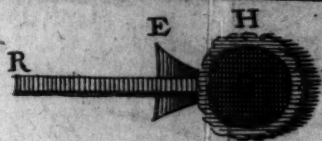
FOOTGELD, } an amercement, or fine laid upon those
FOUTGELD, } who live within the bounds of a forest, for not lawing or cutting out the ball of their dogs feet; and *to be quit of footgeld*, is a privilege to keep dogs there un-lawed and uncontroled.

FOREHEAD of a horse, should be somewhat broad; some would have it a little raised, but a flat one is most beautiful.

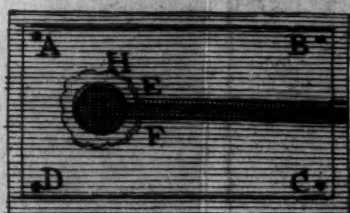
A horse should have in his forehead that which we call a feather, which is a natural frizzling or turning of the hair: if

Fold Net





Fox Traps 2



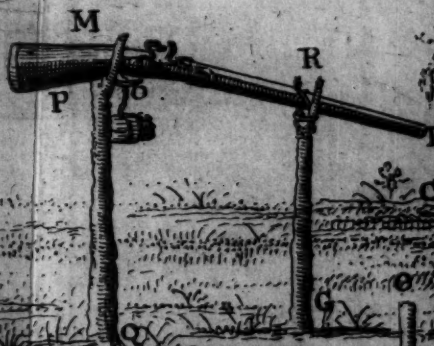
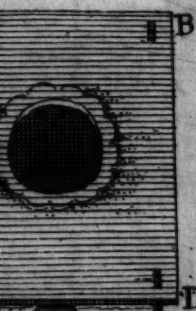
N



N

Traps

Fox Traps 3



F O R

if he have two that are near, or touch, the mark is so much the better.

If a horse be neither white, dappled, nor approaching these colours, he should have a star or blaze in his forehead; it being a defect, not only as to the beauty, but often as to the goodness of the horse of any dark colour to be without one.

FORE-LEGS of a horse, consist of an arm, a fore-thigh and the shank, both which, the larger, broader, and more nervous they are, the better.

FORE-LOIN, [*with Hunters*], is when a hound going before the rest of the cry, meets chace and goes away with it.

FOREST, a great wood, or place privileged by royal authority, which differs from a park, warren, or chace; being on purpose allotted for the peaceable abiding and nourishing of beasts and fowls thereto belonging; for which there are certain peculiar laws, officers, and orders, part of which appear in the great charter of the forest. It's properties are these:

1. A forest truly and strictly taken, cannot be in the hands of any but the King, because none else has power to grant a commission to be a Justice in Eyre.

2. The next property is the courts, as the Justice-seat every three years, the Swainmote three times a year, and the Attachment once every forty days.

3. The third property may be the officers belonging to it, for the preservation of vert and venison; as the Justices of the forest, the Warder or Keeper, the Verderers, the Foresters, Agistors, Regarders, Beadles, &c. which see in their proper places.

But the most special court of the forest is the Swainmote, which is no less incident thereto, than a *Pie-powder* to a fair; and if this fails there is nothing of a forest remaining, but it is turned into the nature of a chace. There were reckoned to be in *England*, sixty-eight forests.

FORESTER, is an officer of the forest, sworn to preserve the vert and venison therein, and to attend the wild beasts within his bailiwick, and to watch and endeavour to keep them safe by day and night: he is also to apprehend all offenders against vert and venison, and to present them to the courts of the forest, to the end that they may be punished according to their offences.

FORKED HEADS, [*with Hunters*] all deers heads which bear two croches on the top, or that have their croches doubled.

FORME, a *French* term for a swelling in the very substance of a horse's pastern, and not in the skin; they come as well in the hind legs as in the fore, and tho' it be an imperfection

F O U

not very common, yet it is dangerous, in that it will admit of no other remedy but firing and taking out the sole; neither can the fire be given to that part without great difficulty and hazard.

FORMICA, is a distemper which commonly seizes upon the horn of a hawk's beak, which will eat the beak away, and this is occasioned by a worm, as is the opinion of most.

This malady may be discovered by this: the beak will grow rugged, and will begin to separate from the head.

In order to remedy this malady, take the gall of a bull, break it into a dish, and add to it Aloes Socotrina in powder; mingle them well together, and anoint the hawk's clasp or beak with it, and especially the very place where the formica grows, twice a day; but touch not her eyes nor nares, continue to do thus; till the hawk be perfectly cured, and bathe her with orpiment and pepper to keep her from other vermin.

FORMICA is also a scurvy mange, which in summer time very much annoys a spaniel's ears, and is caused by flies and their own scratching with their feet.

For the cure; infuse four ounces of gum-dragon in the strongest vinegar that can be got, for the space of eight days, and afterwards bruise it on a marble stone, as Painters do their colours; then add two ounces of roch alum and galls, mingle all well together and apply it to the part affected.

FORMS or *seats* [hunting term] applied to a hare, when she squats in any place.

FOUR CORNERS; to work upon the four corners, is to divide (in imagination) the volt or round into four quarters; the horse makes a round or two at trot or gallop, and when he has done so upon each quarter he has made the four corners.

To **FOUNDER** a horse, is to over-ride him, or to spoil him with hard working.

FOUNDING *in the feet*, a distemper that effects a horse by means of hard riding or labour, or by heats and colds which disorder the body, and excite malignant humours, which inflame the blood, melt the grease, and make it descend downwards to the feet, and there settle; which causes a numbness in the hoof, so that the horse has no sense or feeling in it; and is hardly able to stand, and when he does he shakes and quakes as if he had an ague fit upon him; sometimes this malady proceeds from his being watered while he is very hot, and his grease melted within him, and then suddenly cooled by setting him upon cold planks without litter; or by taking his saddle off too soon,

F O U

or else by letting him stand while hot in some shallow water up to the fetlocks; by means of which extraordinary coldness, it causes the melted grease to fall down into his feet, and there to cake and congeal.

A horse may also be foundered by wearing straight shoes, and by travelling upon hard ground.

The symptoms by which you may know when your horse is foundered upon his fore feet, and not his hind feet, by his treading only upon his hinder feet, and as little as he can upon the other; or his going crouching and crumpling upon his buttocks; and when sometimes he is foundered upon his hind feet and not upon his fore feet, (which happens but seldom) it may be known by his seeming weak behind, and his resting himself as much upon his fore feet as he can; being afraid to set his hinder feet to the ground.

The general method of cure is; first, to pare all the horse's soles so thin, that you may see the quick: then to bleed him well at every toe; stop the vein with tallow and rosin, and having tacked hollow shoes on his feet, stop them with bran, tar, and tallow, as boiling hot as may be; repeating this every other day for a week together, and afterwards to give him good exercise, &c.

Chest FOUNDRING, a distemper proceeding from crudities in the stomach, or other weaknesses obstructing the passage of the lungs.

This is discovered by the horse's often coveting to lie down, and standing straggling with his fore legs; the symptoms being much the same as in purfiness. The only difference is that young horses are subject to chest foundring as well as old; whereas those horses which are troubled with purfiness are generally six years hold and above.

Grass, with much refreshing and cooling, cures the former, but encreases the latter.

The cure; take five or six penny worth of oil of petre, and mingle it with an equal quantity of ale or beer, and with your hand rub this mixture on the part affected, a red hot fire-shovel being held against it while you are rubbing it.

FOUNDING *in the body* is caused by a horse's eating too much provender suddenly, while he is too hot and panting, so that his food not being well digested breeds ill humours, which by degrees spread themselves all over his members, and at length do so oppress all his body, that it renders him extreme weak, and makes him incapable of bowing his joints; and when he is laid down cannot rise again; nor can he either stale or dung without great pain.

F O W

It is also caused by drinking too often upon a journey while he is hot, not being ridden after it.

The symptoms are, the horse will be chilly and quake for cold after drinking; and some of his drink will come out at his nose, and in a few days his legs will swell, and after a while begin to peel, he will have a dry cough, his eyes will water, and his nose run with white phlegmatic stuff, he will forsake his meat, hang down his head for extream pain in the manger.

For the cure; first, rake the horse's fundament and give him a clyster; then put half an ounce of cinnamon, and of liquorish and anniseeds, each two spoonfuls in fine powder, and five or six spoonfuls of honey into a quart of ale or sack, set it on the fire till the honey is melted, and give it him luke warm to drink, and ride him afterwards gently for an hour, clothe him and litter him warm, and keep him fasting for two hours more: sprinkle his hay with water, sift his oats clean from dust: and give him by little and little; let him drink warm mashes of malt and water; and when he has recovered strength, bleed him in his neck vein, and perfume his head with frankincense once a day.

FOWLING is used two manner of ways, either by enchantment or enticement; by winning or wooing the fowl unto you by pipe, whistle, or call; or else by machines or engines, which surprize them unawares.

Fowls are of divers species, which differ in their nature as their feathers; which by reason of the many different kinds, for brevity sake shall be only distinguished here into two kinds land-fowl and water-fowl.

The water-fowl are so called from the natural delight they take in and about the water, gathering from thence all their food and nutriment.

Here it may be observed, that water-fowl are in their own nature, the most subtil and cunning of birds, and most careful of their own safety; and hence they have, by some authors, been compared to an orderly and well governed camp, having scouts on land afar off, courts of guards, centinels, and all sorts of other watchful officers, surrounding the body to give an alarm of the approach of any seeming danger.

And if you observe, you will find that there will be always some straggling fowl, which lie aloof from the greater number, which still call first.

Now it is the nature of water-fowl to flie in great flocks, having always a regard to the general safety; so that if you see a single fowl or a couple fly together, you may imagine they have been somewhere affrighted from the rest by some sudden amazement or apprehension of danger, but so naturally are they
inclined

F O W

inclined to society that they seldom leave wing till they meet together again.

And this is occasioned not only by the near approach of man, but also by the beating of haggards upon the rivers, as also by the appearance of the bold buzzard and ring-tail.

Of water fowls there are two kinds, such as live of the water, and such as live on the water; the one taking their sustenance from the water without swimming in it; but wading and diving for it with their long legs: the other, web-footed, and swim as the swan, goose, mallard, &c.

As to the manner of fowling or taking fowl, see under each particular kind in their proper places alphabetically.

FOWLING-PIECE; that piece is always reckoned the best, which has the longest barrel, being about five and a half or six foot long, with an indifferent bore under a harquebuss, tho' every fowler should have them of such different sorts and sizes as are suitable to the game he designs to kill: and particularly as to the barrel, let it be well polished and smooth within, and the bore of an equal bigness, which may be proved by putting in a piece of pasteboard or other board, cut of the exact roundness of the top, which gently put down to the touch hole; and if it goes down well and even, without stops or slipping, you may conclude it even bored. The bridge-pan must be somewhat above the touch-hole, only with a notch in the bridge-pan, to let down a little powder; which will prevent the gun from recoiling, which otherwise it is apt to do.

As to the locks, chuse such as are well filed with true work, whose springs must be neither too strong, nor too weak; and let the hammer be very well hardened, and pliable to go down to the pan with a quick motion, at the touching the trigger; for the trial thereof, move it gently to the lock; and if it goes with jerks, in a circular motion, it is well made; as for the stocks, walnut tree or ash are very good; the maple is the finest and best for ornament.

In shooting observe to shoot with the wind, if possible, and not against it; and rather side ways, or behind the fowl, than full in their faces.

Next, observe to chuse the most convenient shelter you can find, as hedge, bank, tree; or any thing else which may hide you from the view of the fowl.

Take care to have your dogs at your heels under good command, not daring to stir till you give the word, after having discharged your piece: for some ill taught dogs will upon the snap of the cock presently rush out, and spoil your sport.

If you have not shelter enough, by reason of the nakedness of the banks and want of trees, you must creep upon your hands

FOX

and knees under the banks, and lying flat upon your belly, put the muzzle of your piece over the bank, and so take your level; for a fowl is so fearful of man, that tho' an hawk were soaring over her head, yet at the sight of a man she would take to the wing, and run the risque of that danger. See **STALKING HORSE** and **SHOT MAKING**.

FOX HUNTING, the shape and proportion of this beast is so well known, being so common that it is needless to describe him.

His nature is in many respects like that of a wolf, for they bring as many cubs at a litter the one as the other; but in this they differ, the fox littering deep under the ground, but the wolf doth not.

A bitch fox is very difficult to be taken when she is bragged and with cub, for then she will lie near her burrow, into which she runs, upon hearing the least noise: and indeed at any time it is somewhat difficult, for the fox (and so the wolf) is a very subtil crafty creature.

Fox Hunting is a very pleasant exercise, for by reason of his strong, hot scent, he makes an excellent cry: and as his scent is hottest at hand, so it dies the soonest.

And besides he never flies far before the hounds trusting not to his legs, strength, or champain grounds; but strongest coverts. When he can no longer stand before the ground, he then taketh earth, and must be dug out.

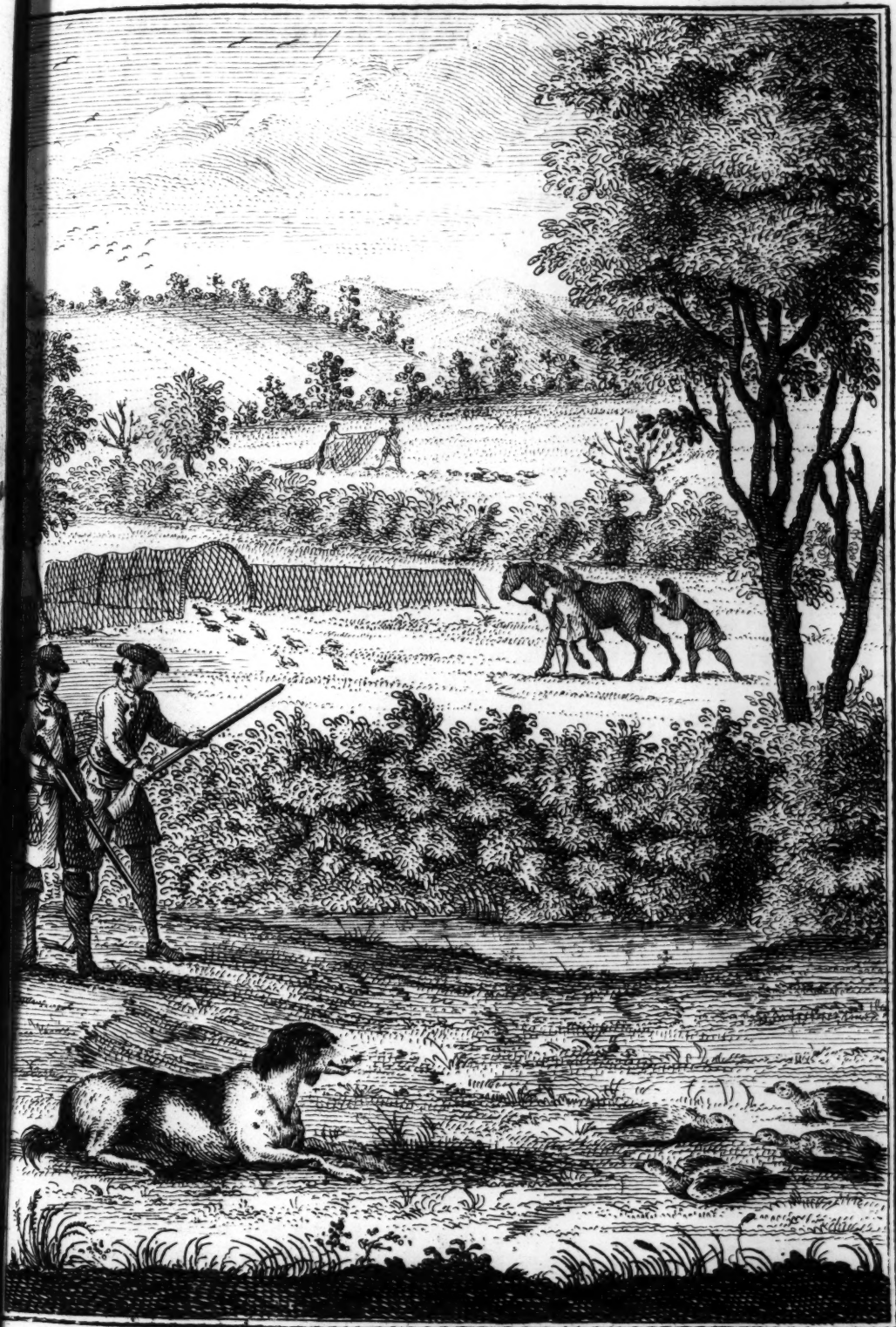
If greyhounds course him on a plain, his last refuge is to piss on his tail, and flap it in their faces as they come near him; and sometimes squirting his thicker excrements upon them, to make them give over the course or pursuit.

When a bitch fox goes a clicketttting and seeking for a dog, she cries with a hollow voice, not unlike the howling of a mad dog, and in the same manner she cries, when she misses any of her cubs: but never makes any cry at all when she is killing, but defends her self to the last gasp.

A fox will prey upon any thing he can overcome, and will feed upon any sort of carrion: but their dainties, and the food they most delight in, is poultry.

They are very injurious and destructive to coney warrens and will sometimes kill hares by deceit and subtilty; but not by swift running.

The fox is taken with hounds greyhounds, terriers, nets, and gins. Of terriers there are two sorts. See **TERRIERS**.



Fowling.



F O X

Fox Hunting above ground.

To hunt a fox with hounds you must draw about groves thickets, and bushes, near villages: for in such places he lurks to prey upon poultry, &c; but if you can find one it will be necessary to stop up his earth, the night before you intend to hunt and that about midnight, for then he goes out to prey; and this must be done by laying two white sticks a cross in his way, which will make him imagine it to be some gin or trap laid for him, or else they may be stopped up close with black thorns and earth together.

The best hunting a fox above ground, is in *January, February* and *March*, for then you shall best see your hounds hunting, and best find his earthing; and besides at those times the fox's skin is best in season.

Again, the hounds hunt the fox best in the coldest weather, because he leaveth a very strong scent behind him; yet in cold weather it chills fastest.

At first only cast off your sure finders, and as the drag mends, so add more as you dare trust them, avoid casting off too many hounds at once; because woods and coverts are full of sundry chaces, and so you may engage them in too many at one time.

Let such as you cast off at first, be old staunch hounds which are sure, and if you hear such a hound call on merrily, you may cast off some others to him, and when they run it on the full cry, cast off the rest, and thus you shall compleat your pastime.

The words of comfort are the same which are used in other chaces, attended with the same hallooings and other ceremonies.

The hounds should be left to kill the fox themselves, and to worry and tear him as much as they please: some hounds will eat him with eagerness.

When he is dead hang him at the end of a pikestaff, and halloo in all your hounds to bay him; but reward them not with any thing belonging to the fox: for it is not good, neither will the hounds in common eat it.

Of hunting a Fox under ground.

If in case a fox does so far escape as to earth, countrymen must be got together with shovels, spades, mattocks, pickaxes, &c. to dig him out, if they think the earth not too great.

They make their earths as near as they can in ground that is hard to dig, as in clay, stony ground, or amongst the roots of
trees;

F R A

trees; and their earths have commonly but one hole; and that is straight a long way in before you come at their couch.

Sometimes craftily they take possession of a badger's old borrow, which hath a variety of chambers, holes, and angles.

Now to facilitate this way of hunting the fox: the huntsman must be provided with one or two terriers to put into the earth after him, that is to fix him into an angle: for the earth often consists of many angles: the use of the terrier is to know where he lies, for as soon as he finds him he continues baying or barking, so that which way the noise is heard that way dig to him.

But to know the manner of entering and farther use of these sorts of dogs, see **TERRIER**.

However I shall here add, that as in the first place you must have such as are able to dig, so your terriers must be garnished with bells hung in collars, to make the fox bolt the sooner; besides the collars will be some small defence to the terriers.

The instruments to dig withal are these; a sharp pointed spade, which serves to begin the trench, where the ground is hardest, and broader tools will not so well enter; the round hollowed spade, which is useful to dig among roots, having very sharp edges; the broad flat spade to dig withal, when the trench has been pretty well opened, and the ground softer; mattocks and pickaxes to dig in hard ground, where a spade will do but little service; the coal rake to cleanse the hole, and to keep it from stopping up; clamps, wherewith you may take either fox or badger out alive to make sport with afterwards.

And it would be very convenient to have a pail of water to refresh your terriers with, after they are come out of the earth to take breath.

After this manner you may besiege a fox, &c. in their strongest holes and castles, and may break their casemates, platforms, parapets, and work to them with mines and countermines till you have obtained what you desired. But for the managing these dogs, see **TERRIERS**.

FOYLING [*with Hunters*] the footing and treading of deer that is on the grass, and scarce visible.

FRANK CHACE is a liberty of free chace in a circuit adjoining to a forest, by which all men, tho' they have land of their own within that compass are forbidden to cut down wood, &c. without the view of the forester.

FRAY; a deer is said to fray her head, when she rubs it against a tree to renew it, or cause the pills of her new horns to come off.

F R U

FREAM [*with Hunters*] a term used of a boar, that makes a noise at rutting time.

FREE WARREN, the power of granting or denying licence to any to hunt or chase in such or such lands.

To FRILL [*in Falconry*] a term used of a hawk; as the hawk frills, *i. e.* trembles or shivers.

FROTH, the mouth of a horse should be full of froth, and if he continually champ upon the mouth of his bitt, it is a token of a good horse: for few bad ones have this action; besides that, his mouth being always moist, will not so easily overheat, and it is a sign that the bitt gives him pleasure.

If the froth be thin or fluid, and of a pale grey, or yellowish colour, it denotes a bad tempered brain; but if it be white and thick cleaving to his lips and branches of the bridle, then you are to look upon the mouth as fresh, and that the horse is of a strong constitution and sound in his body.

FROWNCE ? a disease incident to hawks, proceeding from

FROUNCE ? moist and cold humours, which fall down from their heads to the palate and root of their tongue, by which means they lose their appetite, and cannot close their clap.

Some call this the eagles bane, for they seldom die of age, but of the over growing of their beaks.

You may discover when a hawk is troubled with this malady by opening her beak, and examining whether her tongue be swollen or not; for if it be she has it.

There are several ways of cure for this; but the best is to wash the hawk's mouth with the powder of alum reduced to a sort of salve; being put into strong wine vinegar in order to wash her mouth with.

To cure the dry FROUNCE.

Take a quill and cut it in the shape of a pen, and at the other end tie a fine linnen rag; with one end scrape off the white skin, which you will see in the throat or mouth of the hawk, until it bleeds; then with the other end wash it with the juice of lemon or wine vinegar very clean, then take a little burnt alum and some of a shoe sole burnt upon wood coals, and beaten to a powder, mix them and lay them on the place or places, but let your hawk have no meat above nor be ready to be fed.

FRUSH, or frog of a horse, is a sort of tender horn which arises in the middle of the sole, and at some distance from the toe, divides into two branches, running towards the heel in the form of a fork. Thus they say;

Look

F U M

Look after this horse, for the flesh is run in upon the frush, I see an excrescence, or sprouting of flesh in that part.

There is a fig in that sorrel's frush; and this *Roan* has a scabbed frush; and here is another that has a fat frush, *i. e.* a frush that is too thick and too large.

FULMART, or *Fumer*, a pole-cat, *Fitch*, or *Fitchow*.

FUMETS, the ordure or dung of a hart, the same as *Fewmets*.

G A L

GABLOCKS, artificial spurs, made either of iron, brasse, or silver, and fixed on the legs of such cocks as want their natural spurs: some call them gaffs.

GALLING of a horse's back. To prevent it.

Take a hind's skin, well garnished with hair, and fit it neatly beneath the pannel of the saddle, so that the hairy side may be next the horse.

Now this does not harden by sweat, and so not only keeps that part from galling, but is good for such horses as have been lately cured, which would otherwise gall anew again.

After a travel you ought to take off the saddle and feel the horse's back, whether he has been pinched or galled or not, which will be best discovered after he has stood an hour or two unsaddled, by the swelling of the part oppressed.

If it be only swelled, fill a bag with warm dung, and tie it upon the swelling, which will not only prevent it from growing worse, but also probably quite disperse it.

Or you may rub and chafe the swelling with good brandy, or spirit of wine, and having soaked the place well with it, set fire with a lighted paper to what remains of it, and the swelling will disappear, when the fire extinguishes of it self; but if the skin be broke, wash it with warm claret, mixed with a fourth part of fallad oil, or fresh butter; or bathe it often with brandy, if the horse will endure it.

GALLOP, is a motion of a horse that runs at full speed, in which making a kind of leap forwards, he lifts both his legs almost

G A L

almost at the same time; when these are in the air, just upon the point of touching the ground, he lifts both his hind legs almost at once.

Of a horse that has an easy light gallop, that gallops fine, they say, he gallops upon his haunches, he does not press heavy upon the bridle, he bends his fore legs well, he has a good motion with him, he is well coupled, keeps his legs united.

The great gallop, or the hunting gallop; or the gallop with a long stretch, or gallop with all the heels, *i. e.* full speed.

A short light gallop, *i. e.* a slow gallop.

GALLOP is the swiftest natural pace of a horse.

Here you are to take notice, that a horse in galloping forwards may lead with which fore leg he pleases, tho' horses do it most commonly with their right fore leg; but with whatever fore leg they lead, the hind leg of the same side must follow it, otherwise their legs are said to be disunited.

In order to remedy this disorder, you must stay your horse a little upon the hand, and help him with the spur on the contrary side to that in which he is disunited.

As for example, if he be disunited on the right side, help him with the left spur, by staying him (as before) upon the hand a little, and also helping him at the same time with the calves of the legs.

And farther, in a circle a horse is confined to lead always with his fore leg, within the turn, otherwise he is said to gallop false; but in all cases the hind leg of the same side must ever follow.

Lastly, when you make trial of a *galloper*, observe if he performs it equally, and push him on somewhat hard, that you may know by his stop whether he have strength and vigour, which is termed a *fund* or *source*; and if he be also sensible of the spur.

GALLOP, or *Canterbury-rate*, is a pace between a full speed and a swift running.

GALLOPADE; the fine gallopade, the short gallop, the listening gallop, the gallop of the school: 'Tis a hand gallop, or gallop upon the hand, in which a horse galloping upon one or two treads, is well united, and well *raccourci* knit together, well coupled, and will set under him. Hence they say,

This horse makes a gallopade, and works with one haunch, *i. e.* instead of going upon one tread, whether right out or in a circle, has one haunch kept in subjection, let the turn or change of the hand be what it will; so that the inner haunch, which looks to the center of the ground, is more narrowed, and comes nearer to that center than the shoulder does: and thus the horse does not go altogether to that side, and his way of working is a little more than one tread, and somewhat less than two.

The

G A M

The difference between working with one haunch in, and galloping upon volts, and managing upon *terra a terra*, is in galloping upon volts, and working *terra a terra*; the two haunches are kept subject, and the two haunches are in, that is, within the volt; but in galloping a haunch in, only one is kept subject.

To gallop united, to gallop upon a good and right foot, is, when a horse that gallops right out, having cut the way, or led with either of his fore feet, continues to lift that same leg always first, so that the hinder leg, of a side with the leading fore leg, must likewise be raised sooner than the other hind leg.

For instance; if the right fore leg leads before the left, then the right hind leg must likewise move sooner than the left hind leg; and in this order must the horse continue to go on.

To gallop false, to disunite, to drag the haunches, to change feet, to go or run upon false feet, to gallop upon the false foot, is, when the galloper having led with one of the fore legs, whether right or left, does not continue to make that leg always set out first, nor to make the hind leg of a side with the leading leg, to move before it's opposite hind leg; that is to say, the orderly going is interrupted.

A horse that gallops false, gallops with an unbecoming air, and incommodes the rider.

If your horse gallops false, or disunite, and if you have a mind to put him upon keeping the right foot, and uniting well his haunches, you must bring to with the calves of your legs, and then with the out spur; that is, the spur that is contrary and opposite to the side upon which he disunites: so that if he disunites to the right, you must prick him with the left heel.

GAME-COCK; in the choice of a fighting cock, four things are chiefly to be considered, *viz.*

1. Shape, colour, courage, and sharp heel.

1. As to shape, you must not chuse one either too large or too small; for the first is unweildy, and not active, the other is weak and tedious in his fighting; and both very difficult to be matched: the middle sized cock is therefore most proper for your purpose, as being strong, nimble, and easily matched; his head ought to be small, with a quick large eye, and a strong beak, which (as Mr. *Markham* observes) should be crookt, and big at the setting on, in colour suitable to the plume of his feathers, whether black, yellow, or reddish, &c.

The beam of his leg is to be very strong, and according to his plume, blew, grey, or yellow; his spurs rough, long, and sharp, a little bending, and pointing inward.

2. The colour of a game cock ought to be grey, yellow, or red, with a black breast; not but there are many other piles,

or

G A M

or birds of different colours, very excellent, and may be discovered by practice and observation, but the three former, by experience, are ever found the best. The pyed pile may pass indifferently, but the white and dun are rarely known to be good for any thing.

If your cock's neck be invested with a scarlet complexion, it is a sign he is strong, lusty, and courageous; but on the contrary, if pale and wan, it denotes him to be feint, and defective in his state of health.

3. You may know his courage by his proud, upright standing, and stately tread in walking; and if he crows frequently in the pen, it is a demonstration of spirit.

4. His narrow heel, or sharpness of heel, is known no other-wise than by observation in fighting; and that is, when upon every rising he so hits, that he draws blood from his adversary, gilding his spurs continually, and at every blow threatening him with immediate death.

Here note, it is the opinion of the most skillful cock-masters, that a sharp heeled cock, tho' he be somewhat false, is better than a true cock with a dull heel: the reason is this, the one fights long, but seldom wounds, while the other carries a heel so fatal, that every moment produces an expectation of the end of the battle; and tho' he be not so hardy as to endure the utmost hewing, so commonly there is little occasion for it, he being a quick dispatcher of his business.

Now should your cock prove both hardy and narrow heeled, he is then the best bird you can make choice of.

To prepare a cock to fight, first with a pair of fine shears cut all his mane off close to his neck, from the head to the setting on of the shoulders.

2. Clip off all the feathers from the tail, close to his rump; the redder it appears, the better is the cock in condition.

3. Spread his wings by the length of the first rising feather, and clip the rest slope-wise, with sharp points, that in his rising he may therewith endanger an eye of his adversary.

4. Scrape smooth, and sharpen his spurs with a penknife.

5. And lastly, see that there be no feathers on the crown of his head for his opponent to take hold of them, moisten his head all over with your spittle, and turn him into the pit to try his fortune.

For other particulars, See *MATCHING of Cocks*.

GAME-HEN should be of a good complexion, that is to say, rightly plumed; as, black, brown, speckled grey, grissel, or yellowish; these being the most proper colours for such a hen of the game: if she be tufted on the crown, 'tis so much the better, for that denotes courage and resolution; and if she have the

G A M

the addition of weapons, they conduce very much to her excellency; her body should be big and well poked behind, for the production of large eggs: but farther, 'tis advisable to observe how she behaves herself to her chickens, whether friendly or frowardly; and take especial notice of her carriage amongst other hens, if she receive abuses from them without revenge, or shew any token of cowardice, value her not, for you may depend upon it her chickens will be good for nothing.

Here by the way take this general and sure remark, that a right hen of the game, from a dunghil cock, will bring forth very good chickens; but the best cock, from a dunghil hen, will never get a bird that is fit for the game.

If then you design to have a generous breed, get a perfect cock for your perfect hens.

The best season for breeding, is from the increase of the moon in *February*, to the increase of the same in *March*: let your hen's nest be made of soft sweet straw, and stand in some warm place; it should be so fixed, that she may not be disturbed by the sight of any other fowl, which frequently so raises her choler, that the eggs are in great danger.

That she may not straggle too far from her eggs, being obliged to seek abroad for food, and so cool them, it is absolutely requisite to set by her such provisions as you think fit, with some fair water, that she may bathe and trim herself at pleasure: Let sand, gravel, and ashes, be finely sifted on the place where she sits.

The hen usually hatches her chickens after the expiration of twenty-one days, at that time observe to take them, newly hatched, and wrap them up in wool, keep them warm by a fire side till the rest are disclosed; as soon as they are all hatched put them under the hen, and be sure to keep her warm; neither must you suffer your chickens to range till they be above three weeks old, but let the room in which they are kept be boarded, for all other floors are either too moist or too cold.

When they are a month old, let their walk be in some grass court, or green place, that they may have the benefit of feeding on worms, now and then scour themselves with grass and chick-weed; but be careful they come not near puddles or filthy places, for they occasion in birds of this nature, noxious distempers, which often prove fatal.

Continue the taking of this course, till their sexes are distinguishable; as soon as their combs or wattles appear, cut them away, and anoint the sore place with sweet butter till it be whole.

The time of the separation of the cock chickens, is when they begin to fight and peck one another, till which time you may

G A S

may let them walk with the hens promiscuously together, but afterwards let their walks be apart; and that walk is best where he may securely and privately enjoy his hens without the disturbance of other cocks.

Let the place of feeding be as much as possible, in soft, dry ground, or on boards; if the place be hard, as paved earth, or plaistered floors, which are apt so far to weaken and blunt their beaks, that they will be unable to hold fast.

Now any white corn is good for a young game-cock in his walk, and so are white bread toasts steeped in drink, or man's urine, which will both scour and cool them inwardly: let him not have above three hens to keep company with, for should you suffer more he will tread too much and consume his strength, and become so weak, that tho' his courage may not fail, yet he will not have strength enough to encounter in a battle.

You should also more especially take care that his roosting perch be not too small in the gripe, or so ill placed that he cannot sit without straddling; or if it be crooked 'tis bad, for by those means a cock will be uneven healed, and consequently no good stricker.

To prevent such disorders, you should have in the roost a row of little perches, about eight inches in length, and ten from the ground, that the cock may ascend with more ease, and when got up, may be constrained to keep his legs near together; according to the tenour of this maxim amongst cock-breeders, *That the cock that is a close sitter, is never a narrow striker.*

Neither should you suffer your cock to fight a battle, till he be compleat and perfect in every member; that is, when he has attained the age of two years; since to fight him when his spurs are in a manner but warts, is no sign of discretion; for you may then perhaps be sensible of his valour and courage, but cannot know his real worth and goodness.

GANACHES, (so called in *French*) are the two bones on each side of the hinder part of the head, opposite to the neck, or onset of the head, which form the lower jaw, and give it motion.

'Tis in this place that the glands or kernels of the strangles, and the glanders, are placed.

To GARDEN a hawk, is to put her on a turf of grass to cheer her.

GARTH, or *Fish-garth*, a wear or dam in a river for the catching fish.

GARTHMAN, one who owns an open wear where fish are taken.

GASCOIN, the hinder thigh of an horse, which begins at the *stifle*, and reaches to the *ply*, or bending of the ham.

Q

GATE

G E L

GATE, is the going, or pace of a horse. Hence they say, this horse has a good gate, but the other has a broken gate; this horse goes well, but the other does not.

GAUNT BELLY'D, or *light belly'd horse*, is one whose belly shrinks up towards his flanks; whence you may conclude he is extremely costive, and annoyed with much unnatural heat, so as to be always very washy, tender, and unhealthy, after hard labour.

In order to the cure of it, it must be observed, that all horses have two small strings, reaching from the cuds to the bottom of the belly, one on each side; you must therefore with your finger break these strings, and then anoint the part every day with fresh butter and the ointment *populneum*, mixt in equal quantities.

GAZE-HOUND, } a dog more beholden to the sharp-
GAST-HOUND, } ness of his sight, than his nose or
smelling, by virtue of which he makes excellent sport with the fox and hare: he is also very exquisite in his election of one that is not lank or lean, but full, fat, and round; which if it happen to return and mingle with the rest of the herd, this dog will soon spy it out, leaving the rest untouched; and after he hath set sure sight upon it, he separateth it from the company, and having so done, never ceaseth till he hath worried it to death.

These dogs are much used in the north of *England*, and on champain ground, rather than bushy and woody places; and they are more used by horsemen than footmen.

If it so happens at any time that such a dog takes a wrong way, upon the master's making some usual sign and familiar token, he returns forthwith, and takes the right and ready course, beginning the chace afresh; so that with a clear voice and swift foot, he follows the game with as much courage and nimbleness as he did at first.

GELDING, is a horse whose testicles are cut out, so that he is not fit for a stallion.

GELDING a Horse or Colt: in the performing of this three things are to be observed; first the age, then the season of the year, and lastly the state of the moon.

As to the first, if it be a colt, he may be gelded at nine days old, or fifteen, if his stones be come down; for the sooner you geld him, the better for the growth, age, and courage; but a Farrier may geld a horse at any age whatever, if he be careful of the cure.

As to the time of the year, it should be done between *April* and *May*, or in the beginning of *June* at farthest; or at the fall of the leaf, which is about the latter end of *September*.

But

G E R

But for the third thing, viz. the state of the moon, the fittest time is always when the moon is in the wane, or decrease.

As to the manner of *gelding*, whether it be a foal, colt, or horse, after you have cast him upon some soft place, take the stones between your foremost finger and your great finger, then slit the cod and press the stones forth; when that is done, with a pair of small nippers made of steel, box, or brazil wood, being very smooth, clap the strings of the stones between them, very near cut to the setting on of the stones, and press them so hard that there may be no flux of blood; then with a thin drawing cauterizing iron, made red hot, sear away the stone: after that take an hard plaister, made of rosin, wax, and washed turpentine, well dissolved together, and with your hot iron, melt it upon the head of the strings, that being done, sear them, and melt more of the salve, till such time as you have laid a good thickness of the salve upon the strings.

Lastly, loose the nippers, and do so to the other stone; fill the two slits of the cod with white salt, anoint all the outside of the cod with hog's grease, and then let the horse rise; keeping him in a warm stable loose, that he may walk up and down, for there is nothing better for him than moderate exercise.

But if you perceive that he swells in the cod and sheath very much, chase him up and down, and make him trot an hour in a day, which will soon recover him and make him sound.

GENNET, a kind of *Spanish* horse; also a kind of cat bred in *Spain*, somewhat bigger than a weasel, of a grey or black colour, but the fur of the black is the more valuable.

GENTIL, } a sort of maggot or worm, often used for a
GENTLE, } bait to catch fish.

GERFALCON, } a bird of prey, that is of a size be-

GYRFALCON, } tween a vulture and a hawk, and of the greatest strength next to the eagle.

The *gerfalcon* is a very fair hawk, and of great force, especially being mewed. She is strong armed, having long stretchers and singles, being of a fierce and hardy nature, and therefore difficult to be reclaimed. She is a lovely bird to behold, larger than any kind of falcon; her eyes and head are like the haggard's.

Her beak is great and bending, she hath large nares, and a mail like a *lanner's*; her sails are long and sharp pointed, her train much like the *lanner's*; she has a large foot, marble seered, and is plumed black, brown, and russet: she expects much civility from her keeper, who must exercise a great deal of patience on her.

G E R

These may be also called passengers, because their *Eyrie* is in some parts of *Prussia*, and on the borders of *Russia*; and some come from the mountains of *Norway*, and from *Germany*.

This bird, by reason of the fierceness and hardness of her nature, is very difficultly manned and reclaimed; but being once overcome, she proves an excellent hawk, and will scarce refuse to fly at any thing.

Their beaks are blew, so are the seers of their legs and feet, having pounces and talons very long.

These hawks do not fly the river, but always from the fist fly the herons, shovellers, &c.

In going up to their gate, they do not hold that course or way that others do, for they climb up upon the train when they find any fowl, and as soon as they have reached her they pluck her down, if not at first, yet at the second or third encounter.

You must feed and reward them like other falcons.

They are very crafty, and love to keep their casting long through sloth, therefore instead of cotton give them a casting of tow; and be sure to keep them sharp set.

As to the manner of manning and reclaiming her, you must render her gentle and familiar with you by kindness, and when you have taught her to be lured loose, then learn her to come to the pelts of hens, or any other fowl; but let her not touch any living flesh, for fear that draw her love away from your voice and hand.

All this time you must be close by her, about her, and upon your knees, using your voice unto her with her dinner and supper, clean drest and washed, giving her still some bits thereof with your hand, that she may the more delight therein.

By doing thus frequently, you will so win upon her, that if she should be guilty of carrying, yet by this means she will be reclaimed, and forget that error.

Let the *Falconer* have a special care how he makes his *gerfalcon* at first, and indeed all other hawks, for as they are made then, he shall ever find them after; and if they are well made, they are twice made, and for ever made; and therefore beware of too much precipitation in posting them forward from one lesson to another, before they are perfect in any thing.

If you train her with doves, she will not carry a feather from you; but first, before you spring her any doves, let her kill four or five at lure, close by your foot. Have a pair of short creances at your lure.

And farther, as the *gerfalcon* is a bird very much admired for her high flight, being best at the heron and mountee, and

G L A

that you may bring her to perfection herein, play with your enter mew'd *gerfalcon* the first year, shewing her all the kindness imaginable, and use all possible means to make her love you.

When you have brought her forward, give her often castings to cleanse and purge her; also to prevent the growth of too much glut and fatness in her inward parts, which will endanger her life.

GESSES, the furniture belonging to 'a hawk. See **JESSES**.

GIGS, otherwise called bladders, or flaps, are a disease in the mouth of a horse; they being small swellings, or pustules with black heads, on the inside his lips, under his great jaw teeth, which will be sometimes as big as a walnut, and so painful withal, that he will let his meat fall out of his mouth, or at least keep it in his mouth unchewed.

These gigs proceed from foul feeding, either of grass or provender; and you may feel them with your finger.

In order for a cure, pull forth the horse's tongue, and slit them with an incision-knife, and thrust out the kernels or corruption; and afterwards wash the place with vinegar, salt, or allum water, and they will do well; but to prevent their coming at all, wash the parts with wine, beer, or ale.

GIRLE, [*among Hunters*] a roe-buck of two years old.

GIRTH, a kind of saddle buckled on under a horse's belly; also a saddle that is buckled and compleat for use.

GIRTH, [*with cock-masters*] the compass of a cock's body.

GIRTH-WEB, that stuff of which the girths of a saddle are made.

GLANDERS, a distemper in horses, proceeding, according to the *French* accounts, from corrupt humours about the lungs and heart, arising neither from the blood nor phlegm, but from the one and the other *bile*, and therefore it is called dry.

It is discovered by the horse's growing lean on a sudden, and by touching his flanks with your hand, which will make them sound like a drum; and the horse can neither eat nor cough, though he endeavours it, and feels terrible sharp pains inwardly, as if he had swallowed a bone: and if all these signs appear, it is a token of death, and all remedies will prove useless.

But our authors describe the *glanders* to be such a loathsome, filthy disease, and withal so catching, that it will infect other horses that are near him that has it: they say it proceeds first from heats and colds, which begins with a thin rheum, and ascends up to the head, and settles near the brain, and so vents it self at the nose; which in time grows thicker and thicker, till it becomes of a yellowish colour like butter, which is then very hard to cure.

G O A

But if it comes to be a viscous, tough, slimy substance, and of a green colour, and stinks much, having run some months with some reddish specks in it; there are but little hopes, for it is most certain by those symptoms that his lungs are ulcerated.

A horse that has the true glanders is gone, and good for nothing, and whosoever buys such a horse (in *France*) can oblige the feller to take him again at any time, within nine days after delivery.

You must warrant this horse clear of glanders, and purfiness, and sound, hot or cold. See *SOUND*.

GLEAD, a sort of kite, a bird of prey.

To take GLEADS, CROWS, and MAGPIES, with lime twigs.

When you have found any carrion on which kites, crows, pies, &c. are preying, set lime twigs every night about the carrion but let them be small and not set too thick; if otherwise, they being subtil birds, they will suspect some danger or mischief intended against them.

When you perceive one to be fast, do not advance to him presently, for most commonly when they are surely caught they are not sensible thereof.

They may be taken another way, and that is by joining to a packthread, several noozes of hair up and down the packthread, and pegging it down about a yard from the carrion: for many times when they have gotten a piece of flesh, they will be apt to run away to feed by themselves, and if your noozes be thick it is two to one but some of the noozes catch him by the leg,

GLEAM [*with Falconers*] a hawk is said to gleam, when she casts or throws up filth from her gorge.

GLUT [*with Falconers*] the slimy substance that lies in the pannel of a hawk.

GOATS are a kind of cattle that take delight in bushes, briars, thorns, and other trees, rather than in plain pasture, grounds, or fields.

The buck goat has under his jaws two wattles or tufts like a beard; his body should be large, his legs big, his joints upright his neck plain and short, his head small, eyes large, and horns large and bending; his hair thick, clean and long, being in many places shorn to make mantles for soldiers.

He is of great heat, and also so knavish, that he will not shun covering his own dam: tho' she be yet milch, thro' which heat he soon decays; and is nigh spent before he is six years old.

G O D

The female goat also resembles the male, and is valued if she have large teats, a great udder, hanging ears and no horns, at least small ones.

There ought not to be above 100 of them in one herd, and in buying it is better to buy together out of one herd, than to chuse in divers parts and companies, that so being led to their pasture, they may not separate, and they will better agree in their houses; the floor of which ought to be paved with stone, or else naturally to be of gravel, for they are so hot, they must have no litter under them; but yet must be kept very clean.

The chief time of coupling them, or covering with the buck, is in autumn before the month of *December*, that so they may kid and bring forth their young the better against the leaf and grafs spring fresh and tender; at which time they will give the more milk.

They are very prolifick, bringing forth two and sometimes three kids at a time; the bucks must be a little corrected and kept low to abate the heat and lasciviousness of their natures, but young does should be allowed to have abundance of milk.

Neither should you give any kid to a goat of a year or two old to nourish, for such as they bring within the said time are improper for it.

You must not keep your goats longer than eight years, because that being by that time forely weakened by often bearing, they will become barren.

These animals require scarce any thing that is chargeable to keep them, for they browse and feed wholly together as sheep do, and climb up mountains against the heat of the sun, with great force; but they are not so fit to be about houses as sheep are; being naturally more hurtful to all manner of herbs and trees.

As for their distempers except it be in a few particulars, they are the same as those of sheep.

The chief profit of them is their milk, which is esteemed the greatest nourisher of all liquids (womens milk only excepted) and the most comfortable and agreeable to the stomach; so that in barren countries it is often mixt with other milk for the making of cheefe, where they have not a sufficient stock of cows.

The young kids are very good meat, and may be managed in all respects after the same manner as lambs.

GODWITS; as also knots, grays, plovers, and curlews, being fowls esteemed of all others the most dainty and dearest, are effectually fed with good chilter wheat, and water, given them three times a day, viz. morning, noon and night; but to have them extraordinary take some of the finest wheat meal,

G O L

and mingle it with milk, and make it into a paste, constantly sprinkling it while you are kneading it, with grains of small chilter wheat, till the paste be fully mixt together therewith; then make it up into little pellets, and steeping them in water give to every fowl according as he is in largeness, till his gorge be well filled, and continuing to do this as often as you find his gorge empty, and in a fortnight's time, they will be fed beyond expectation; and with this cramming any kind of fowl whatever may be fattened.

GOING, is a pace or gate of a horse. Hence they say,

This barb has all his goings and paces very fine, contrary to what we commonly observe of barbs, for they are apt to stumble upon a bowling green unless they be animated, bore up and put on.

This horse has a cold gate with him, that is, he does not bend his knee as he ought to do: and he raises his legs so little that he grazes or sweeps the ground.

GOING to the vault [*with Hunters*] a term used of a hare which sometimes, tho' seldom, takes the ground like a coney.

GOLDFINCH, a seed bird of a very rare and curious colour, and were they not so plentiful, would be highly esteemed by us.

They are usually taken out at *Michaelmas*, and will soon become tame; but they differ very much in their song; for some of them sing after one fashion, and some of them after another.

They frequently breed in the upper part of plum-trees, making their nests of the moss that grows upon apple-trees and of wool; quilting the inside with all sorts of hairs, they find upon the ground.

They breed three times a year, and the young are to be taken with the nest at about ten days old; and to be fed as follows.

Pound the best hemp-seed very fine in a mortar, then sift it through a sieve, and add to it as much white bread as hemp-seed, and also a little flower of canary-seeds; then with a small stick or quill, take up as much as the bigness of a white pea, and give them three or four times, several times a day; this ought to be made fresh every day, for if it be sour it will presently spoil their stomachs, causing them to cast up their meat; which if they do it is ten to one, if they live.

These young birds must be carefully kept warm till they can feed themselves, for they are very tender, yet may be brought up to any thing.

In feeding, be sure to make your bird clean his bill and mouth; if any of the meat falls upon his feathers take it off, or else they will not thrive.

Such

G O S

Such as eat hemp-seed, to purge them, should have the seeds of melons, succory, and mercury; or else let them have lettuce and plantane for that purpose.

When there is no need of purging, give them two or three times a week a little sugar or loam in their meat, or at the bottom of the cage; for all seeds have an oiliness, so that if not something to dry it up, in length of time it fouls their stomachs and puts them into a flux, which is of a very dangerous consequence.

GORGE [*in Falconry*], that part of a hawk which first receives the meat, and is called the craw or crop in other fowl.

GORGED *i. e.* swelled; this horse's pastern joint is gorged, and the other has his legs gorged you must walk him out to disgorge them, or take down the swelling.

GOSHAWK } [*q. d. gros-hawk*] a large hawk of which
GOSS-HAWK } there are several sorts, differing in goodness, force, and hardness, according to the diversity of their choice in cawking; at which time when hawks begin to fall to liking all birds of prey do assemble themselves with the *goshawk* and flock together.

The female is the best, and altho' there are some *goshawks* which come from *Slavonia*, *Sardinia*, *Lombardy*, *Russia*, *Puglia*, *Germany*, *Armenia*, *Persia*, *Greece*, and *Africa*; yet there are none better than those which are bred in the northern parts of *Ireland*, as in the province of *Ulster*, but more especially in the county of *Tyrone*.

As to the goodness of the proportion and shape of a *goshawk* take the following rules.

She ought to have a small head, her face long and straight a large throat, great eyes, deep set, the apple of the eye black, nares, ears, back, and feet, large and blank; a black long beak, long neck, big breast, hard flesh, long thighs, fleshy, the bone of the leg and knee, short, long large pounces and talons.

From the stern or train to the breast forward, she ought to grow round; the feathers of the thighs towards the train should be large, and the train feathers short, and soft something tending to an iron nail.

The baryl feathers ought to be like those of the breast, and the covert feathers of the train should be spotted and full of black rundles; but the extremity of every train feather should be black streaked.

The sign of force in a *goshawk* or the way of distinguishing the strength of this bird is as follows;

Tie divers of them in several places of the chamber or mews, and that hawk that slices and mewts highest and farthest off from

from her, is without doubt the strongest hawk: for the high and far mewting argues a strong back.

On the contrary take this for a general rule that that *goshawk* that hath pendant plumes over her eyes, the whites of which are waterish and blank, that is, red mailed or right tawny, has the most certain signs of a hawk that is ill conditioned.

The *goshawk* preys upon the pheasant, mallard, wild goose, hare and coney, nay she will venture to seize on a kid or goat; which is an indication of the inestimable courage of this hawk.

She ought to be kept with great care, because she is very choice and dainty, and looks to have a nice hand kept over her

The way to make a SOAR or HAGGARD GOSHAWK.

First trim them with jesses, bewets, and bells, as soon as they come to your hands; keep them sealed some time, hooding and unhooding them often, teaching them to feed on the fist three or four days, or till they have left their ramageness and become gentle: having so done, unseal them by candle-light at night, causing them to tire or plume upon a wing or leg of a pullet; and be sure to deal gently and mildly with them, until you have won and thoroughly manned them: Then go into some pheasant field, and give them a bit or two hooded, on your fist, and the like unhooded; and then cast them down fair and softly on some perch, and make them come from it to your fist, calling them in a Falconer's usual terms; and when they come feed them, calling all the while in the same manner to make them acquainted with a your voice.

The next day you may call them with a creance at a farther distance, feeding them as before.

When you have thus called your *goshawk* abroad three or four days, and that you find her grow cunning, then take her on your fist and mount on horse-back, and ride with her an hour or two, unhooding and hooding her sometimes; giving her a bit or two in sight of your spaniels, that she may not be afraid of them: having done this, set her on a tree with a short creance tied to her loins, and going half a score yards from her on horse back, then call her to your fist according to art; if she come reward her with two or three bits, and cast her up again to the tree; then throw out a dead pullet (to which she has been used before) about a dozen yards from her; if she fly to it and seize it, let her feed three or four bits upon it; ride the mean while about her on horse-back, and rate back you spaniels, because they shall not rebuke her at first, and make her ever after afraid

G O S

afraid of them: then alight and gently take her on your fist, feed her, hood her, and let her plume or tire.

Here take notice that the *goshawk* is a greater poulterer, and therefore it would be more requisite to throw out a dead partridge or one made artificially with it's wing, tail, and plumage; which will cause her to know a partridge better, and poultry less.

How to make a goshawk fly to a partridge.

Having manned your *goshawk*, go into the field with her, carrying with her a train partridge, and unhooding your hawk, bear her as gently as you can; and you will do well to let her plume or tire, for that will make her the more eager.

If the partridge spring let her fly; if she mark one, two, three, or more, on the ground, then go to her and make her take perch on some tree hard by; then if you can retrieve the partridge with your spaniels, as soon as they spring it, you must cry *howit*, *howit*, and retrieve it the second time, crying when it springs as before; if your hawk kill it, feed her upon it.

If your spaniels should happen to take it (as it is very frequent, for hot spaniels to light upon the partridge, being either flown out of breath or over-charged with fear) then alight from your horse, and taking it speedily from the dogs, cast it out to your hawk, crying *ware hawk*, *ware hawk*, and let her feed upon it at pleasure.

After this you must not fly her in two days: for having fed on bloody meat; she will not so soon be in good case to fly again; for such meat is not so easily endewed by a hawk as the leg of a chicken or the like.

Using her thus three or four times, she will be well in blood, and become an excellent flyer, at this pleasant field flight.

Here take notice, that you must do at first with her as with other hawks, that is seal and watch her and win her to feed, to the hood, to the fist, &c. and then enter her to young partridges till *November*, at which time both fields and trees become bare and empty; then you may enter her to the old (rewen) raven, setting her short and eager; if she fill, feed her up with the partridge three or four times; and this will bring her to perfection.

If your hawk be a good partridger, let her not fly at the pout or pheasant, for they fly not so long a flight as the partridge, and therefore the *goshawk* being more greedy of prey, than any other hawk! (yet desirous of ease), would always, covet short flights, not caring to hold out; not but that there are some good

G O S

good both for long and short flights; but they are but rarely to be had.

Besides, great care must be taken in keeping them in order, by *flying, bathing, weathering, tiring, and pluming.*

To reform a gofhawk that turns tail to tail, and gives over her game.

It is usual for a *gofhawk* to fly at a partridge, yet neither kill it nor fly it to the mark; but to turn tail to tail; that is, having flown at it a bow shot or more, she gives over her game and takes a tree; then your spaniels must be called in to retrieve that way your hawk flew the partridge, and the Falconer must draw himself that way also, and carrying with him a quick partridge, let him cast it out to her, which will make her take it to be the same she flew at.

When you cast it out cry *ware hawk, ware*; make her seize it and feed upon it; and this will encourage her to fly out her flight another time.

If the next time you fly her (which ought to be the third day) she serves you so again, then you must serve her the same trick; but if she does so any more she is good for nothing, and you had best rid your hands on her as soon as you can.

To make a gofhawk fly quickly.

The *gofhawk* (especially *soars* and *niasses*) is very loving to, and fond of, man, and there should be flown with a little more ramage, or else frequently after two or three strokes with their wings, they will give over the flight and return to the keeper and therefore you ought to fly with them as soon as you can.

And yet there is an inconvenience that attends this direction, and that is by flying her too soon, you will pull down your hawk and make her poor, and that will cause fearfulness and cowardice.

To remedy which give your hawk some respite, and set her up again before you fly her.

There are some *gofhawks* (but very few) which will not fly when they are in good plight: in such case you must bate their flesh, and pinch them with scouring washed meat, and the like.

But the best way of flying such an one, is when he is lusty and high; and to add to her vivacity and courage, let her be set abroad in the morning an hour or two; when the weather

is

is not very cold ; for being so weathered, when she hath flown a partridge to the mark, she will not away until it be retrieved by the spaniels.

How to fly a goshawk to the river.

The *goshawk* also (but no tiercel) may be flown to the river, at mallard, duck, goose, hern, &c. for which make her to fist, as is prescribed in her making to the field, then carry her into the field without bells, and with a live duck which must be given to one in the company, who is to hide himself in some ditch or pit with the duck tied to a creance : that done draw near him with your hawk unhooded on your fist, and giving him some private notice to throw out the duck, cast off the hawk, if she take it at the source, let her be rewarded and fed with a reasonable gorge.

Then taking her on your fist, let her tire and plume upon the leg or wing of the duck, and repeat this the third day ; going with her into the field, exercise her on some plash or pool, going with her into some field, or find out some plash or pool where wild fowl lie, and taking the advantage of a rising bank ; being near the fowl, let some of the company raise them up, and your hawk being unhooded cast her off, and if she kill any of them at source, make to her quickly, and cross the fowl's wings, so that she may foot and plume it at her pleasure and reward her as before.

After this take her on your fist, and let her tire, and plume the leg or wing of the said fowl.

When your *goshawk* is thoroughly nouzled, and well in blood, you may fly her twice a day or oftener, rewarding her as above.

How to preserve a goshawk in the time of her flying, especially in hot weather.

Put a pint of red-rose water into a bottle, and having bruised a stick or two of green liquorish put it in, adding a little mace, and the quantity of a walnut of sugar-candy, through this liquor draw her meat two or three times a week, as you shall find occasion. This is good for preventing the *Pantas*, and several diseases to which hawks are subject to ; besides it gives a hawk a large breath and scours her gently.

To fly the WILD GOOSE, or CRANE, with the GOSHAWK.

Having manned the *goshawk*, brought her to the fist, and trained her with a goose in the field, then seek out where wild geese, cranes, or other large wild fowl lie; having found them afar off, alight and carry your hawk unhooded behind your horse, stalking towards them, till you have gotten pretty nigh them, holding down your hawk's covert under the horse's neck or body, yet so that she may see the fowl; then you must raise them, and casting off your hawk, if she kill, reward her. And thus she may kill four or five in a day. After the like manner you may make her to the crane, and may stalk to fowl which lie in ponds, or pits as before. Here take notice, that if you can fly at great, you may slight the lesser flights, which will make your hawk the bolder.

To mew a goshawk, and draw her out of the mew and make her flying.

Having flown with a *goshawk*, *tiercel*, *soar*, or *baggard*, till *March*, give her some good quarry in foot, and having seen her clean from lice, cut off the buttons of her jesses, and throw her into the mew, which room should be on the ground, and situated towards the north, if it can be.

Let the perchers therein be lined with canvas or cotton: for otherwise by hurting her foot, she may get the gout or pynn.

Let the mew have also a window towards the east, and another northward. There must be also a basin of water in the mew for bathing, which must be shifted every three days.

Let your hawk be fed with pigeons, or else with the hot flesh of weather mutton.

About the beginning of *October*, if you find your hawk fairly mewed, and hard penned, then give her chickens, lambs hearts, or calves hearts, for about twenty days together to scour her, and make her slice out the slimy substance and glut out of her pannel and enfeam her.

Having done this, some evening draw her out of the mew, and new furnish her with jesses, bells, bewets, and all other things needful for her.

Then keep her sealed two or three days, till she will endure the hood patiently; for mewed hawks are as impatient of the hood as those newly taken.

When you have won her to endure the hood, then you may unseal her in an evening by candle-light, and the next day

G O S

day shew her the fist and glove, making her to tire and plume morning and evening, giving her sometimes in the morning (when her gorge is empty) a little sugar-candy, which will promote her endewing in a very excellent manner.

When you perceive that your *goshawk* feeds eagerly, and you are satisfied she is enseamed, and that you may venture to fly her, then go with her into the field, and if she be empty, she will bate and fly of her own accord; if she kill, feed and reward her; but if she fly to the mark with a partridge, then you must retrieve her, and serve her as before directed.

General observations for a Falconer in keeping and reclaiming a Goshawk.

It often happens that a *goshawk*, or *tiercel*, who are good in their soorage, become worse after they are mewed; and the reason may be, because she was not cherished nor encouraged, to make her take delight in her soorage.

For in a manner, the greatest of a Falconer's skill consists in coying and kind usage of his hawk, so cherishing her that she may take delight in her flight.

At the first entering of his hawk, he ought always to have a train partridge in his bag, to serve her with upon occasion, in order to purchase her love; and he ought to observe all those circumstances that are requisite to keep his hawk always in good order.

In the first place, a Falconer ought to know, that all *goshawks* are naturally full of moist humours, especially in the head, and therefore he should ply them with tiring and pluming, morning and evening, for that will open them in the head, and make them cast water thereat.

Let the tiring of *goshawks* be rump of beef, a pinion or leg of a chicken, given by the fire, or in the warm sun; this not only opens her head, but keeps her from slothfulness, and is a good exercise.

Let her have every night castings of feathers or cotton, and in the morning observe whether it be wrought round or not, whether moist or dry, or of what colour the water is that drops out of her casting; by these means he may know in what condition his hawk is.

Regard is also to be had to her mewts, whether they are clean or not, and let her have remedies accordingly.

The season of the year is likewise to be considered, for in cold weather the hawk must be set in a warm place, where fire is made, and the perch must be lined with canvas or cotton, and set at such a distance from the wall, that the *hawk* may
not

G O U

not hurt her feathers when she bateth. If the weather be temperate, she may be set in the sun-shine for an hour or two in the morning.

Hens or poultry ought not to come near the place where *hawks* perch; and in the spring you must offer her water every week, or else she will soar away from you when she flies, and you will have her to look for.

If your *hawk* bathe herself spontaneously in cold weather, after her flight, go presently to the next house, and weather her with her back to the fire, and not her gorge, for that will make her sick; and dry your *hawk*, if you have carried her in the rain.

A good *Falconer* will always keep his *hawk* high and lusty, but yet so that she may be always in a condition to fly best.

A *hawk* must also be kept clean, and her feathers whole; and if a feather be broken or bruised, he must presently imp it, and for that purpose must be provided with imping needles, a *semond*, and other instruments always in readiness.

It will be properest to fly a *goshawk* to the field, and not to the covert, the first year; for so they will learn to hold, and not turn tail in the midst of their flight; and when they are mewed *hawks*, you may make them do what you will: and it is better to let her be a little ramage than over manned.

As for her feeding, that will be best on hot meats; and if you would teach her to kill great fowls, make her train thereof; and if you would have her continue great flights, never fly her at less, for that will take her off from them, and spoil her.

If you would inure her to fly with a dog to assist her, then feed the *hawk* with large fowl, and your dogs with flesh tied under their wings.

If you train the *hawk* with them, rewarding her upon the train, and your dog with her, this will make them acquainted together, and grow familiar.

Continue to do thus till your dog thoroughly knows his duty, and be sure to keep your dog tied up, for if you let him go loose it will spoil the best dog that is; and never give him a reward, but when he maketh in at such fowls to rescue the *hawk*.

Call your *goshawk* to nothing else but your fist, and frequently spirt good wine on your *goshawk's* fears.

And observe this, that in all distempers, sweet things are best to be administered in her medicines.

GOURDY LEGS, a distemper in horses, caused by pains and other fleshy sores.

The way to cure them, is first to shave away the hair upon and about the sore place, as close as may be, and then to anoint

G R A

it with linseed oil and *aqua vitæ*, shaken together till they are perfectly mixt; and renew the mixing of it as often as you have occasion to use it, because they will separate by standing, without being shaken; anoint the sore place with this every day till the sore be made whole.

GOUT [*in Hawks*], a distemper to which they are incident, especially such as are free mettled, and strong strikers.

This *gout* is a swelling, knotting or contracting the feet.

The cure, is to bleed her five or six drops on the thigh vein, above the knee, then anoint her feet with the juice of hollyhock; anoint her perch with tallow and the juice of the said herb mixt together.

If you are not expert at letting blood, instead of that make an ointment of *May* butter, that is fresh and sweet, with the like quantity of the oil of olives, and a little allum; chafe it in by a moderate fire, and do thus three or four days, morning and evening, keeping her warm and giving her rest.

GRAILING; } In angling for this fish, your hook

GRAYLING; } must be armed upon the shanks with a very narrow plate of lead, which should be slenderest at the bent of the hook, that the bait (which is to be a large grasshopper (the uppermost wing of which must be pulled off) may come over to it the more easily: at the point let there be a cad-bait in continual motion.

The *jag-tail*, which is a worm of a pale flesh colour, with a yellow tag on it's tail, is an excellent bait for the *grayling* in *March* and *April*: This worm is found in marley grounds and meadows in fair weather, but is not to be seen in cold weather, or after a shower of rain.

GRAPES, a word sometimes used to signify the arrests, or many tumours that happen in a horse's legs. See **ARRESTS**.

To **GRAPPLE**; a horse is said to grapple, either in one or both legs; the expression being peculiar to the hinder legs.

He grapples both legs when he lifts them both at once, and raises them with precipitation as if he were a curvetting.

He grapples one leg when he raises it precipitantly higher than the other, without bending the ham. Hence they say,

Your horse harps or grapples, so that he must have the stringhalt in his hough.

GRASS, to put a horse to grass, to turn him out to grass, to recover him.

To take a horse from grass to keep him at dry meat. See **DRY** and **GREEN**.

GRAVELLING, a misfortune that happens to a horse by travelling, by little gravel-stones getting between the hoof

G R E

and the shoe, which settles at the quick, and there fetters and frets.

The way to cure it, is to take off the shoe, and then to draw the place with a drawing iron till you come to the quick; pick out all the gravel, and squeeze out the matter and blood found therein, and afterwards wash it clean with copperas water, then pour upon it sheep's tallow and bay salt melted together, scalding hot, stop up the hole with hards, and set the shoe on again, and at two or three times dressing it will be whole; but do not travel or work him before he is quite well, or let his foot come to any wet.

GRAY-HOUND, } a hunting dog that deserves the
GRE-HOUND, } first place, by reason of his swiftness,
GREY-HOUND, } strength, and sagacity in pursuing
his game; for such is the nature of this dog, that he is well
scented to find out, speedy and quick of foot to follow, fierce
and strong to overcome, yet silent, coming upon his prey
unawares.

Some derive the name of this hound from *Gre*, which is an abbreviation of *Degree*, because among all dogs they are the most principal, having the chiefest place, and being surely and absolutely the best of the gentle kind of hounds.

The best sort of them has a long body, strong, and pretty large; a neat sharp head, sparkling eyes, a long mouth, and sharp teeth; little ears with thin gristles, a strait broad and strong breast, his fore legs strait and short, his hind legs long and strait, broad shoulders, round ribs, fleshy buttocks, but not fat, a long tail, and strong, and full of sinews.

Of this kind, those are always fittest to be chosen among the whelps that weigh lightest, for they will be sooner at the game, and so hang upon it, hindering it's swiftness, till the heavier and strong hounds come to offer their assistance; and therefore, besides what has been already said,

'Tis requisite for a greyhound to have large sides, and a broad midriff, so that he may take his breath in and out more easily: his belly should also be small, (which otherwise would obstruct the swiftness of his course) his legs long, and his hairs thin and soft: the Huntsman is to lead these hounds on his left hand, if he be on foot, and on the right if on horseback.

The best time to try and train them to their game, is at twelve months old, tho' some begin sooner with them, with the males at ten months, and the females at eight months old, which last are generally more swift than the dogs: they must also be kept in a slip while abroad, till they can see their course; neither should you run a young dog till the game has been on foot a
considerable

GRE

considerable time, lest being over greedy of the prey he strain his limbs too much.

The *greyhounds* are most in request with the *Germans*, who give them the name of *windspil*, alluding to their swiftness; but the *French* make most account of those that are bred in the mountains of *Dalmatia*, or in any other mountains, especially of *Turkey*, for such have hard feet, long ears, and a bristly or bushy tail.

As to the breeding of *greyhounds*, in this you must have respect to the country, which should be champain, plain, or high downs.

The best vallies are those of *Belvoir*, *White-horse*, and *Evelsholm*, or any other where there are no coverts; so that a hare may stand forth and endure a course of two or three miles. As for high downs and heaths, the best are about *Marlborough*, *Salisbury*, *Cirencester*, and *Lincoln*.

Tho' these places are very commodious for the breeding and training up of *greyhounds*, yet some are of opinion that the middle, or most part arable grounds, are the best; tho' others who dwell on downs or plains, to keep up the reputation of their own dogs, affirm, that they are more nimble and cunning than vale dogs are.

It is a received opinion, that a *greyhound* bitch will in common beat a *greyhound* dog, by reason that she excels him in nimbleness; but if it be considered that the dog is longer and stronger, that opinion will seem to be but a vulgar error.

Here you may take notice as to the breeding of *greyhounds*, that the best dog upon an indifferent bitch, will not get so good a whelp, as an indifferent dog upon the best bitch.

And observe this in general as to breeding; let the dogs and bitches, as near as you can, be of an equal age, not exceeding four years old; however, to breed with a young dog and an old bitch, may be the means of producing excellent whelps, the goodness of which you may know by their shapes, in the following manner.

In the breeding of *greyhounds*, in the first place,

The dieting of GREYHOUNDS, consists in these four things, food, exercise, airing, and kennelling.

The food of a *greyhound* is two-fold, general; that is, the maintaining of a dog in good bodily condition; and particularly, when a dog is dieted for a wager, or it may be for some distemper he is troubled with.

The general food of a *greyhound* ought to be chippings, crusts of bread, soft bones and gristles, the chippings scalded in beef, mutton, veal or venison broth; and when it is indifferent cool, then make your bread only float in good milk, and give it

G R E

your *greyhounds* morning and evening, and this will keep them in good state of body.

But if your dog be poor, sickly and weak, then take sheeps heads, wool and all, clean washed, and having broken them to pieces, put them into a pot; and when it boils, scum the pot, and put good store of oatmeal into it, and such herbs as pottage is usually made with; boil these till the flesh is very tender, and feed your dog with this morning and evening, and it will recover him.

If you design your *greyhound* for a wager, then give him his diet bread as follows.

Take half a peck of good wheat, and half a peck of the finest, driest oatmeal, grind them together, bould the meal, and having scattered in it an indifferent quantity of liquorice and anniseeds, well beaten together, knead it up with the whites of eggs, and bake it in small loaves, indifferent hard, then soak it in beef or other broths; and having walked him and aired him half an hour after sun-rise in the morning, and half an hour before sun-setting, give him some of it to eat.

The exercise of a Greyhound.

He ought to be coursed three times a week, rewarding him with blood, which will animate and encourage him to prosecute his game; but forget not to give the *hare* all the just and lawful advantage, so that she may stand long before the *greyhound*, that thereby he may shew his utmost strength and skill before he reap the benefit of his labour.

If he kill, do not suffer him to break the *hare*, but take her from him, and clean his chaps from the wool of the *hare*; give him the liver and lights, and then take him up in your leash, lead him home, and wash his feet with some butter and beer, and put him into the kennel, and half an hour afterwards feed him.

Upon the coursing days, give your hound a toast and butter or oil, in the morning, and nothing else, and then kennel him till he go to the course.

The kennelling *greyhounds* after this manner breeds in them lust, spirit, and nimbleness: it also prevents several dangerous casualties, and keeps the pores close, so as not to spend till time of necessity; therefore suffer not your hound to go out of the kennel, but at the hours of feeding, walking, coursing, or other necessary business.

GREASE [*with Hunters*], the fat of a boar, or hare; but the former has commonly the word *berry* added to it, and is termed *berry grease*.

GREASE,

G R O

GREASE MOLTEN, a distemper in a horse, when his fat is melted by over hard riding or labour, and may be known by his panting at the breast and girding-place, and heaving at the flank, which will be visible to be seen the night you bring him in, and the next morning.

For the cure, bleed him in the neck vein, to a good proportion, and give him dried bran; and if he empties himself, a restraining glister; and forbear giving him any hot drugs.

Take three pints of bran, three ounces of loaf sugar, finely powdered, an ounce of cordial powder, and four of hive honey, and give him to drink blood warm.

GREAT HARE [*with Hunters*], a hare in the third year of her age.

GREEN-FINCH, is a bird of a very mean song, yet kept by many for its cheapness and hardiness, and by most people to ring the bells; being a good bodied heavy bird.

They are plentiful in every country, and breed the filliest of any, commonly making their nests by the highway-side, where every body that finds them destroys them at first, till the hedges are pretty well covered with green leaves; but they usually sit very early in the spring, before the hedges have leaves upon them, and build with green moss that grows at the bottom of the hedges, quilting their nests very forrily on the inside; nay they are oftentimes so slight, that a strong wind shakes them to pieces, and drops both the young ones and the eggs.

However they hatch three times a year, and the young are very hardy to bring up: they may be fed with white bread and rape soaked, and are very apt to take the whistle, rather than any other bird's song; but they will never kill themselves with singing and whistling.

The *green-finch* is seldom subject to any disease, but to be too gross, there being none of the seed birds so like him for growing so excessive fat, if you give him hemp-seed; for then he is good for nothing but the spit; let him therefore have none but rape seed.

GREEN-HUE, [*in the forest Law*] signifies every thing that grows green within the forest: and is also called **VERT**, which see.

GRICE, a young wild boar.

GRIG, a fish, the smallest kind of eel.

To GROAN [*with Hunters*]; a buck is said to groan, or hoot, when he makes a noise at rutting-time.

GROOM, a man who looks after horses, and should demean himself after so gentle and kind a manner towards horses, as to engage them to love him; for a horse is reckoned one

G R O

of the most loving creatures to man of all other brutes, and in every respect the most obedient.

Therefore if he be dealt with mildly and gently his kindness will be reciprocal; but if the groom or keeper be harsh and cholerick; he will put the horse by his patience, and make him become rebellious and fall to biting and striking.

Therefore the groom should frequently dally, toy, and play with the horses under his care, talking to them and giving them good words, leading them out into the sun-shine, then run, and show him all the divertisement he can.

He must also duly curry comb and dress him: wipe away the dust, pick and clean him: feed, pamper, and cherish him; and constantly employ himself in doing something about him, as looking to his heels, taking up his feet, rubbing upon the soles, &c.

Nay, he ought to keep him so well dressed, that he may almost see his own face upon his coat; he must likewise keep his feet stopped and anointed daily, his heels free from scratches and other sorances, ever having a watchful eye over him, and over looking all his actions as well feeding as drinking; that so no inward infirmity may seize upon him; but that he may be able to discover it, and endeavour to compass the cure. The qualifications necessary in a groom, are obedience, fidelity, patience, diligence, &c.

First, he ought to love his horse in the next degree to his master, and endeavour by fair usage to gain a reciprocal love from him, and an exact obedience; which if he know how to pay his master, he will the better be able to teach it his horse: and both the one and the other are to be obtained by fair means rather than by passion and outrage. For those who are so irrational themselves, as not to be able to command their own passions, are not fit to undertake the reclaiming of an horse (who is by nature an irrational creature) from his.

He must then put in practice that patience, which he ought at all times to be master of, and by that, and fair means, he may attain his end: for no creature is more tractable than a horse, if he be used with kindness to win him.

The next thing requisite to a groom is neatness, as to keeping his stable clean swept and in order; saddles, housings cloths, stirrups, leathers and girths clean, and above all his horse clean dressed and rubbed.

Lastly, diligence is requisite in a daily discharge of his duty, and observing any the smallest operation, whether casual or accidental, either in his countenance as symptoms of sickness; or in his limbs and gate, as lameness; or in his appetite as forsaking

G R O

his meat ; and immediately upon any such discovery to seek out for remedy.

This is the substance of the duty of a groom in general.

We will suppose *Bartholomew-tide* to be now come, and the pride and strength of the grass to be now nipped by the severe frosts and cold dews which usually accompany this season, so that the nourishment thereof turns into raw crudities, and the coldness of the night (which is injurious to horses) abates as much flesh and lust, as he getteth in the day, therefore he is now to be taken up from grass, whilst his coat lies smooth and sleek.

The horse designed for Hunting, &c. being brought home, the groom must set him up for that night in some secure and spacious place, where he may evacuate his body, and so be brought to warmer keeping by degrees ; and the next day set him up in the stable.

It is indeed held a general rule amongst grooms, not to clothe or dress their horses till two or three days after their stabling ; but there seems no other reason but custom for this practice.

Some also give the horse wheat straw to take up his belly at his first housing ; but others utterly disapprove of it.

For the nature of a horse being hot and dry, if he feed on straw, which is so likewise, it would straiten his guts and cause an inflammation in his liver, and by that means distemper his blood, and besides it would make his body so coltish, that it would cause a retention of nature, and cause him to dung with great pain and difficulty, whereas full feeding would expel the excrements according to the true intention and inclination of nature. Therefore let moderate airing, warm clothing, good old hay, old corn, supply the place of wheat straw.

The first business of a groom, after he hath brought his horse into the stable is in the morning to water him, and to rub his body over with a warm wisp a little moistened, and then with a woollen cloth ; then to cleanse his sheath with his wet hand from all the dust it had contracted during his running, and to wash his yard either with white-wine or water.

Then he must trim him after the manner that other horses are trimmed, except the inside of his ears, which ought not to be meddled with for fear of making him catch cold.

In the next place he must carry him to the Farrier's, and there get him shod with a set of shoes, answerable to the shape of his feet, and not to pare his feet to make them fit his shoes.

Let his feet be well opened between the quarters, and the frush to prevent his being hoof bound, and let them be opened

G R O

strait not sideways; for by that means in two or three shoeings, his heels (which are the strength of his feet) will be cut quite away, pare his foot as hollow as you can, and then the shoe will not press upon it.

The shoe ought to come near the heel, but not to be set so close as to bruise it; nor yet so open as to catch in his shoes, if he happen to over reach at any time, and so hazard the pulling them off, the breaking of the hoof, or bruising of his heel.

The webs of his shoes ought to be neither too broad nor too narrow; but of a middling size, about the breadth of an inch, with stopped spunges, and even with his foot; for tho' it would be for the advantage of a travelling horse's heel, to have a shoe set a little wider than the hoof on both sides, that the shoe may bear his weight, and not his foot touch the ground, yet the Hunter being often forced to gallop on rotten spongy earth, if he have them larger it would hazard his laming, and pulling off his shoes, as has been before observed.

There is an old proverb, *before behind, and behind before*; that is, in the fore feet the veins lie behind, and in the hinder feet they lie before; therefore the Farrier ought to take care that he do not prick him; but leave a space at the heel of the fore feet, and a space between the nails at the toe.

Having got his shoes set on as above directed, a great deal of his hoof will be left to be cut off at his toe.

That being cut off and his feet smoothed with a file, he will stand so firm, and his feet will be so strong, that he will tread as boldly on stones as on carpet ground.

The horse being shod, and it being time to water him, let him stand in the water, which will (in the opinion of some) close up the holes, which the driving of the nails has made.

Afterwards have him gently home, tie him up to the rack, rub him all over, body and legs, with dry straw, then stop up his feet with cow-dung, give him a quartern of clean sifted old oats, and a quantity of hay, sufficient to serve him all night, and leave him till the next morning.

To GROPE, or Tickle, is a method of fishing, by putting one's hand into water-holes where fish lie, and tickling them about the gills; by which means they will become so quiet, that a man may take them in his hand and throw them upon land; or if they are large fish, he may thrust his fingers into their gills and bring them out.

GROUND ANGLING, is a way of fishing under water without a float, only with a plumb of lead, or a bullet, which is better, because it will roll on the ground.

This

G U I

This method of fishing is very expedient in cold weather, when the fish swim very low.

The bullet is to be placed about nine inches from the baited hook; the top must be very gentle, that the fish may the more easily run away with the bait, and not be scared with the stiffness of the rod: you must not strike as soon as you see the fish bite, but slack your line a little, that he may the better swallow the bait and hook.

As for the tackle, it ought to be fine and slender; strong and big lines only serve to fright the fish.

The morning and evening are the chiefest seasons for the ground line for trout; but if the day prove cloudy, or the water muddy, you may fish at ground all the day long.

GROUND PLUMBING, is the finding out the depth of the water in fishing; to do which you should use a musket bullet, with a hole made in the middle of it, or any other sort of plummet, which must be tied to a strong twist, and hung on the hook, which will effect the business.

GROUPADE [*in Horsemanship*], a lofty kind of manage, and higher than the ordinary curvets.

GROWSE, a kind of fowl common in the north of England, and elsewhere.

GRUBBING a Cock [*with Cock-fighters*], a term used for the cutting off the feathers under his wings; but this is not allowable by the *cock-pit* law; neither is it allowable to cut off his feathers in any handling place.

GUDGEON; this fish, tho' small, is of so pleasant a taste, that it is very little inferior to a smelt.

They spawn three or four times in the summer season, and their feeding is much like the barbel's, in streams and on gravel, slighting all manner of flies; but they are easily taken with a small red worm, fishing near the ground; and being a leather mouthed fish, will not easily be off the hook when struck.

The gudgeon may be fished for with float, the hook being on the ground; or by hand, with a running line on the ground, without cork or float.

But altho' the small red worm before-mentioned is the best bait for this fish, yet *wasps*, *gentles*, and *cad-baits* will do very well: you may also fish for gudgeons with two or three hooks at once, and find very pleasant sport, where they rise any thing large: when you angle for them, stir up the sand or gravel with a long pole; this will make them gather to that place, and bite faster, and with more eagerness.

GUINIAD; } this fish is excellent food. This fish is

GUINARD; } not found any where but in a large water
called *Pemble-mere*: but that which is most remarkable is this,
that

G R Y

that the river which runs by *Chester*, hath it's head or fountain in *Merionethshire*, and it's course runs through this *Pemle-mere*, which abounds as much with *guiniads* as the river *Dee* does with salmon, of each both affording great plenty; and yet it was never known that any *salmon* was ever caught in the *mere*, or ever any *guiniads* taken in the river.

GURGIPTING [*in Falconry*], a term used of a hawk when she is stiff, and choaked up.

GYRFALCON, a bird of prey. See **GERFALCON**.

GYRLE, a roe-buck, so called the first year.

H A G

HAGGARD FALCON, is a hawk much coveted by most persons now-a-days, for their delight and pleasure. Some of old time have preferred the *falcon gentle* for mettle and courage, it being of a loving disposition, strong and daring, and hardy in all seasons; and by mistake have undervalued the *haggard falcon*, condemning her as being a bird too tender to endure rough and boisterous weather.

But experience has confuted this opinion, she being known to be able to endure as much extremity of weather, or rather more than the *tiercel-gentle*, or most other *hawks* whatsoever.

She is called *haggard* from the *French*, which signifies wild and fierce; and in *Falconry*, a *haggard hawk* denotes one that is wild and fierce, and that has for some time preyed for her self before she was taken.

Some call the *haggard*, the *peregrine falcon*, because she is brought from a foreign country; and for that reason others call them travellers and passengers; but if there be no other reason for the name but this, all other *hawks* coming from foreign places might as well be called *peregrine*.

But it may with better reason be so called upon a threefold account;

1. Because their eyrie was never found in any country by any man, as far as is at present found in authors.

2. Because

H A G

2. Because these falcons range and wander more than other falcons do, still seeking strange and foreign coasts ; so that wherever they come, they may justly be called *peregrine*, or foreigners.

3. And lastly, because she never takes up her habitation long in a place.

You may know a *haggard falcon* in her flight from another, by the stirring of her wings ; for she uses no thick stroke, but getteth up to her *mountee* leisurely, without any great making out ; besides, she may be known by her extraordinary large sails.

The differences between the *haggard* and the *falcon gentle*, are these ;

1. The *haggard* is larger, being longer armed, with longer beak and talons, having a higher neck, with a long seasoned head.

2. Her beam feathers in flight, are longer than those of the *falcon gentle*, her train somewhat larger : again, the *haggard* hath a flat thigh, and the *falcon gentle's* is round.

3. The *haggard* will lie longer on the wing.

4. The *haggard* at long flight exceeds the *falcon gentle* ; which last flies with more speed from the fist than the other : for maintenance of flight and goodness of wing, the *haggard* exceeds all other *hawks*.

5. And lastly, the *haggard* is more deliberate and advised in her stooping than the *falcon gentle*, who is more hot and hasty in her actions, and missing the fowl, is apt presently to fly on head at the check.

A *haggard falcon* is in form like other falcons, but as to mould they are of three sorts, large, middle sized, and small ; some long shaped, some short trussed, some larger and some less.

The goodness of her shape consists in having her head plumed dark or black, flat on the top, with a white wreath encompassing the same, a large blue bending beak, wide nares, a great back, full eye, high stately neck, large breasts, broad shoulders, and large turtle coloured feathers, with long veins and sails ; but slender shaped, a long train, high thighs, and white on the pendant feathers ; a large wide foot, with slender stretchers and talons, tending somewhat to an azure colour.

The *haggard falcon*, when unreclaimed and wild, takes a large liberty to her self for her abode, either by land or sea, and is so absolute in her power, that wherever she comes, all flying fowl stoop under her subjection.

Nay even the *tiercel gentle*, altho' her natural companion, dares not sit by her, or come near her residence in *cawking* time, and

H A G

and that is in the spring: and then for the sake of procreation, she will admit him to come near her with submission, which he manifests by bowing his head at his approach, calling and cowering with his wings, as the young ones do, in testimony of how unwilling he is of incurring her displeasure.

When she is very young, (and so will a passenger soar-falcon) she will prey upon birds that are too big for her to encounter withal, and this she does for want of understanding; and she continues this rashness and folly, till experience and a sound beating have reclaimed her.

The *baggard falcon* will prey on any other fowl she can meet with advantageously, especially tame pigeons, or such as belong to a dove house, for these they frequently meet withal.

This hawk is an incessant pains-taker, no weather does discourage her from her game, but only such wherein no fowl can stir abroad to seek for sustenance; otherwise she is continually working either in the air or elsewhere, unless she stop and miss of her prey, then she will rest a little to take breath, or renew her courage.

Nay altho' she has laboured in boisterous and tempestuous weather for three or four days together, she will be so far from being the worse for it, that she will appear much better and more lively.

And therefore it is a vulgar error for persons to forbear flying their hawks till after three or four days rest; and some a week or fortnight.

As for the old staunch hawks, it may be allowed that a little rest will do them no harm; but as for young ones, give them but little rest till they are blooded, and if you can fly them every day, you will find it so much the better.

When an unreclaimed falcon hath seized her prey, and broke it's neck, (which in term of art is called her juke) she then falls on the crop, and feeds first on what is there contained, and after that on other parts, and having filled her gorge, will fly to some solitary place that is near water, or other place she is best pleased with, and there she will sit all day; and upon the coming on of night, she will take wing and fly to some convenient place that she has chosen and fixt upon before, to perch in till morning.

The manner of reclaiming a Haggard Falcon, and entering her to the lure.

Having either taken or purchased one of them, set her down, and let her rest quietly the first night in a rustler hood.

The

H A G

The next day take her up easily on your fist, and carry her up and down that whole day, using a feather to stroke her withal instead of your hand.

When you find her not impatient of being touched, take her hood off speedily, and put it on again as speedily, observing thus to do till she is willing to feed; then frequently offer her food; but let her have but a little at a time, never pulling her hood off or on, but endeavour to gain her love by a bit or two, using your voice unto her while you are taking off her hood, and all the while she is feeding, and no longer; and by that means after she is reclaimed, she may know by your voice she shall be fed.

This being done, teach her to come from the perch to your fist; in doing thus, let her stand upon a perch about breast high, if lower kneel, for this low posture will affright less than the other; after this unstrike her hood and lure her, using your voice; and take great care that you do not affright nor distaste her, and so cause her to bate from you.

But you must, before you unstrike her hood, encourage her with a bit or two, which will make her the more eager to come to you, for 'tis her stomach that rules her, and is the bridle that keeps her in subjection, pricking her forward to perform her duty; wherefore if you keep not her appetite sharp and truly edged, instead of obedience and submission, you will find disobedience.

When you find she will willingly feed from, and come to your hand, you may then let her sit bare faced, now and then diverting her by staring about, by giving her a bit or two to direct her face towards you; and after this you may set her to the lure.

When you find she will come readily to the lure, garnished with meat in the creance, fearing least she scorn this way of luring, fix a live pigeon to the lure, and lure her with that.

When she has killed the pigeon and eaten the head, take her up gently with a bit of meat, and put on her hood; then unstrike her hood and lure her to the pelt, doing thus two or three times, and no more; if you do it oftner, she will become in time very loth to part with the pelt, and by this means you will provoke her to carry.

This is a great fault, and more incident to, and worse in field hawks than such as are fitted for the river.

But be sure not to lure her too far till her stomach be perfect, for else probably she may discover something which she esteems better, and so be lost for that time, which will be very detrimental to her, altho' you should happen to recover and reclaim her afterwards.

Here

H A G

Here you ought to observe, that in the time of her making, (while she is on the ground either pluming or feeding) do not forget to walk her round, using your voice, and giving her many bits with your hand; and continue to do thus till you have won her to a more than ordinary familiarity.

But above all take notice of this, spring her some living doves between the man and the lure, and let them be given in a long creance, that she may kill them near you, in such a manner that she may trufs them over your head; by this means she will not be afraid when you come to her from afar off, the neglect of which will make her timorous, and thence will proceed her dragging and carrying from you, nay, sometimes she will leave her prey and totally forsake you.

There are some hawks which will not be taken up without striking or rapping in the creance, which must be infallibly the loss of such a hawk, without such a device.

This is not only a great fault in the *hawk*, but also argues great negligence in the *Falconer*, in suffering, and not remedying that ill property in her first making.

How to order a Haggard Falcon in the luring, with the causes and remedies of carrying, and other ill qualities.

Having thus far acquainted your hawk with the lure, take her out some convenient evening, and be no farther from her than she can see and hear you; then hold her in your lure and suffer her to fly about you, holding her as near you as you can with your voice and lure, teaching her to do her business and work it on your head, and then cast up a live dove: tho' indeed some do not approve of this, because, they say, the lightness of the dove inclines the hawk to that ill quality of carrying; but others impute that fault rather to the ignorance, or negligence and harshness of the *Falconer*, who hath been either unskillful, remiss, or hath not used that gentleness which is requisite in reclaiming a hawk in her first making; so that instead of gaining her love by fair allurements, he hath turned it into hatred, abhorrency, and disdainful coyness.

Another cause of this *dragging* or *carrying*, proceeds from the keeper's ill or slender rewarding the hawk in his luring her, in giving her the pelt of a pigeon, or some other dead thing which affords her no delight.

It is the pleasure that she takes in the reward that occasions her coming to you, and so if she chance to find her expectation frustrated in her usual satisfaction, she will ever after shun you; and tho' you should throw her a live pigeon, she may seize it, or keep close to it, or remove it as you approach, for fear you should

H A G

should deprive her of it: wherefore you should take a special care not to disoblige her in her luring.

There are several other faults that are to be rectified in a *haggard falcon*, *falcon gentle*, or *sight falcons*, (which are naturally all of one kind, yet differ much in quality and condition) which are to be left to the judgment and industry of the ingenious and sedulous Falconer. The first of these is,

That tho' the hawk has been well lured, and all the content and satisfaction imaginable has been given her, yet she will not tarry with you, but take her flight and forsake you.

This fault, Mr *Turberville* and Mr *Latham* say they have known to be remedied; but perhaps the trouble may be so great, and the satisfaction so small and uncertain, that it is hardly worth while to set down the methods commonly made use of in the cure of this ill quality.

But there is another fault, which may at first be easily prevented; and that is, an aspiring quality and working humour, that tho' the bird did never shew any dislike to the keeper, or discontent, yet by observation she hath been found conceited, and would not endure the society of another hawk; and having been well blooded on fowl, she would not be kept down near her keeper.

To remedy this, give the *haggard falcon* no scope during the time of making, suffer her not to fly high, but let her be held down and near you.

And if you should let this hawk in to another hawk, and find her to fall to her work without any regard or notice taken of the other hawk, you ought immediately to suspect her, and let her see fowl in due time, lest when she comes to her due place she go away, for she will prove impatient; wherefore the shorter work you make her, the greater delight you give her, and so consequently you engage her love continually towards you.

Having taught your hawk to sit bare-faced in an evening among company, undisturbed, and that she knows your voice, and will come to the lure, then give her every night stones, till you find her stomach good; after that proffer her *casting*, but let her not receive it unless she likes it well, otherwise she is apt to take a dislike to it, and will never after receive it willingly.

These stones prepare the way for casting, stirring, and dissolving whatever is offensive within, and fitting it to be carried downwards in your mutes, or upwards in her castings.

The time for giving these stones, is, when she hath put away her supper from above; then give her half a dozen above the hand, if you have so much skill, if not, otherwise as you are able.

Do

H A G

Do this often, till such time as you shall give her such thing, of which she shall take plumage in her living or training,

A flight for a HAGGARD.

When you intend a flight for a haggard, for the first, second and third time, make choice of such a place where there are no crows, rooks, or the like, to take away all occasion of her raking out after such check.

Let her not fly out too far on head at the first; but run after her, and cry *why lo, why lo*, to make her turn head.

When she is come in take her down with the lure, to which a live pullet must be fastened, and let her tire, feed, and plume, sometimes a haggard out of pride, and a gadding humour will rangle out from her keeper: then clog her with great luring bells, and make her a train or two with a duck seeled, to teach her to hold in, and know her keeper: take her down often with the dry lure and reward her bountifully, and let her be ever well in blood, or you may whoop for your hawk to no purpose.

To make a HAGGARD or SOAR FALCON kill her game at the first sight.

If your Falcon be well lured, flies a good gate and stoops well, then cast off a well quarried hawk, and let her stoop a fowl at brook on plash, and watch her till she put it to the plunge: then take down your make hawk, reward her, hood her, and set her; so you may make use of her if need require.

Then take your unentered hawk, and going up the wind half a bow shot, unloose her hood, and softly whistle her off your fist, until she have rouzed or mewted, then let her fly with her head into the wind, having first given notice or warning to the company to be in readiness, against the hawk be in a good gate, and to show water and to lay out the fowl.

When she is at a good pitch and covering the fowl, then give notice that all the company may make in at once to the brook upon the fowl to land her, if the Falcon strike, stoop or trufs her game, run in to help her, and crossing the fowls wing, let her take her pleasure thereon.

If she does not kill the fowl at her first stooping, give her respite to recover her gate, when she hath got it and her head in, then lay out the fowl as aforesaid, until you land it at last; not forgetting to help her as soon as she hath seized it; giving her also her due reward.

HAIR

H A I R

HAIR, in speaking of horses the *French* use the word *poil* (*i. e.* hair) to signify their colour: and sometimes it is used to signify that part of the flank that receives the prick of the spur.

Pale hair is those parts of the skin that approach more to white than the rest, being not of so high a tinge.

Staring hair (or planted coat) is said of a horse whose hair bristles up, or rises upright; which disorder is owing to his being ill curried, not well covered, or too coldly housed.

HAIR of an horse, in order to make the hair of an horse smooth, sleek, and soft he must be kept warm at heart, for the least inward cold will cause the hair to stare; also sweat him often, for that will loosen and raise the dust and filth that renders his coat foul; and when he is in the height of a sweat, scrape of all the white foam, sweat, and filth, that is raised up, with an old sword blade, and that will lay his coat even and smooth, and also when he is blooded, if you rub him all over with his own blood, and so continue two or three days, and curry and dress him well, it will make his coat shine as polished varnish.

Hair falling, or shedding from the mane or tail of a horse is caused either by some heat taken, that has engendred a dry mange therein; or it proceeds from some surfeit, which causes the evil humours to resort to those parts.

To cure this anoint the horse's mane and crest with black soap; make a strong lee of ash ashes, and wash it all over with it.

But if a canker should grow on a horse's tail, which will eat away both flesh and bone; then put some oil of vitriol to it, and it will consume it: and if you find the vitriol corrodes too much, you need only to wet it with cold water and it will put a stop to it.

If you have a mind to take away HAIR from any part of a horse's body.

Rub it with the gum that grows on the body of ivy or the juice of fumitory that grows among barley, or boil half a pound of lime in a quart of water, till a fourth part is consum'd, to which add an ounce of orpiment, and lay a plaister on any part of the horse, and it will do the business in a few hours.

HALBERT is a small piece of iron one inch broad, and three or four inches long, soldered to the toe of a horse's shoe, which jets out before, to hinder a lame horse from resting or treading upon his toe.

H A L

These halbert shoes do of necessity constrain a lame horse, when he goes at a moderate pace, to tread or rest on his heel which lengthens, and draws out the back, sinew, that was before in some measure shrunk.

HALTER for a horse, is a head stall of *Hungary* leather, mounted with one, and sometimes two straps, with a second throat band, if the horse is apt to unhalter himself.

HALTER CAST is an excoriation of the pastern, occasioned by the halter being entangled about the foot; upon the horse's endeavouring to rub his neck with his hinder feet.

Unhalter; a horse is said to unhalter himself that turns off the halter.

If your horse is apt to unhalter himself, you must get him a halter with a throat-band.

Strap or string of a halter (*longe*), is a cord or long strap of leather made fast to the head-stall, and to the manger, to tie the horse.

Do not bridle your horse till you see if he is halter cast. See TRICK.

HALTER CAST is thus, when a horse endeavours to scrub the itching part of his body, near the head or neck, one of his hinder feet entangles in the halter, which by the violent struggling of the horse to disengage himself, he sometimes receives very dangerous hurts in the hollow of his pastern.

For the cure of this, take linseed oil and brandy, of each an equal quantity; shake them together in a glass till they be well mixt, and anoint the sores, morning and evening, having first clipt away the hair; but take care to keep the foot very clean.

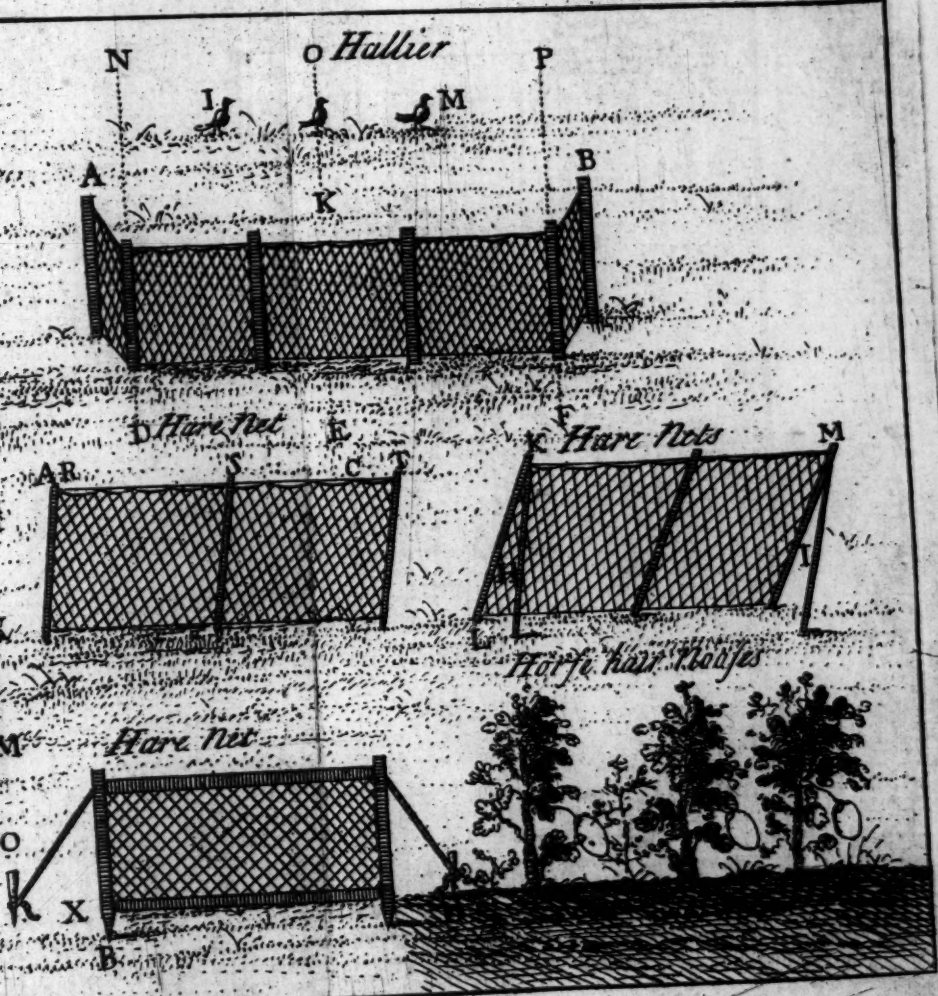
2. Another easy remedy is, take oil and wine, of each an equal quantity; boil them together, till the wine be evaporated; and apply the remainder of the oil, once a day to the part, which will be quickly healed.

HALTING [*in a horse*] happens sometimes before, and sometimes behind; if it be before, the ailment must of necessity be in the *shoulder, knee, flank, pastern, or foot*.

If it be in the shoulder, it must be towards the withers, or in the pitch of the shoulder, and may be known in that he will a little draw his leg after him, and not use it so nimbly as the other.

If he cast it more outward than the other, it is a sign of lameness, and that the grief lies in the shoulder; then take him in your hand and turn him short, on either hand, and you will find him to complain of that shoulder he is lame of, and he will either favour that leg or trip in the turning: also lameness

[illegible]



H A N

lameness may be seen by him while standing in the stable; where he will hold the lame leg out more than the other, and if when you are upon his back, he complains more than otherwise he does, the grief certainly lies in the withers; so that griping him hard you will perceive him to shrink, and perhaps offer to bite.

If he treads thick and short before, then the grief is upon the pitch of the shoulder, close to the breast, which may be discovered by setting the thumb, and pressing it hard against the place, and thrusting him with it (if you would have him go back) upon which he will shrink and put back, his leg, foot and body: if the grief be in the elbow, it may be known by pinching him, with the fore fingers and thumb, and then he will hold up his leg and offer to bite.

But if the grief be in the knee, it may be discovered by the horse's stiff going: for he will not bend it so nimbly as he does the other.

If it be in the flank or shin bone, the same may be seen or felt, it being a *back sinew*, *splenter*, *strain*, or the like.

If it be in the bending of the knee, it is a *malander*, which is also easily discovered.

Farther, when the pastern, or joint, is affected, it may be known by his not bending it so well as the other: and if you put your hand upon the place, you will find it very hot.

If it be in the foot it must be either in the coronet or sole; if in the coronet, probably it come by some strain or wrench.

If in the hoof by some over-reach, or distemper in or about the frush.

If in the sole from some prick, accloy, nail, &c.

HAM } of a horse is the ply or bending of the hind legs,
HOUGH } and likewise comprehends the point behind, and opposite to the ply, called the hock.

The hams of a horse should be large, full, and not much bended; as also discharged of flesh, nervous, supple, and dry, otherwise they will be subject to many imperfections, as the *capelet*, *curb*, *jardon*, *selander*, *spavin*, *varisse*, *veffignon*, &c.

HAMBLING } of dogs [in the forest law] is the same as
HAMELINGS } expediting or lawing; properly the *ham-stringing*, or cutting of dogs in the ham.

HAND is a measure of a fist clinched, by which we compute the height of a horse: the *French* call it *paume* and had this expression and measure first imparted to them from *Liege*.

A horse of war should be sixteen hands high.

Hand: spear hand, or sword hand is the horse-man's right hand.

H A N

Bridle-hand is the left-hand of the horseman. There are several expressions which relate to the bridle-hand, because that gives motion to the bitt-mouth, and serves to guide the horse much more than the other helps.

A horseman ought to hold his bridle-hand two or three fingers above the pommel of the saddle.

This horseman has no hand; that is, he does not make use of the bridle but unseasonably, and does not know how to give the aids or helps of the hand with due nicety.

To keep a horse upon the hand, is to feel him in the stay upon the hand, and to be prepared to avoid any surprisal or disappointment from the horse.

A horse is said to be, or rest, upon the hand, that never refuses, but always obeys and answers the effects of the hand, and knows the hand.

To make a horse right upon the hand, and free in the stay, he might be taught to know the hand by degrees and gentle methods; the horseman must turn him, or change hands, stop him, and manage with dexterity the *appui*, or pressure of his mouth, so as to make him suffer cheerfully and freely the effect of the bitt-mouth, without resisting, or resting heavy upon the hand.

The short, or hand-gallop, teaches horses to be right upon the hand.

A light hand. A good horseman ought to have a light hand; that is, he ought only to feel the horse upon his hand, in order to resist him when he attempts to slip from it; he ought, instead of cleaving to the bridle, lower it as soon as he has made his resistance.

If a horse, through an overbearing eagerness to go forward, presses too much upon the hand, you ought to slack your hand at certain times, and keep a hard hand at other times, and so disappoint the horse of pressing continually upon the bitt.

Now this facility or liberty in the horseman of slacking and stiffening the hand, is what we call a good hand.

To slack, or ease the hand, is to slacken the bridle.

To hold up or sustain the hand, is to pull the bridle in.

To guide a horse by the hand, is to turn or change hands upon one tread.

A horse is said to force the hand when he does not fear the bridle, but runs away in spite of the horseman.

To make a horse part from the hand, or suffer him to slip from the hand, is to put on at full speed.

To make a horse part right from the hand, he should not put himself upon his back or reins, but bring down his hips.

H A R

All hands. A horse that turns upon all hands upon a walk, trot, or gallop.

To work a horse upon the hand, is to manage him by the effect of the bridle, without interposing any other helps excepting those of the calves of the legs, upon occasion.

Fore-hand, and *hind-hand*, of a horse, is an expression distinguishing the parts of a horse, as divided into the fore and hind parts by the situation of a horseman's hand.

The parts of the fore-hand, are the head and neck, and the fore-quarters.

Those of the hind-hand include all the other parts of his body.

HAND-HIGH, is a term used in horsemanship, and peculiar to the *English* Nation, who measure the height or tallness of a horse by hands, beginning with the heel, and measuring upwards to the highest hair upon the withers. A hand is four inches.

HANDLING, [*with Cock-fighters*] a term that signifies the measuring the girth of them, by griping one's hand and fingers about the cock's body.

HAQUENEE, an obsolete *French* word for an ambling horse.

To **HARBOUR**, [*hunting-term*] a hart is said to *harbour* when he goes to rest; and to *unharbour* a deer, is to dislodge him.

HARD Horse, is one that is insensible of whip or spur.

HARE, is a beast of venery, or the forest, peculiarly so termed in the second year of her age.

There are four sorts of *hares*; some live in the mountains, some in the fields, some in marshes, some every where, without any certain place of abode. The *mountain hares* are the swiftest, the *field hares* are not so nimble, and those of the *marshes* are the slowest; but the wandering *hares* are most dangerous to follow, for they are so cunning in the ways and mazes of the fields, running up the hills and rocks, because by custom they know a nearer way; with other tricks, to the confusion of the dogs, and discouragement of the Hunters.

It will not be improper to give a description of the parts of a hare, since it is admirable to behold how every limb and member of this beast is composed for celerity.

In the first place the head is round, nimble, short, yet of convenient length, and apt to turn every way.

The ears are long and lofty, like those of an ass; for nature hath so provided, that every fearful and unarmed creature should have long and large ears, that by hearing it might prevent it's

H A R

enemies, and save it self by flight: the lips continually move, while they are asleep as well as awake; and from the slit they have in the middle of their nose comes the name of *bare-lips*, found in some men.

The neck of a hare is long, small, round, soft, and flexible; the shoulder-bone strait and broad, for her more easy turning; her legs before soft, and stand broader behind than before, and the hinder legs longer than the fore legs: the breast is not narrow, but fitted to take more breath than any other beast of that bigness: It has a nimble back and a fleshy belly, tender loins, hollow sides, fat buttocks filled up, and strong and nervous knees. Their eyes are brown, and they are subtil, but not bold; seldom looking forward, because they go by leaps: their eye-lids coming from their brows, are too short to cover their eyes, so that when they sleep they open them.

They have certain little bladders in their belly, filled with matter, out of which both sexes suck a certain humour and anoint their bodies all over with, by which they are defended against rain.

Tho' their sight is dim, yet they have an indefatigable faculty of seeing; so that the continuance of it, tho' but in a mean degree, makes amends for the want of the excellency of it in them.

They feed abroad, because they would conceal their forms, and never drink, but content themselves with dew, which makes them frequently grow rotten.

As it is said before, every limb of a hare is composed for swiftness, and therefore she never walks or treads, but jumps; her ears lead her the way in the chace, for with one of them she hearkeneth to the cry of the dogs, and the other she stretches forth like a sail, to help forward her course; always stretching her hinder beyond her former, and yet not hindering them at all; and in paths and high-ways she runs more speedily.

The hares of the mountains often exercise themselves in the vallies and plains, and through practice grow acquainted with the nearest ways to their forms, or constant places of abode; so that when at any time they are hunted in the fields, such is their subtil dodging, that they will dally with the Huntsman till they seem to be almost taken, and then on a sudden take the nearest way to the mountains, and so take sanctuary in the inaccessible places, to which neither dogs nor horses can or dare ascend.

H A R

Hares which frequent bushes and brakes are not able to endure labour, nor are very swift, because of the pain in their feet, growing fat by means of idleness, and not using themselves to running.

The *field hare* being leaner of body, and oftner chased, is more difficultly taken, by reason of her singular agility; for when she begins her course, she bounds up from the ground as if she flew, afterwards passes through brambles, over thick bushes and hedges, with all expedition; and if she cometh into deep grass or corn, she easily delivers herself and slides through it, always holding up one ear, and bending it at pleasure, to be the moderator of her chace.

Neither is she so improvident and prodigal of her strength, as to spend it all in one course, but she has regard to the force of her pursuer, who if he be slow and sluggish, she is not profuse of her strength, nor uses her utmost swiftness, but only advances gently before the dogs, yet safely from their clutches, reserving her greatest strength for the time of her greatest necessity, knowing she can out-run the dogs at her pleasure, and therefore will not strain herself more than she is urged.

But if she be pursued by a dog that is swifter than the rest, then she puts on with all the force she can, and having once left the Hunters and dogs a great way behind her, she makes to some little hill, or rising ground, where she raises herself upon her hinder legs, that thereby she may observe how far off, or how near her pursuers are.

The younger hares, by reason of their weak limbs, tread heavier on the earth than the older, and therefore leave the greater scent behind them.

At a year old they run very swiftly, and their scent is stronger in the woods than in the plain fields; and if they lie down on the earth (as they love to do) in red fallow grounds, they are easily descried.

Their footsteps in winter are more apparent than in summer, because as the nights are longer, they travel farther; neither do they scent in winter mornings so soon as it is day, till the frost is a little thawed; but especially their footsteps are uncertain at the full of the moon, for then they leap and play together, scattering, or putting out their scent or favour; and in the spring-time also, when they do engender, they confound one another's footsteps by multitudes.

Hares and rabbits are mischievous to nurseries and newly planted orchards, by peeling off the bark of the plants; for the prevention of which some bind ropes about the trees to a sufficient height; some daub them with tar, which being of it self hurtful to young plants, the mischief is prevented by mixing with it

H A R

any kind of greafe, and boiling it over a fire, fo as both may incorporate; then with a brush or little broom, daub over the ftem of the tree as high as a rabbit or hare can reach; do this in *November*, and it will fecure the trees for that whole year, it being the winter-time only in which they feed upon the bark.

Alfo fome thin ftuff out of a houfe of office, or the thick tempered with water, has been often applied with good fuccefs; or the white wafh made ufe of by Plaifterers for whitening houfes, done once a year over the trees with a brush, will preferve them from hares, deer, and other animals.

As for fuch hares as are bred in warrens, the warreners have a crafty device to fatten them, which has been found by experience to be effectual; and that is, by putting wax into their ears to make them deaf, and then turning them into the place where they are to feed, where, being freed from the fear of hounds, and for want of hearing, they grow fat before others of their kind.

H A R E - H U N T I N G.

It is generally believed, that a hare naturally knows the change of weather from one twenty-four hours to another.

When fhe goes to her form, fhe will fuffer the dew to touch her as little as fhe can, but takes the high-ways and beaten paths: again, when fhe riles out of her form, if fhe couches her ears and fcut, and runs not very faft at firft, it is an infallible fign that fhe is old and crafty.

They go to buck commonly in *January*, *February*, and *March*, and fometimes all the warm months; fometimes seeking the buck at feven or eight miles diftant from the place they ufually fit at, following the high-ways, &c.

To diftinguifh a male hare from the female, you may know him as you hunt him to his form, by his beating the hard high-ways: he alfo feeds farther out in the plains, and makes his doublings and croffings much wider, and of greater compafs, than the female doth; whereas the female will keep clofe by fome covert fide, turning and winding in the bufhes like a coney; and if fhe go to relief in the corn-fields, fhe feldom croffes over the furrow, but follows them along, ftaying upon the thickeft tufts of corn to feed.

You may likewise know a buck at his rifing out of his form, by his hinder parts, which are more upon the whitifh, and his foulders, before he riles, will be redder than the doe's, having fome loofe long hairs growing on them.

Again,

H A R

Again, his head is shorter and better trussed, his hairs about his lips longer, and his ears shorter and more grey: the hairs upon the female's chine are of a blackish grey.

And besides, when hounds hunt a female hare, she will use more crossing and doubling, seldom making out end-ways before the hounds; whereas the male acts contrarily, for having once made a turn or two about his form, then farewell hounds, for he will frequently lead them five or six miles before ever he will turn his head.

When you see that your hounds have found where a hare hath passed to relief upon the high-way-side, and hath much doubled and crossed upon dry places, and never much broken out nor relieved in the corn, it is a sign she is but lately come thither; and then commonly she will stay upon some high place to look about her, and to chuse out a place to form in, which she will be loth to part with.

The craft and subtilty of a Hare.

As of all chaces the *hare* makes the greatest pastime and pleasure, so it is a great delight and satisfaction to see the craft of this small animal for her self-preservation.

And the better to understand them, consider what weather it is: if it be rainy, then the hare will hold the high-ways more than at any other time, and if she come to the side of any young grove or spring, she will scarcely enter, but squat down by the side of it till the hounds have over-shot her, and then she will return, the very same way she came, to the place from whence she was started, and will not go by the way into any covert, for fear of the wet and dew that hangs upon the boughs.

In this case the Huntsman ought to stay an hundred paces before he comes to the wood-side, by which means he will perceive whether she return as afore said, which if she do, he must halloo in his hounds, and call them back, and that presently, that the hounds may not think it the counter she came first.

The next thing that is to be observed, is the place where the hare sits, and upon what wind she makes her form, either upon the north or south wind; she will not willingly run into the wind, but run upon a-side, or down the wind; but if she form in the water, it is a sign she is foul and measles: if you hunt such a one, have a special regard all the day to the brook-sides, for there, and near plashe, she will make all her crossings, doublings, &c.

Some *hares* have been so crafty, that as soon as they have heard the sound of a horn, they would instantly start out of their form, tho' it was at the distance of a quarter of a mile,
and

H A R

and go and swim in some pool, and rest upon some rush bed in the midst of it; and would not stir from thence till they have heard the horn again, and then have started out again, swimming to land, and have stood up before the hounds four hours before they could kill them, swimming and using all subtilties and crossings in the water.

Nay, such is the natural craft and subtilty of a hare, that sometimes, after she has been hunted three hours, she will start a fresh hare, and squat in the same form.

Others having been hunted a considerable time, will creep under the door of a sheep-coat, and there hide themselves among the sheep; or when they have been hard hunted, will run in among a flock of sheep, and will by no means be gotten out from among them, till the hounds are coupled up and the sheep driven into their pens.

Some of them (and that seems somewhat strange) will take the ground like a coney, and that is called, *going to the vault*.

Some *hares* will go up one side of the hedge and come down the other, the thickness of the hedge being the only distance between the courses.

A *bare* that has been sorely hunted, has got upon a quick-set hedge, and ran a good way upon the top thereof, and then leapt off upon the ground.

And they will frequently betake themselves to furz-bushes, and will leap from the one to the other, whereby the hounds are frequently in default.

Some affirm that a *bare*, after she has been hunted two hours and more, has at length, to save her self, got upon an old wall, six foot high from the ground, and hid her self in a hole that was made for scaffolding; and that some *hares* have swam over the rivers *Trent* and *Severn*.

A *bare* is supposed not to live above seven years at the most, especially the bucks, and if a buck and a doe shall keep one quarter together, they will never suffer any strange *bare* to sit by them; and therefore it is said by way of proverb, *the more you hunt, the more hares you shall have*: because when you have killed one *bare*, another will come and possess his form.

A *bare* hath a greater scent, and is more eagerly hunted by the hounds, when she feeds and relieves upon green corn, than at any other time of the year; and yet there are some *hares* that naturally give a greater scent than others, as the large *wood-hares*; and such as are foul and meased keep near to the waters: but the small red *bare*, which is not much bigger than a coney, is neither of so strong a scent, nor so eagerly hunted.

Those

H A R

Those *hares* that feed upon the small branches of wild thyme, or such like herbs, are generally very swift, and will stand long up before the hounds.

Again, there are some *hares* more subtil and cunning than others, young *hares* which have never been hunted are foolish, and are neither of force nor capacity to use such subtilties and crafts, but most commonly hold on end-ways before the hounds, and oftentimes squat and start again, which greatly encourages the hounds, and enters them better than if the *bare* should fly end-ways, as sometimes they will for five or six mile an end.

The females are more crafty and politic than the males, for they double and turn shorter than they, which is unpleasant to the hounds; for it is troublesome to them to turn so often, delighting more in an end-way chace, running with all their force: for those *hares* which double and cros so often, it is requisite at default, to cast the greater compass about, when you beat to make it out; for so you will find all her subtilties, and yet need not stick upon any of them, but only where she went on forward: by this means you will abate her force, and compel her to need doubling and crossing.

How to enter Hounds to a Hare.

Let the Huntsman be sure in the first place to make them very well acquainted with himself and his voice, and let them understand the horn, which he should never blow but when there is good cause for it.

When you enter a young kennel of hounds, have a special regard to the country where you make the first quarry, for so they are like to succeed accordingly; since their being entered first in a plain and champain country, will make them ever after delight more to hunt therein than elsewhere; and it is the same with the coverts.

In order to have the best hounds, use them to all kinds of hunting, yet do not oblige them to hunt in the morning, by reason of the dew and moisture of the earth; and besides, if they be afterwards hunted in the heat of the day, they will soon give over the chace. Neither will they call on willingly nor chearfully, but seek out the shades to sleep in.

But yet many are of opinion, that to hunt both early and late in the morning, by trayling, profits the hounds as to the use of their noses; and by keeping them sometimes in the heat of the day, or till night, incites courage in them.

The best season to enter young hounds, is in *September* and *October*, for then the weather is temperate, and neither too hot

H A R

hot nor too cold ; and this is the season to find young *hares* that have never been hunted, which are silly, and ignorant of the politic crossings, doublings, &c. of their fires, running commonly end-ways, frequently squatting, and as often starting ; by which encouragement the hounds are the better entered.

Some *hares* hold the high-beaten ways only, where the hounds can have no scent ; therefore when the Huntsman finds his hounds at a default in the high-way, let him hunt on until he find where the *bare* hath broken from the high-way, or hath found some dale or fresh place where the hounds may recover scent, looking narrowly on the ground as he goes, to see to find the footing or pricking of the *bare*.

There are other places wherein a hound can find no scent ; and that is, in fat and rotten ground, which sticks to the feet of the *bare* ; and this is called *carrying*, and so of consequence she leaves no scent behind her.

There are also certain months in the year in which a hound can find no scent, and that is in the spring-time, by reason of the fragrant scent of flowers, and the like.

But avoid hunting in hard frosty weather as much as you can, for that will be apt to surbate or founder your hounds, and cause them to lose their claws ; besides, at that time a *bare* runs better than at any other time, the soles of her feet being hairy.

In a word, the best way of entering young hounds, is with the assistance of old staunch hounds, so they will be better learned to cast for it at a doubling or default.

What time of the year is best for Hare hunting ; how to find her, start her, and chase her.

The best time to begin *bare-hunting*, is about the middle of *September*, and to end towards the latter end of *February*, lest you destroy the early brood of leverets.

And besides, when the winter comes on, the moistness and coolness of the earth increases, which is agreeable to the nature of the hounds, and very acceptable, they not liking extremes either of hot or cold weather.

Those hounds that are two years old and upwards, may be exercised three times a week ; and the hunting so often will do them good, provided they be well fed ; and they may be kept the greatest part of the day, both to try their stoutness, and to make them stout.

If any hound shall have found the trayl of a *bare*, when she hath relieved that night, the Huntsman ought not to be too hasty, but let the hounds make it of themselves ; and when he perceives that they begin to draw in together, and to call on
freshly,

H A R

freshly, then he ought to encourage them, especially that hound which hunteth best, frequently calling him by his name.

Here you may take notice, that a *hare* leaveth better scent when she goes to relief than when she goeth towards her form ; for when she relieves in the field, she coucheth her body low upon the ground, passing often over one piece of ground, to find where the best food lies, and thus leaveth the best scent, crossing also sometimes : besides, when she goes to her form, she commonly takes the high-ways, doubling, crossing, and leaping as lightly as she can ; in which places the hounds can have no scent by reason of the dust, &c. and yet they will squat by the sides of high-ways, and therefore let the huntsman beat very well the sides of those high-ways.

Now having found where a hare hath relieved in some pasture or corn-field, you must then consider the season of the year, and what weather it is ; for if it be in the spring-time or summer, a hare will not then set in bushes, because they are frequently infested with pismires, snakes, and adders ; but will set in corn-fields and open places.

In the winter-time, they set near towns and villages, in tufts of thorns and brambles, especially when the wind is northerly or southerly.

According to the season and nature of the place where the hare is accustomed to sit, there beat with your hounds, and start her ; which is much better sport than trayling of her from her relief to her form.

After the hare has been started, and is on foot, then step in where you saw her pass, and halloo in your hounds, until they have all undertaken it, and go on with it in full cry ; then recheat to them with your horn, following fair and softly at first, making not too much noise either with horn or voice ; for at the first, hounds are apt to overshoot the chace thro' too much heat.

But when they have run the space of an hour, and you see the hounds are well in with it, and stick well upon it, then you may come in nearer with the hounds, because by that time their heat will be cooled, and they will hunt more soberly.

But, above all things, mark the first doubling, which must be your direction for the whole day ; for all the doublings that she shall make afterwards will be like the former, and according to the policies that you shall see her use, and the place where you hunt, you must make your compasses great or little, long or short, to help the defaults, always seeking the moistest and most commodious places for the hounds to scent in.

To conclude ; those who delight in hunting the hare, must rise early, lest they be deprived of the scent of her foot-steps,

by

H A R

by which means the dogs will be incapacitated to follow their game ; for the nature of the scent is such that it will not remain long, but suddenly in a manner every hour vanisheth away.

HARE-NETS and rabbit-nets, the three several sorts of nets as here represented in the cut, are proper either for hares or rabbits.

In the placing of these observe the path or tract in any coppice, or furrow, by which any hare uses to pass ; likewise how the wind is, so as to set them as the hare and wind may come together : if the wind be side-ways it will do well enough, but never let it blow over the net into the hare's face, for he will scent both it and you at a distance : The two pointed lines ABC, in the first figure, denotes the foot-paths whereby the game uses to pass. Then prepare three or four more stakes according to the length of the net ; which stakes should be about the bigness of one's thumb, and near four feet long, sharpened at the greater end, and a little crooked at the smaller RST ; stick them in the ground somewhat sloping as if so forced by the wind : two of them are to be set at the two sides of the way and the middle, as there is occasion ; they must only hold up the net from falling, but in a very slight manner, that if the game run against it, it may fall down, and so entangle him : Be sure to hide yourself in some ditch or bush, behind a tree, or the like place, behind the net ; then when you perceive the game to be pass'd, give a shout, flinging your hat at them, which will put them into such a surprize that they will spring on, and run just into the net, so that you must be nimble to take them lest they break out and escape.

But observe, this net is not so grounded in windy weather as in fair.

The middlemost flap must be set much after the same manner as the former ; as to the way and wind, you see how the two cords at each end of the net ought to be disposed : next you must have two sticks, K, L, M, N, each four foot long and twice as thick as one's thumb, which are to be cut exactly smooth at each end and fixed thus ; take the stick K, L, put it on the edge of the way upon the cord L, which is on the bottom of the net, and the other cord is to be placed at the top of the stick, then go along behind the net supporting it with your hand, and place your second stick just as you did the first ; but you should endeavour to lean a little towards the way where you expect the game will come, for the beasts running fiercely against the net will force the sticks to give way, and so the net falls on him.

There is another net represented by the last figure, which is less troublesome than either of the former, only it may be farther

H A R

farther discerned, yet it is good for rabbits in such foot-paths, and only used for them and hares; whereas the others are useful also for the taking of wolves, foxes, badgers, and pole-cats. The true time to set these nets is at break of day, till half an hour after sun-rising, and from half an hour before sun-set till dark.

HARNESS GALLS; sometimes the breasts of coach-horses are galled by the harness, or rise in hard bunches, especially in rainy weather.

To cure this, first shave off the hair about the sore very close, and rub the whole breast with a lather of water and black soap; then wash that part of the breast which is usually covered with the *petrel* with salt water, suffering it to dry of itself.

If the hardness of any part of the harness occasions the galling, take it away, or cover it with little bolsters.

HARRIER; a hound, from his chasing or tracing by foot, is naturally endued with an admirable gift of smelling, being also bold and courageous in the pursuit of his game; of which there are several kinds and all differ in their services; some are for the hare, the fox, wolf, hart, pole-cat, weasel, coney, buck, badger, otter, &c. some for one thing, some for another.

Nay, amongst the various sorts of these dogs, there are some apt to hunt two different beasts, as the fox sometimes, and at other times the hare; but such as stick not to one sort of game, hunt not with that success and good disposition as the others do. See **TERRIER**.

HART is the most noble and stately beast, and in the first year is called a *hind calf*, in the second a *knobber*, in the third a *brock*, in the fourth a *stag*, in the fifth a *stag*, and in the sixth a *hart*.

Harts are bred in most countries, but the ancients do prefer those of *Britain* before all others, where they are of divers colours.

These excel all others in the beauty of their horns, which are very high, yet do not grow to their bones or scalps, but to their skin, branching forth into many spears, being solid throughout, and as hard as stones, and fall off once a year.

But if they remain abroad in the air; and if they are by that means sometimes wet and sometimes dry, they grow as light as any other less solid substance; by which it should seem they are of an earthy substance, concrete, and hardened with a strong heat, made like unto bones.

They lose their horns every year in the spring.

At one year old they have nothing but bunches, that are small signifiers of horns to come: at two years they appear

more

H A R

more perfectly, but strait and single : at three years they grow into two spears ; at four into three, and so increase every year in their branches till they are six ; and above that time their age is not certainly to be known by the head.

Having lost their horns, in the day-time they hide themselves, inhabiting the shades, to avoide the annoyance of flies, and feed, during that time, only in the night.

Their new horns come out at first like bunches, and afterwards (as has been said before) by the increase of the sun's heat they grow more hard, covered with a rough skin, which is called a *velvet head* ; and as that skin drieth, they daily try the strength of their new heads upon trees, which not only scrapeth off the roughness, but by the pain they feel thus rubbing them, they are taught how long to forbear the company of their fellows ; for at last, when in their chafing and fretting of their new horns against the trees, they can feel no longer pain and smart in them, they seem as if they thought it were high time to forsake their solitary dwellings and return again to their former condition.

The reason why *harts* and *deers* shed their horns annually are these :

First, because of the matter of which they consist ; for it is dry and earthy like the substance of green leaves, which also fall annually ; likewise wanting glewy or holding moisture, for which reason the horn of a *hart* cannot be bent.

Secondly, from the place they grow upon, for they are not rooted upon the skell, but only within the skin.

Thirdly, from the efficient cause ; for they are hardened both with the heat of summer and cold of winter ; by means of which the pores which should receive the nourishing liquor are shut up and stopped, so that their native heat necessarily dieth ; which does not so happen in other beasts, whose horns are for the most part hollow and fitted for longer continuance ; but these are of lesser, and the new bunches swelling up, towards the spring, do thrust off the old horns, having the assistance of boughs or trees, weight of the horns, or by the willing excursion of the beast that beareth them.

It has been observed, that when a *hart* pricketh up his ears, he windeth sharp, very far and sure, and discovereth all treachery against him ; but if they hang down and wag, he perceives no danger.

Their age is discerned by their teeth ; they have four on both sides, with which they grind their meat ; besides two others, which are much larger in the male than in the female.

H A R

All these beasts have worms in their heads, underneath their tongue, in a hollow place where the neck-bone is joined to the head, which are no bigger than fly-blows.

The blood of the *hart* is not like that of other beasts, for it hath no fibres in it, and therefore it is hardly congealed.

His heart is very great, and so are all those of fearful beasts, having in it a bone like a cross.

He hath no gall, and that is one of the causes of his long life, and therefore are his bowels so bitter, that the dogs will not touch them unless they be very fat.

The genital part of a *hart* is all nervous, the tail small, and a hind hath udders between her thighs, with four speans like a Cow.

These are above all other beasts both ingenious and fearful, who altho' they have large horns, yet their defence against other four-footed beasts, is to run away.

The *hart* is strangely amazed, when he hears any one call or whistle in his fist: for trial of which, some seeing a *hart* in the plain in motion, have called after him, crying, *ware, ware, take heed*; and thereupon have seen him instantly turn back, making some little stand.

He hears very perfectly when his head and ears are erected; but imperfectly when he lets them down.

When he is on foot, and not afraid, he admires every thing he sees, and takes a pleasure to gaze at them.

A *hart* can naturally swim a great way, insomuch that some which have been hunted in forests near the sea, have plunged into it, and have been killed by fishermen twelve miles from land.

It is reported of them, that when they go to rut, and for that purpose are obliged to cross some great river or arm of the sea, they assemble in great herds, the strongest going in first, and the next in strength following him, and so one after the other, relieving themselves by staying their heads on the buttocks of each other.

The *hind* commonly carries her calf eight or nine months, which usually falls in *May*, altho' some alter: some of them have two at once, and eat up the skin wherein the calf did lie.

As the calf grows up, she teaches it to run, leap, and the way it must take to defend itself from the hounds.

Harts and *hinds* are very long lived, living commonly an hundred years and upwards.

H A R

HART-HUNTING.

Gesner, speaking of the hunting of the *hart*, says as follows, *This wild, deceitful, and subtile beast, by windings and turnings, does often deceive it's hunter, as the harts of Meandros flying from the terrible cry of Diana's hounds*: Wherefore the prudent hunter must frame his dogs, as *Pythagoras* did his scholars, with words of art to set them on, and take them off again at his pleasure.

Wherefore he must first of all encompass in the beast in her own layer, and so unharbour her in the view of the dogs, that so they may never lose her flot or footing.

Neither must he set upon every one, either of the herd, or those that wander solitary alone, or a little one, but partly by sight, and partly by their footing and fumets, make a judgment of the game, and also observe the largeness of his layer.

The huntsman, having made these discoveries in order to the chace, takes off the couplings of the dogs, and some on horseback, the others on foot, follow the cry, with the greatest art, observation, and speed, remembring and intercepting him in his subtile turnings and headings; with all agility leaping hedges, gates, pales, ditches; neither fearing thorns, down hills nor woods, but mounting fresh horse, if the first tire; follow the largest head of the whole herd, which must be singled out of the chace; which the dogs perceiving, must follow; not following any other.

The dogs are animated to the sport by the winding of horns, and the voices of the huntsmen.

But sometimes the crafty beast sends forth his little squire to be sacrificed to the dogs and hunters, instead of himself, lying close the mean time. In this case, the huntsman must sound a retreat, break off the dogs, and take them in, that is, leam them again, until they be brought to the fairer game; which riseth with fear, yet still striveth by flight, until he be wearied and breathless.

The Nobles call the beast a *wise hart*, who, to avoid all his enemies, runneth into the greatest herds, and so brings a cloud of error on the dogs, to obstruct their farther pursuit; sometimes also beating some of the herd unto his footings, that so he may the more easily escape, by amusing the dogs.

Afterwards he betakes himself to his heels again, still running with the wind, not only for the sake of refreshment, but also because by that means he can the more easily hear the voice of his pursuers, whether they be far from him, or near to him.

But

H A R

But at last being again discovered by the hunters, and sagacious scent of the dogs, he flies into the herds of cattle, as cows, sheep, &c. leaping on a cow or ox, laying the fore parts of his body thereon, that so touching the earth only with his hinder feet, he may leave a very small or no scent at all behind for the hounds to discern.

A chief huntsman to *Lewis XII.* of *France*, affirms, That on a time, they having a *hart* in chace, on a sudden the hounds were at a fault, so as the game was out of sight, and not a dog would once stir his foot, at which the hunters were all amazed; at last, by casting their eyes about, they discovered the fraud of the crafty beast.

There was a great white-thorn, which grew in a shadowy place, as high as a moderate tree, which was encompassed about with other smaller shrubs; into this the *hart* having leaped, stood there a-loft, the boughs spreading from one to another, and there remained till he was thrust thro' by the huntsman, rather than he would yield himself up a prey to the hounds his mortal enemies.

But their usual manner is, when they see themselves hard beset, and every way intercepted, to make force at their enemy with their horns, who first comes upon him, unless they be prevented by spear or sword.

When the beast is slain, the huntsman with his horn windeth the fall of the beast, and then the whole company comes up, blowing their horns in triumph for such a conquest; among whom, the skilfullest opens the beast, rewards the hounds with what properly belongs to them, for their future encouragement: for which purpose the huntsmen dip bread in the skin and blood of the beast to give to the hounds.

Of the rut of HARTS.

Their rutting-time is about the middle of *September*, and continues two months: the older they are the hotter, and the better they please the *hinds*, and therefore they go to rut before the young ones; and being very fiery, they will not suffer any of them to come near the *hinds*, till they have satisfied their venereal appetite.

But for all this, the young ones are even with the old, for when they perceive that the old are grown weak by excess of rutting, the young will frequently attack them, and make them quit the place, that they may be masters of the sport.

They may be easily killed in rutting-time, for they follow the scent of the *hinds* with so much eagerness, laying their noses to the ground, that they mind that only, and nothing else.

H A R

It is very dangerous for any man to come near them at that time, for then they will make at any living creature of a different kind.

In some places their lust arises in *October*, and also in *May*; and then, whereas at other times the males live apart from the females, they go about like lascivious lovers, seeking the company of the females.

The males, in their raging lust, make a peculiar noise.

One male will cover many females, continuing in this appetite for one or two months.

The females seem chaste, and unwilling to admit of copulation, by reason of the rigour of the *genital* of the male; and therefore they sink down on their buttocks, when they begin to feel his *semen*, as it has been observed in tame *harts*; and if they can, the females run away, the males striving to hold them back with their fore-feet.

It cannot be well said, that they are covered standing, lying, or going, but rather running; for so are they filled with greatest severity.

When one month or six weeks is over of their rutting, they grow much tamer; and laying aside all fierceness, they return to their solitary places, digging every one by himself a several hole or ditch, in which they lie, to assuage the strong savour of their lust; for they stink like goats, and their face begins to look blacker than at other times: and in those places they live till some showers of rain fall; after which they return to the pasture again, living in flocks as they did before.

The females having been thus filled, never associate again with the male till she is delivered of her burthen, which is in about eight months, and produces generally but one at a time, very seldom two; which she lodges cunningly in some covert. If she perceive them stubborn and wild, she will beat them with her feet till they lie close and quiet.

She oftentimes leadeth forth her young, teaching it to run, and leap over bushes, stones, and small shrubs, and so continueth all the summer long, while their own strength is the most considerable.

It is very pleasant to observe them, when they go to rut, and make their vault; for when they smell the hind, they raise their nose up into the air; and if it be a great *hart*, he will turn his head and look about to see whether there be none near him to interrupt and spoil his sport.

Upon this, the young fly away for fear; but if there be any of equal bigness, they then strive which shall vault first; and in the opposing each other, they scrape the ground with their feet, shoving and butting each other so furiously, that you may

H A R

hear the noise they make with their horns, a good half mile, ~~so~~ long till one of them is the conqueror.

The *hind* beholding this encounter, never stirs from her station, expecting, as it were, the vaulting of him who shall get the mastery, who having got it, bellows, and then instantly covers her.

Of the coats and colours of Harts.

The coats of *harts* are of three different sorts, *brown*, *red*, and *fallow*; and of each of these coats there proceeds two sorts of *harts*, the one great and the other small.

Of *brown harts*, there are some great, long, and hairy, bearing a high head, of a red colour, and well beamed, who will stand before hounds very long, being longer of breath, and swifter of foot than those of a shorter stature.

There are another sort of *brown harts*, which are little, short, and well set, bearing commonly a black mane, and are fatter and better venison than the former, by reason of their better feeding in young coppices.

They are very crafty, especially when in grease, and will be hardly found, because they know they are then most enquired after; besides, they are sensible they cannot then stand long before the hounds.

If they be old, and feed on good ground, then are their heads black, fair, and well branched, and commonly palmed at the top.

The *fallow harts* bear their heads high, and of a whitish colour, their beams small, their antlers long, slender, and ill grown; having neither heart, courage, nor force.

But those which are of a lively *red fallow*, having a black or brown list down the ridge of the back, are strong, bearing fair and high heads, well furnished and beamed.

Of the heads and branches of Harts.

As there are several sorts of *harts*, so also have they different heads, according to their age, country, rest, and feeding.

Here you must take notice, that they bear not their first head (which we call *broches*, and in a fallow deer *pricks*) until they enter the second year of their age.

In the third year they bear four, six, or eight, small branches: at the fourth, they bear eight or ten: at the fifth, ten or twelve: at six, fourteen or sixteen; and at the seventh year, they bear their heads beamed, branched and fumed, with as

H A R

much as ever they will bear, and do never multiply but in greatness only,

The time of Harts mewing or casting their head.

An old *hart* casteth his head sooner than the young, and the time is about the months of *February* and *March*.

Here *note*, that if you geld a *hart* before he hath a head, he will never bear any; and if you geld him when he has a head, he will never after mew and cast it: and so if he be gelded when he hath a velvet head, it will ever be so, without fraying or burnishing.

As soon as they have cast their heads, they instantly withdraw into the thickets, hiding themselves in such convenient places where they can have good water and strong feeding, near some ground where wheat and pease are sown: but young harts do never betake themselves to the thickets till they have born their third head, which is in the fourth year.

After they have mewed, they will begin to button in *March* and *April*; and as the sun grows strong, and the season of the year puts forward the crop of the earth, so will their heads increase in all respects; so that by the middle of *June*, their heads will be summed as much as they will bear all the year.

The names and diversity of Heads, according to the terms used by Hunters.

That part which bears the *antlers*, *royals*, and *tops*, is called the *beam*, and the little streaks therein are called *gutters*.

That which is about the crust of the *beam* is termed *pearls*, and that which is about the bur it self, formed like little *pearls*, is called, *pearls bigger than the rest*.

The bur is next the head, and that which is about the bur is called *pearls*; the first is called *antler*, the second *sur-antler*: all the rest which grow afterwards, until you come to the crown, palm, or croche, are called *royals*, and *sur-royals*; the little buds or broches about the top, are called *croches*.

Their *heads* also go by several names; the *first* head is called a *crowned top*, because the *croches* are ranged in form of a crown.

The *second* is called a *palmed top*, because the *croches* are formed like a man's hand.

Thirdly, all heads which bear not above three or four, the *croches* being placed aloft, all of one height, in form of a cluster of nuts, are to be called heads of so many *croches*.

Fourthly,

H A R

Fourthly, all heads which bear two in the top, or having their croches doubling, are to be called *forked heads*.

Fifthly, all heads which have double burs, or the *antlers*, *royals*, and *croches*, turned downwards, contrary to other heads, are only called *heads*.

How to know an old Hart by the slot, entries, abaturs, foils, fewmets, gate and walks, fraying-stocks, head, and branches.

First, by the *Slot*. You must take good notice of the treading of the *hart's* foot ; if you find the treading of two, the one long and the other round, yet both of one bigness, yet the long *slot* will indicate the *hart* to be much larger than the round.

And besides, the old *hart's* hind-foot doth never over-reach the fore-foot ; that of the young ones do.

But above all take this observation : When you have found the *slot* of a *hart* in the wood, take notice what manner of footing it is, whether worn or sharp ; and accordingly observe the country, and judge by that whether either may be occasioned thereby.

For *harts* bred in mountains and stony countries, have their toes and sides of their feet worn, by means of their continual climbing and resting themselves thereon, and not on the heel ; whereas in other places they stay themselves more on the heel than toes, for in soft or sandy ground they slip upon the heel, by reason of their weight ; and thus by frequent staying themselves thereon, it makes the heel grow broader and bigger.

And thus may the age of a *hart* be known by his *slot* or treading.

The next thing to be considered is the *Fewmets* ; and this is to be judged of in *April* and *May*. If the *fewmets* or *fewmish*-ing be large and thick, they intimate that the *hart* is old.

In the months of *June* and *July*, they make their *fewmets* in large croteys, very soft ; and from that time to the end of *August*, they make them large, long, knotty and anointed, and gilded, letting them fall but few and scattered.

In *September* and *October*, there is no longer passing a judgment by them, by reason of the rut.

Thirdly, in order to know the height and thickness of a *hart*, observe his entries and galleries into the thickets, and what boughs he has over-stridden, and mark from thence the height of his belly from the ground.

By the height of the entries, a judgment is made of the age of a *hart* ; for a young deer is such as usually creeps, but the old ones are stiff and stately.

H A R

His largeness may be known by the height of his creeping as he passes to his harbour, the young deer creeping low, which the old will not stoop to.

Fourthly, take notice of his *gate*, by which you may know whether the *hart* be great and long, and whether he will stand long before the hounds or not; for all *harts* which have a long step will stand up a long while, being swift, light, and well breathed; but if he leave a great slot, which is the sign of an old deer, he will never stand long when he is chased.

Lastly, take notice of his *fraying-post*; where take notice, that by how much the *hart* is the older, the sooner he goes to fray, and the larger is the tree he chuses to fray against, and one so strong that he cannot bend with his head.

All stags as they are furnished, beat their heads dry against some tree or other, which is called their *fraying-post*; the younger deer do it against weaker, lesser, and lower trees; so that accordingly Hunters judge confidently of their age, and of the nearness of their harbour, for that is the last action or ceremony they use before they enter it.

As to the *head* and *branches*, a *hart* is old; *First*, when the compass of the bur is large, great, and well pearled.

Secondly, when the beam is large burthened and well pearled, being strait, and not rendered crooked by antlers.

Thirdly, when the gutters in it are large and deep.

Fourthly, when the first antler, called *anteiller*, is large, long, and near to the bur, the sur-antler near to the antler; and they ought to be both well pearled.

Fifthly, the rest of the branches which are higher, being well ordered and set, and well grown, according to the largeness and proportion of the head; and the croches, palm, or crown, being great and large too, according to the largeness of the beam, are signs of an old *hart*.

How to seek a Hart in his haunts and feeding-places, according to the seasons of the year.

All *harts* change their manner of feeding every month; and forasmuch as *November* is the conclusion of their rutting-time, I shall begin with that: in this they feed in heaths and broomy places.

In *December* they herd together, and withdraw themselves into the strengths of the forests, to shelter themselves from the cold winds, snows, and frosts, and feed on the holm trees, elder trees, brambles, with whatsoever green thing they can find; and if it snow, they will skin or peel the trees like a goat.

In

H A R

In *January*, *February*, and *March*, they leave herding, but will keep four or five in company, and in the corners of the forest will feed on the winter-pasture, sometimes making their incursions into the neighbouring corn-fields, if they can perceive the blades of wheat, rye, or the like, appear above ground.

In *April* and *May*, they rest in their thickets and other bushy and shady places, during that season, and stir very little till rutting-time, unless they are disturbed.

There are some *harts* so cunning, that they will have two several layers to harbour in, a good distance one from the other, and will frequently change (for their greater security) from the one to the other, taking still the benefit of the wind.

In these months they go not to the soil, by reason of the moisture of the spring, and the dew that continually over-spreads the grass.

In *June*, *July*, and *August*, they are in the pride of their grease, and do resort to spring-coppices and corn-fields, only they seldom go where rye or barley grows.

In *September* and *October*, they leave their thickets and go to the rut, during which season they have no certain place either for food or harbour.

After what manner a Huntsman should go drawing in the springs.

He ought not to come too early into the springs or hewts where he thinks the *hart* feedeth, and is at relief, for they usually go to their layers in the springs; and if they be old, crafty deer, they will return to the border of the coppice, and there listen whether they can hear any approaching danger, and if they once chance to vent the Huntsman or the hound, they will instantly dislodge.

Now is the Huntsman's proper time; let him beat the outsides of the springs or thickets, if he find the track of a *hart* or *deer*, he ought to observe whether it be fresh, which may be known by the following tokens; the dew will be beaten off, the soil fresh, or the ground broken, or printed with other tokens; so he may judge his game lately went that way.

Having found his slot or treading, and the hound sticking well upon it, let him hold him short; for he shall draw better being so held, than if he were let at length of the leam; and thus let him draw till he is come to the covert, if possible, taking notice, by the way, of the slot, falls, entries, and the like, till he hath harboured him.

Having done this, let him plash down small twigs, some above and some below, as he shall think fit; and then while the hound is hot, let him beat the outsides and make ring-walks
twice

H A R

twice or thrice about the wood, one while by the great and open ways, that he may help himself by the eye; another while through the thickets and coverts, for fear lest his hounds should over-shoot it, having still better scent in the coverts than high-ways.

If he is in doubt whether the *hart* is gone out of the ring-walks, or fears he has drawn amiss, then let him go to the marks that he plashed, and draw counter, till he may take up the fewmet.

Directions for harbouring a Stag.

The Harboured having taught his hound to draw mute always round the outside of the covert, as soon as his hound challenges, which he knows by his eager flourishing and straining his leam, he then is to seek for his slot; if he finds the heel thick, and the toe spreading broad, these are signs that it is an old deer, especially if it is fringed, that is broken on both the sides.

And if the ground be too hard to make any judgment from the slot, he must draw into the covert as he passes, observing the size of the entries; the larger and higher, the older the deer: as also his croppings of the tenders as he passes, the younger the deer the lower, the older the deer the higher are the branches.

He ought also to observe his fewmishings as he passes, the largeness of which bespeaks the largeness of the deer: He must also be curious in observing the fraying-post, which is usually the last opportunity he has to judge by; the eldest deer fraying highest, against the largest trees, and that being found, it may be concluded his harbour is not far off.

Therefore he ought to draw with more circumspection, checking the drawing-hound to secure him from spending when he comes so near as to have the deer in the wind, which when you have discovered by his eagerness that draws him, let him retire some distance back, and round the place with the hound, first at a considerable distance, and then if he finds him not disturbed, let him make a second round within that; and this will not only secure you that he is in the harbour, but will also secure his continuance there; for he will not (except he be forced) pass that taint your hound left in the rounding of him.

So that having broke a bough for his direction, he may at any time unharbour that *hart*.

H A R

How to find a Hart lost the night before.

A Huntsman may fail of killing a *hart* divers ways; sometimes by reason of great heat, or by being overtaken with the night, or the like.

If it should happen so, do as follows.

First, they who follow the hounds, must mark the place where they left the chace, and at break of day bring the blood hound to it, with the kennel after him.

If any hound vents, whom he knows to be no liar nor babbler, he shall put his hound to it, whooping twice, or blowing two notes with his horn, to call all his fellows about him; and if he find where the *hart* is gone into some likely covert or grove, then must he draw his hounds about it, and if he there renews the slot or view, let him first consider whether it be right or not, if it be right let him blow his horn.

And if he happens to find five or six layers, let it not seem strange, for *harts* hunted and spent do frequently make many layers together, because they cannot stand, but lie and feed.

Harts which are hunted, most commonly run up the wind, and strait forwards as far as they are able, and finding any water or soil, do stay a long time therein, by which means their joints are so benumbed and stiffened, that coming out, they cannot go far, nor stand up long, and therefore are forced to take up with any harbour they can find which may be a present covert to them.

To find a Hart in high woods.

In the seeking of a *hart* in high woods, you must have regard to two things; that is, the thickets of the forest, and the season.

If it be in very hot weather, gnats, horse-flies, and the like, drive the deer out of the high woods, and they disperse themselves into small groves and thickets, near places of good feeding.

According to the coverts which are in the forest, so must the Huntsman make his inquiry; for sometimes the *hart* lies in the tufts of white-thorn, sometimes under little trees, other whiles under great trees in the high woods, and sometimes in the skirts of the forest, under the shelter of little groves and coppices.

And therefore the Huntsman must make his ring-walk large or small, according to the largeness of those harbours or coverts.

How

H A R

How to unbarbour a Hart and cast off the hounds.

When the relays are well set and placed, let the Huntsman with his pole walk before the kennel of hounds; and being come to the blemishes, let him take notice of the slot, and such other marks as may be observed from the view of the deer, in order that he may know whether the hounds run riot or not.

Then the Huntsman must cast abroad about the covert, to discover the *hart* when he is unbarboured, the better to distinguish him by his head or otherwise.

The *hart* being unbarboured, let all the hounds be cast off, they crying one and all, *To him, to him, That's he, that's he*, with other such words of encouragement.

If the blood-hound, in drawing, chance to over-shoot, and draw wrong or counter, then the Huntsman must draw him back, saying, *Back, back, Soft, soft*, until he hath set him right again; and if he perceive that the hound hath mended his fault, by his kneeling down and observing the slot or ports, he must then cherish him, by clapping him on the back, and giving him encouraging words; thus must he draw on with his hounds till he descries the deer.

Some deers are so cunning and crafty, that when they are unbarboured from their layer, they will coast round about to find some other deer, whereby the hounds may be confounded in the change of hunts.

If the Huntsman have the *hart* in view, he ought still to draw upon the slot, blowing and hallooing till the hounds are come in. When he finds they are in full cry, and take it right, he may then mount, keeping under the wind and coast, to cross the hounds that are in chace to help them at default, if need require.

The subtilties which are used in hunting a Hart at force.

A Huntsman ought never to come nearer to the hounds in cry, than fifty or sixty paces, especially at the first uncoupling, or at casting off the relays; for if a *hart* make doublings, or wheel about or across before the hounds, (as he seldom does) if then you come in too hastily, you will spoil the slot or view, and so the hounds, for want of scent, will be apt to over-shoot the chace.

But if after you have hunted an hour, the Huntsman perceives that the *hart* makes out end-ways before the hounds, and that they follow in full cry, taking it right, then he may come in nearer, and blow a recheat to the hounds to encourage them.

Hereupon

H A R

Hereupon the *hart* will frequently seek other deer at layer, and rouse them, on purpose to make the hounds hunt change, and will lie down in some of their layers flat upon his belly, and so suffer the hounds to over-shoot him; and that they may not either scent or vent him, he will gather up all his four feet under his belly, and will blow or breathe on some moist place of the ground, so that the hounds may pass by him possibly, tho' within a yard, and never vent him.

For which cause Huntsmen should blemish at those places, by which they see the *hart* enter into a thicket, to the end, that if the hounds should fall to change, they may return to those blemishes, and put the hounds to the right slot and view, until they have roused and found him again.

A *hart* has another way to bring the hounds to change, and that is, when he sees himself closely pursued, and that he cannot shun them, he will break into one thicket after another to find deer, rousing and herding with them, continuing so to do sometimes above an hour, before he will part from them or break herd.

Finding himself spent, he will break herd, and fall a doubling and crossing in some hard high-way that is much beaten, or else in some river or brook, in which he will keep as long as his breath will permit him; and if he be far before the hounds, it may be then he will use the former device, in gathering his legs under his belly, as he lies flat along upon some hard dry place.

Sometimes he will take foil, and so cover himself under the water that you shall perceive nothing but his nose.

In this case the Huntsman must have a special regard to his old hounds, who will hunt leisurely and fearfully, whereas the young hounds will over-shoot their game.

If the hounds happen to be at a default, and hunt in several companies, then it may be guessed that the *hart* hath broken herd from the fresh deer, and that the fresh deer have separated themselves also: then notice is to be taken how the old *staunch bounds* make it, and to observe the slot; and where you see any of the old hounds challenge, cherish and encourage that hound or hounds, hastening the rest in to him, crying *hark* to such a hound, calling him by his name.

Here it is to be noted, that they cannot make it so well in the hard high-ways as in other places, because they cannot have there so perfect a scent, either by reason of the tracks or footing of divers sorts of beasts, or by reason of the sun drying up the moisture, so that the dust covereth the slot. Now in such places (such is the natural subtilty of the beast for self-preservation)

H A R

tion) the *hart* will make many crossings and doublings, holding them long together, to make the hounds give over the chace.

In this case, the first care of the Huntsman is to make good the head, and then draw round apace; first down the wind, tho' deer usually go up the wind; and if the way is too hard to slot, then be sure to try far enough back. Expert hounds will often do this of themselves.

But if a *hart* break out into a champaign country, and in the heat of the day too, *i. e.* between noon and three of the clock, then if the Huntsman perceive his hounds out of breath, he ought not to force them but comfort them; and tho' they do not call upon the slot or view, yet it is sufficient if they do but wag their tails, for being almost spent, it is painful for them to call.

The last refuge of a *hart* that has been sorely hunted, is the water, which in terms of art is called the *soil*; swimming oftneft down the stream, keeping the middle, fearing least by touching any bough by the water-side, he may give scent unto the hounds.

Whenever you come to a soil (according to the old rule, *He who will his chace find, let him first try up river and down the wind*) be sure, if your hounds challenge but a yard above his going in, that he is gone up the river; for tho' he should keep the very middle of the stream, yet will that, with the help of the wind, lodge part of the stream and imbofth that comes from him on the bank, it may be a quarter of a mile lower, which hath deceived many.

Therefore first try up the stream, and where a deer first breaks soil, both man and hound will best perceive it.

Now the ways to know when a *hart* is spent, are these:

First, He will run stiff, high and lompering.

Secondly, If his mouth be black and dry, without any foam upon it, and his tongue hanging out; but they will often close their mouths to deceive spectators.

Thirdly, By his slot; for oftentimes he will close his claws together as if he went at leisure, and presently again open them wide, making great glidings, and hitting his dew-claws upon the ground, following the beaten paths without doublings, and sometimes going all along by a ditch-side, seeking some gap, having not strength to leap it: yet it has been often seen, that dead-run deer have taken very great leaps.

A Huntsman must therefore govern himself according to the subtilty and craft of the deer, observing the doublings and crossings, and the places where they are made; making his rings little or great, according to the nature of the places, time, and season; for hounds are apt to shoot where herbs and flowers have their most lively scent and odoriferous smell.

Neither

H A R

Neither is the perfection or imperfection of the hounds to be disregarded. And if these things be done, it will be much if you lose a hart by default.

To kill a HART at bay.

It is very dangerous to go in to a *hart* at bay, and especially at rutting-time, for at that time they are most fierce.

There are two sorts of bays ; one on the land, and the other on the water. Now if the *hart* be in a deep water, where you cannot well come at him, then couple up your dogs ; for should they continue long in the water, it would endanger their furbating or foundring.

In this case, get a boat and swim to him, with dagger drawn, or else with a rope that has a noose, and throw it over his horns ; for if the water be so deep that the *hart* swims, there is no danger in approaching him ; otherwise you must be very cautious.

As to a *land bay*, if a *hart* be burnished, then you must consider the place ; for if it be in a plain and open place, where there is no wood nor covert, it is dangerous and difficult to come in to him ; but if he be on a hedge side, or in a thicket, then, while the *hart* is staring on the hounds, you may come softly and covertly behind him and cut his throat.

If you miss your aim, and the *hart* turn head upon you, then take refuge at some tree ; and when the *hart* is at bay, couple up your hounds ; and when you see the *hart* turn head to fly, gallop in roundly to him, and kill him with your sword.

Directions at the death of a hart or buck.

The first ceremony, when the huntsman comes in to the death of a deer, is, to cry, *ware haunch*, that the hounds may not break in to the deer ; which being done, the next is the cutting his throat, and there blooding the youngest hounds, that they may the better love a deer, and learn to leap at his throat : then the *mort* having been blown, and all the company come in, the best person, who hath not taken say before, is to take up the knife that the keeper or huntsman is to lay across the belly of the deer, some holding by the fore-legs, and the keeper or huntsman drawing down the pizzle, the person who takes say, is to draw the edge of the knife leisurely along the middle of the belly, beginning near the brisket, and drawing a little upon it, enough in the length and depth to discover how fat the deer is ; then he that is to break up the deer, first flits the skin from the cutting of the throat downwards, making the *arber*, that

H A R

so the ordure may not break forth, and then he paunches him, rewarding the hounds with it.

In the next place, he is to present the same person, who took say, with a drawn hanger, to cut off the head of the deer. Which being done, and the hounds rewarded, the concluding ceremony is, if it be a stag, then one blows a tripple *mort*; and if a buck, a double one, and then all who have horns, blow a recheat in consort, and immediately a general *whoop, whoop*.

It was formerly termed a wind or winding-horn; the horns, probably, were winding, or compassed, but afterwards strait horns grew into use, and then they used to say, *blow a horn*, and *sound a horn*; and now, *French* or *German* horns are in repute.

In many cases, formerly, leasing was observed; that is, one was held either cross a saddle or on a man's back, and, with a pair of dog-couples, receive ten pounds and a purse, that is, ten stripes (according to the nature of the crime, more or less severe) and an eleventh that used to be as bad as the other ten, called a purse.

There are many faults, as coming too late into the field; mistaking any term of art: these are of the lesser sort; the greater are, hallooing a wrong deer, or leaving the field before the death of the deer, &c.

HART, or stag-evil, is a sort of rheum or defluxion that falls upon the jaws and other parts of the forehead of a horse, which hinders him from eating.

Sometimes this distemper affects the parts of the hinder quarters.

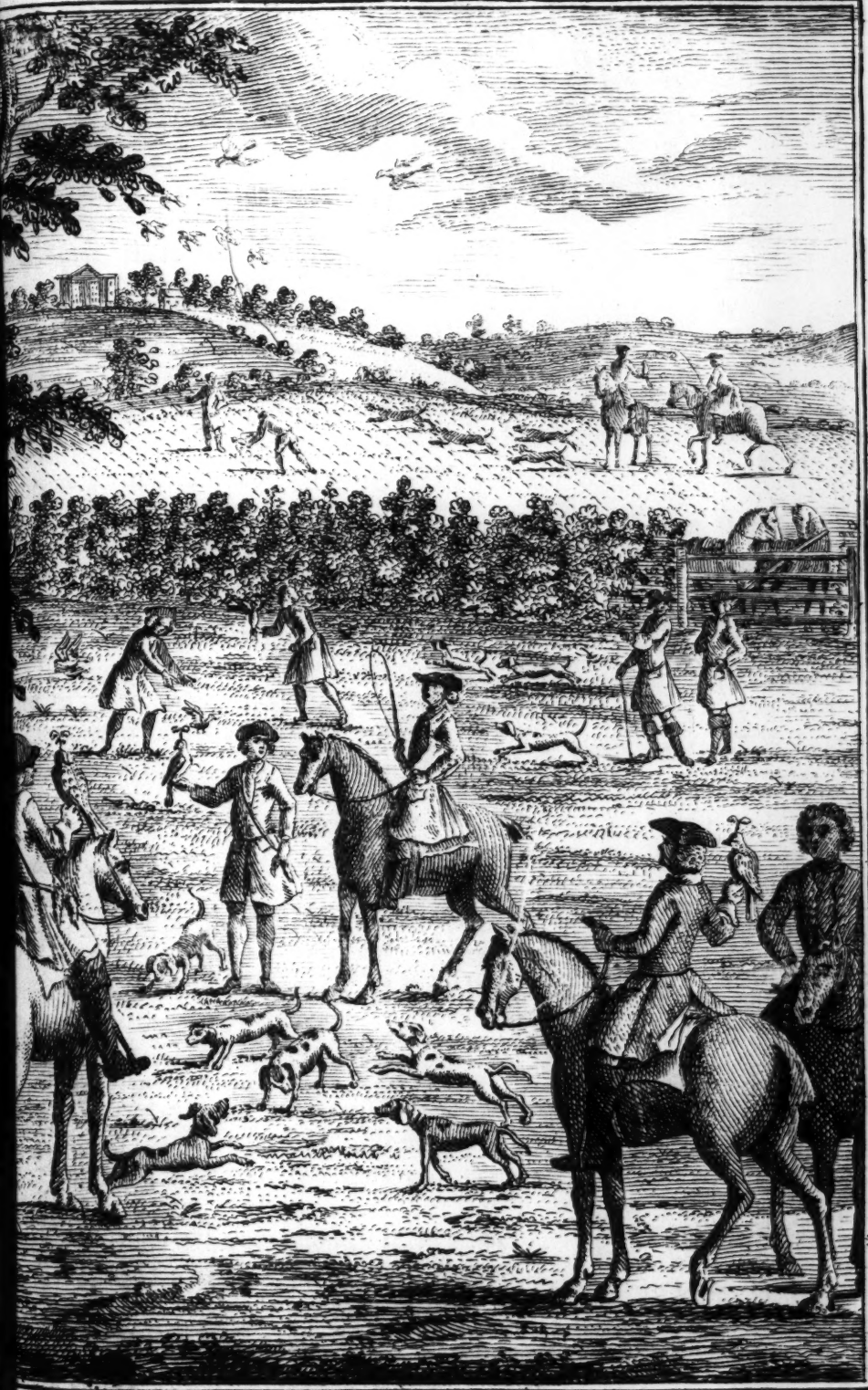
HART ROYAL, is an *hart* that has been hunted by the King or Queen, and escaped with life.

HART ROYAL proclaimed; thus they call an *hart*, who having been hunted by the King or Queen, flies so far from the forest or chace, that it is unlikely he will ever return of his own accord to the place where he lodged, and that thereupon a proclamation is made in all towns and villages thereabouts, that none shall kill him or offend him, but that he may safely return, if he list.

HASTE, or *quicken, your hand*, is an expression frequently used by the riding-master, when a scholar works a horse upon volts, and the master has a mind he should turn his hand quicker to the side on which the horse works; so that if the horse works to the right, he turns quicker with his shoulders to the right. And the like is observed, if he works to the left.

HAUNCH or *hanch*, the hip, or part of the body of a living creature.

The



Hawking.

O[®]

earch
cations



H A U

The *haunches* of a horse are too long, if, when standing in the stable, he limps with his hind legs farther back than he ought, and that the top or onset of his tail does not answer in a perpendicular line to the tip of his hocks; as it always does in horses whose *haunches* are of a just length.

There are some horses, which tho' they have too long *haunches*, yet commonly walk well; such are good to climb hills: but to ballance that, they are no wise sure upon a descent; for they cannot ply their hams, and they never gallop slowly, but almost at full speed.

HAUNCH, or hip of a horse, is that part of the hind quarter that extends from the reins or back to the hough or ham.

The art of riding the great horse, has not a more necessary lesson than that of putting a horse upon his *haunches*; which, in other terms, is called coupling him well, or putting him well together, or compact.

A horse that can't bend and lower his hips, throws himself too much upon his shoulders, and lies heavy upon the bridle.

A horse is said to be thoroughly managed when he bears well upon the hand, knows the heels, and sits well upon his hips; as,

This horse has his *haunches* in subjection, and falques very well; for in making his falquades, he holds his *haunches* very low, and bends admirably well.

To make a horse bend his hips, you must frequently go backward, and make use of the aids of the hands, and of the calves of your legs in giving him good stops; and if that does not succeed, try him upon a calade or sloping ground, after the *Italian* fashion. Hence they say,

Your horse makes his hips accompany his shoulders so well, that he is perfectly right set. See *Put upon the HAUNCHES, CALADE, CAVESON, FALQUADE, and FEEL.*

To drag the haunches, is to change the leading foot in galloping. See **GALLOP FALSE.**

Head in and hips in. See **HEAD.**

To gallop with the haunch in. See **GALLOPADE.**

HAUNT, habit or custom.

Among Hunters, the walk of a deer, or the place of his ordinary passage.

HAUNTS of *Fowls*; it is a thing of no small moment to a Fowler to be acquainted with the *haunts* of fowls.

In order to this you ought to understand, that all kinds of the larger fowls, *viz.* those which divide the foot, have their *haunts* by the sides of shallow rivers, brooks, and plashe of water; and these do not appear in flocks, but you may see here one single, there a couple, and the like, which makes them difficult

H A W

to be taken by engine or device; but they are the best flight for hawks that can be imagined.

Likewise these fowls delight in low and boggy places; and the more sedgy, marshy, and rotten such grounds are, the fitter they are for the hunting of these fowl.

They also delight in the dry parts of drowned fens, which are over-grown with tall and long rushes, reeds, and sedges.

Lastly, they delight in half-drowned moors, or the hollow vales of downs, heaths, or plains, where there is shelter either of hedges, hills, tufts of rushes, or trees, where they may lurk obscurely.

The lesser fowl, which are web-footed, continually haunt drowned fens, where they may have continually plenty of water, and may swim undisturbed by man or beast: Their *haunt* is likewise in the main stream of rivers, where the current is swiftest and least subject to freeze; and by how much such rivers are the broader and deeper, the greater delight these fowl take therein.

The *wild-goose* and *barnacle* excepted, who abide no waters above their founding; for when they cannot reach the ouze, they instantly remove thence, seeking out more shallow places.

These two last named, are unconceivably delighted with green winter corn, and therefore you will always find them where such grain is sown, especially if the ends of the lands have much water about them.

Also these smaller fowl do very much frequent small brooks, rivers, ponds, drowned meadows, pastures, moors, plashe, meres, loughs and lakes, especially if well stored with islands unfrequented, and well furnished with shrubs, rushes, reeds, &c. and then they will breed there, and frequent those places both summer and winter.

HAW, a gristle which grows between the nether eye-lid and eye of a horse, and if not timely removed, will put it quite out.

It proceeds from gross, tough, and flegmatic humours, which fall from the head, and there uniting together, and indurating, at length come to this infirmity.

The signs by which this may be known, are, the watering of the eye, and the involuntary opening of the nether lid. Tho' every Farrier can cut it out; but ordinarily the horse must be held fast by the head, and, with a strong double thread, put a needle in the midst of the upper eye-lid, and tie it to his head; then take the needle again, with a long thread, and put it thro' the gristle of the *haw*, and with a sharp knife cut the skin finely round, and therewith pluck out the *haw*.

Then

H A W

Then take the blood out of his eye, wash it with beer or ale, and put in a good deal of salt, and afterwards wash it again, stroaking it down with your hand, and let him go.

HAWK ; this bird is distinguished into two kinds ; the *long-winged* and *short-winged hawk*.

Of the first, there are these, which are most in use here amongst us.

The <i>Gerfalcon</i> and <i>Ferkin</i> .	The <i>Merlin</i> and <i>Jack Merlin</i> .
The <i>Falcon</i> and <i>Tiercel Gentle</i> .	The <i>Hobby</i> and <i>Jack</i> .
The <i>Lanner</i> and <i>Lanneret</i> .	The <i>Stelletto</i> of <i>Spain</i> .
<i>Bockerel</i> and <i>Bockeret</i> .	The <i>Blood Red Rook</i> of <i>Turky</i> .
The <i>Saker</i> and <i>Sakeret</i> .	The <i>Waskite</i> from <i>Virginia</i> .

Of the short-winged *hawks*, there are these that follow.

The <i>Eagle</i> and <i>Iron</i> .	The <i>Sparrow-hawk</i> and <i>Musket</i> .
The <i>Goshawk</i> and <i>Tiercel</i> .	The two sorts of <i>French Pie</i> .

Of the inferior sort, are these.

The <i>Stanyel</i> , or <i>Ring Tail</i> .	The <i>Forked Kite</i> and <i>Bold Buzzard</i> .
The <i>Raven</i> and <i>Buzzard</i> .	The <i>Hen-driver</i> , &c.

Of the nature and disposition of hawks.

There is a certain *hawk* called a *blank hawk*, which is a loving, and double kind of *hawk* ; for she will diligently listen and give ear to you and your voice ; she will quickly learn to come to hand, being very eager and hot to seize whatsoever you shall either throw or give her, and will be very familiar : and when she has done what you would have her upon the ground, she will look up to your hand, and readily jump upon it.

These *hawks* are much subject to be infested with little grubs, which are ingendered in the guts, and discover themselves in their mewts, crawling out from them, shrinking themselves up, and then instantly dying.

These worms do but little harm, and that *hawk* which hath them is seldom bad.

The colour of these worms are *red* in a *slight falcon*, and *red* in a *barbary falcon* ; and when dead, in both *white*.

There is a kind of swarthy, black plumed *hawk*, that is good mettle, and a high flyer, but hard to be reclaimed ;

H A W

for she will neither mind you nor your voice, but when you lure her, will look another way than that she should.

However, you must shew yourself very loving to her, tho' you shall obtain no more from her than what you shall extort by force.

In order to reclaim her duly, abate her pride, by ordering her diet by measure; but having a regard to the weather, which, if it be mild and temperate, you need not fear to hold her down until you have quarried her; and as you find her mend her manners, mend her diet, and add to her strength with a reasonable expedition; which will soon be effected, if she be sound, and the weather moderate; but if the weather be frosty, have a care of abating her flesh.

When at any time you fly any one of these black or tawny *hawks*, and she stoops foul, and falls in her flight, you must take her down with some living thing.

If she be young, suffer not her (or any other *hawk*) to fly too long; for nothing is more prejudicial and distastful to a young *hawk* at her first making, than to let her toil, and make many stoopings before she be served; by this dislike she is induced to fly wide and carelessly, and frequently to go away by reason of displeasure.

Here it is to be observed, that the female of all birds of prey are much larger and of greater bulk than the male, and are more serviceable, being more watchful, hardy, and bold; but of such birds as do not prey, the cocks are the larger.

The *falcon*, *ger-falcon*, *mylion*, *merlin*, and *hobby*, do stoop, and seize their prey with their foot, breaking with their beak the neck-bone of the fowl, without pluming or tiring thereupon, till the fowl hath left busking or bating on the foot.

The *goss-hawk*, with her male the *tiercel*, and the *sparrow-hawk*, kill their game by strength and force of wing at random, and plume, and tire upon the prey instantly.

How to hood a Hawk.

Having sealed your *hawk*, fit her with a large, easy hood, which you must take off and put on very often, watching her two nights, handling her frequently and gently about the head.

When you find she has no aversion to the hood, unseal her in an evening by candle-light, continue handling her softly, often hooding and unhooding her, until she takes no offence at the hood, and will patiently endure handling.

Take this observation by the way, that it is the duty of a Falconer to be endued with a great deal of patience; and in the
next

H A W

next place, he ought to have a natural love and inclination to *hawks*: without these two qualifications, all the professors of this art will prove *Marr-hawks*, instead of good Falconers.

If your *hawk* which you sealed feeds well, abides the hood and handling without striking and biting, then unseal her by candle-light in an evening, and anoint the place where the sealing-thread was drawn through, with a little spittle on your finger, then hood her again, and hold her on your fist all night, often hooding, unhooding and handling her, stroaking her gently about the wings and body, giving her sometimes a bit or two; also tiring or plumage.

Your *hawk* being well reclaimed, let her sit upon a perch, but keep her every night three or four hours upon the fist, stroaking, hooding and unhooding, &c. as aforesaid; and thus you may do in the day-time, when she hath learned to feed eagerly without fear.

To make a Hawk know your voice, and her own feeding.

Having manned your *hawk* so that she feeds boldly, acquaint her with your voice, whistle, and such words as the Falconers use; this may be done by frequently repeating them to her, while she is feeding on your fist, &c.

When she feeds boldly, and knows your voice and whistle, then teach her to know her feeding, and to bate at it in the following manner: shew her some meat with your right hand, crying and luring to her aloud; if she bate or strike at it, then let her foot it quickly and neatly, and feed on it four or five bits. Do thus often, and she will know her feeding the better.

After this give her every night some casting, either of feathers, or cotton with cloves or aloes wrapt up therein, &c. These castings make a *hawk* clean and eager.

How to make a Hawk bold and adventurous.

In the first place, to make her hardy, you must permit her to plume a pullet, or large chicken, in a place where there is not much light: Her hood being in readiness, you must have either of the aforesaid fowls alive in your hand, then kneeling on the ground, luring and crying aloud to her, make her plume and pull the pullet a little; then with your teeth drawing the strings, unhood her softly, suffering her to pluck it with her beak three or four times more, then throw out the pullet on the ground, and encourage her to seize it.

When you have seen that she breaks it and takes blood, then lure and cry aloud to her, giving her encouragement all

H A W

the ways you can imagine ; then hood her again gently, and give her tiring of the wing or foot of the pullet.

How to make a Hawk know the lure.

The *hawk* having thus killed a pullet or large chicken three or four times, in some private place, afterwards teach her to know the lure as follows.

Fasten a pullet to your lure, go a-part, giving the *hawk* to another, who must draw loose the strings of her hood in readiness: Having retired a little way, take half the length of the string and cast it about your head, luring with your voice at the same time, then let the other person unhood the *hawk*, while you are throwing the lure a little way from her, you not ceasing to lure all the while.

If she stoop to the lure and seize, suffer her to plume the pullet, still coying and luring with your voice; then let her feed upon the pullet upon the lure, and afterwards take her on your fist, together with her meat, then hood her and let her tire as before directed.

And by doing thus, you may teach her to come by degrees to a very great distance.

How to make a Hawk flying.

When your *hawk* or *haggard falcon* will come and stoop to the lure readily, and without fear or coyness, then you must put her on a large pair of luring-bells, (and the like is to be done to a *soar-hawk*) and by so much as the *hawk* is giddy headed, and apt to rake out at check, by so much the larger must the bells be.

Having done this, and she being sharp-set, go in a fair morning into some large field, on horseback, (let the field be one that is very little encumbered with trees or wood) having your *hawk* on your fist, ride up into the wind, and having loosed her hood, whistle softly, to provoke her to fly, and then you will see that she will begin to bate, or at least to flap with her flags and sails, and to raise herself on your fist; then suffer her until she rouze or mewt, and when she hath done either of them, unhood her, and let her fly with her head into the wind, for by that means she will be the better able to get upon the wing and then she will naturally climb upwards, flying a circle.

After she has flown three or four turns, then cry and lure her with your voice, casting the lure about your head, having first tied a pullet to it; and if your falcon come in, and approach
near

H A W

near you, then cast out the lure into the wind, and if she stoop to it, reward her.

You will often find one great fault in making a *hawk* flying; that is, when she flies from the fist, she will not get up, but take stand on the ground; a fault which is very common with *soar-falcons*.

To remedy this, you must fright her up with your wand, riding in to her; and when you have forced her to take a turn or two, take her down to the lure and feed her.

But if this does not do, then you must have in readiness a duck sealed, so that she may see no way but backwards, and that will make her mount the higher.

Hold this duck in your right hand, by one of the wings, near the body, and then lure with your voice to make the falcon turn her head, and when she is at a reasonable pitch, cast your duck up just under her, that she may see it.

If she strike, stoop, or trufs the duck, permit her to kill it, and reward her, giving her a reasonable gorge.

Practise this two or three times, and your *hawk* will leave the stand, delighting to be on the wing, and will become very obedient.

Here observe, that it is not convenient to shew your *hawk* great or large fowl, the first or second time; for it frequently happens, that they slip from the *hawk* into the wind, the *hawk* not recovering them, raketh after them, which puts the Falconer to too much trouble, and often causes the loss of his *hawk*.

But if your *hawk* happens so to rake out with a fowl that she cannot recover it, but gives it over, and comes in again directly upon you, then cast out a sealed duck; and if she stoop and trufs it cros the wings, permit her to take her pleasure, rewarding her also with the heart, brains, tongue and liver.

If you have not a quick duck, take her down with the dry lure, and let her plume a pullet, and feed her upon it.

By doing thus, your *hawk* will learn to give over a fowl that rakes out, and hearing the Falconer's lure, will make back again to make to the river, and know the better to hold in the head.

How to remedy a Hawk's taking stand in a tree.

In the first place, you ought to make choice of such places, if you can, where there are no woods or trees, or at least as few as may be.

But if you cannot have such a place, let two or three men carry two or three live trains, placing them conveniently for

H A W

use, and when your *hawk* has stooped and endeavoured to go to stand, let him towards whom the *hawk* bends most, cast out his train-duck sealed, and if the *hawk* kill the duck, let her be rewarded with it.

If this method does not remedy that fault in the *hawk* by twice or thrice doing, some advise to part with the buzzard.

How to help a Hawk, froward and coy through pride of grease.

Some *hawks* have a scurvy quality, proceeding from pride of grease, or being high kept; and that is, a disdainful coynefs.

Therefore such a *hawk* must not be rewarded, altho' she does kill; but however you may give her leave to plume a little and then let the Falconer take a sheep's heart, cold, or the leg of a pullet, and when the *hawk* is busy a pluming, let either of them be conveyed into the body of the fowl, that it may favour of it; and when the *hawk* has eaten the heart, brains and tongue of the fowl, then take out your inclosure, and call your *hawk* with it to your fist, and feed her with it; and afterwards give her some feathers of the neck of the fowl, to scower and make her cast.

To make a Hawk hold in her head, and not mind check.

Fasten a piece of a leash to your lure-string, and at the other end the wing of a pigeon, which you may put in or pull out of your hawking-bag at your conveniency, and when you find your *hawk* apt to go out, shew her your pigeon: But this should not be used often, because if the *hawk* be well flown, it draws her from her place.

How to continue and keep a Hawk in her high flying.

If your *hawk* be a stately high-flying *hawk*, she ought not to be engaged in more than one flight in a morning, for often flying will bring her off from her stately pitch.

If she be well made for the river, let her not fly more than twice in a morning, but yet feed her altho' she should not kill.

When a high-flying *hawk* being whistled to gather upwards to a great gate, you must continue her therein, never flying her but upon broad waters and open rivers; and when she is at the highest, take her down with your lure, where, when she hath plumed and broken the fowl a little, then feed her up, and by that means you will keep your falcon up a high-flyer inwards, and very fond of the lure.

Some

H A W

Some will have this *high-flying falcon* seldom to kill, and not to stoop; yet if she kill every day, altho' she stoop from a high gate, yet if she be not rebuked or hurt therewith, she will become a higher flyer every day than other, but she will grow less fond of the lure.

For which reason your *high-flying hawks* ought to be made inwards, it being a commendable quality in them, to make in and turn head at the second or third toss of the lure, and when she pours down upon it as if she had killed.

As to the teaching of a falcon, or any other *hawk*, to come readily to, and love, the lure, is an art highly commendable, because it is the effect of great labour and industry; so it is the cause of saving many a *hawk*, which otherwise would be lost irrecoverably.

But take notice of this, that some naturally *high-flying hawks* will be a long time before they will be made upwards, still fishing and playing the slugs; and when they should get up to cover the fowl, they will stoop before the fowl be put out: and this may proceed from two causes, in the first place, she may be too sharp set, and in the next place, it may be she has been flown unseasonably, either too soon, or too late.

When you find a *hawk* use those unseasonable taches, without any visible cause, cast her out a dead fowl for a dead quarry, and hood her up instantly without reward, to discourage her from practising the like another time; and half an hour afterwards call her to the lure and feed her; and serve her after this manner as she fishes in that fashion.

Besides, to correct this error, the natures and dispositions of the *hawks* ought to be consulted, and observation made, which fly high when in good plight, and which best when they are kept low; which when sharpest set, and which on the contrary, in a mean between both; which early at sun-rising, which when the sun is but two hours high, and which sooner, and which later in the evening.

For as the natures or dispositions of *hawks* are different, so are the times to fly them; for to fly a *hawk* at her proper times, and to fly her out of them, is as disagreeable as the flight of a *gerfalcon* and a *buzzard*.

Therefore the Falconer uses to fly his *hawks* according to their natures and dispositions, always keeping them in good order.

Here also you may take notice, that all *hawks*, as well *soar-hawks*, as *mewed-hawks* and *haggards*, should be set out in the evening two or three hours, and some less, a regard being had to their nature, as it is either stronger or weaker: and so likewise in the morning, according as they cast, hooding them

H A W

them first, and then setting them abroad a weathering, until you get on horseback to set out upon your recreation.

The diseases and accidents incident to Hawks.

It is necessary that a skillful Falconer should know not only how to man, reclaim, keep, fly, imp, and mew his *hawk*, and other things pertinent to that purpose, but also to know their diseases, and the proper cures of them, and other accidents frequently befalling *hawks*, both in their flights and otherwise.

It will not be improper here to observe, that *hawks* as well as men (which may seem something strange) have four complexions, which are the true indicators of their natures; and as in man, his natural complexion and constitution is known by his skin, so is the temperament and natural disposition of a *hawk*, by her coat and plume.

This opinion hath not only been averred by the ancients, but confirmed by modern experience of the skillful in the art and exercise of hawking. Observe,

Falcons that are *black*, are *melancholic*, and are to be physick'd with hot and moist medicines, because their complexion is cold and dry, for which purpose, *aloes*, *pepper*, *cock's flesh*, *pigeons*, *sparrows*, *goat's flesh*, and the like, are very good.

Falcons *rufet* are *sanguine* and *choleric*, indifferently mixed, and their physic must be cold, moderately moist and dry, as *myrtle*, *cassia*, *fistula*, *tamerinds*, *vinegar*, *lamb's flesh*, and *pullets*.

As for the diseases and their cure, you may find them under their proper articles, in an alphabetical order.

To keep and maintain all manner of Hawks in health, good plight and liking.

In the first place, never give them a great gorge, especially of gross meats, as beef, pork, and such as are hard to be endewed and put over.

2. Never feed them with the flesh of any beast that hath lately gone to rut, for that will insensibly destroy them.

3. If you are constrained to give your *hawk* gross food, let it be first well soaked in clean water, and afterwards sufficiently wrung; in summer with cold water, in winter with lukewarm water.

Always take care to reward your *hawks* with some good live meat, or else they will be brought low; however, the serving them

H A W

them with washed meats, is the way to preserve and keep them in health.

For which purpose, the following is an excellent Receipt.

Take *germander*, *pelamountain*, *basil*, *grummer-seed*, and *broom-flowers*, of each half an ounce; *hyssop*, *sassafras*, *polipodium*, and *horse-mint*, of each a quarter of an ounce, and the like of *nutmegs*, *cubebs*, *borage*, *mummy*, *mugwort*, *sage*; and the four kinds of *mirabolans*, of each half an ounce; of *aloes Socotrina*, the fifth part of an ounce; and of *saffron*, a whole ounce.

Pulverize all these, and every eighth or twelfth day give your *hawks* the quantity of a bean thereof with their meat.

If they will not take it so, put it into a hen's gut, tied at both ends, and let him stand empty an hour after.

To remedy a Hawk that endeweth not, nor putteth over as she should do.

This happens either by being fowl within, or by a surfeit, or else when she was low and poor, her keeper over-gorged her, by being too hasty to set her up, and she being weak, was not able to put over and endew, and surfeited thereupon.

The cure of which is this; feed her with light meats, and a little at once, as with young rats and mice, chickens, or mutton dipped in goat's milk, or otherwise; or give her a quarter of a gorge of the yolk of an egg.

If you feed her with the flesh of any little fowl, first steep it well in the blood of the same fowl, and so will your *hawk* mount her flesh a-pace: If you also scour her with pills made of lard, marrow of beef, sugar and saffron, mixed together, and given her three mornings together; giving her also a reasonable gorge two hours after.

How to make a Hawk feed eagerly that hath lost her appetite, without bringing her low.

A *hawk* may lose her appetite by taking too great gorges in the evening, which she cannot well endew, or by being foul in the pannel, or sometimes by colds.

To remedy which, take *aloes Socotrina*, boiled sugar, and beef marrow, of each alike, only less of the *aloes*; incorporate these, and make them into balls, or pills as big as beans, and give of them to your *hawk*; and hold her in the sun till she hath cast up the filth and slime within her; then feed her not till noon,

at

H A W

at which time give her good meat; and three days after, for the same disease, it is good tiring on stock-doves, small birds, rats or mice.

How to raise a Hawk that is low and poor.

The poverty of a *hawk* may happen several ways, either by the ignorance of the Falconer of some latent, lurking distemper, or by her soaring away, and so being lost four or five days, in which time finding little or no prey, she becomes poor and lean.

To set her up again, you must feed her a little at once, and often, with good meat, and of light digestion, as small birds, rats, mice, &c. Or thus,

Take two spoonfuls of honey, four of fresh butter, and boil them together in a new earthen pot of water, then take pork well washed, and steep it in that water; giving the *hawk* a reasonable gorge thereof twice a-day; warming the water when you intend to feed your *hawk*; and get some snails that breed in running waters, and give them her in the morning, and they will not only scour away the gross slimy humours which are within, but also nourish her exceedingly.

How to cure a Hawk that is slothful, and averse to flying.

Oftentimes a *hawk* hath no mind to fly, either by reason of her ill keeping, that is, when she is kept by those who know not how to manage them rightly, as bowzing, bathing, &c. or because the *hawk* is too high and full of grease, or too poor and low; by the first she becomes proud and coy, and by the latter so weak, that she wants strength and spirit to perform it.

For the curing of this ill property, the *hawk* ought to be thoroughly viewed by some skillful Falconer, by whom such remedies should be administered to her as are needful for her; but above all, there is nothing like giving her in a morning three or four pills of celandine well washed.

HAYS; particular nets for taking of rabbits, hares, &c.

Common to be bought in shops that sell nets; and they may be had larger, or shorter, as you think fit; from fifteen to twenty fathom is a good length; and for depth, a fathom.

As rabbits often straggle abroad about mid-day for fresh grass; where you perceive any store gone forth to any remote brakes or thickets, pitch two or three of these *hays* about their burroughs; lye close there: but in case you have not nets enough to enclose all their burrows, some may be stopped with stones, bushes, &c.

Then

H E A

Then set out with the coney dog, to hunt up and down at a good distance, and draw on by degrees the man who is with you, and lies close by the *hay*, may take them as they bolt into it.

HAYWARD, or *haward*, a keeper of the common herd of cattle of the town, who is to look that they neither break nor crop the hedges of enclosed grounds, and is sworn in the Lord's court for the performance of his office.

HEAD *of a horse* should be narrow, lean and dry, neither should it be too long: but the main point is a good onset, so as he may be able to bring it into it's natural situation; which is, that all the fore-part, from the brow to the nose, be perpendicular to the ground, so that if a plummet were apply'd thereto, it would just raze or shave it.

Every *horse* that has a large head, is apt to rest and loll upon the bridle, and by that means, in a journey, tire the hand of the rider; and besides, he can never appear well with a large head, unless he has also a long and well-turned neck.

HEADS [*amongst Hunters*]; all those in deer that have double burs, or the antlers, royals and croches turned downwards, are properly termed *heads*.

HEADS of so many croches: All *heads* of deer, which do not bear above three or four, the croches being placed aloft, all of one height, in form of a cluster of nuts, generally go by this name.

HEARSE [*among Hunters*], a hind of the second year of her age. See BROCKET and HIND.

HEARTS; a horse of two hearts, *i. e.* a horse that works in the manage with constraint and irresolution, and cannot be brought to consent to it.

Such horses are much of a piece with your *Ramingues*, or kickers against the spurs.

HEAVY; to rest heavy upon the hand, is said of a horse, who, thro' the softness of his neck, weakness of his back, and weight of his fore-quarters, or, thro' weariness, throws himself upon the bridle, but withal, without making any resistance, or any effort to force the horseman's hand. Thus they say,

Your horse has too great an *appui* or rest upon the bridle; he is heavy upon the hand; trot him upon his haunches, and sustain or bear up with the bridle.

By stopping him, and making him go back frequently, you may make him light upon the hand, and so correct that fault, if it comes only from laziness and stiffness; but if it proceeds from a defect in the back, there is no remedy for it.

Tho' a horse is heavy upon the hand, yet that is not so great a fault as if he pressed and resisted the hand. See PRESS.

HEEL

HER

HEEL of a horse should be high and large, and one side of it should not rise higher upon the pastern than the other.

For distempers in this part, and their cures. See **SCABBYED HEELS** and **SCRATCHES**.

HEEL of a horse, is the lower hinder-part of the foot, comprehended between the quarters, and opposite to the toe.

This being the part that is armed with the spur, the word *heel* is taken from the spur itself: hence they say,

This horse understands the *heels* well; he knows the *heels*; he obeys the *heels*; he answers the *heels*; he is very well upon the *heels*: the meaning of all which is, that the horse obeys the spurs; which, in effect, is flying from them.

Make him fly from the right *heel*, make him fly from the left.

To ride a horse upon the *hand* and *heels*, is to make him take the aids of the *hands* and the *heels* with a tender sense.

To ride a horse from one *heel* to the other, is to make him go side-ways, sometimes to one *heel*, sometimes to another: for instance, having gone ten paces, in flying from the right *heel*, you make him, without stopping, go still side-ways in flying from the left *heel*, and so on alternately.

Inner *heel*, and outer *heel*. See **IN** and **NARROW**.

HEELER, or *bloody-heeled cock*; a fighting cock, that strikes or wounds much with his spurs. Cock-masters know such a cock, while a chicken, by the striking of his two heels together in his going.

HERBE (*grafs*); a word, in the *French Academies*, signifying a reward; or some good stuff given to a horse that was worked well in the manage.

HERBER; a *French* word used by the Farriers, importing the following application.

For some diseases, such as those of the head and the anticor, they put into a horse's counter a piece of hellebore root, which makes it swell and suppurate.

HERN, or *heron*, a large wild water-fowl, with a long neck and bill, that flies high, and feeds upon fish.

A *hern* at siege, is a *hern* standing at the water-side, and watching for prey.

A FLIGHT for the **HERN**: This flight hath less of art in it than pleasure to the beholders; and, to say the truth, the flight is stately and most noble.

It is less difficult to teach a hawk to fly at fowl, than it is to come unto and love the lure; the first being natural, and not the last; so that there is less industry to be used in making a hawk fly the *hern* than water-fowl.

H E R

To the first, she is instigated by a natural propensity and instigation; to the latter, she is brought with art and pains, and much diligence.

At the beginning of *March* hawks begin to make their passage: if therefore you will adapt your falcons for the *hern*, you must not let them fly longer at the river, and withal, you must pull them down to make them light; which is done by giving hearts, and flesh of lambs and calves, also chickens; but give them no wild meats.

HERN-HAWKING; for this flight, you ought to have a cast of hawks; and that they may be the better acquainted together, and be assistant to one another, call a cast of them to the lure at once, but have a care they do not crab together: when your hawk is clean scowred and sharp set, enter her for the game, by getting a live *hern*; which tie to a creance, or else disable it's wings that it cannot fly; and setting her on the ground, unhood her, and let her fly at the *hern*: if she seizes it, make in apace to her succour, and let her plume, and take blood thereon; that done, take the heart and give it her on the hawking-glove, ripping up the breast, and suffering her to plume thereon till she be well gorged; afterwards hood her, take her on the fist, and let her tire on the foot or pinion of the *hern*: Then let the Falconer cast the *hern* about his head, and lure her to come, not throwing it out, but staying till she come to seize it in his hand, and so let her feed thereon.

Having thus entered the *hawk*, let loose a *hern* in some fair field without a creance, or without arming her, and when she is up a reasonable height, cast off the *hawk*, and if she bind with the *hern*, and bring her down, make in apace to her help, thrusting the *hern's* bill into the ground, and breaking her wings and legs, so that the *hawk* may with more pleasure plume and foot, then reward her, &c.

Having thus entered her at a *train-bern*, you may let her fly at the wild *hern*, according to these directions.

When you have found one, get in as nigh as you can to her, going under the wind with your *hawk*, which must be a *ger-falcon* or a *jerkin*, with a *haggard-flight falcon* for the driver; thus having your hoods loose in a readiness, as soon as the *hern* is put up, and got upon her wings, throw off the driver, which makes in to her and causes her to work into the wind; then let go the *hawks* that are to fly her: but when they have worked above the *hern*, that they come thro' her, and by often doing, will occasion her coming to siege: make all the haste you can to assist them by breaking her legs and wings, and thrusting her bill into the ground. For this flight, you should always have a dog trained up to the sport, whose business is to come and kill

H E R

kill the *hern* : but in case the *hawk* fail to beat her down, or give over the flight, give her a *train-hern* or two more before you shew her another wild *hern* ; afterward fly her with the quarry that is well entered and in good flying, which make her, seeing the quarry-hawk fly at her, take fresh courage ; and when they have killed the *hern*, reward them together.

An approved method of taking a hern.

A *hern* is as great a devourer of fish as any is, and some presume to say, ten times as much as an *otter*, and will do more mischief in one week than an *otter* shall in three months.

Some affirm, that they have seen a *hern* that had been shot at in a pond, that had seventeen carps at once in his belly, which he would have digested in the space of six or seven hours, and then have betaken himself to fishing again.

Several gentlemen who have kept *herns* tame, have put fish in a tub, and have tried the *hern* how many small roaches and dace he would eat in a day ; and they have found that he eat about fifty in a day, one day with another.

One *hern* that haunts a pond, in twelve months time shall destroy a thousand store carps ; and when gentlemen search their ponds, they are apt to think that their neighbours have robbed them, not considering that a *hern* is able to devour them in half a year's time, altho' he put in half as many more.

Therefore it is very necessary to destroy this great destroyer.

Having found out the haunt of a *hern*, get three or four small roaches or dace, and have a strong hook with wire to it, draw the wire just within the skin of the said fish, beginning on the out-side of the gills, and running of it along to the tail, and the fish will live after it for five or six days.

But if the fish be dead, the *hern* will not meddle with him.

Take care that your hook be not too rank ; then having a strong line with silk and wire, about two yards and a half long, (if you do not twist wire with the silk, the sharpness of his bill will bite in two immediately) and tie round a stone about a pound weight to the line, and lay three or four hooks, and in two or three nights you will not fail to have him, if he comes to your pond.

Lay not your hooks so deep in the water that the *hern* cannot wade unto them.

Colour your line of a dark green, for a *hern* is a subtle bird.

HERN-SHAW, }
HERNERY, } a place where *herns* breed.

HIDE-

H O B

HIDE-BOUND, a distemper in horses, when the skin sticks so fast to the back and ribs, that you cannot pull it from the flesh with your hand.

This proceeds from several causes; sometimes from poverty, and want of good ordering; sometimes by being over-heated with hard riding, and carelessly letting him stand in the wet and rain; sometimes it proceeds from foul and corrupted blood, which dries up the flesh, which wanting it's natural course, causes this shrinking of the skin together, that makes him have a great, shrivelled, and shrunk up belly to his flanks, causing his hair to stare, and his legs to swell, &c.

There are various medicines prescribed for this distemper, which I shall forbear to recite, leaving them to the direction of the Farrier.

HIGH BEARING COCK, a term used with respect to fighting-cocks; which signifies one that is larger than the cock he fights with; as a *low bearing cock*, is one over-matched for height.

HIND, (*amongst Hunters*) a female stag so called in the third year of it's age.

HIND CALF, a male *hart*, or *hind* of the first year. She fawns in *April* and *May*.

HIP. See **HAUNCH**.

HIP-SHOT; a horse is said to be such, when he has wrung, or has sprained his haunches or hips, so as to relaxate the ligaments that keep the bone in it's due place.

HIP-SHOT, is when the *hip-bone* of an horse is removed out of it's place; this happens to a horse many ways; as by a wrench, stroke, or slip, strain, sliding, or falling.

The signs to know it, are, the horse will halt, and go side-ling, and the sore *hip* will fall lower than the other, nay, in time, the flesh will consume away; so that if it be let alone too long, it will never be cured. See **STRAINS**.

HOBBY: The *hobby* is a hawk of the lure, and not of the fist, and is a high flier, and is, in every respect, like the saker, but that she is a much lesser bird.

The *hobby* hath a blue beak, but the feet thereof, and legs, are yellow; the crinets or little feathers under her eye are very black; the top of her head is betwixt black and yellow, and she hath two white seams on her neck, the plumes under the gorge, and about the brows are reddish without spot or drop, the breast feathers for the most part brown, yet interspersed with white spots; her back, train, and wings are black aloft, having no great scales upon the legs, unless it be a few beginning behind; the three stretchers and pounces, are very large with respect to

H O O

her short legs ; her brail feathers are tinged between red and black ; the pendant ones, or those behind the thigh, of a rusty, smoaky hue.

This bird of prey may well be called, the *daring hobby* ; for she is not only nimble and light of wing, but dares encounter kites, buzzards, and crows, and will give souse for souse, blow for blow, till sometimes they siege, and come tumbling down to the ground both together : they are chiefly for the lark, which poor little creature does so dread the sight of her soaring in the air over her, that she will rather choose to commit herself to the mercy of men or dogs, or be trampled on by horses, than venture into the element, where she sees her mortal enemy soaring.

This bird makes excellent sport with nets, and spaniels, for when the dogs range the field to spring the fowl, the *hobby* soars aloft over them ; the silly birds apprehensive of a conspiracy amongst the *hawks* and dogs to their utter ruin, dare not commit themselves to their wings, but think it safer to lie close to the ground, and so are taken in the nets : and this sport is called *daring*.

HOG-STEER (*amongst Hunters*) a wild boar three years old.

HOLD, as a mare holds. See **RETAIN**.

HOODING a *hawk* ; when you have seeled her, fit her with a large easy hood, which is to be taken off and put on very often, watching her two nights, and handling her frequently and gently about the head : when you perceive she has no aversion to the hood, unseal her in an evening by candle-light, continuing to handle, hood and unhood her, as before, till at last she takes no offence, but will patiently endure handling : after unsealing, anoint with your finger and spittle the place where the feeling-thread was drawn thro' ; then hood her, and hold her on your fist all night : as soon as she is well reclaimed, let her sit upon a perch, but every night keep her on the fist three or four hours, stroaking, hooding, and unhooding her, &c.

And thus you may do in the day-time, when she hath learned to feed eagerly and without fear.

HOOF of a horse, is all the horn that appears when his foot is set to the ground : The hoof should be of a figure very near round, and not longish, especially toward the heel, for long feet are worth nothing.

The horn of the *hoof* should be solid, tough, high, smooth, without any circles, somewhat shining, and of a dark colour, for the white is commonly brittle, and may be known by many pieces being broke from the horn round the foot : to be excellent,

the horn should be of the colour of a deer's *hoof*, and the whole foot round but a little larger below than above.

The *hoofs* of a horse are either perfect or imperfect; the former, but now described, is so disposed, that the horse may tread more on the toe than the heel, being also upright, and somewhat hollow on the inside.

1. As for the imperfect *hoof*, it is that which wants any of the afore-mentioned qualities, particularly, if it be not round, but broad, and spreading out of the sides and quarters; that horse, for the most part, has narrow heels, and, in process of time, will be flat-hoofed, neither will he carry a shoe long, or travel far, but soon surbate; and by treading more upon the heels than on the toes, he will go low on the pasterns, so that his feet, thro' weakness, become subject to false quarters, graveling, &c.

2. Others are rugged, or brittle-hoofed: when the *hoof* is not smooth, and full of circles like rams horns, it is not only unseemly to the eye, but even a sign that the foot is in no good temper, but too hot and dry.

3. Some *hoofs* are long, which cause the horse to tread all upon the heels, to go low in the pasterns, and by that means to breed wind-galls.

4. There are some crooked *hoofs*, broad on the outides, and narrow on the inside, whereby the horse is play-footed; this will oblige him to tread more inward than outward, and go so close with his joints together, that he cannot well travel without interfering, or perhaps striking one leg so hard against the other as to become lame; but if it be broad within, and narrow without, that is not hurtful, yet it will occasion the horse's graveling more on the outside than the inside.

5. Others have flat *hoofs*, and not hollow within, which give rise to the inconveniencies above specified in the first sort of imperfect *hoofs*; but if it be over hollow, it will dry the faster, and make him hoof-bound, since the over-hollow *hoof* is a strait, narrow one, and grows upright; for tho' the horse treads upright, and not on his heels, yet such kind of *hoofs* will dry over fast, if not continually stopped.

6. When the frush is broad, the heels will be weak, and so soft, that you may almost band them together, then he will never tread boldly on the stones or hard ground.

7. Some have narrow heels; they are tenderest, that at last the horse will grow to be hoof-bound. See SHOEING.

HOOF BONY, is a round bony swelling, growing upon the very top of an horse's *hoof*, and always is caused by some blow or bruise, or by bruising himself in his stall, by endeavouring

H O O

ing to strike at a horse that stands next him, and so strikes against the bar that parts them.

The cure is, first to digest the swelling, either with rotten litter, or hay boiled in old urine, or else with a plaister of wine-lees and wheaten-flower boiled together to ripen it and bring it to a suppuration, or else to dissolve the tumor.

But if it come to a head, lance it in the lowest part of the softness, with a thin hot iron to let out the matter.

Then tent it with turpentine, deer's suet and wax, of each like quantities melted together; laying a plaister of the same salve over it, to keep in the tent till it be thoroughly well.

HOOF-BOUND, in a horse, is a shrinking of the *hoof* at the top, and at the heel, which makes the skin stare above the *hoof*, and so grow over it.

It may happen to a horse divers ways; either by keeping him too dry in the stable, by strait shoeing, or else by some unnatural heat after foundering.

The signs of it are, he will halt much; his hoofs will be hot, and if you knock them with a hammer, they will sound hollow like an empty bottle.

As for the cure, that being the proper business of the Farrier, I shall omit to prescribe for it here.

HOOF-BRITTLE, an infirmity in horses, proceeding either naturally or accidentally; naturally from the fire or dam; accidentally from a surfeit, that falls down into their feet; or else from the horse's having been formerly foundered.

For the cure, take unwrought wax, turpentine, sheep's suet and hog's grease, of each four ounces; salad oil, a quarter of a pint, and of dog's grease, half a pound; boil them all together, and keep them in a gally-pot for use.

With this anoint the *hoof* well for two or three days, especially at the setting on of the hair, and stop them with cowdung and dog's-grease melted together.

HOOF-CAST, or, *casting of the hoof*, is, when the coffin falls clean away from a horse's foot.

HOOF-SWELLED; an infirmity that sometimes happens to young horses by being over-ridden, or too hard wrought, which causes them to swell in that part, by reason of the blood falling down and settling there, which, if not speedily removed, will beget a wet spavin.

It proceeds from some founder, prick, or flap, breaking on the top round about the coronet, which in time causes it to fall off.

For the cure, take the strongest *aqua fortis* you can get, and first file or draw away the old *hoof* somewhat near with a file or drawing-iron; then touch the *hoof*, so prepared, three or four

H O R

four dressings or more, with the *aqua fortis*, and anoint the foot with an ointment made of one pound of hog's grease, patch grease, three quarters of a pound; *Venice* turpentine, five ounces; new wax, three ounces, and fallad oil, three ounces; all melted together over the fire: the coffin of the foot, up to the top, being anointed with this, a new hoof will grow on it.

HOOF-LOOSENED, is an infirmity in a horse; it is a dissolution or dividing of the horn or coffin of his hoof from the flesh, at the setting on of the coronet.

Now if the paring be round about the coronet, it proceeds from his being foundered; if in part, then by a prick of some channel nail, quitter-bone, retreat, gravelling, cloying, or the like,

When the hoof is loosened by foundering, it will break first in the fore part of the coronet, right against the toes, because the humours also are disposed to descend towards the toe.

But if it proceeds from pricking, gravelling, and the like, then the hoof will loosen round about equally at first; but if it be caused by a quitter-bone, or hurt upon the coronet, it will break right above the grieved part, and is very rarely known to go any farther: as for the cure of the former, they are properly the business of a Farrier.

HORN. See **HOOF**.

HORN; to give a stroke with the horn, is to blood a horse in the roof of the mouth, with the horn of a stag or roe-buck, the tip and end of which is so sharp and pointed, as to perform the office of a lancet.

We strike with the horn in the middle of the fourth notch, or ridge of the upper jaw.

HORN-GELD, a tax within the bounds of a forest, for all manner of horned beasts.

HORSE, a four-footed animal, of great use to mankind, especially in the country; this creature being by nature valiant, strong, and nimble, above all other beasts, most able and apt to endure the extremest labours, the moist quality of his composition being such, that neither extreme heat dries up his strength, nor the violence of the cold freezes the warm temper of his moving spirits: He is most gentle and loving to man, apt to be taught, and not forgetful when an impression is fix'd in his brain, being watchful above all other beasts, and will endure his labour with the most empty stomach. He is naturally given to much cleanliness, and has an excellent scent, and not so much as to offend any man with his ill savours.

Now for his shapes in general; the usual character is, that he must have the eyes and joints of an ox, the strength and foot of a mule, the hoofs and thighs of an ass, the throat and neck of a

H O R S E

wolf, the ear and tail of a fox, the breast and hair of a woman, the boldness of a lion, the shape and quick-lightedness of a serpent, the face of a cat, the lightness and nimbleness of a hare, a high pace, a deliberate trot, a pleasant gallop, a swift running, a rebounding leap, and to be present, and be quick in hand.

As to his colours, the Reader is referred to the article, *Colours of a horse*; only it is fit to mention here, that the best colours are the brown bay, dapple-grey, Roan, bright bay, black with a white near-foot behind, white fore-foot before, white star; chesnut or sorrel with any of these marks, or dun with a black list.

But to return to the more particular shapes of a horse, and so set them in view in the comeliest manner, it is required that the hoof be black, smooth, large, dry, round, and hollow; the pasterns strait and upright, fetlocks short; the legs strait and flat, called also, lash-legged; the knees bony, lean, and round; the neck long, high reared, and great towards the breast; the breast large and round; the ears long, sharp, small, and upright; the forehead lean and large; the eyes great, full, and black; the brows well filled, and shooting outwards; the jaws slender and lean, wide and open; the mouth great; the head large and lean, like to a sheep; the mane thin and large; the withers sharp and pointed; the back short, even, plain, and double chined; the sides and ribs deep, large, and bearing out like the cover of a trunk, and close shut at the huckle bone; the belly long and great, but hid under the ribs; the flanks full, but yet gaunt; the rump round, plain, and broad, with a large space between the buttocks; the thighs long and large, with well fashioned bones, and those fleshy; the hams dry and strait; the truncheon small, long, well set on, and well couched; the train long, not too thick, and falling to the ground; the yard and stones small; and he should be well risen before. We will conclude with the description of a famous Horseman, in few words.

The horse should have a broad forehead, a great eye, a lean head; thin, slender, lean, wide jaws; a long, high, rearing neck; rearing withers; a broad, deep, chest and body, upright pasterns, and narrow hoofs.

There are very many things relating to a horse, and very necessary to be known, which will be found under their proper articles; only there are a few which are not so conveniently reducible under such heads, which must have room here.

To begin with turning a horse to grass: you ought, eight or nine days before you do it, to take blood of him; next day after, give him the drink called *diapente*, and in a day or two after his drink, abate of his cloaths by degrees, before you

H O R

you turn him out, lest by doing them on a sudden he should take cold; and curry him not at all after his cloaths are taken off, but let him stand in his dust, for that will keep him warm; neither is it proper to put him out till the middle of *May*, at soonest, for till that time grass will not have bite enough; and let the day be warm, sun-shine, and about ten o'clock, for horses pampered in stables, and kept close, will be very subject to take cold.

To take him up from grass, he must be very dry, else he will be subject to be scabby; and that not later than *Bartholomew-tide*, when the season begins to let cold dews fall, that cause much harm to your horse; and then also the heart of the grass begins to fail, insomuch, that the grass which he then feeds upon breeds no good nourishment, but gross, phlegmatic, and cold humours, which putrify and corrupt the blood; and take him up very quickly, for fear of melting his grease, his fat gotten at grass being very tender: then a day or two after he is in the stable, let him be shod, let blood, and drenched, which will prevent the staggers, yellows, and the like distempers, occasioned by the gall and spleen, which the heart and strength of the grass, through the rankness of the blood, engenders in the body.

But the curious, after they have taken the horse into the stable, before they either blood or drench him, in a hot, sun-shining day, take him out into a convenient place, and there trim him; and then taking ordinary washing soap, anoint his head and every part of him with it all over, having care that none gets into his eyes and ears; then they wash him very well all over with warm water, and wipe him with a warm linnen cloth, and afterwards rub him dry with woollen cloths; then soap him all over again, especially his mane and tail, and wash him very clean with back lee, with a wisp or woollen cloth, and when they have sufficiently cleansed him, dry him as before, and leading him into the stable, let him be cleansed with a clean, thin, soft cloth.

So much for turning in, and out of grass. There are two or three things more to be added, that are of some significancy in reference to this noble creature; and the first is, to make a horse follow his master, and to find him out and challenge him amongst ever so many people.

Take a pound of oatmeal, to which put a quarter of a pound of honey, and half a pound of liquorice, make a little cake thereof, and put into your bosom next to your naked skin, then run and labour your self till you sweat, and so rub all your sweat upon your cake; then keep the horse fasting a day and a night and give it him to eat, which done, turn him loose,

H O R

and he shall not only follow you, but also hunt and seek you out when he has lost you; and when he comes to you, spit in his mouth, anoint his tongue with your spittle, and thus doing, he will never forsake you.

Another thing, is to shew how to make a horse look young: take a crooked iron, no bigger than a wheat corn, and having made it red hot, burn a little black hole in the tops of the two outermost teeth of each side the nether chap before, next to the tushes where the mark is worn out, then pick it with an awl blade, and make the shell fine and thin; then with a sharp scraping-iron make all his teeth white and clean; this done, take a fine lancet, and about the hollows of the horse's eyes which are shrunk down, make a little hole only thro' the skin, and put in the quill of a raven or crow, and blow the skin full of wind; then take the quill out, lay your finger on the hole a little while, and the wind will stay in, and he will look as youthful as if he were but six years old.

This way of making a horse look young, is by horse-courfers called *bishoping*, and is necessary to be known by countrymen and others, not to cheat others with, but to prevent their being cheated themselves; and therefore they should have great regard to the *Rules for buying horses*, which is an article by itself, and to which all persons are referred to whom it may concern.

There may be other lawful occasions, besides service of war, to prevent a horse from neighing; for which end, take a list of woollen cloth, and tying it fast in many folds about the midst of his voice, or wind-pipe, and it will do, for it has been often tried and approved. See MARES, HORSE-FEEDER, TRAVELLING-HORSE, DRAUGHT-HORSE, STALLIONS, HORSE'S AGE, COLOURS of a Horse, COLT-TAMING, STUD, &c. You will likewise meet with the several diseases incident to horses, under their names, together with the several methods and prescriptions for the cures, too long to be here named.

HORSE-FEEDER; there are many observations to be made by one engaged in this office, in order to perform it well, especially when he has the care of running-horses, but we shall only mention a few.

1. As to meat or drink, if there be any such, or other nourishment that he knows good for a horse, which yet the beast refuses, you must not thrust it violently upon him, but by gentle enticements win him thereto, tempting him when he is most hungry or most dry; if he get but a bit at a time, he will soon increase to a greater quantity.

Ever let him have less than he desires; and that he may be brought the sooner to it, mix the meat he loves best with that
he

H O R

he loves worst, till both be alike familiar, so shall he be a stranger to nothing that is good and wholesome.

2. If he finds his horse subject to stiffness and lameness to the surbate, or to tenderness of feet, then he should give him his heat upon smooth carpet earth, or forbear strong grounds, hard high-ways, cross-ruts and furrows, till extremity compel him.

3. For the condition of a horse's body, he must account the strongest state which is the highest and fullest of flesh, so it be good, hard, without inward foulness, to be the best and most proper for the performing of matches: and herein you must consider, first, the shape of a horse's body, there being some that are round, plump, and close knit together, which will appear fat and well shaped, when they are lean and in poverty; while others that are raw-boned, slender, and loose knit, will appear lean and deformed, when they are fat, foul, and full of gross humours.

So likewise for their inclinations; for some horses at the first, feed outwardly, and carry a thick rib, when they are inwardly as lean as may be; whereas others appear lean to the eye, when they are only greafe.

In which case the feeder has two helps to advantage his knowledge, the outward, and the inward one.

4. The first is, the outward handling and feeling the horse's body all over his ribs, but particularly upon his short and hindermost ribs, and if his flesh generally handle soft and loose, and the fingers sink therein as in down, he is foul without all question; but if it be hard and firm, and only soft upon the hindermost rib, he has greafe and foul matter within him, which must be voided whatever comes of it. And for the inward help, that is only sharp exercise, and strong scouring, the first to dissolve, and the latter to bring it away.

5. It is the feeder's business to observe the horse's stones, for if they hang downwards, or low from his body, he is out of lust and heart, and is either sick of greafe or other foul humours; but in case they lie close trussed up, and hid in a small room, then he is healthful, and in good plight.

6. As to his limbs, the feeder or groom must ever before he runs any match or sore heat, bathe his legs, from the knees and gambrels downwards, either with clarified dog's greafe, (which is the best) or trotter oil, that is next to it, or else the best hog's greafe, which is sufficient, and work it in well with his hands, not with fire, for what he gets not in the first night, will be got in the next morning, and what is not got in then, will be got in when he comes to uncloath at the end

of

H O R

of the course; so that the ointment need be used but once, but the rubbing as often as there is opportunity.

7. The feeder may in any of the latter fortnights of a running horse's feeding, if he finds him clear, and his grease consumed, about six in the evening, give him water in a reasonable quantity, made luke-warm, keeping him fasting an hour after: also, if through the unseasonableness of the weather you cannot water him abroad, then at your watering hours you are to do it in the house, with warm water, and an handful of wheat meal, bran, or oatmeal, finely powdered, (which last is the best) put into the water, which is very wholesome.

8. The rider is farther to note, that if the ground whereon the horse is to run his match, be dangerous, and apt for bad accidents, as strains, over-reaches, sinew-bruises, and the like, that then he is not bound to give him his heats thereon, but having made him acquainted with the nature thereof, let him take part of the course, as a mile, two, or three, according to the goodness of the ground, and so run him forth again, (which are called turning-heats) provided always he end his heat at the weighing-post, and make not his course less, but more in quantity than that he must run.

If for some special causes he like no part of the course, he may often, but not ever, give his heat upon any other ground about any spacious and large field, where the horse may lay down his body and run at pleasure.

9. He must have special regard to all airings, breathings, and other exercises whatever; to the sweating of the horse, and the occasion, as if he sweat on little or no occasion, as walking a foot-pace, standing still in the stable, and the like; this shews that the horse is faint, foul fed, and wants exercise: But if upon good occasions, as strong heats, great labour, and the like, he sweat, and it is a white froth like soap-suds, he is inwardly foul, and also wants exercise: again, if the sweat be black, and as it were only water thrown upon him, without any frothiness, then he is cleansed, and in good lust, and good case, and may be rid without any danger.

10. And lastly, he should observe his hair in general, but especially on his neck, and those parts that are uncovered, for if they lie sleek, smooth, and close, holding the beauty of their natural colour, the horse is in good case; but if rough and staring, or discoloured, he must be inwardly cold at heart, and wants both cloaths and warm keeping.

HORSE-HAIR NOOSES, are devices to take birds by the necks or legs, sometimes by both; the most proper places for that purpose, being amongst bushes and small coppices, and the manner thus,

Make

H O R

Make little hedge-rows, about half a foot high, by sticking small furz-bushes, brambles, or thorns, &c. in direct or crooked lines, of such a length and number as you think fit, according to the game you suppose the place may afford; and then at several distances, leave little open spaces big enough for the birds to pass through. *See what is here represented in the figure.* The letters A, B, C, shew the passages or void spaces, in every one of which you must fix a short stick, of the bigness of one's finger, and tie thereto a noose of horse-hair, finely twisted, with a slip-knot, that the fowl endeavouring to pass thro' may draw it upon his neck, and so be strangled.

But for woodcocks, the springes are to be laid flat on the ground, to catch them by the legs; and good store of partridges may also be taken by these devices, set a-crofs a ploughed furrow, in the bottom, in case there be any in the field.

HORSE-LOCK and KEY, an instrument to open a horse's fetter, or chainlock.

It is a square iron plate, bent at one end, having a square hole and nicks in one part of it, to answer the springs and wards within the bolt; the other end is bent half round, with a small turn at the end to make it look handsome.

HORSE-MEASURE, a rod of box to slide out of a cane, with a square at the end, being divided into hands and inches, to measure the height of horses.

HORSE-SHOE; of these there are several sorts: 1. That called the planch-shoe, or pancelet, which makes a good foot, and a bad leg, by reason it causes the foot to grow beyond the measure of the leg; tho' for a weak heel 'tis exceeding good, and will last longer than any shoe, being borrowed from the moil, that has weak heels and frushes, to keep the feet from stones and gravel.

2. Shoes with calkins, which tho' they be intended to secure the horse from sliding, yet they do him more harm than good, in that he cannot tread evenly upon the ground, whereby many times he wrenches his foot, or strains some sinews, more especially upon stony ways, where the stones will not suffer his calkins to enter, the foot slips with more violence; tho' some do not think a horse well shod unless all his shoes be made with calkins, either single or double; however the double ones are less hurtful, for he will tread evener with them than with single calkins, but they must not be over long, or sharp pointed, but rather short and flat.

3. There are shoes for rings, which were first invented to make a horse lift his feet up high, tho' such shoes are more painful than helpful, and 'tis an unhandsome sight: this defect is incident to most horses that have not sound hoofs, for tender feet

H O R

feet fear to touch the ground that is hard : but what is intended for a remedy, proves a prejudice to the horse, by adding high calkins, or else these rings to his shoes, for by that means he is made to have weaker heels than before.

4. Shoes with swelling welts, or borders round about them, are used in *Germany*, &c. which being higher than the heads of the nails, save them from wearing; and these are the best lasting shoes, if made of well tempered stuff, for they wear equally in all parts, and the horse treads equally upon them.

5. Others that use to pass mountains where smiths are not so easily to be met with, carry shoes about them with vices, whereby they fasten them to the horse's hoof without the help of the hammer or nail, notwithstanding 'tis more for shew than any good service; for tho' this sort of shoe may save his feet from stones, yet it so pinches his hoof, that he goes with pain, and perhaps injures it more than the stones do: therefore upon such emergent occasions, 'tis better to make use of a joint-shoe, which is made of two pieces, with a flat rivet-nail joining them together in the toe, so that you may make it both wide and narrow to serve any foot.

6. The patten-shoe, is necessary for a horse that is burnt in the hip, stifle, or shoulder, which will cause him to bear upon that leg the grief is on, and consequently use it the better.

7. A shoe proper for flat feet.

8. The panton, or pantable-shoe, which opens the heels, and helps hoof-binding.

These are of admirable use, in regard that they never shift upon the feet, and continue firm in one place.

9. And lastly, the half panton shoe.

HORSE-RACING; a diversion more used in *England* than in all the world beside. Horses for this use should be as light as possible, large, long, but well shaped; with a short back, long sides, and a little long-legged, and narrow-breasted, for such will gallop the lighter and nimbler, and run the faster. *Soleysel* says, he should be somewhat long bodied, nervous, of great mettle, good wind, good appetite, very swift, and sensible of the spurs; that he ought to be of an *English* breed, or *barb*, of a little size, with pretty small legs, but the back sinews a good distance from the bone, short-jointed, and have neat, well-shaped feet.

The excellent breed we have of horses for racing in our own country, though through several abuses they have been unfortunately mischievous to a great many persons, yet if rightly regulated and made use of, might be very advantageous, as well as pleasant and diverting to men of quality; and that is by having *Plates* run for at several times, and in several countries,

H O R

by which we may come exactly to know the speed, wind, force, and heart of every horse that runs, which directs us infallibly in our choice, when we would furnish our selves for hunting, breeding, road, and the like; whereas without such trials, we must stand to the hazard, and not be at any certainty to meet with good ones. A horse may travel well, hunt well, and the like, and yet when he comes to be pressed hard, and forced to the extremity of what he can do, may not prove good at heart; and more particularly, some racers have been only beaten by their hearts sinking in them (that have wanted neither wind nor speed) when they come to be hard pressed.

It were indeed to be wished, that our Nobility and Gentry would not make so much a trade of racing; and when they run only for plates, or their matches, that they would do it for no more than may be lost without damaging the estates; but to run so great a sum, that the loss cannot be well born, and consequently endeavouring to win the same, if not more back again, it draws them into vast expence, by way of preparation for revenge, the consequences of which need not be mentioned. On the other hand, if a person proves successful, he is but too apt to fancy he shall prove so again, and sets up for a brother of the *spur*, and runs so fast, that sometimes neither estate nor friends can keep along with him, and so turns his diversion into misfortunes, a practice contrary to the good oeconomy designed in the whole course of this work.

As to the method of ordered *running-horses*, or what is called *keeping*, since Noblemen and Gentlemen will do so, they will find what is proper to be done in that respect under the article *Running-horses*, and therefore we will only here suppose a horse set to run for a *plate*, and that the hour of starting is at hand, when the drum beats or the trumpet sounds, according to the custom of the place where you run, to give notice for stripping and weighing; be sure in the first place, to have your stomach empty, only take something to keep out the wind, and to strengthen you: if you are light, that you must carry weight, let it be equally quilted in your wastecoat; but it is better if you are just weight, for then you have no more to do than to dress you, according to your own fancy; your cloaths should be of coloured silk, or of white *holland*, as being very advantageous to the spectators; your wastecoat and drawers must be made close to your body, and on your head a little cap tied on; let your boots be gartered up fast, and your spurs must be of good metal; then mount and come to the starting-place, where going off briskly or gently, as occasion requires, make your horse perform the course or heat, according to your intended design, particularly, if you would win the same, and that your horse excels

H O R

excels in goodness more than speed, start him off roundly, and run him to the very top of what he can do, during the whole course or heat; and by that means, if the horse you run against be not so good at the bottom, tho' he has more speed, you shall beat him, because he will be run off of it a great way before he comes to the end. But on the contrary, if your horse's talent be speed, all that you can do is to wait upon the other horse, and keep behind till you come almost to the stand, and then endeavour to give a loose by him: sometimes when you are to run more heats than one, it will be your policy to lose a heat; and in that case you must, for the easing and safeguard of your horse, lie behind all the way as much as you can, provided you bring him in within distance.

The posture to be observed is, that you place your self upon your twist, with your knees firm, and your stirrups just at such a length, that your feet, when they are thrust home in them, you can raise your self a little in the saddle, for your legs, without that allowance, will not be firm when you come to run; the counter-poize of your body must be forward, to facilitate your horse's running, and your elbows must be close to your body; but be sure, above all things, that you do not incommode your horse by swagging this or that way, as some do, for since weight is a great matter in running, and that a troublesome rider is as bad as so much more weight, there is no need to say how necessary it is to take great care of your seat and hand; you must therefore beware of holding your self by the bridle, or of jobbing your horse's mouth upon any occasion; you must take your right rein in the same hand, holding up *horse*, &c. as you find it necessary, and every now and then remove the bridle in his mouth. But these things are best learned by experience and practice.

A Plate being to be run for by heats, every man that rides must be just weight at starting, in great scales for that purpose, and at the end of the same heat, for if you want of your weight at coming in, you shall lose your heat, tho' you are the first horse: you have half an hour between the first and second, to rub your horses, and at the warning of the drum and trumpet again, you mount, &c. as before, and so till all is done, which is three, and sometimes three heats and a course.

Nothing need be said of the ceremonies relating to the judges, and the articles by which *plate-races* and *matches* are regulated, since they are settled according to the different customs of the places where you run.

If you do not breed *racers* your self, be sure you buy no horse that has not extraordinary good blood in his veins, for the charge of keeping is great, and a good one eats no more than a bad,
and

H U N

and requires no more attendance; some to save twenty or thirty guineas in the price of a young *horse*, have lost hundreds by him afterwards.

A *horse* that you have tried once or twice at a twelve-stone plate, you may be sure will make an extraordinary good hunter; and you are to observe, that the posture, manner of riding, &c. is the same in a match as in a plate-race, only that there being but a single course to be run, you must push for all at that one time; whereas when there are several heats, there is more saving, and variety of play.

To **HOVER**, to flutter or fly over, with wings stretched out; to hang over.

HOUGH, or *ham of a horse*, is the joint of the hinder quarter, which joins the thigh to the leg.

HOUGH-BONY; a swelling on the tip or elbow of the *hough* in a horse's hinder-quarters, about as big as half a tennis-ball.

To **HOUND** a stag (*among Hunters*), to cast the dogs at him.

HOUND, a hunting-dog. See the different kinds under the articles **GRAY-HOUND**, **BLOOD-HOUND**, &c. also a kind of fish.

HOUZING, is either boot-houzing or shoe-houzing; the former is a piece of stuff made fast to the hinder-part of the saddle, which covers the croupe of the horse, either for ornament, or to cover the horse's leanness, or to preserve the rider's cloaths, and keep them from being daubed with the sweat of the horse.

The *houzing*, for such as ride with shoes, is commonly a piece of scarlet cloth embroidered with gold fringe, and put round the saddle so as to cover the croupe, and descend to the lower part of the belly to save the gentleman's silk stockings, when he mounts in his shoes.

HUNGRY EVIL, is an inordinate desire, in horses, to eat.

It proceeds either from great emptiness or want of food, when the beast is even at the utmost pinch, and almost chap-fallen; tho' it sometimes proceeds from cold outwardly taken; sometimes by travelling long in frost and snow, or thro' barren places: this outward cold affecting the stomach so far, that it's action and faculties are depraved.

The tokens of this distemper, are an alteration in the horse's manner of feeding, when he has lost all manner of temperance, and chops at his meat, as if he would even devour the manger.

H U N T

For the cure: In order to comfort his stomach, give him great slices of bread toasted and steeped in sack; or give him wheat-flower in wine, or wheat-meal in milk, a quart at a time, or else let him eat bread made of pine-nuts.

But there is nothing better than to feed him moderately several times in a day with good bean-bread well baked, or oats well dried and sifted.

To HUNT; the pursuing of birds or four-footed beasts, of which there are several sorts, which differ according as the animals are, which you hunt, and the places where they are; four-footed beasts are hunted in the fields, woods, and thickets: they kill them with guns, and others shoot birds in the air, take them with nets, or birds of prey; make use of greyhounds for deer, does, roebucks, and even foxes, hares, and conyes, &c.

Hunting indeed is a noble game and recreation, not only commendable for Princes and great men, but gentlemen, and others too, there being nothing that does recreate the mind more, strengthen the limbs, whet the stomach, and chear up the spirits; so that it was merited the esteem of all ages and nations, how barbarous soever they might have been.

Hunting is admirably described under the heads of animals which are hunted, whether with dogs, taken with nets, or by birds of prey; which the reader is referred to.

All sorts of weathers are not proper for hunting; high winds and rain are obstacles to this diversion.

In the spring-time, you must take it in the night with nets; in the summer, it is the diversion of the morning; but in the winter, it should not be followed but from nine in the morning till two in the afternoon. The general rule is, that you place yourself under the wind where you seek to wait for game; and the way to know it, is, to take a piece of paper, and observe which way the wind blows it.

To HUNT Change, is, when the hounds or beagles take fresh scent, and follow another chace, till they stick and hit it again.

To HUNT Counter, signifies that the hounds hunt it by the heel.

HUNTING the Foil, is a term or phrase used of the chaces going off, and coming on again, traversing the same ground to deceive the hounds or beagles.

HUNTING-HORSE; a horse designed for this manly exercise, whose shape should be generally strong and well knit together, making equal proportions; for you are to observe, that which has unequal shapes shew weakness, so equal ones shew strength and durance; and what we call unequal, are a great head and a little neck; a big body, and a thick buttock; a large



Hunting.

O[®]

earch
ations



H U N

large limb to a little foot, &c. whereas he should have a large and lean head, wide nostrils, open channelled, a big weasand, and strait windpipe.

To order the *hunting-horse*, while he is at rest, let him have all the quietness that may be; let him have much meat, much litter, much dressing, and water even by him; let him sleep as long as he pleases; keep him to dung rather soft than hard, and look that it be well coloured, and bright, for darkness shews grease, redness, and inward heat: and after his usual scourings, let him have exercises, and mashes of sweet malt, or let bread, or clean beans, or beans and wheat mixed together, be his best food, and beans and oats the most ordinary.

But Sir *Robert Charnock's* way of hunting in buck-season, was, never to take his horse up into the stable during the season, but he hunted him upon grass, only allowing him as many oats as he would well eat; and this he approved of as a very good way, by reason, if there be any molten grease within him, which violent hunting may raise up, this going to grass will purge it out: It is affirmed, the same gentleman has rid his horse three days in a week during the season, and never found any inconveniency, but rather good from it, so that care be taken to turn the horse out very cool.

You may furnish yourself with a horse for hunting at some of our fairs, which shall have, as near as can be, the following shapes.

A *head* lean, large, and long; a *chaul* thin, and open ears, small, and pricked; or, if they be somewhat long, provided they stand upright, like those of a fox, it is usually a sign of mettle and toughness.

His *forehead* long and broad, not flat, and, as it is usually termed, mare-faced, rising in the midst like that of a hare, the feather being placed above the top of his eye; the contrary being thought by some to betoken blindness.

His eyes full large and bright; his nostrils wide and red within, for an open nostril is a sign of a good wind.

His *mouth* large, deep in the wikes and hairy; his *throttle*, *weasand* or *wind-pipe* big, loose, and strait, when he is reined in with the bridle; for if, when he bridles, it bends like a bow, (which is called *cock-thropled*) it very much hinders the free passage of his wind.

His *head* must be so set on to his neck, that a space may be felt between his neck and his chaul; for to be bull-necked is uncomely to sight, and also prejudicial to the *horse's* wind.

His crest should be firm, thin, and well-risen, his neck long and strait, yet not loose and pliant, which the northern men term *withy-cragged*.

H U N

His breast strong and broad, his chest deep, his chine short, his body large and close shut up to the huckle-bone.

His ribs round like a barrel, his belly being hid within them.

His fillets large, his buttocks rather oval than broad, being well let down to the gascoins; his cambrels upright, and not bending, which some call *sickle-baughed*; tho' some look upon this to be a sign of toughness and speed.

His legs clean, flat, and strait; his joints short, well knit, and upright, especially betwixt the pasterns and the hoof, having but little hair on his fetlocks; his hoofs black, strong, and hollow, and rather long and narrow, than big and flat.

Lastly, his mane and tail should be long and thin rather than thick, which is counted by some a mark of dulness.

As to marks or colours, tho' they do not absolutely give testimony unto us of a *horse's* goodness, yet they, as well as his shape, do intimate to us, in some part, his disposition and qualities: The hair itself does oftentimes receive the variation of it's colour, from the different temperature of the subject out of which it is produced.

And some do not scruple to affirm, that where-ever you meet with a *horse* that has no white about him, especially in his forehead, tho' he be otherwise of the best reputed colours, as bay, black, sorrel, he is of a dogged and sullen disposition, especially if he have a small pink eye, and a narrow face, with a nose bending like a hawk's bill.

The age, &c. of a HUNTER.

Having procured a *horse* suitable to the former descriptions, or your own satisfaction at least, and which is supposed to be already grounded in the fundamentals of this art, being taught such obedience, as that he will readily answer to the horseman's helps and corrections, both of the bridle and hand, the voice, the calf of the leg, and the spurs, that he knows how to make his way forward, and hath gained a true temper of mouth, and a right placing of his head, and that he hath learned to stop, and turn readily; for unless he has been perfectly taught these things, he can never proceed effectually.

The *horse* being thus prepared, should be five years old, and well way'd before you begin to hunt him; for altho' it is customary with some to put him to hunt at four years old, yet at that age his joints not being well knit, nor he attained to his best strength and courage, he is unable to perform any work of speed and toughness, and will be in great danger of strains,

and

H U N

and other maladies, and also a daunting of his spirit, and abating his natural courage.

Your *horse* being full five, you may, if you please, put him to graze, from the middle of *May* till *Bartholomew-tide*, for then the season will be so hot, it will not be convenient to work him.

Bartholomew-tide being now come, and the pride and strength of the graze nipped by the severe frosts and cold dews, so that the nourishment of it turns to raw crudities, and the coldness of the night abates as much of his flesh and lust as he gets in a day : take him from graze while his coat lies smooth and sleek. See **STABLE**.

Having brought him home, let your groom set him up that night in some secure and spacious house, where he may evacuate his body, and so be brought to warmer keeping by degrees, and the next day stable him.

It is indeed held as a general rule, among the generality of grooms, not to clothe nor dress their horses till two or three days after they have stabled them, (tho' there is little reason for it but custom); yet this custom conducing little to either the advantage or prejudice of the *horse*, I shall leave every one to their own fancies.

But as to the custom of giving the *horse* wheat-straw, to take up his belly, (which is also generally used by grooms at the first taking up and housing a *horse*) some persons very much disapprove of, for they say, that the nature of a *horse* being hot and dry, if he be fed with straw, which is so likewise, it would straiten his guts, and cause an inflammation of his liver, and by that means distemper his blood ; and besides, it would make his body so costive, that it would cause a retention of nature, and make him dung with great pain and difficulty ; whereas full feeding would expel the excrements, according to the true intention and inclination of nature.

Therefore let moderate airing, warm clothing, good old hay, and old corn, supply the place of wheat-straw. See **SHOEING**.

*The first fortnight's DIET for a HUNTING HORSE; or,
the ordering of a HUNTER for the first fortnight.*

Your *horse* being supposed to have evacuated all his graze, and his shoes so well settled to his feet, that he may be fit to be ridden abroad without danger : I shall now, in a more particular manner, direct an unexperienced groom how he ought to proceed to order his *horse* according to art.

H U N

First, he ought to visit his *horse* early in the morning, to wit, by five a clock in summer, and six in winter; and having put up his litter under his stall, and made clean his stables, to feel his ribs, his chaul, and his flank, they being the principal signs by which he must learn to judge of the good or ill state of a *horse's* body.

He ought to lay his hands on his short ribs, near the flank, and if his fat feels to be exceeding soft and tender, and to yield as it were under his hand, then he may be confident it is unsound, and that the least violent labour or travel will dissolve it; which being dissolved before it be hardened by good diet, if it be not then removed by scouring, the fat or grease belonging to the outward parts of the body will fall down into his heels, and so cause goutiness and swelling.

After, by feeling on his ribs, he has found his fat soft and unsound, then let him feel his chaul; and if he finds any fleshy substance, or great round kernels or knots, he may be assured that as his outward fat has been unsound, so inwardly he is full of glut, and purfive, by means of gross humours cleaving to the hollow places of his lungs, &c.

This fat is to be enseamed and hardened by moderate exercise, and warm clothing, and gentle physick, to cleanse away his inward glut.

The same observations must be taken from the flank, which will always be found to correspond with his ribs and chaul, for till it is drawn it will feel thick to your gripe, but when he is enseamed you will perceive nothing but two thin skins; and by these three observations of the ribs, flank and chaps, you may at any time pass an indifferent judgment of the horse's good or bad condition.

Having made these remarks on your horse's state and condition of body, then sift a handful or two (but not more) of good old oats, and give them to him to preserve his stomach from cold humours which might oppress it by drinking fasting, and likewise to make him drink the better.

When he hath eaten them, pull off his collar, and rub his head, face, ears, and nape of the neck, with a clean rubbing-cloth made of hemp, for it is sovereign for the head, and dissolves all gross and filthy humours.

Then take a snaffle, and wash it in clean water, and put it on his head, drawing the rein thro' the head-stall to prevent his slipping it over his head, and so tie him up to the rack, and dress him thus:

First, take a curry-comb, suitable to your horse's skin, in your right-hand; that is, if the coat of your horse be short and smooth, then must the curry-comb be blunt; but if it be long

H U N

long and rough, then the teeth must be long and sharp : standing with your face opposite to the *horse's*, hold the left cheek of the head-stall in your left-hand, and curry him with a good hand from the root of his ears, all along his neck to his shoulders ; then go over all his body with a more moderate hand ; then curry his buttocks down to the hinder cambrel with a hard hand again ; then change your hand, and laying your right arm over his back, join your right side to his left, and so curry him gently from the top of his withers to the lower part of his shoulder, every now and then fetching your stroke over the left side of his breast, and so curry him down to the knee, but no farther.

Then curry him all under his belly, near his fore-bowels, and in a word, all over very well, his legs under the knees and cambrels only excepted ; and as you dress the left side, so must you the right also.

In doing this, take notice whether your horse keeps a rigging up and down, biting the rack-staffs, and now and then offering to snap at you, or lifting up his leg to strike at you, when you are currying him : if he do, it is an apparent sign, that the roughness of the comb displeases him, and therefore the teeth of it is to be filed more blunt ; but if you perceive he plays these or such like tricks thro' wantonness, and the pleasure he takes in the friction, then you should every now and then correct him with your whip gently for his waggishness.

This currying is only to raise the dust, therefore, after the *horse* has been thus curried, take either a horse-tail nailed to an handle, or a clean dusting-cloth of cotton, and with it strike off the loose dust that the curry-comb has raised.

Then dress him all over with the *French* brush, both head, body, and legs to the very fetlocks, observing always to cleanse the brush from the filth it gathers from the bottom of the hair, by rubbing it on the curry-comb ; then dust the *horse* again the second time.

Then having wetted your hand in water, rub his body all over, and, as near as you can, leave no loose hairs behind, and with your hands wet, pick, and cleanse his eyes, ears, and nostrils, sheath, cods and tuel, and so rub him till he is as dry as at first.

Then take an hair-patch, and rub his body all over, but especially his fore-bowels under his belly, his flank, and between his hinder thighs : and, in the last place, wipe him over with a fine white linnen rubber.

When you have thus dressed him, take a large saddle-cloth (made on purpose) that may reach down to the spurring-place,

H U N

and lap it about his body; then clap on his saddle, and throw a cloth over him, that he may not catch cold.

Then twist two ropes of straw very hard together, and with them rub and chafe his legs from the knees and cambrels downwards to the ground, picking his fetlock joints, with your hands, from dust, filth, and scabs: then take another hair patch, kept on purpose for his legs, (for you must have two) and with it rub and dress his legs also.

And while you are dressing your *horse*, let him not stand naked, so that his body be exposed to the penetration of the air; but when he is stripped, do your business roundly, without any intermission, till you have saddled him, and thrown his cloth over him.

When you have done this, pick his feet clean with an iron picker, comb down his mane and tail with a wet mane-comb, then spurt some beer in his mouth, and so draw him out of the stable.

Then mount him, rake or walk him either to some running river or fresh spring a mile or two distant from the stable, and there let him drink about half his draught at first, to prevent raw crudities arising in his stomach.

After he has drank, bring him calmly out of the water, and ride him gently for a while; for nothing is more unbecoming a horseman than to put his *horse* upon a swift gallop as soon as he comes out of the water, for these three reasons:

1. He does not only hazard the breaking of his wind, but assuredly hazards the incording or bursting of him.
2. It begets in him an ill habit of running away as soon as he has done drinking.
3. The foresight he has of such violent exercise, makes him oftentimes refuse to quench his thirst, and therefore walk him a little way, and then put him into a gentle gallop for five or six score paces, and give him wind; and after he has been raked a pretty while, shew him the water again, and let him drink as much as he will, and then gallop him again, and repeat this till he will drink no more; but be sure to observe always, that you gallop him not so much as to chafe or sweat him.

Here take notice, that in his galloping after water, (after the first week's enfeaming) if sometimes you give him a watering-course sharply of twelve, or twenty score paces, (according as you find your horse) it will quench his spirit, and cause him to gallop more pleasantly, and teach him to manage his limbs more nimbly, and to stretch forth his body largely.

When your *horse* has done drinking, then rake him to the top of an hill, (if there be one near the watering-place) for there,

H U N

there, in a morning, the air is purest; or else to some such place, where he may gain the most advantage both by sun and air, and there air him a foot-pace for an hour, or as long as you in your judgment shall think fit, for the state of his body, and then ride him home.

During the time of your *horse's* airings, you may easily perceive several tokens of your *horse's* satisfaction, and the pleasure that he takes in this exercise.

For he will gape, yawn, and as it were shrug his body.

If he offer to stand still to dung or stale, which his airing will provoke, be sure give him leave; as also to stare about, neigh, or listen after any noise.

These airing are advantageous to the horse on several accounts.

1. It purifies the blood (if the air be clear and pure); it purges the body of many gross and suffocating humours, and so hardens and enfeams the horse's fat, that it is not near so liable to be dissolved by ordinary exercise.

2. It teaches him how to let his wind rake, and equally keep time with the other actions and motions of his body.

3. It is of great advantage, both to hunters and gallopers, which are apt to lose their stomachs thro' excess or want of exercise, for the sharpness of the air will drive the horse's natural heat from the outward parts to the inward, which heat by furthering concoction creates appetite, and provokes the stomach.

4. It increases lust and courage in the horse, provided he be not aired too early.

When you are returned from airing, and are dismounted, lead the horse on the straw, which should always lie before the stable-door, and there by whistling and stirring up the litter under his belly, you will provoke him to stale, which he will be brought to do with a little practice, and it will be advantageous to the health of the horse, and a means of keeping the stable the cleaner: then lead him into his stall, (having first been well littered); then tie up his head to the empty rack, take off the saddle, rub his body and legs all over with the *fresh-brush*, then with the *hair-patch*, and last of all with the *woollen-cloth*.

Then clothe him with a linnen-cloth next to his body, and over that a canvas-cloth, and both made just fit for him to cover his breast, and to come pretty low down to his legs, which is the *Turkish* way of clothing, who (as the Duke of *Newcastle* says) are the most curious people in the world in keeping their horses.

Then put over the before-mentioned a body-cloth of six or eight straps, which is better than a surcingle and a pad-stuff with

H U N

wisps, because this keeps his belly in shape, and is not so subject to hurt him.

Now these cloths will be sufficient for him at his first stabling, because being inured to the cold, he will not be so apt to take cold, the weather being indifferently warm; but when sharp weather comes on, and you find his hair rise about those parts that are unclothed, as neck, gascoins, &c. then add another cloth, which ought to be of woollen; and for any horse bred under the climate, and kept only for ordinary hunting, this clothing will be sufficient.

Having already given directions as to the clothing the horse, I shall only add this one general rule; that a rough coat is a token of want of cloaths, and a smooth coat of clothing sufficient; therefore if notwithstanding what cloaths you have given him, his coat still stares, you must add more cloaths till it lie.

But if when he has been in keeping some time, you perceive him apt to sweat in the night, it is a sign he is over-fed, and wants exercise; but if he sweat at his first coming from grass, then there is reason to add rather than diminish the cloaths before directed for him at his first housing; for it proceeds from the foul humours that oppress nature, and when they are evacuated by exercise, nature will cease working, and he will continue in a temperate state of body all the year after.

When you have clothed him up, pick his feet clean with an iron picker, and wash his hoofs clean with a sponge dipped in clean water, and dry them with straw or a linnen cloth, then leave him on his snaffle for an hour or more, which will assist his appetite.

Then visit him again, dust a handful of hay, and let the horse tease it out of your hand, till he hath eaten it; then pull off his bridle, and rub his head and neck clean with your hempen-cloth; pull his ears, and stop his nostrils, to cause him to snort, which will bring away the moist humours which oppress his brain, and then put on his collar, and give him a quartern of oats clean dressed in a sieve, having first cleaned his locker or manger with a wisp of straw and a cloth.

While he is eating his corn, sweep out your stable, and see that all things are neat about him; then turn up his cloaths, and rub his fillets, buttocks, and gascoins, over with the hair patch, and after that with a woollen cloth; then spread a clean flannel fillet cloth over his fillets and buttocks, (which will make his coat lie smooth) and turn down his housing-cloths upon it; then anoint his hoofs round from the coronet to the toe with this ointment.

Take four ounces of *Venice turpentine*, three ounces of *bees-wax*, two ounces of the best *rosin*, one pound of *dog's grease*, and

H U N

and half a pint of *train oil*; melt all these ingredients together, except the *turpentine*; then take them off the fire, and put in the *turpentine*, stirring it till it be well incorporated; then pour it out into an earthen gallipot, and keep it for use, but do not cover it till it is cold.

After this, pick his feet with your picker, and stop them with cow-dung. If by this time your horse has eaten his oats with a good stomach, sift him another quartern, and so feed him little and little, while he eats with an appetite; but if you find he fumbles with his corn, give him no more for that time, but always giving him his full feeding, for that will keep his body in better state and temper, and increase his strength and vigour.

Whereas, on the contrary, to keep your horse always sharp-set, is the ready way to procure a surfeit, if at any time he can come at his fill of provender.

But though you should perceive that he gathers flesh too fast upon such home feeding, yet be sure not to stint him for it, but only increase his labour, and that will assist both his strength and wind.

Having done all the things before directed, dust a pretty quantity of hay, and throw it down to him on his litter, after you have taken it up under him; and then shutting up the windows and stable-door, leave him till one o' clock in the afternoon; then visit him again, and rub over his head, neck, fillets, buttocks, and legs, as before, with the hair patch and woollen cloth, and then leave him to the time of the evening-watering, which should be about four o' clock in the summer, and three in the winter: when having put back his foul litter, and swept away that and his dung, dress, and saddle him, as before, mount him, and rake him to the water, and when he has drank, gallop him, and air him till you think it time to go home; where you are to order in all points, as to rubbing, feeding, stopping his feet, &c. as you did in the morning; and having fed him about six o' clock, do not fail to feed him again at nine, and litter him well, and give him hay enough to serve him all night; and so leave him till the next morning.

After the directions for this one day, so must you order him for a fortnight, and by that time his flesh will be so hardened, and his wind so improved; his mouth will be so quickened, and his gallop brought to so good a stroke, that he will be fit to be put to moderate hunting.

Now during this fortnight's keeping, you are to make several observations, as to the nature and disposition of your horse, the temper of his body, the course of his digestion, &c. and to order him accordingly.

1. Whether

H U N

1. Whether he be of a churlish disposition; if so, you must reclaim him by severity.

If of a gentle, familiar, and loving temper, you must engage, and win him by kindness.

2. You must observe, whether he be a foul feeder, or of a nice stomach; if he be quick at his meat, and retain a good stomach, then four times of full feeding in a night and a day are sufficient; but if he be a slender feeder, and slow at his meat, then you must give him but a little at a time, and often, as about every two hours, for fresh meat will draw on his appetite; and you must always leave a little meat in his locker, for him to eat at leisure betwixt his feeding-times; and if at any time you find any left, sweep it away and give him fresh, and expose that to the sun and air, which will reduce it again to it's first sweetness as before it was blown upon.

His stomach may also be sharpened by change of meat, as by giving one meal clean oats, and at another oats and split beans, and when you have brought him to eat bread, you may give him another meal of bread; always observing to give him ofteneft that which you find he likes best; or you may give him both corn and bread at the same time, provided you give him that last which he eats best, and which is of the best digestion.

It has been observed of some horses, that they are of so hot a constitution, that they cannot eat without drinking at every bit; and those horses usually carry no belly. You must let a pail of water stand continually before such horses, or at least give them water at noon, besides what they have abroad at their ordinary times.

In the next place, you are to observe the nature of his digestion, whether he retains his food long, which is a sign of bad digestion; or whether he dungs frequently, which if he does, and his dung be loose and bright, it is a sign of a good habit of body; but if it be seldom, and hard, it is a sign of a dry constitution; in order to remedy which, give him once a day a handful or two of oats, well washed in good strong ale, and this will loosen his body and keep it moist; and it will also be good for his wind.

The second fortnight's diet for a HUNTING-HORSE.

The horse having been ordered for the first fortnight according to the foregoing rules, will be in a pretty good state of body, for the gross humours in him will be dried up, and his flesh will begin to be harden'd, which you may perceive by feeling his
chaul,

H U N

chaul, his *short ribs*, and *flank*; for the kernels under his chaps will not feel so gross as they did at first, nor will his flesh on his short ribs feel so soft and loose, nor the thin part of his flank so thick as at his first housing, so that you may now without hazard, venture to hunt him moderately.

The time being now come that he may be hunted, he is to be ordered on his days of rest, in all points, as to his dressing, hours of feeding, watering, &c. as in the first fortnight before directed; but only since his labour is now increased, you must endeavour to increase his strength and courage likewise; and this you may effect by adding to his oats a third part of clean old beans, spelted on a mill, and allowing him over and above the following bread.

Take two pecks of clean old beans, and one peck of wheat, and let them be ground together, and sift the meal thro' a meal sieve of an indifferent fineness, and knead it with warm water and good store of yeast, then let it lie an hour, or more, to swell, which will make the bread the lighter, and have the easier and quicker digestion; and after it has been well kneaded, make it up into loaves of a peck a piece, which will prevent there being too much crust, and prevent it's drying too soon; let them be well baked, and stand a good while in the oven to soak; when they are drawn, turn the bottoms upwards and let them stand to cool.

When the bread is a day old, chip away the crust, and you may give the horse some, giving him sometimes bread, sometimes oats, and sometimes oats and split beans, according as you find his stomach: and this feeding will bring him into as good condition as you need to desire for ordinary hunting.

The first fortnight being expired, and the bread prepared, you ought then to pitch upon a day for his first going abroad after the dogs, and the day before you hunt, he must always be ordered after this manner.

In the morning proceed in your usual method as before, only observe that day to give him no beans, because they are hard of digestion, but give him most of bread, if you can draw him on to eat it, because it is more nourishing than oats; and after the evening, which ought to be somewhat earlier than at other times, give him only a little hay out of your hand, and no more till the next day that he returns from hunting; and to prevent his eating his litter, or any thing else but what you give him, instead of a muzzle put on a caveffon, joined to a head-stall of a bridle, lined with leather, for fear of hurting him, and tying it so streight as to hinder his eating; and this will prevent sickness in your horse, which some horses are incident to when their muzzle is put on, notwithstanding the invention of the lattice

H U N

lattice window, so much used; but by taking this method, the horse's nostrils are at full liberty, and he will not grow sick.

But as to his corn, give him his meals, both after his watering and at nine o'clock, and at that time be sure to litter him well, that he may take his rest the better that night, and then leave him till morning.

The next morning visit him early, at about four o'clock, and put a quarter of a peck of clean dressed oats into his locker, pouring into it a quart of good strong ale, mixing the oats and ale well together; then put back his dung and foul litter, and clean the stable: but if he will not eat washed oats, give him dry, but be sure not to put any beans to them.

When he has done eating, bridle him, and tie him up to the ring and dress him: Having dressed him, saddle him, and throw his cloth over him, and let him stand till the hounds are ready to go out.

Take care not to draw the saddle-girths too straight till you are ready to mount, lest that should cause him to grow sick.

Tho' old horses are generally so crafty, that when a groom goes to girt them up hard, they will extend their bodies so much by holding their wind, (on purpose to gain ease after they are girt) that it will seem difficult to girt them, but when they let go their wind their bodies fall again.

When the hounds are unkenelled, (which should not be before sun-rising) go into the field along with them, and rake your horse up and down gently till a *hare* is started; always remembering to let him smell to the dung of other horses, if there be any, which will provoke him to empty himself; and suffer him to stand still when he does so; and if there be any dead *fog*, rushes, or the like, ride him upon them, and whistle to him, to provoke him to stale and empty his bladder.

The *hare* being started, follow the hounds as the other Hunters do; but remembering it to be the first time of his hunting, he is not so well acquainted with different sorts of grounds, as to know how to gallop smoothly and with ease on them, and for that reason you ought not yet to put him to above half his speed, that he may learn to carry a stay'd body, and to manage his legs both upon fallows and green swarth.

Neither should you gallop him often, or any long time together, for fear of discouraging him, and causing a dislike of his exercise in him: and take care to cross fields to the best advantage; you shall make into the hounds at every default, and still keep your horse (as much as these directions will allow you) within the cry of the dogs, that he may be used to their

cry;

H U N

cry ; and by so doing, in a very short time he will take such delight and pleasure in their music, that he will be eager to follow them.

And if it happen that the chace is led over any carpet-ground, or sandy high-way, on which your horse may lay out his body smoothly, there you may gallop him for a quarter or half a mile, to teach him to lay out his body, to gather up his legs, to lengthen and shorten his stroke, and according to the different earths he gallops on, as if on *green swarth, meadow, moore, beath, &c.* then to stoop and run more on the shoulders ; if amongst *mole-hills*, or over *high ridges* and *furrows*, then to gallop more roundly, or in less compass, or according to the vulgar phrase, *two up and two down*, that thereby he may strike his furrow clear, and avoid setting his fore-feet in the bottom of it, and by that means fall over ; but, by the way, galloping, tho' he should happen to set his feet in a furrow, yet carrying his body so round, and resting on the hand in his gallop, would prevent his falling ; and to this perfection, nothing but use, and such moderate exercise, can bring him.

According to these directions, you may hunt till about three o'clock in the afternoon, at which time ride him home in a foot-pace, as you came out in the morning ; and be sure that you let him walk out of the field ; and as you are going home, consider whether he hath sweat a little, (for you must not sweat him much the first time) but if not, then gallop him gently on some skelping earth, till he sweat at the roots of his ears, a little on his neck, and in his flank ; but it must be done of his own voluntary motion, without the compulsion of whip or spur ; and then when he is cool as aforesaid, have him home and stable him, and by no means walk him in hand to cool him, for fear of his cooling too fast, nor do not wash him, for fear of causing an obstruction of the natural course of the humours, and by that means cause an inflammation in his legs, which is the original cause of the scratches.

His stall being well littered against he comes home, set him up, tying his head to the ring with the bridle, and then rub him well with dry straw all over his head, neck, fore-bowels, belly, flank, buttocks, and legs, and after that rub his body over with a dry cloth, till he have not a wet hair left about him ; after you have done, take off his saddle, and rub the place where the saddle was, dry, in like manner, and cloath him immediately with his ordinary cloaths, lest he take cold ; and if you suppose him to be very hot, throw a spare cloth over him, that he may not cool too fast, which you may abate when you please, and so let him stand on his snaffle, two hours or better,

H U N

better, now and then stirring him in his stall with your whip, to prevent him from growing stiff in the legs and joints.

When that time is expired, and you think he is thorough cold, draw his bridle, rub his head, pick his feet from dirt or gravel, and put on his collar, and give him a quart or three pints of sifted oats, mixt with a handful of clean dressed hemp-feed; but give him not more than the quantity prescribed, for fear of taking away his stomach, which will be very much weakened through the heat of his body, and want of water.

Then take off the spare cloth, (if it has not been done before) for fear of keeping him hot too long, and when he has eaten his corn, throw a pretty quantity of hay, clean dusted, on his litter, and let him rest two or three hours, or thereabouts.

Then having prepared him a good mash, made of half a peck of malt, well ground, and boiling hot water, so much as the malt will sweeten and the horse will drink, stir them well together, and cover it over with a cloth, till the water has extracted the strength of the malt, which will be almost as sweet as honey, and feel ropy like birdlime; being but little more than blood warm, give it the horse, but not before, lest the steam go up his nostrils and offend him, and when he has drank up the water, let him, if he please, eat the malt too.

But if he refuse to drink it, you must not give him any other water that night, but place this drink in some place of his stall, so that he may not throw it down, and let it stand by him all night, that he may drink it when he pleases.

This mash, or as it is called, *horse-caudle*, will comfort his stomach, and keep his body in a due temperate heat after his day's hunting; it will cleanse and bring away all manner of grease and gross humours, which have been dissolved by the day's labour; and the fume of the malt-grains, after he has drank the water, will disperse the watery humours which might otherwise annoy his head, and is allowed by all skilled in horses, to be very advantageous on that account.

After he has eaten his mash, strip him of his cloaths, and run him over with a *curry-comb*, *French brush*, *hair-patch*, and *woollen cloth*, and cloath him up again; and cleanse his legs as well as his body, of all dirt and filth which may annoy them, and then remove him into another stall, (that you may not wet his litter) and bathe his legs all over from the knees, with warm *beef broth*, or (which is better) with a quart of warm urine, in which four ounces of *salt-petre* has been dissolved; then rub his legs dry, set him again into his stall, and give him a good home-feeding of oats, or bread, which he likes best, or both, and having shook good store of litter under him, that he may rest

H U N

rest the better ; and thrown him hay enough for all night, shut the stable door close, and leave him to his rest till the next morning.

About six or seven o'clock the next morning go to him again, but don't disturb him, for the morning's rest is as refreshing to a horse as to a man ; but when he rises of his own accord go to him, put back his dung from his litter, and observe what colour it is of, whether it be greasy, and shine outwardly, and also break it with your feet, to see if it be so inwardly, for if it be greasy and foul, (which you may know by it's shining outwardly, and by the spots like soap that will appear within) or if it appear of a dark brown colour, and harder than it was, it is a token that the hunting of the day before has done him good, by dissolving part of the inward *glut* which was within him ; and therefore the next time you hunt, you should increase his labour but a little.

But if you perceive no such symptoms, but that his dung appears bright, but rather *soft* than *hard*, without grease, and in a word, that it holds the same pale yellow colour that it did before he hunted, then it is a sign that a day's hunting made no *dissolution*, but that his body remains in the same state still, and therefore the next day's hunting you may almost double his labour.

Having made these remarks on his *dung*, then you may proceed to order him as on his days of rest ; that is to say, you shall give him a handful or two of *oats* before water, then dress, water, air, feed, &c. as in the first fortnight.

As to his feeding, you must not forget to change his food, as has been before directed ; that is, to give him one while bread, another while oats, and a third time oats and beans, which you find he likes best ; always remembering, that variety will sharpen his appetite ; but bread being his chief food, as being more nourishing and strong than the others, feed him the oftner with it.

And as has been directed in the first fortnight, observe his *digestion*, whether it be quick or slow ; so likewise must you do when he begins to eat *bread*.

If you find him quick, and that he retains his bread but a little while, then only chip his bread lightly ; but if it be slow, and he retains it long, then cut away all the crust and give it to some other horse, and feed the hunting-horse only with the *crum*, for that being light of digestion, is soon converted into chyle and excrements, but the *crust* being not so soon digestible, requires, by reason of it's hardness, longer time before it is concocted.

The next day after your horse has rested, you may hunt him again as you did the first day, observing from the remarks
you

H U N

you have made, to hunt him more or less according as you find his temper and constitution; and when you come home, put in practice the rules just now given.

And thus you may hunt him three times a week for a fortnight together, but don't fail to give him his full feeding, and no other *scourings* but meshes and hemp-seed, which is equal in it's vertue with the former, and only carries off superfluous humours in the dung.

The third fortnight's diet, &c. for a HUNTING-HORSE.

By this time the *horse* will be drawn so clean, his flesh will be so enfeamed, and his wind so improved, that he will be able to ride a chace of three or four miles without blowing or sweating; and you may find by his *chaul* and *flank*, as well as his *ribs*, that he is in an indifferent good state of body, and therefore in this next fortnight you must increase his labour, and by that means you will be able to make a judgment what he will be able to do, and whether or no he will ever be fit for running for *plates*, or a *match*.

When your horse is set over night, and fed early in the morning, as has been directed for the second fortnight, then go into the field with him, and when he is empty, (as he will be by that time you have started your game) follow the dogs at a good round rate, as at half speed, and so continue till you have either killed or lost your first *hare*.

This will so rack your horse, and he will have so emptied himself, that he will be in a fit condition to be rid the next chace briskly, which as soon as it is begun, you may follow the dogs at three quarters speed, and as near as is fit for a good Horseman and skillful Huntsman; but be sure to take care not to strain him.

During this day's riding, you ought to observe nicely your horse's *sweat* under his *saddle* and *fore-bowels*, and if it appear white, like froth or soap-suds, it is a sign of inward glut and foulness, and that your day's exercise was enough for him, therefore ride him home, and order him as before directed.

But if it has happened that your exercise has been so easy as not to sweat your horse thoroughly, then you ought to make a train scent of four miles in length, or thereabouts, and laying on your fleetest dogs, ride it briskly, and afterwards cool him in the field, and ride him home and order him as has been before directed.

A *train scent*, is the trailing of a dead cat or fox, (and in case of necessity a red herring) three or four miles, according

THE ANTIENT HUNTING NOTES *with* MARSH

Platz 1.

Names of the Notes

— tone, ^ ton, o tavern, o ton-tavern, o ton

To Call the Company in the Morning. —

The Stroaks to the Field. o — o o o —

To Uncouple the Hounds. — o o

When the Hounds Hunt a Game unknown. o —

A Recheat when the Hounds Hu

o — o o o o o o o o o

The Double Recheat

o o o —, o o o o o o o o o, o o o o, o o o

The Treble or S^r Hewets R

o o o —, o o o o o o o o o o o o, o o o o —

A New Warbling Recheat f

o o o — o o o o o o o o o, o o o o o o, o o o o

The Mount is from Party to Party every

o o o, o o — o o o — o o

The Stroaks of Five for the Tarriers — o o

The Stroaks of Eight or to draw from the Covert. o o

The Earthing of a Fox if Recoverable. — o o

If not Recoverable to call away o —

The Death of a Hare — o o o o o

The Death of a Buck. — o o o o o

The Death of a Stag or Hart. — o o o o o

The Death of a Fox. — o o o — o o o — o o

The Call for a Keeper in Park or Forest. o o o o

The Stroaks for y^e Tarriers when y^e Fox is Ear

THE PRIZE OF A HA

— o o o — o o o — o o o — o o o

THE ROYAL REC

— o — o o — o — — o — o o — —

— o — — o — — o — — o — — o — —

o — o o — — o — o o — — o — — o

A Running Recheat with v

o o o — o — o o o — o o o o o — o,

o o, o o o — o — o o o — o o o o o —, o o o

To draw the Company out of the Field

A Recheat or Farewell a

— o — —, — o — —, —

— o — —, — o — —, —

— o — —

ARSH'S & COLL COOK'S *Additions.*

Notes

n, o ton-ton-tavern, &c.

o o o o
o o o o
o o o o
n. o o o o, o o o o

nds Hunt a right Game

o o o o o o

Recheat.

o o o o o o o o o o o o o o

wets Recheat.

o o o o o o o o o o o o o

heat for any Chace.

o o o o o o o o o o o o o o o o

every note repeated thrice.

o o o o o o, o o o
o o o o o o o o o o o o
ert. o o o o o o o, o o o o o
o o o o o o o o o o o o o

o o o o o o o o o o o o o o T.D.

o o o o o o o o o o o o T.D.

o o o o o o o o o o T.D.

o o o o o o o o o T.D.

o o o o o o o o o

is Earthed. o o o o o o

A HART ROYAL.

o o o o o o o o o o

RECHEAT.

o o o o o o o o o o
o o o o o o o o o o
o o o o o o o o o o

with very quick time.

o o o o o o o o o o o o o o
o o o o o o o o o o o o o o

e Field. o o o o o o

well at parting.

o o o o o o o o o o
o o o o o o o o o o
o o o o o o o o o o

H U N

as the rider shall please, and then laying the dogs on the scent.

It will be proper to keep two or three couple of the fleetest hounds that can possibly be procured, for this purpose.

It is true indeed, some skillful sportsmen do make use of their harriers in this case, for their diversion, but it will not be convenient to use them to it often, for it will be apt to induce them to lie off the *line*, and fling so wide, that they will not be worth any thing.

When you take off your horse's bridle, give him a good quantity of *rye-bread*, instead of *bemp-feed* and *oats*, and for that purpose bake a peck-loaf, for this being cold and moist, will be of use to cool his body after his labour, and prevent costiveness, to which you will find him addicted; then give him hay, and afterwards a mash, and order him in all things as before directed.

The next morning, if you perceive by his *dung* that his body is distempered, and that he is hard and bound, then take some crumbs of your rye-bread, and work it with as much sweet fresh butter as will make it into a paste, and make it up into balls about the bigness of a large walnut, of which give him five or six in a morning fasting.

After this put the saddle on upon the cloth, get up and gallop him gently upon some grass-plat or close that is near at hand, till he begin to sweat under his ears, and then carry him into the stable again, rub him well, and throw a spare cloth over him, and a good quantity of fresh litter under him, and let him stand two hours on the bridle; then give him a quantity of *rye-bread*, and some *hay* to chew upon, then procure him a warm mash, and feed him with bread and corn, as much as he will eat, and also as much hay as he will eat.

The next day water him abroad, and order him as is before directed for days of rest.

The next day you may hunt him again, but not so hard as you did the time before, till the afternoon; but then ride him after the dogs briskly, and if that does not make him sweat thoroughly, make another *train scent*, and follow the dogs three quarters speed, that he may sweat heartily: then cool him a little, and ride him home, and as soon as he is come into the stable, give him two or three balls as big as walnuts, of the following excellent scouring.

Take of *butter*, eight ounces; *lenitive electuary*, four ounces; *gromwel*, *broom*, and *pursly-seeds*, of each two ounces; *anniseeds*, *liquorice*, and *cream of tartar*, of each one ounce; of *jalap*, two ounces; reduce the seeds to a powder, then stir them into a
Z
paste.

H U N

paste with the *electuary* and *butter*, knead it well together, put it into a pot, and keep it close stopped for use.

As soon as the horse has taken these balls, rub him dry, dress him, and cloath him warm, and let him stand two or three hours upon the snaffle; and afterwards give him two or three handfuls of rye-bread, and order him as you have been directed before, as to hay, provender, mash, &c. and so leave him till the morning.

In the morning take notice of his dung, whether it still retains the true colour, or be *dark*, or *black*, or red and high coloured: in the next place, whether it be loose and thin, or hard and dry.

If it be of a *pale yellow*, which is the right colour, it is a sign of health, strength, and cleanness; if it be *dark*, or *black*, then it is a sign there is *grease* and other ill humours stirred up, which are not yet evacuated: if it be red, and high coloured, then it is a sign that his blood is feverish and distempered, by means of inward heat: if it be loose and thin, it is a sign of weakness; but if *hard* and *dry*, it shews the horse to be hot inwardly, or else that he is a foul feeder: But if his dung be in a medium between hard and soft, and smell strong, it is a sign of health and vigour.

When these observations have been made on his dung, then *feed*, *dress*, *water*, &c. as on his usual days of rest, always letting him have variety, and his fill of *corn* and *bread*.

The next day have him abroad into the field again, but do not by any means put him to any labour more than raking him from hill to hill after the dogs, keeping him within sound of their cry; for the intent of this day's exercise is only to keep him in breath, and procure him an appetite.

In riding, let him stand still to dung, and look back on it, that you may be able to judge of his state thereby.

When the day is near spent, ride him home without the least sweat, and order him as at other times, except that you are not to give him any *scourings*, or *rye-bread*.

You may if you please, this day, water your horse both at going into the field and coming out, *galloping* him after it, to warm the water in his belly.

The next day being to be a day of rest, order him in the same manner in every respect as on other days of rest, and as you have spent this week, you must spend the next, without any alteration; and by this time, and this management, you may depend upon it that your horse has been drawn clean enough for ordinary hunting.

So that afterwards, only taking care to hunt your horse with moderation twice or three times a week, at your pleasure, and
according

H U N

according to the constitution of your horse's body, you need not question but to have him in as good state and strength as you can desire, without danger of his *wind, eye-sight, feet, or body.*

Having thus drawn your horse clean, according to art, you will perceive those signs before-mentioned very plainly, for his flesh on his short ribs and buttocks will be as hard as *brawn*, his *flank* will be thin, and nothing to be felt but a double skin, and *chaps* so clean from *fat, glut, or kernels*, that you may hide your fists in them; and above all, his exercise will give plain demonstration of the effectualness of this method of ordering him, for he will run three or four miles three quarters speed without sweating, or scarce so much as blowing.

When the horse has been brought to this state, you must use no more scourings after hunting, (because nature has nothing to work on) but rye-bread and mash, except the horse be now and then troubled with some little pose in his head; and then bruise a little mustard-seed in a fine linnen rag, and steep it in a quart of strong ale, for three or four hours, and then untying the rag, mix the mustard-seed and the ale with a quarter of a peck of oats, and give it to him.

In the last place, the horse having been thus drawn clean, you ought to take care not to let him grow foul again, through want of either *airing* or *hunting*, or any other negligence, lest by that means you make your self a double trouble.

Of breeding HUNTING and RACE-HORSES.

Procure either an *Arabian*, a *Spanish*, a *Turkish* horse, or a *Barb*, for a *Stallion*, which is well shaped, and of a good colour to beautify your race; and some advise that he be well marked too, tho' others are of opinion, that marks are not so significant as Mr *Blundevile* and *Frederigo Griffo* would have us believe.

Those who have travelled into those parts, report, that the right *Arabian* horses are valued at an almost incredible rate, at five hundred, and others say, two or three thousand pounds an horse; that the *Arabs* are as careful of keeping the genealogies of their horses, as Princes are in keeping their pedigrees; that they keep them with medals; and that each son's portion is usually two suits of arms, two cymetars, and one of these *horses*. The *Arabs* boast, that they will ride eighty miles a-day without drawing bitt; which is no more than has been perform'd by several of our *English* horses.

But much more was perform'd by a highwayman's horse, who having committed a robbery, rode on the same day from *London* to *York*, being a hundred and fifty miles.

H U N

Notwithstanding their great value, and the difficulty in bringing them from *Scanderoon* to *England* by sea, yet by the care and charge of some breeders in the north, the *Arabian* horse is no stranger to those parts, where probably may be seen at this day some of the race, if not a true *Arabian* stallion.

The *Spanish* horse (in the Duke of *Newcastle's* opinion) is the noblest horse in the world, and the most beautiful that can be; no horse is so beautifully shaped all over from *head* to *croup*, and he is absolutely the best *stallion* in the world, either for *breed*, for the *manage*, the war, the pad, hunting, or running-horses; but as they are excellent, so is their price extravagant, three or four hundred pistoles being a common price for a *Spanish* horse.

Several have been sold for seven hundred, eight hundred, and a thousand pistoles a-piece.

The best *Spanish* horses are bred in *Andalusia*, and particularly at *Cordoua*, where the King has many studs of mares, and so likewise have several of the *Spanish* Nobility and Gentry.

Now besides the great price they cost at first, the charges of the journey from *Spain* to *England* will be very considerable; for first they must travel from *Andalusia* to *Bilboa*, or *St Sebastian*, the nearest ports to *England*, and is at least four hundred miles: and in that hot country, you cannot with safety travel your horse above twenty miles a-day; and besides, you must be at the expence of a Groom and Farrier, besides the casualty of sickness, lameness, and death: so that if he should happen to prove an extraordinary good horse, by that time you have got him home, he will also be an *extraordinary dear one*.

The *Turkish* horse is but little inferior to the *Spanish* in beauty, but somewhat odd shaped, his head being something like that of a *camel*; he hath excellent eyes, a thin neck, *excellently* risen, and somewhat large of body; his *croup* is like that of a mule, his legs not so under-limbed as those of a *Barb*, but very finewy, good pasterns, and good hoofs: they never amble, but trot very well, and are at present accounted better stallions for gallopers than *Barbs*.

Some merchants tell us, that there cannot be a more noble and diverting sight to a lover of horses, than to walk into the pastures near *Constantinople*, about foiling-time, where he may see many hundred gallant horses *tethered*, and every horse has his attendant or keeper, with his little tent placed near him to lie in, that he may look to him, and take care to shift him to fresh grass.

The price of a *Turkish* horse, is commonly one hundred, or one hundred and fifty pound; and when bought, it is difficult

to

H U N

to get a pass, the Grand Signior being so very strict, that he seldom (but upon very extraordinary occasions) permits any of his horses to be exported out of his dominions.

But if you should attain a liberty so to do, and travel by land, unless you have a *Turk* or two for a convoy, you will be sure to have them seized on by the way.

And besides, you will find the same difficulties of a long journey, for you must come through *Germany*, which is a very long way, and the same charges attending it, that is, a Groom and Farrier, who must be careful that they entrust no person whatsoever with the care of him but themselves, especially in shoeing him, for 'tis the common practice beyond sea, as well as here, wherever they see a fine horse, to hire a Farrier to prick him, that they may buy him for a stallion.

But some persons chuse to buy horses at *Smyrna* in *Anatolia*, and from thence, and likewise from *Constantinople*, to transport them to *England* by sea, which if the wind serve right, arrive in *England* in a month; tho' generally the merchants voyages are not made in much less than two or three months.

The *Barb* is little inferior to any of the former in beauty; but our modern breeders account him too slender and lady like to breed on, and therefore in the north of *England* they prefer the *Spanish* and *Turkish* horse before him.

He is so lazy and negligent in his walk, that he will stumble on carpet-ground.

His trot is like that of a cow, his gallop low, and with much ease to himself; but he is for the most part finewy and nervous, excellently winded, and good for a *course* if he be not over weighed.

The mountain *Barbs* are esteem'd the best, because they are strongest and largest: They belong to the *Allarbes*, who value them themselves as much as other nations do, and therefore will not part with them to any persons, except to the *Prince of the band* to which they belong, who can at any time at his pleasure command them for his own use: But for the other more ordinary sort, they are to be met with pretty common in the hands of our Nobility and Gentry; or if you send to *Languedoc*, or *Provence*, in *France*, they may be bought there for forty or fifty pistoles a-horse.

Or if you send to *Barbary*, you may buy one for thirty pounds, or thereabouts; but in this case too the charges and journey will be great, for tho' it be no great voyage from *Tunis* to *Marseilles* in *France*, yet from *Marseilles* to *Calais*, by land, is the whole length of *France*, and from thence they are shipped for *England*.

H U N

The next thing to be considered, is the choice of *mares*, and according to the Duke of *Newcastle's* opinion, the fittest mare to breed out of, is one that has been bred of an *English* mare, and a stallion of either of these races; but if you can't get such a mare, then get a right bred *English* mare by *fire* and *dam*, that is well *fore-handed*, well *underlaid*, and strong put together in general; and in particular, see that she have a *lean head*, wide nostrils, open *chaul*, a big *weasand*, and the *wind-pipe* strait and loose; and of about five or six years old; and be sure that the stallion be not too old.

As for the food of the Stallion;

Keep him as high as possibly you can, for the first four or five months before the time of *covering*, with old clean *oats* and *split beans*, well hull'd, and if you please you may add bread to them, such as you will hereafter be directed to make; and now and then a handful of clean wheat may be given him, or oats washed in strong ale, for variety.

Mr *Morgan* advises to scatter bay salt and anniseeds in his provender; but others are of opinion that this is superfluous, while the horse is in health.

Be sure to let him have plenty of good *old sweet hay*, well cleansed from dust, and good wheat straw to lie on; water him twice a-day at some fair running stream, or else in a clear standing pond water, if you cannot have the first; and gallop him after he hath drank in some meadow or level piece of ground.

Do not suffer him to drink his fill at his first coming to the water, but after his first draught, gallop and scope him up and down to warm him, and then bring him to the water again and let him drink his fill, galloping him again as before, never leaving the water till he has drank as much as he will.

By this means you will prevent raw crudities, which the coldness of the water would otherwise produce, to the detriment of his stomach, if you had permitted him to drink his fill at first; whereas you allowing him his fill (tho' by degrees) at last, you keep his body from drying too fast.

Mr *Morgan* indeed, directs the sweating of him every day, early in the morning, which he says will not only perfect digestion, and exhaust the moisture from his feed, but also strengthen and cleanse his blood and body from all raw and imperfect humours: But others are of opinion it will dry up the *radical moisture* too fast; and likewise, instead of heightening his pride and lust, weaken him too much.

H U N

As for other rules for the ordering him after watering, and the hours of feeding, &c. they will be more proper

When the stallion is in lust, and the time of covering him is come, which is best to be in *May*, that the foals may fall in the *April* following, otherwise they will have little or no grafs.

Then pull off his hinder shoes, and lead him to the place where the stud of *mares* are which you intend for covering; which place ought to be close, well fenced, and in it a little hut for a man to lie in, and a larger shed with a manger, to feed your stallion with bread and corn during his abode with the mares, and shelter him in the *heat of the day*, and in *rainy weather*: and this close ought to be of sufficient largeness to keep your mares well for two months.

Before you pull off his bridle, let him cover a mare or two in hand, then turn him loose amongst them, and put all your mares to him, as well those that are with foal as those which are not, for there is no danger in it; and by that means they will all be served in their height of lust, and according to the *intention of nature*.

When your stallion has covered them once, he will try them all over again, and those that will admit him, he will serve, and when he has done his business, he will beat against the pales, and attempt to be at liberty, which when your man finds, (who is to observe them night and day, and to take care that no other mares are put to your horse, and to give you an account which take the horse and which not, &c.) then take him up, and keep him well as you did before, first giving him a mash or two, to help to restore nature; for you will find him little but skin and bones, and his *mane* and *tail* will rot off.

Be sure never to give him above ten or twelve mares in a season at most, otherwise you will scarce recover him against the next covering time.

When your stallion is past this use, then buy another, for the best kind will in time degenerate. But the Duke of *Newcastle* says, you cannot do better than to let your own mares be covered by their fires.

Some advise to *covering in hand*, as the other is called *covering out of hand*, and is as follows: When you have brought both your horse and your mare to a proper condition for breeding, by art and good feeding, then set some ordinary stone nag by her for a day or two, to woo her, and that will make her so prone to lust, that she will readily receive your stallion, which you should present to her, either early in a morning or late in an evening, for a day or two together, and let him cover

H U N

in hand once or twice, if you please, at each time observing to give the horse the advantage of ground, and have a person ready with a bucket of cold water to throw on the mare's shape immediately upon the dismounting of the horse, which will make her retain the seed she received the better; especially if you get on her back, and trot her up and down for a quarter of an hour, but take care of heating or straining her; and it will not be amiss if you let them fast two hours after such act, and then give each of them a warm mash, and it is odds but this way your mares may be as well served as the other, and your stallion will last you much longer.

If you take care to house the mares all the winter, and keep them well, their colts will prove the better. See FOALS and COLTS.

Of a HUNTING-MATCH.

The first thing that is to be considered by one who designs to match his horse for his own advantage, and his horse's credit, is not to flatter himself with the opinion of his horse, by fancying that he is a swift, when he is but a slow galloper, and that he is a *whole running* horse, (that is, that he will run four miles without a sob at the height of his speed) when he is not able to run two or three.

Very probably some gentlemen are led into this error, by their being mistaken in the speed of their hounds, who, for want of trying them against other dogs that have been really fleet, has supposed their own to be so, when, in reality, they are but of a middling speed; and because their horse, when trained, was able to follow them all day, and upon any hour, to command them upon deep as well as light earths, have therefore made a false conclusion, that their horse is as swift as the best; but upon trial against a horse that has been rightly trained after hounds that were truly fleet, have bought their experience, perhaps, full dear.

Therefore it is advisable for all lovers of hunting, to procure two or three couple of tried hounds, and once or twice a week to follow after them a *train-scent*, and, when he is able to top them on all sorts of earth, and to endure heats and colds stoutly, then he may better rely on his speed and toughness.

That horse which is able to perform a hare chace of five or six miles briskly and courageously, till his body be as it were bathed in sweat; and then, after the hare has been killed in a nipping frosty morning, can endure to stand till the sweat be frozen on his back, so that he can endure to be pierced with the cold as well as the heat; and then even in that extremity of cold,

H U N

cold, to ride another chace as briskly, and with as much courage as he did the former : that horse which can thus endure heats and colds, is most valued by sportsmen.

Therefore in order to make a judgment of the goodness of a horse, observe him after the death of the first hare, if the chace has been any thing brisk ; if when he is cold he shrinks up his body, and draws his legs up together, it is an infallible sign of want of vigour and courage : the like may be done by the slackning of his girths after the first chace, and from the dulness of his teeth, and the dulness of his countenance, all which are true tokens of faintness, and being tired ; and such a horse is not to be relied on in case of a wager.

But if your horse is not only in your own judgment, but also in that of skillful horsemen, a horse of approved speed and toughness, and you have a mind to match him, or to run for a plate, then you may hope for the following advantages.

But first it will not be improper to take notice of the way of making matches in former times, and the modern way of deciding wagers.

The old way of trial was, by running so many *train-scents* after hounds, as was agreed upon between the parties concerned, and a bell-course, this being found not so uncertain, but more durable than hare hunting ; and the advantage consisted in having the trains led on earth, most suitable to the qualifications of the horses.

But now others choose to hunt the hare till such an hour, and then to run this wild-goose chace. See **WILD-GOOSE CHACE.**

But this chace was found by experience so inhuman, and so destructive to good horses, especially when two good horses were matched ; for neither being able to distance the other, till being both ready to sink under their riders thro' weakness, oftentimes they were obliged to draw the match, and leave it undecided, after both the horses were quite spoiled.

This induced them to run *train-scents*, which were afterwards changed for three heats, and a strait course ; and that those who were lovers of hunting-horses might be encouraged to keep good ones, plates have been erected in many places in *England*, purposely for the sake of *hunting-horses* ; and the articles of some places exclude all others, namely, gallopers, from running.

But whether you would match your horse against a particular horse, or put him in for a plate, where he must run against all that come in general, you ought to know the constitution and quality of your horse, before you venture any wager on his head, whether he be *hot* and *fiery*, or *cool* and *temperate* in riding ; whether he be very swift, but not hard at bottom ; or
flow,

H U N

slow, but yet sure ; and one that will stick at marks, on what sorts of ground he most delights to gallop ; whether he delights to go up hill or down hill, or else to skelp on a flat ; whether to run on deep or light ground ; whether on rack ways or carpet ground ; whether amongst mole-hills, or on meadow-ground ; whether he be well winded or thick winded ; so that tho' he will answer a spur, and mend upon lapping, yet he must have ease by fobs.

All these particulars are necessary to be known, to the end you may draw those advantages from them which may be offered in making matches : As thus for example ;

If your horse be hot and fiery, it is odds but he is fleet withal, (for generally such horses are so) and delights to run upon light and hard flats, and must be held hard by the rider, that he may have time to recover wind by his fobs, or else his fury will choak him.

But whereas it is the general opinion, that nothing that is violent can be lasting, and therefore that it is impossible that such hot-mettled horses can be tough and hard at bottom : this is reckoned by some to be but a popular error ; for that these two qualities, have been reconciled at least so far as to make the most fiery horse manageable, and to endure both whip and spur ; and if so, altho' he should not prove at bottom so truly tough as the *crawing drudge*, yet his speed shall answer for it in all points, and serve in it's stead by the mangement of his rider.

The best way of matching such a horse is, to agree to run *train-scents*, and the fewer the better for you, before you come to the course : also in these train-scents, the shorter you make your distance the better ; and besure, above all things, to make your bargain to have the leading of the first train, and then make choice of such grounds where your horse may best shew his speed, and the fleetest dogs you can procure : give your hounds as much law before you as your tryers will allow, and then making a loose, try to win the match with a wind ; but if you fail in this attempt, then bear your horse, and save him for the course : but if your horse be slow, but well winded, and a true-spurred nag, then the more train-scents you run before you come to the strait course the better : but here you ought to observe to gain the leading of the first strain ; which, in this case, you must lead it upon such deep earths, that it may not end near any light ground.

For this is the rule received among horsemen, that the next train is to begin where the last ends, and the last train is to be ended at the starting-place of the course, therefore remember to end your last on deep earths as well as the first.

H U N

In the next place, do not make a match against a horse you do not know, without having first consulted some skillful friend, on whose judgment and honesty you can safely rely, and who is able to give a good account of the speed of your adversary's horse, and his manner of riding; and if it appears that he is any ways answerable to your own in speed or goodness, be not too venturesome, without some reasonable probabilities of winning.

Again, be sure at no time to give advantage of weight, for you will see the inconveniency of it at the latter end of the day; for tho' a horse does not feel it when he is fresh, yet it will sink him very much when he grows weak. The length of a horse lost by weight in the first train, may prove a distance in the strait course at last, for the weight is the same every heat, tho' his strength is not.

If, on the other hand, you gain any advantage of weight, that the horseman shall ride so much weight as you are agreed on, besides the saddle; for by this means the rider, if he be not weight of himself, must carry the dead weight somewhere about him, which will be troublesome to the rider, as well as the horse; and the more to the latter, because it is more remote from his back, than if it were in the saddle, and by consequence will more disorder his stroke if the rider incline to either side, than if it were near the center; as is to be seen in a pair of scales, where, if the pin be not placed exactly in the middle of the beam, the longest part (as being farthest distant from the center) will be the heaviest.

As to the time of *dieting*, that must be according to the nature of your horse, and the present state of body he is in; for tho' he may be clean enough for ordinary hunting, yet he may be far enough from that perfect state of body that a match requires; and to keep him in such strict diet all the season (except on such extraordinary occasions) would be an unnecessary expence.

As to the disposition of the horse for *running*, that is to be known by use and observation, for, in this point, horses differ very much; for some run best when they are high in case; others, when they are in a middling condition of flesh; and some again, when they appear to the eye poor and low in flesh: therefore, according to the condition and quality of, and the time required to bring him into the best state, the day for the trial of the match ought to be fixed on.

If you have a mind to put him in for some hunting-plate, there you have not at your disposal the choice of the ground, the weight, nor the horses you run against, but you must take them as you find them; only the time for bringing your horse into a good condition is at your discretion: in that, you may begin to keep him in strict diet as soon or as late as you please,

J A R

please, the time for all plates being usually fixed, and annually the same.

HUXING of Pike; a particular method for the catching of this sort of fish that is very agreeable: For this use, take eighty or forty as large bladders as can be got; blow them up, and tie them close, and strong; then at the mouth of each tie a line longer or shorter, according to the depth of water; at the end of the line fasten an armed hook artificially baited, and put them into the water with the advantage of the wind, that they may gently move up and down the pond. Now when one master pike has struck himself, it is a most pleasant diversion to see him bounce about in the water with a bladder at his tail. When you see him almost spent, take him up. See **PIKE**.

J A R

JACK-DAW; a chattering, subtil bird, that is a great devourer of beans, cherries, and other garden-fruits.

A very good method to catch them is, to drive a stake into the ground about four foot high, above the surface of the earth, but so picked at the top, that the ack-daw cannot settle on it; within a foot of which a hole must be bored thro' three quarters of an inch diameter, whereto you should fit a pin or stick six or eight inches long; then make a loop or spring of horse-hair fastened to a stick or wand of hazle, which may be entered into the stake at a hole near the ground; that done, by bending of the stick, slip the horse-hair loop thro' the upper holes, and put the short stick so, that the jack-daw, when he comes, finding a resting-place to stand conveniently amongst his food, perches on the short stick, which by his weight immediately falls, and gives the spring advantage of holding him by the legs.

JARDES, } are callous and hard swellings in the hinder
JARDONS, } legs of a horse, seated on the outside of the hough, as the spavin is on the inside. It is more to be feared than the spavin. It is not very common, so that but few people know it, tho' it be as painful as the spavin, and makes a horse halt. In this case there is no remedy but firing, which does not always succeed.

J E N

If upon the fore-finew of the leg, between the spavin on the inside, and the jardon without, there is, it were, a circle that joins them, and incompasses the nerve of the instep, the horse is spoiled, and ruined past all recovery.

JARRETIER; an obsolete *French* word, signifying a horse whose houghs grow too close together.

In, inside within; and out, outside without.

The inner heel, the outer heel; the inner leg, the outer leg; the in rein, the out rein.

This way of speaking relates to several things, according as the horse works to the right, or left, upon volts; or as he works along by a wall, a hedge, or some such thing.

Thus it serves to distinguish on what hand, or what side the horseman is to give the aids to a horse upon a manage.

For along by a wall, the outer leg is the leg of a side with the wall, and the other leg is the in-leg.

And upon volts; if a horse works upon the right, the right heel is the inner heel, the right leg the inner leg; and so by consequence, the left heel and left leg must be the outside heel and leg.

Now the downright contrary will happen, if the horse works to the left.

Now a-days, the riding-masters, to be easier understood, use the terms right and left; as for instance, assist the horse with the right heel, with the right leg, with the right rein; taking the situation of the heels and legs, with respect to the volt. See ENLARGE, GALLOP, FALSE, and LARGE.

JAW-BONES of a horse, should be narrow and lean, but the distance between them and the throat large and hollow, that he may the better place his head: If the jaw-bone be too square, that is, if there be too great a distance between the eye and that part of it which touches his neck, it is not only ugly and unseemly, but even hinders him from placing his head; and if there be but little distance betwixt the jaw-bones, then as soon as you pull the bridle to bring his head into it's most becoming posture, the bone meeting with his neck will hinder him, especially if also he have a short and thick neck, with that imperfection.

JAW-TEETH. See *Teeth of a horse*.

JAY. See JACK-DAW.

JENNY-WREN; a curious fine song-bird of a chearful nature, so that none can exceed him in his manner of singing.

This bird is of a pretty speckled colour, very pleasant to the eye, and when he sings, cocks up his tail, throwing out his notes with much pleasure and sprightliness.

J E S

The hen breeds twice a year ; first, about the latter end of *April* ; makes her nest with dry moss and leaves so artificially that it is a very hard matter to discover it, as being amongst shrubs and hedges, where ivy grows very thick ; some build in old hovels and barns, but they are such as are not used to hedges.

They close their nest round, leaving but a little hole to go in and out at, and will lay abundance of eggs, sometimes to the number of eighteen, nay, sixteen young ones have been taken out of one nest, which, considering how small the bird is, appears strange.

Their second time of breeding is in the middle of *June*, for by that time, the other nest will be brought up, and shift for themselves ; but if you intend to keep any of them, take them at twelve or fourteen days old out of the nest, and give them sheep's heart and egg minced very small, taking away the fat and the sinews, or else some of a calf's or heifer's heart.

They are to be fed in their nests very often in a day, giving them one or two morsels at one time, and no more, lest they should cast it up again, by receiving more than they can bear or digest, and so expire.

They should be fed with a little stick ; at the end whereof, take up the meat about the bigness of a white pea ; and when you perceive them to pick it up from the stick themselves, put them into cages ; afterwards, having provided a pan or two, put some of the same meat therein, and also about the sides of every cage, to entice them to eat ; however, you must still feed them five or six times a day for better security, lest they should neglect themselves and die, when all your trouble is almost past ; as soon as they have found the way to feed alone, give them now and then some paste : if you perceive them to eat heartily, and like it very well, you may forbear giving them any more heart.

Further, you must once in two or three days give them a spider or two ; and if you have a mind your bird should learn to whistle tunes, take the pains to teach him, and he will answer your expectation.

Now, for the distinguishing of cocks from hens, when you have got a whole nest, observe which are brownest and largest, and mark them ; also take notice of their recording ; for such of them as record themselves in the nest before they can feed themselves, and those whose throats grow big as they record, they are certainly cocks.

JESSES, Ribbons that hang down from garlands, or crowns, in Falconry, short straps of leather fastenend to the hawk's legs, and so to the vervels.

IMPING :

I N K

IMPING : This term in Falconry signifies the inserting of a feather in the wing of a hawk in the place of one that is broke, and it is done several ways ; for a large hawk, when the feather is broke within a finger's breadth of the quill, you must shear it off with a pair of scissors that it may not cleave farther : then having a feather like it, cut the quill off, and force it together to enter the broken quill, anointing it with the yolk of an egg before it is thrust in, or some kind of cement made for that purpose, so that it may be as it were grafted into it ; and that it may have the better hold, fasten them together, by putting the point of a small feather thro' them, as it were a pin, for which a hole may be made with a needle.

But if a farrel, a flag, or train-feather, be broke or shod, so as an impeded feather can have no hold, then take a juniper stick, or such wood, and make a small peg, so as to enter the quill, that done, dip one end of it into glew or cement, and thrust it into the broken quill, placing it so that it may be without the quill, and of a just size to answer the length of the feather before broken ; afterwards put the other end also in the glew or cement, forcing it into the quill of the feather that you have got so close, that one quill touch the other directly.

Lastly, fasten and clinch both the quills to the juniper-peg with a small feather, as aforesaid.

And in case the feathers are broken above the quill, towards the point of the feather, two or three fingers breadth, cut it off with a pen-knife, slope-wise, and cut it in like manner as you did the other, so as to fit well and close together.

IMPOSTHUME in horses, is an unnatural swelling of humours or corrupt matter in any part of the body.

This distemper may happen to a horse several ways, as by a collection of filthy humours, causing swellings, which in time grow to an inflammation, and at last break out into foul, matter, and running sores.

There are two sorts of imposthumes, *hot*, and *cold*.

The disease may be known by the burning heat of the part, and the horse's being unwilling to be handled about that part.

For the cure, among many remedies I shall give but one, and particularly for the ripening the imposthume.

Bruise *mallow roots*, and *lilly roots*, of each a like quantity, boil them in hog's-grease, with linseed meal, till they be soft, and apply them in the manner of a plaister to the part aggrieved, and it will ripen, break, and heal it.

INCORDING, burstness in a horse. See **RUPTURE**.

INK, [*in Falconry*] the neck, or that part from the head to the body, of any bird that the hawk preys upon.

INSTEP,

I N T

INSTEP, is that part of the hinder leg of a horse that corresponds to the flank; in the fore-leg, extended from the ham to the pastern-joint. It should be big, flat, and in a perpendicular line to the ground, when the horse is in his natural posture of standing; so that when the insteps do not stand perpendicularly, it is a certain sign of weakness, either in the reins or hinder quarters.

INTERFERE, or *Cut*; to knock or rub one heel against another in going, as horses sometimes do.

There are four accidents that cause a horse to interfere.

1. Weariness.
2. Weakness in his reins.
3. Not knowing how to go.
4. His not being accustomed to travel.

To which may be added, his being badly, or too old shod.

It happens more frequently behind than before, and is easily helped by shoeing, especially if the horse be young.

It is soon discovered, by the skin's being cut on the inside of the pastern-joints, and many times galled to the very bone, so that the horse often halts with it, and has his pastern-joints swelled.

To redress this grievance, 1. If a horse cut thro' weariness, there is no better remedy than giving him rest, and feeding him well.

2. If he cut before, take off his two fore-shoes, take down the out-quarter of each foot very much, and place the inner edge of the shoe, so as it may exactly follow the compass of his foot, without it's any ways exceeding towards the heel, then cut the spunges equal with the heel, and rivet the nails so nicely into the horn that they may not at all appear above it, or else burn the horn with the point of a red hot iron, a little below the hole of each nail, which done, beat down and rivet them in those holes.

If after this method of shoeing he still continue to cut himself, you are to thicken the inner quarters and spunges of his shoes, so as they may double the thick of those on the outside, and always pare down his out-quarters even, almost to the quick, without in the least touching those on the inside; but ever be sure to rivet the nails very justly and close.

3. If the horse cut behind, unshoe him, and pare down his out-quarters, even almost to the quick, give his shoes calkins only on the inside, and such a turn as may make them absolutely follow the compass and shape of his foot, without exceeding it, especially in the inner quarters; and above all, rivet the nails exactly, for one single rivet may cause a great disorder.

4. If

J O U

4. If notwithstanding all these precautions your horse does not forbear cutting, you must (besides what has been already ordered) take care that no nails at all be drove upon the inside, but only make a beak at the toe, to keep the shoe firm in it's place, so that continuing this method for some time, the horse will learn to walk, and no longer interfere, tho' he were afterwards shod in the usual manner.

5. To prevent this disorder, some fix little boots of leather, or of an old hat, about the pastern-joints, which are made narrower at top than bottom, and therefore only fastened at top.

6. Others wrap about the pastern-joint, a piece of sheep's skin, with the woolly side next to the horse; and when 'tis worn out apply a new one.

INTERMEWING, [*amongst Falconers*] is the hawk's mewing from the first change of her coat, till she turn white.

JOCKEY, one that trims up horses, and rides about with horses for sale.

JOUK [*in Falconry*]; a hawk is said to jouk when she falls asleep.

JOURNEY, to travel by land, properly as much ground as might be passed over in a day; also a tract or extent of ground, way, or march.

Amongst farmers, a day's work in ploughing, sowing, reaping, &c.

Here it may not be amiss to insert certain particular directions for preserving a horse sound upon travel.

1. See that his shoes be not too streight, or press his feet, but be exactly shaped; and let him be shod some days before you begin a journey, that they may be settled to his feet.

2. You are to observe that he be furnished with a bitt proper for him, and by no means too heavy, which may incline him to carry low, or to rest upon the hand when he grows weary, which horsemen call, *making use of his fifth leg*.

The mouth of the bitt should rest upon his bars about half a finger's breadth from his tusshes; so as not to make him frumple his lips; the curb should rest in the hollow of his beard a little above the chin; and if it gall him, you must defend the place with a piece of buff, or other soft leather.

3. The next particular to be taken notice of, is, that the saddle do not rest upon his withers, reins, or back-bone, and that one part of it do not press his back more than another.

4. Some riders gall a horse's sides below the saddle with their stirrup-leathers, especially if he be lean; to hinder it, you should fix a leather-strap between the points of the fore and

A a

hind

J O U

hind bows of the saddle, and make the flirrup-leather pass over them.

5. Having observed these precautions, begin your journey with short marches, especially if your horse has not been exercised for a long time: suffer him to piss as often as you find him inclined, and not only so, but invite him to it; but do not excite your mares to stale, because their vigour will be thereby diminished.

6. It is also advisable to ride very softly, for a quarter or half an hour before you arrive at the Inn, that the horse not being too warm, nor out of breath, when put into the stable, you may unbridle him; but if your business obliges you to put on sharply, you must then (the weather being warm) let him be walked in a man's hand, that he may cool by degrees; otherwise if it be very cold, let him be covered with cloths, and walked up and down in some place free from wind; but in case you have not the conveniency of a sheltered walk, stable him forthwith, and let his whole body be rubbed and dried with straw.

7. Altho' some people will have their horse's legs rubbed down with straw as soon as they are brought into the stable, thinking to supple them by that means; yet it is one of the greatest errors as can be committed, and produces no other effects than to draw down into the legs those humours that are always stirred up by the fatigue of the journey: not that the rubbing of horses legs is to be disallowed, on the contrary, we highly approve of it, only would not have it done at their first arrival, but when they are perfectly cooled.

8. Being come to your inn, as soon as your horse is partly dried, and ceases to beat in the flanks, let him be unbridled, his bitt washed, cleansed, and wiped, and let him eat his hay at pleasure.

9. The dust and sand will sometimes so dry the tongues and mouths of horses, that they loose their appetites: in such case give them bran well moistened with water, to cool and refresh their mouths; or wash their mouths and tongues with a wet sponge, to oblige them to eat.

10. The foregoing directions are to be observed after moderate riding, but if you have rid excessive hard, unsaddle your horse, and scrape off the sweat with a sweating-knife, or scraper, holding it with both hands, and going always with the hair; then rub his head and ears with a large hair-cloth, wipe him also between the fore-legs and hind-legs; in the mean while, his body should be rubbed all over with straw, especially under his belly and beneath the saddle, till he be thoroughly dry.

Tha

J O U

That done, set on the saddle again, cover him, and if you have a warm place, let him be gently led up and down in it, for a quarter of an hour, but if not, let him dry where he stands.

11. When horses are arrived in an inn, a man should, before they are unbridled, lift up their feet, to see whether they want any of their shoes, or if those they have do not rest upon their soles, afterwards he should pick and clear them of the earth and gravel, which may be got betwixt their shoes and soles.

12. If you water them abroad, upon their return from the river, cause their feet to be stopped with cow-dung, which will ease the pain therein; and if it be in the evening, let the dung continue in their feet all night, to keep them soft and in good condition; but if your horse have brittle feet, it will be requisite to anoint the fore-feet, at the on-setting of the hoofs, with butter, oil, or hog's-grease, before you water him in the morning, and in dry weather they should be also greased at noon.

13. Many horses, as soon as unbridled, instead of eating lay themselves down to rest, by reason of the great pain they have in their feet, so that a man is apt to think them sick, but if he look to their eyes, he will see they are lively and good, and if he offer them meat as they are lying, they will eat it very willingly; yet if he handle their feet, he will find them extremely hot, which discovers their suffering in that part.

You must therefore see if their shoes do not rest upon their soles, which is somewhat difficult to be certainly known, without unshoeing them, but if you take off their shoes, then look to the inside of them, and you may perceive that those parts which rest upon the soles, are more smooth and shining than the others: in this case you are to pare their feet in those parts, and fix on their shoes again, anointing the hoofs, and stopping the soles, with scalding hot black pitch or tar.

In order to preserve horses after travel, take these few useful instructions. When you are arrived from a journey, immediately draw the two heel nails of the fore-feet, and if it be a large shoe, then four: two or three days after you may blood him in the neck, and feed him for ten or twelve days only with wet bran, without giving him any oats; but keep him well littered.

The reason why you are to draw the heel-nails, is because the heels are apt to swell, and if they are not thus eased, the shoes would press and straiten them too much: 'tis also advisable to stop them with cow-dung for a while, but do not take the shoes off, nor pare the feet, because the humours are drawn down by that means.

J O U

2. The following bath will be very serviceable for preserving your horse's legs. Take the dung of a cow or ox, and make it thin with vinegar, so as to be but of the consistence of thick broth, and having added a handful of small salt, rub his fore-legs from the knees, and the hind-legs from the gambrels, chafing them well with and against the hair, that the remedy may sink in and stick to those parts, that they may be all covered over with it. Thus leave the horse till morning, not wetting his legs, but giving him his water that evening in a pail: next morning lead him to the river, or wash his legs in well-water, which is very good, and will keep them from swelling.

3. Those persons, who, to recover their horse's feet, make a hole in them, which they fill with moistened cow-dung, and keep it in their fore feet during the space of a month, do very ill, because, tho' the continual moisture that issues from the dung, occasions the growing of the hoof, yet it dries and shrinks it so excessively when out of that place, that it splits and breaks like glass, and the foot immediately freightsens.

For 'tis certain that cow-dung (contrary to the opinion of many people) spoils a horse's hoof; it does indeed moisten the sole, but dries up the hoof, which is of a different nature from it.

In order therefore to recover a horse's feet, instead of cow-dung, fill a hole with blue wet clay, and make him keep his fore-feet in it for a month.

4. For a horse that has been rid extremely hard, that there is danger of foundering, see an excellent remedy under the head, *FOUNDERING in the feet.*

Most horses that are fatigued, or over-rid, and made lean by long journies, have their flanks altered without being purisy, especially vigorous horses that have worked too violently.

There is no better method to recover them, than to give each of them in the morning, half a pound of honey, very well mingled with scalded bran, and when they readily eat the half pound, give them the next time a whole one, and afterwards two pounds, every day continuing this course till your horses are empty, and purge kindly with it; but as soon as you perceive that their purging ceases, forbear to give them any more honey.

You may administer powder of liquorice in the scalded bran for a considerable time; and to cool their blood, it will not be improper to let them have three or four glisters: if their flanks do not recover, give them powder for purfise horses; which see under that Article.

J U K

In case the horse be very lean, it is expedient to give him some wet bran, over and above his proportion of oats; and grass is also extraordinary beneficial, if he be not purfy.

If it be a mare, put her to a horse, and if she never had a foal before it will enlarge her belly.

Sometimes excessive feeding may do horses more harm than good, by rendering them subject to the farcy.

You should therefore be cautious in giving them too great a quantity at a time, and take a little blood from him now and then.

When a horse begins to drink heartily, it is a certain sign that he will recover in a short time; but as to the method of giving him water during a journey, See WATERING of HORSES.

ITCH [*in Hawks*], a distemper with which they are affected; and are also sometimes troubled with a rankness in their feathers, which causes them to put them out all bloody, and then they pull them off with their beaks.

For the cure, anoint such places with some kind of nauseous bitter oils, or the like, to keep the hawk from pulling them out; but besides this the humour must be dried up and repelled, in order to which, boil two or three races of beaten ginger in a pint of strong vinegar, and add two or three sprigs of rue; when it is boiled to the consumption of one half, put in the quantity of a walnut of alum, and a spoonful of honey, let it boil a little, and put it up in a bottle for use.

Anoint the parts affected, with a feather dipped in this water, and it will strengthen any feather, tho' never so much bruised.

ITCH [*in Horses*], a distemper which may be perceived by their rubbing their legs till the hair comes off.

For the cure, use a mixture of two ounces of *Sorbs*, which must be infused for six hours in a pint of strong vinegar, and set it on the fire; and rub the part affected with it twice, and it will cure it.

It will also be proper to bleed him in the bows.

JUCKING-TIME, the season of going to the haunts of partridges, very early in the morning, or in the close of the evening, there to listen for the calling of the cock-partridge, which will be very loud, with no small eagerness, and will make the hen answer him, so that they will soon come together, as may easily be known by their chattering and rejoicing notes.

Whereupon you may take your range about them, drawing in, little by little, to the place where you heard them juck.

K E E

JUKE [*in Falconry*], the same as **IN K**.

To **JUKE**, or **JUG**; to perch and roost as a hawk and other birds do.

K E N

K E E P E R of the forest, otherwise called, chief warden of the forest, is he that has the principal government of all things belonging to a royal forest, and the check of all the other officers; so that the Lord Chief-Justice in eyre of the forest, when he thinks fit to hold his justice-seat, he sends out his general summons to the keeper forty days before, to warn all under officers to appear before him at the day assigned in the summons.

KENNEL, a place or little house for hounds; and in a metaphorical sense, used for the pack of hounds itself.

To make a compleat kennel, three conveniencies ought to be observed, *viz.* a sweet air, fresh water, and the morning-sun, for which the following brief rules may be instructive.

The court should be large, for the more spacious it is the better it will be for the hounds to refresh themselves in; and it should be well walled, or fenced about, to prevent their getting out, but not so high as to keep out the sun or wind.

The water, if possible, should run thro' some part of the court or yard; or for want thereof, have a well with a stone trough about a foot and a half high, always kept with fresh water, to the end, the hounds may drink when they please; and at one end of the trough there must be a hole to let out the water for cleansing it.

Let the kennel be built in the highest part of the court, in which there should be two rooms, one of which should be larger than the other; with a large chimney to make a fire, when need requires.

This room should be raised about three foot from the ground, and in the floor there should be two gutters for the conveyance of the pifs,

There

K E E

There must be dispersed up and down small bedsteads raised a foot from the floor, with holes pierced thro' the planks for drawing away their pifs.

The other room must be for the huntsman to keep his poles, whips, liams, salves, and the like necessaries: there should be a copper for the boiling, dressing, and ordering of their food, when they come home wet and weary: as for such times, they should be cherished as instruments of your recreation and profit, that they may delight in your service, and taste of your bounty, and you need not doubt but to have credit of them in the field.

Be careful not to give them any thing to drink in vessels of copper; and as to the proportion and quality of allowance for food, it must be ordered with relation to the natures of the hounds and their sizes: Three bushels of oats, with a bushel and a half of wheat-bran, will serve ten couple and a half of middling-sized hounds a week, giving them sometimes beef broth, whey, slipt-milk, chippings of bread, bones, and sometimes a little horse-flesh, for change of food creates a good appetite, and preserves health.

The oats and wheat-bran must be boiled and thickened with milk and butter-milk, with some chippings, or some broken meat boiled therein.

As concerning horse-flesh, those best skilled this way, approve, provided it be given with discretion; and of all sorts, horse-flesh is the best, and hottest; but be sure to flea, or skin the beasts, lest the dogs discerning the hair, may fall on them when living in the field: As for dogs that are accustomed to hunt the hare, it is not good to give them any meat, because it is said to withdraw their scent or affections from the chace, by reason their flesh is not very sweet, nor their scents very strong.

If the Huntsman perceives that thro' long and frequent chaces the hounds fall away, he must be more careful in feeding and cherishing them up with some good broth, boiled oxen or sheeps hearts.

On such days as the hounds do not hunt, the best times to feed them are early, before sun-rising, and late in the evening, after sun-set; and on the days they hunt, they ought to be rewarded as they come home, be it when it will, with a good supper, for nothing is a greater discouragement to a hound than to go to sleep with an empty belly after hard labour.

If you have more dead flesh than you have present occasion for, it may be preserved a week or ten days sweet, by sinking it under ground. See *ENTRING of Hounds*.

K N O

To KENNEL; a term applied by Fox-hunters to a fox when he lies in his hole.

KESTREL, a kind of hawk. See **CASTREL**.

KICKER against the spurs. See **RAMINGUE**.

KINDER [*amongst Hunters*], a company of cats.

KIPPER-TIME, a space of time between the festival of the Invention of the Holy Cross, *May 3*, and *Twelfth-day*; during which, Salmon-fishing in the river *Thames*, from *Gravefend* to *Henley*, was forbidden, by *Rot. Parl. 50. Edw. III.*

KITES, hawks, and other birds of prey, wait for chickens, pigeons, pheasants; and upon which account it is necessary that the countryman be constantly furnished with a good fowling-piece to destroy and scare them away.

You may also place small iron gins about the breadth of one's hand, made like a fox-gin, and baited with raw-flesh, which is a very good means to catch them; and farther, they may be frightened away by straining-lines, or pieces of nets over the places where you keep pigeons, pheasants, &c.

To KNAP; to snap or break, to pick at, amongst Hunters, the same as to browse, or to feed upon the tops of young leaves, &c.

KNEE of a horse, is the joint of the fore-quarters, that joins the fore-thigh to the flank.

KNOTS, a delicious sort of small fowl, well known in some parts of *England*, and so called from *Canutus the Danish king*, by whom they were highly esteemed.



L A M

L AIR, } [a term in Hunting] which signifies the place
LEER, } where the deer harbour by day.

L AME; a horse is said to be lame of an ear, when he halts upon a walk or a trot, and keeps time in his halting with the motions of his head, for all lame horses do not keep time after that rate.

Lame of the bridle is likewise used by the way of raillery, to signify the same thing.

LAMENESS in a horse, in any joint, limb, or member of the body, may be found out three ways :

1. Cause him to be turned at the halter's end, on either hand, suddenly, and swiftly, upon as hard a way as can be picked out ; and if he has any ache, wrench, or grief in his fore-parts, it will appear ; for when he turns upon that hand on which the grief is, he will favour that leg, and so run both towards, and from the man, especially if done at a little yielding hill : But if you cannot find it out this way,

2. Get up upon the horse's back, and ride till you have heated him thoroughly, and then set him up for two or three hours, till he is cold ; and then turn him at the halter's end, or ride him again, and the least grief that is in him may easily be discovered.

3. If you would know, whether the grief proceeds from a hot or cold cause ; if it be from *heat*, he will halt most when he is *hot* ; but if it be from a cold cause he will halt least when he is hot, and most rid or travelled ; and if it be from *cold*, he will do it most at his first setting out, while he is cold.

LAMPAS, } is a sort of swelling in the palate of a horse's
LAMPERS, } mouth, *i. e.* an inflammation in the roof
LAMPRESS, } of his mouth behind the nippers of his upper jaw, so called, because it is cured by burning with a lamp or hot iron.

It is caused by the super-abounding of blood, and it's resorting to the first furrow of the mouth, near to the fore-teeth, which causes the said furrow to swell as high as the gathers, which will hinder him from feeding, and cause him to let his meat fall half chewed out of his mouth again.

This is a natural infirmity with which all horses are affected sooner or later, and every common Farrier can cure it.

L A N

The usual method of cure is, to take it away with an instrument of iron made for that purpose, and heated red hot.

But in the operation great care must be taken, that in burning the flesh you do not touch the bone; for if you do, the bone will scale, and several dangerous consequences may follow.

LANNER, ♂ or *Tunisian* falcon. The *Lanner* is a

LANNERET, ♀ hawk common in all countries, especially in *France*, making her eyrie on high trees in forests, or on high cliffs near the sea-side.

She is less than the *falcon-gentle*, fair-plumed when an enter-mewer, and of shorter talons than any other. Those who have the largest and best-seasoned heads are the best *lanners*.

With the *lanner* or *lanneret*, you may fly the river, and both are very good also for the land.

They are not very choice in their food, and better away with gross victuals than any other hawk.

Mewed *lanners* are hardly known from the *soar-hawks* (as also the *faker*) because they do not change their plumes.

The *lanners* are known by three tokens following:

1. They are blacker than any other.
2. They have lesser beaks than the rest.
3. They are less armed and pounced than other falcons.

Of all *hawks*, there is none so fit for a young Falconer as the *lanner* is, because she is not subject to surfeits, and seldom melts grease by being overflowed.

There is a sort of *lanners* which eyrie in the *Alps*, having their heads white and flat aloft, large and black eyes, slender nares, short and thick beaks, and lesser than the *haggard* or *falcon-gentle*; some are indifferent large, some less, and others middle-sized.

Their tail is marble or russet; their breast-feathers white, and full of russet spots; the points and extremities of the feathers full of white drops; their sails and train long; short legged, with a foot less than that of a falcon, marble-seered; but being mewed, the seer changeth to a yellow.

The *lanner* never lieth upon the wing after she hath flown to the mark, but after once stooping she maketh a point, and then, like the *goss-hawk*, waits the fowl.

If she miss at the first down-fall, and kill not, she will consult her advantage to her greatest ease.

These kind of *hawks* are highly prized in *France* and *Italy*, neither is she despisable in *England*; but we look upon them as slothful and hard mettled; and therefore if you would have any good of her, keep a strict hand over her, for she is of an ungrateful disposition, and will slight your kindnesses, contrary to the nature of the *falcon-gentle*, who, for one good usage, will return

L A R

return a treble courtesy, and the better she is rewarded, the better she will fly.

They are flown at field or brook, and are *hawks* that maintain long flights, whereby much fowl is killed, and more than by a better *hawk*, by reason of dogs and hawking-poles.

If you will fly with a *lanner*, you must keep her very sharp; and because they keep their castings long, by reason they are hard mettled *hawks*, give them therefore hard castings made of tow and knots of hemp.

In the reclaiming the *lanner* and the *lanneret*, much pains and labour must be taken; and the chief thing is, to make her acquainted with the lure, which must be garnished with hard washed meat, and let her receive the greatest part of her rewards in bits from your hand: As for the rest of her training, take the same course that I have directed in the managing and ordering of the *haggard-falcon*; but above all, take pains to stay her, and with your utmost art restrain her from dragging or carrying any thing from you, to which ill quality she is more inclined than any other *hawk* whatever.

I come next to the *Tunisian-falcon*, which is not much different in nature from the *lanner*; she is something less, but in foot and plume much alike: she hath a large round head, and is more creese than the *lanner*, and more heavy and sluggish in her flight.

She is called a *Tunisian-falcon*, from *Tunis* the metropolis of *Barbary*, the country where she usually makes her eyrie.

They are excellent *hawks* for the river, lying long upon the wing, and will fly the field also very well.

They delight naturally to seize upon the hare, and will strike boldly at her. Much more might be said of her, which I omit, she being a *hawk* not very common in *England*.

LARGE; a horse is said to go large and wide when he gains or takes in more ground in going wider of the center of the volt, and describing a greater circumference.

LARK, a small grey bird, that sings in the morning when it is fair weather, and breeds in *May*, *July*, and *August*, and the young ones are able to quit their nests in ten or twelve days: There are larks that fly in flocks, and these are the first birds that proclaim the approach of summer; and others, that keep more close to the ground, as the *sky-lark*, and *wood-lark*; both sorts feed upon worms and ants: they are good food, when young, and well fed: their flesh is firm, brown, juicy, and easy of digestion. They make use of the heart and blood of a *lark* in the *wind* and *stone-cholic*: they are also accounted good for those troubled with the *gravel*, and *phlegm* in the kidneys and bladder.

The

L A R

The way of taking *larks* is with nets, as they do *Ortolans*, only they use a looking-glass for the first, known with us by the name of *doring*, or *daring*, and the callers are set upon the ground; whereas those for *Ortolans*, are placed upon small wooden forks.

The looking-glass made use of for this purpose, is made of several pieces, which are described by the figures 1, 2, 3. Take a piece of wood A C, an inch and half thick, and about nine inches long; it must be cut in such a manner as to bend like a bow, as you see at A, B, C, and that it may have six faces according to it's length.

The figure marked 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, represents it's form or cut; that at 6 undermost, must be an inch and a half broad; the faces ought so to diminish in thickness, that the uppermost at 3 should be but half an inch broad; the five corners, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, must be let in to receive as many pieces of looking-glass: in the middle of the lower face, or corner of the wood marked 6, or B, in the first figure, a hole must be made to receive a little wooden peg six inches long, and a finger thick, a little pointed at the end, with a small hole in the middle 1, there to fasten a cord.

Then take another piece of wood at Q, six inches thick, and a foot long, sharpened at the end Q, in order to fix it to the ground; make a mortaise in it at M O, about two inches high, and one inch and a half deep or broad; then bore or pierce a hole in the said piece above at N, and continue the hole to the bottom of the notch M O; into this hole you are to put the peg I B, as represented in the third figure; when it is thus fixed, put a small cord or line into the hole, and twisting it about, your looking-glass is finished. You must place it between the two nets, near the middle of them, and carry the line to the hedge; so that pulling the line, you may make the looking-glass play in and out, as children do a whirly-gig: keep it always turning, that the twinkling of the glass against the sun may provoke the larks to come and view it. The right season for this sport begins in *September*, and especially white frosty mornings.

Some catch larks with a clap-net, which is described in the figure following.

These birds, when it freezes hard, go in great flocks, and fly from one field to another, in quest of their food; and they first fly low, near the ground, and alight where they see some others: Now, in order to take them, you must provide yourself with three sticks, like to those here represented at D, E, F, five or six foot long, very strait, and strong enough, with a notch at each end; at the end of which fasten on one side a stick,

L A R

stick, as at E, a foot and a half in length, and on the other side a small peg two or three inches long; one of these two poles or sticks must have two sticks tied to the end, opposite to one another; and there must be two other small sticks or pegs fastened to the side of each stake, as you see described in the figure marked G, L, X, I, H. The stick I X, must have two notches at it's ends; one at X, there to place the net, and the end I, where the two sticks G H, are fastened, and to the side of each stick the pegs L I; and when you intend to catch larks, three or four men must go from one field to another, which must be pretty even, and not hilly, and pitch your nets: the three sticks must be fastened together at both ends, and in the middle, and place the staff with the two pegs in the middle, that the net may the more easily and readily turn, being guided by this staff, which will turn between the two sticks, which you are to join in the ground; the two other ends must be opposite to one another, insomuch that the four sticks will be found to be fixed in a strait line; and that the cord at the bottom of the net may be very stiff, get a strong cord, 3, 5, twelve feet long, one end of which you are to fasten to the stick 3, and the other to that at 5, which you must pitch in the ground over-against those at 4, 1, 6: In like manner fasten another cord, ten feet long, to the end of the stick or staff 7, with a peg 8 at the other end, which fix in the ground to the right of the others; pull it with all your strength, that the upper cord or line may be as stiff as that below; you must have another cord about ten or twelve fathoms long, which put on a pully, and at one end fasten it to the stick 7, and let the others be tied to the stake behind the stand, which should be made of stubble put round some sprigs or small branches of wood; the pully must be held at the place marked 10, fifteen foot distant from the net, with a cord tied to the stake 11, so that the space between the pully and it's stake must be a foot and a half long, and the pully advanced to within two foot in the inside of the bottom of the net, that it may turn more expeditiously.

The whole being set in order, let the person take his stand; and let the other persons post themselves in such a manner, that the game 19, 20, may, as it were be between them three: I suppose one of them advances from the place marked A, the other from B, and third from C; but those at A and B, must move more forward than the middlemost; and thus the *larks* seeing themselves hemmed in, as it were on all sides, and being obliged to fly strait over the nets; to forward them the more therein, take a good long packthread, tie one end of it to the point of the small peg 9, and a foot and a half, or two foot high, fixed upright in the ground, within two foot of the nets,
and

L A S

and pass it from thence over a small forked stick, cut of the same height as the other stick or peg, and fix it likewise in the ground; the other end of the packthread must be conveyed to the stand. To this packthread, tie three or four birds, 15, 16, 17, 18, by the legs, with other small packthreads, a foot and an half long; and when the person in the stand sees the flock of larks fly, he must stir the packthread a little, and when those at large perceive it, they will make directly thither, and then is his time to hold the cord in both his hands and draw it. Those live birds tied to the packthreads, are termed *calls*.

Country people, when they are not provided with nets, make use of *springs*, and such like things, to take larks with.

When the weather is very cold, they observe those places wherein they delight most, and to allure them the more thither, they strew some oats in the place where they lay their *springs*, putting on several ridges of earth, near one another, packthreads of about four or five fathom, to which they fasten several *springs* or *collars*, made of horse-hair, and thereby take great numbers of them.

LASK, or } [*in Horses*], is a distemper occasioned
 LOOSENESS } by such a weakness of the stomach, that
 their food passes through their guts without any alteration, which is a very dangerous case, and frequently fatal to them. It also sometimes proceeds from the corruption of humours, either collected in the stomach, or thrown upon it from other parts.

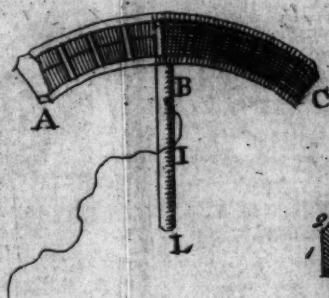
The external causes, are eating too much provender, feeding upon mouldy or rotten hay, frozen grass, rye, straw, and other unwholesome fodder, drinking very cold water, or immediately after the eating of a great quantity of oats, immoderate fatigue, excessive fatness, and sometimes want of exercise.

If the excrements voided, boil and work upon the ground, it is a sign that the distemper proceeds from over-heated choler, which is seldom dangerous, nay it is sometimes profitable.

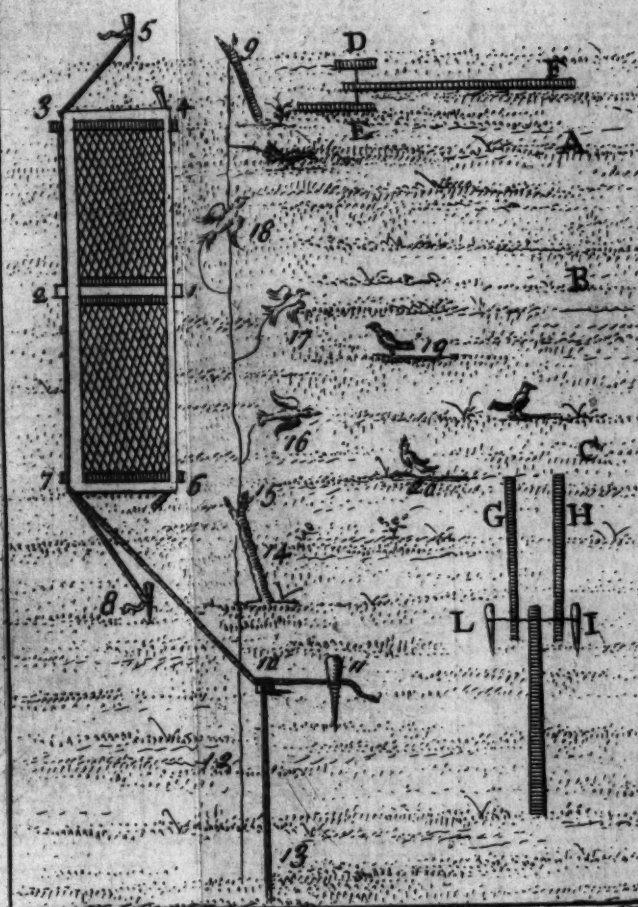
Again, if the ordure be white, it is a sign of crude, cold humours; if watery, it betokens a great weakness of the stomach.

Lasks occasioned by drinking cold water in summer, or melted snow, or by eating tender grass, or other loosening things, are not to be regarded; but such as proceed without any manifest outward cause, are not by any means to be neglected.

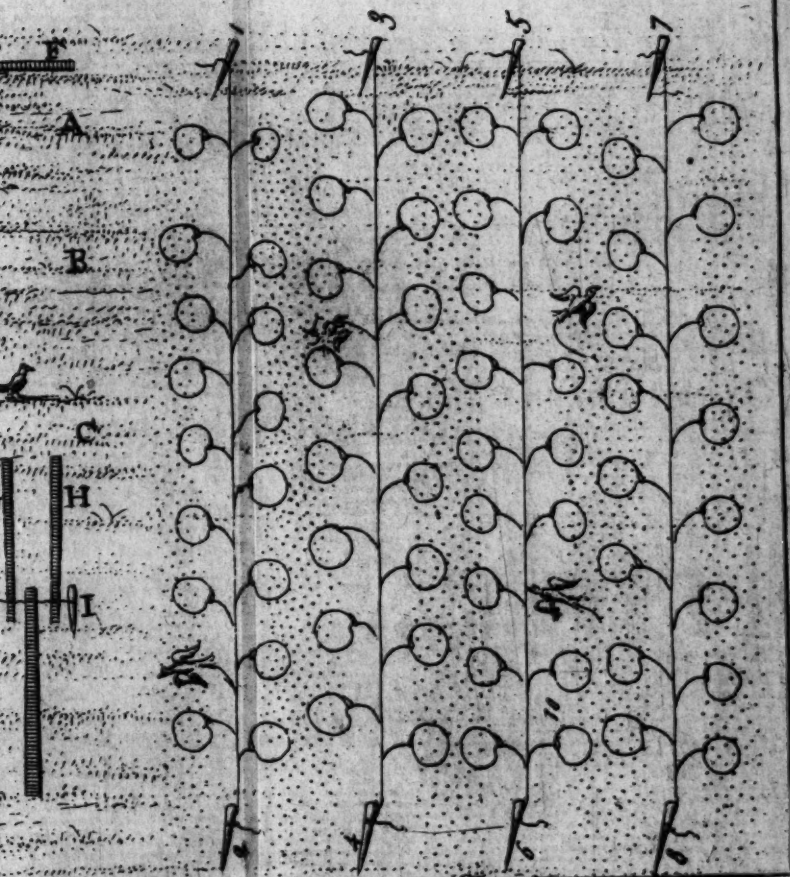
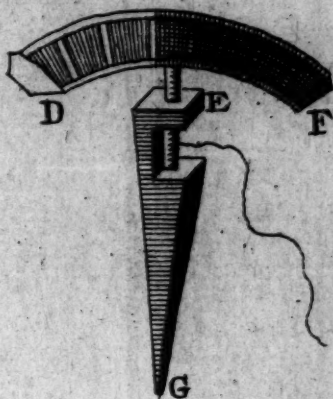
For the cure. If the excrements appear mixed with small pieces or scrapings of the guts, you ought out of hand to endeavour to prevent a deadly ulcer in those parts, by giving him two or three times a day, a pint of cooling, softening decoction, made as follows, *viz.* two ounces of *barley*, two ounces



Clap Net



Larks



L E E

ounces of *marsh mallow* roots, and one ounce of the powder of *sal prunella*, boiled in three quarts of water to one quart.

2. If the distemper is caused by phlegm, you may make use of cordial powders or pills, and other hot medicines, proper for strengthening the stomach and relaxed parts.

3. Sometimes a *Lask* is a reasonable effort of nature, to free it self from a troublesome load of humours; but if it continues longer than three days, with loss of appetite, it ought to be seasonably checked, for that horses are sometimes foundered by it's long continuance.

In this case, give the horse for his food, *bran* moistened with *claret*, or *barley* parched on a peel, and then ground, and the best hay; but oats are in no wise proper.

LASSITUDE, or *Weariness* in horses, may proceed either from heat or cold; either when he has a retention of urine, has drank after being heated, or has been put to his utmost speed at once after long rest; the remedy for which, is rest. You may also give him hog's suet mixed with wine.

If the lassitude proceeds from cold, or be in cold weather, make use of fomentations, and anoint his head and back-bone with ointment, in hot water or warm wine.

If he has retained his urine, use the same medicines, or rub his head and reins with hot oil, mixed with hog's grease or hog's blood, and give it him to drink with wine.

LAUND

LAWN

} [*in a Park*], plain, untilled ground.

LAWING of dogs, a cutting out the balls, or the three claws of his fore-feet. See *To EXPEDiate*.

LEAD; a horse going upon a strait line, always leads and cuts the way with his right foot.

The Duke of *Newcastle* was the first as ever made use of the term, and indeed it is very expressive. See *GALLOP UNITED*, and *GALLOP FALSE*.

LEAM, } [*amongst Hunters*] a line to hold a dog in,
LIAM, } otherwise called a leash.

LEAP, an air of a step, and a leap. See *STEP*.

LEAPING-HORSE, one that works in the high manage, a horse that makes his leaps in order, with obedience, between two pillars, upon a strait line, in volts, caprioles, balotades, or croupades.

Use, which in most things has a sovereign sway, excludes a gallop *a terra a terra*, and corvets, from the number of leaps, because the horse does not rise so very high in these.

Each leap of a leaping-horse ought to gain or make, not above a foot and a half of ground forwards.

LEASH

L E G

LEASH, } a small, long thong of leather, by which a
LEASE, } Falconer holds his hawk, twisting it about his
 fingers. Also a line to hold in a hunting-dog.

LEASH of *Greyhounds*; three such hounds; the term
 being now restrained to that number, which was formerly
 double, or perhaps indefinite.

LEEK-HEADS, a kind of warts, that come about a
 horse's pasterns or pastern-joints; they are higher than the skin
 about half the thickness of one's finger, throw out filthy stink-
 ing stuff, spoil the leg, and are very difficult to cure.

Those that arise in the pasterns are hid beneath the long hair
 of the fetlocks, and are some of them so extremely malignant,
 that they make the hair fall off all round them, and they them-
 selves grow up like walnuts.

There are others again more flat, and not so much raised
 above the skin, yet more dangerous than those that are the
 biggest and most elevated.

These *leek-heads* are easily discovered, as being a great many
 mattery warts that touch one another, and without hair: they
 send forth much matter for the most part, but may be dried
 up for a time.

LEGS of the *Horseman*, the action of the horseman's legs
 given seasonably, and with judgment, is an aid that consists in
 approaching more or less with the calf of the leg to the flank of
 the horse, and in bearing it more or less off, as there is oc-
 casion.

This aid a horseman ought to give very finely, in order to
 animate a horse; and 'tis so much the finer, that is, 'tis hidden
 and private, for in stretching the ham, he makes the horse
 dread the spur, and this fear has as much effect as the spur
 it self.

LEGS of a *horse*, should have a due proportion of their
 length to that of the body: the fore-legs are subject to many
 infirmities, as being the parts that suffer most, and are also
 commonly the smallest and weakest.

There are several marks of bad legs, that is, which are abused
 and spoiled, *viz.* if they appear altogether strait, or as if they
 were all of one piece.

A horse is said to be strait upon his members, when from the
 knee to the fore-part of the coronet, the knees, flank, and co-
 ronet, descend in a strait or plumb-line, and that the pastern-
 joint appears more, or at least, as much advanced as the rest
 of the leg; such legs are like those of a *goat*, making a horse
 apt to stumble and fall; so that in time the pastern is thrust
 quite forward out of it's place, so that the horse becomes
 lame.

L E S

2. Horses which are strait upon their members, are quite contrary to those that are long-jointed; that is, whose pasterns are so long and flexible, that the horse in walking almost touches the ground with them.

This is a greater imperfection than the former, because some remedy may be applied to them, but there can be none for this; besides, it is a sign of little or no strength, and such horses are not fit for any fatigue or toil.

3. Some horses, tho' they be long-jointed, yet do not bend their pasterns in walking, being somewhat long; yet if they be not too flexible, such a horse will gallop and run with a great deal more ease to his rider, than if he were short jointed.

So that these are the only horses for Persons of Quality, who have wherewithal to seek after their own ease and pleasure; and indeed these horses may be compared to coaches with springs, which render them infinitely more easy than those without them.

LEGS in a strait Line. This is an imperfection in a horse, where his legs, from the knee to the coronet, appear in a strait line as the horse stands with them in their natural position.

The remedy is shoeing; in doing which the heels must be taken down almost to the quick, without hollowing the quarters; and if, when this has been done, the leg does not fall back enough, but that the horse still carries his pastern-joint too far forward, then the shoe must be so made, as to go beyond or exceed the toe, about the breadth of half a finger; and also it must be thicker in that than in any other part: and in the mean time, anoint the back sinews of his legs with the ointment of *Montpellier*: And these things will reduce them to their proper position.

Of the four legs, the two before have several parts, each of which has a peculiar name; so that by the name of fore-leg, we commonly understand that part of the fore-quarters that extends from the hough to the pastern-joint, and call it the flank. The part that corresponds with that in the hinder quarters, we call the instep.

But in common discourse, we confound the fore and hind quarters, and without any distinction, say, the four legs of a horse.

A horse is said to want the fifth leg; that is, he is tired, and bearing upon the bridle, and lies heavy on the horseman's hand.

LENGTH; to passage a horse upon his own length, is to make him go round in two treads, at a walk or trot, upon a spot of ground so narrow, that the horse's haunches being in the center of the volt, his own length is about the semi-diameter of the volt, the horse still working behind the two heels, with-

L E S

out putting out his croup, or going at last, faster or slower than at first.

LESSES [*with Hunters*], the dung of a wild boar, bear, or wolf.

LESSON, is a word used for the instruction of both the horse and scholar.

LESSONS for a Horse; when your horse will receive you to and from his back gently, trot forward willingly, and stand still obediently, then for what purpose soever he is intended, these general lessons may serve him.

1. With a large ring, that is at least fifty paces in circumference, labour him in some gravelly and sandy place, where his footsteps are discernable, and having trod it about three or four times on the right hand, rest and cherish; afterwards changing the hand, do as much on the left, then rest and cherish; change again, and do as much on the right; ever observing, upon every stop, to make him retire and go back a step or two: continue this till he trots his ring on what hand you please, changing within it in form of the capital *Roman S*; and does it readily and willingly: then teach him to gallop them as he trotted them, and that also with true foot, lofty carriage and brave rein, ever noting, when he gallops to the right hand, to lead with his left fore-foot; and when he gallops to the left-hand, to lead with the right fore-foot.

2. Stopping; for when you come to a place of stop, or would stop, by a sudden drawing in of the bridle-hand, somewhat hard and sharp, make him stop close, firm, and strait in an even line; and if he err in any thing, put him to it again, and leave not till you have made him understand his error, and amend it.

3. Advancing, with which if you accompany the aforementioned stop a little from the ground, it will be more gallant, and may be done by laying the calves of your legs to his sides, and shaking the rod over him as he stops; and if he does not understand it at first, yet by continuance, and labouring him therein, he will soon attain to it, especially if you do not forget to cherish him, when he shews the least token of apprehending you.

4. Retiring is another lesson, after stopping, and advancing; and this motion must be both cherished and increased, making it so familiar to him, that none may be more perfect; neither is he to retire in a confused manner, but with a brave rein, a constant head, and a direct line; nor should he draw or sweep his legs one after another, but take them clean, nimbly, and easily, as when he trots forward.

LEVERET,

L I G

LEVERET, a young hare, so called in the first year of her age.

LÉVINER, ² a hound of a very singular scent, and an in-
LYEMER, ^S comparable swiftness: this is as it were a middle kind, betwixt a harrier and a grey-hound, as well for his kind as the form or shape of his body. This dog, for the excellency of his condition, *viz.* his smelling and swift running, follows the game with more eagerness, and taketh the prey with a jolly quickness.

LIBERTY of the tongue, is a void space left in the middle of a bitt, to give place to the tongue of a horse, made by the bitt's arching in the middle, and rising towards the roof of the mouth.

The various form of the liberty gives name to the bitt.

Hence we say a scatch mouth, a *pignatelle*, *i. e.* with the liberty after *Pignatelle's* fashion; a cannon-mouth, with the liberty like a pigeon's neck.

LICE, *hawk lice* do most infest their heads, the ply of their wings and train. In the winter they may be killed in the manner following: beat two drams of pepper to powder, and mingle it with warm water, and with it wash the parts infested with these *lice* or *mites*; then set the hawk on a perch, with her back and train against the sun, and holding in your hand a small stick about a handful long, with a piece of soft wax at the end of it; with that (while the hawk is weathering herself) you may take away those vermin, which will be crawling on the outside of her feathers; or you may add to the pepper and water some *staves-acre*, and it will do very well.

In the summer-time these *lice* may be killed with *Auripigmentum* powdered and strewed on the places where they lie: Or,

You may *mayl* the hawk in a piece of cotton, or in some woollen cloth, and put a little wool or cotton between the head and her hood; then take a pipe of tobacco, and putting the little end in at the *tream*, blow the smoak, and what lice escape being killed, will creep into the cloth. This way is safe, easy, and certain.

LIGHT Horse, is a swift, nimble runner.

We likewise call a horse light that is well made, tho' he is neither swift nor active: for in this last expression we consider only the shape and make of a horse, without regard to his qualities.

LIGHT upon the hand; a horse is said to be such that has a good tractable mouth, and does not rest too heavy upon the bitt.

Your horses that have a thin forehead, that is, small shoulders, are commonly light upon the hand.

L I M

We call a coach-horse light, when he stirs nimbly, and dreads the whip ; or, when he has a light trot.

All your light coach-horses are good ; and a hard heavy coach-horse, that takes the lashing easily, is good for nothing. **LIGHT HAND.** See **HAND.**

LIGHTEN ; *to lighten a horse, to make a horse light in the fore-hand*, is to make him free and lighter in the fore-hand than behind.

If you would make your horse light, you ought to find him always disposed to a gallop when you put him to a trot, and after galloping some time, put him back to a trot again.

LIGHT-BELLY'D Horse, is one that commonly has flat, narrow, and contracted sides, which makes the flank turn up like that of a greyhound.

Such a horse has but little flank, he is light-belly'd, he travels and feeds but little, because he has too much mettle.

LIGS in a Horse, are little pusses, wheals, or bladders, within the lips of a horse, and are cured by bruising *wormwood* and *skirwort* in a mortar, with a little honey, to anoint the fores with.

LIME-BUSH, a device to catch birds with ; which is performed in this manner. Cut down an arm or bough of any bushy tree, whose twigs are thick and long, yet smooth and strait, then neatly cut off all the superfluous twigs, and having your strong birdlime well mixed, wrought together with capon's or goose-grease, warm and fit to work, daub over of an equal thickness the twigs or branches that are left, within four fingers of the bottom, but the body and arms must be free ; place your bush thus prepared, on some quick-set or dead hedge, for a spring-season, near a town's-end, a farm-yard, or the like ; in summer and harvest, in groves, in hedges, or corn-fields, orchards, flax, halm, or rape-land ; and in winter, about barns, stables, corn-fields, and stacks of corn, where chaff and grain are scattered up and down.

The bush being so set, place your self in some convenient station, where you may lie concealed, and in the bush you are to have about half a dozen stales fixed, whose chirping and singing will entice others thereto. You should also be provided with bird-calls of several sorts. The said bush may also be used in taking field-fares, which you are to fasten upon a tree, and having fixed some stales, beat the adjacent grounds to raise them, and when they espy the stales, they will light on the tree and bush for company.

But more particularly for taking pheasants with these lime-bushes and rods, take forth your call and use it, keep your self secret, and in one place, till you have inticed them about you,

L I M

as they are taken by the rods on the ground, so you'll surprize them with your bushes; for being scared from below, they will take perch and see what becomes of their fellows, and when one is limed, what by her striving and struggling, and by the rest coming and gazing to see what is befallen her, the rest will be in danger of being likewise limed: it is very requisite to count the lime-rods, for when you have gathered up all the pheasants and see what rods are wanting, you may conclude that some pheasants are run with them into the bushes, so that you must hunt them out with a good staunch spaniel.

LIME-TWIGS; small lime-twigs, about three or four inches long, may be laid in places where the birds haunt, or stuck on the tops of hemp-cocks, or wheat-sheaves; or again, little boughs may be stuck among peas, which the small birds will suddenly pluck upon; by which means the number of these destroyers of corn, grain, seed, &c. may be lessened.

A stale of one or two living night-bats is proper to draw them to the snare, but an owl is much better. As for field-fares, thrushes, and the like, which in winter-time usually fly in great flocks, they are easily caught, by liming two or three large boughs, in order to be fixed on the top of some tall tree, and placing in them two or three dried stales of that kind, then the adjacent fields where those birds feed may be beaten, and they will in great flights take to the tree where the stales are.

How to take great fowl with Lime-twigs.

Get good store of rods, or long, small, and strait-grown twigs, which are light, and apt to ply to and fro.

Lime the upper part of these twigs, holding the bird-lime before the fire, that it may melt, in order to the easier besmearing them.

And having a knowledge of the place where these fowl resort morning and evening, observe (before day for the morning-flight, and before sun-set for the evening-flight) to plant your lime-twigs at the haunt of these fowl, staking down one of the same fowl alive, which you have caught before for that purpose.

Prick down your twigs in rows, a foot distant one from another, round about the stale, allowing him room and liberty to flutter to and fro, covering all the place of their haunt, so that there shall be no room left, but that they must of necessity be foul on the lime-twigs.

Let the twigs be stuck in the ground sloping, with their tops bending into the wind, about a foot, or something more, above the ground. It will likewise be best to prick the rods so as to

L I N

cross one another, that is, one point into the wind, and another against the wind, by which means the fowls will be entangled which way soever they go.

Also place a stake at some distance from the lime-twigs, and fasten small strings to it, which, upon the sight of any fowl, you are to pull, to make the stake flutter, which will allure them down.

When you see any taken, you are not to run instantly and take them up, if at the same time you see any fowl in the air, for their fluttering will induce others to swoop in among them.

It will also be useful to have with you a well taught spaniel, for the retaking of such fowl (as it is common) which will flutter away with the lime-twigs about them.

If you have a mind to use the twigs for the taking of smaller wild-fowl, and such as frequent the water only, then you must fit them in length to the depth of the water, and your rods must be limed with the strong water-birdlime, such as will not be injured by wet.

Stick these rods down in the water, after the same manner as those upon land, that part of the rods that are limed above the water; and also stake down a live stake, as a mallard, wid-geon, or teal, here and there among the rods. This may be done in any shallow plash or fen.

It will not be necessary for you to attend continually on your rods, but only to come three times a-day to see what are taken, viz. early in the morning, at high noon, and late in the evening; but bring your water-dog with you, for if you find that any of your rods are missing, you may conclude that some fowls being fastened to them, are crept into some hole, bush, or hedge, by the river-side, and the dog will be very necessary to find them out.

Do not beat one haunt too much, but when you find their numbers fail, find out another haunt; and in about three weeks time the first will be as good as before.

LIMER, } the same as blood-hound, a great
LIMEHOUND, } dog to hunt the wild boar.

LINES *for fishing*. To make them after the best manner, let the hair be round, and twist it even, for that strengthens the line; and see that it be, as near as you can, of an equal bigness: lay them in water for a quarter of an hour, by which means you will find which of the hairs do shrink, and then twist them over again.

Some mix silk in the twisting, others again disapprove of this, but nevertheless approve of a line made all of silk; also of a line made all of the smallest *lute-string*, as very near as good, were it not that it will soon rot in the water.

The

L I N

The best colours for lines, are the *forrel*, *white*, and *greys*; the two last for clear waters, and the first for muddy rivers; nor is the pale watery green to be slighted, which colour you may make after the following manner.

Take a pint of strong ale, half a pound of foot, a small quantity of the juice of walnut-leaves, and the like quantity of alum; boil all these together in a pipkin for half an hour, then take it off, set it by till it is cold, and then put in the hair.

Or thus; boil a large handful of marigold-flowers in a quart of alum-water, till a yellow scum arises, then put in half a pound of green *copperas*, and a like quantity of *verdigrease* reduced to a fine powder; put these with the hair into the alum water, and let it lie ten hours or more, then take out the hair and let it dry.

In making the line, make a bow-knot or noose, at both ends, the one to put it to and take it from the rod, the other to hang your lowest link upon, to which your hook is fastened, and so you may change your hook as often as you please.

LINNET, a singing-bird, so called because she feeds upon linseed, making her nest in black-thorn, white-thorn bushes, and fir bushes, but upon heaths more than any where else.

They build them with very small roots, and other sort of stuff like feathers, those that build in the heath; but such as do it in hedges, build the outsides of their nest with moss, and line it within according as the place will afford.

Some of these birds will have young ones four times a-year, especially if they be taken from them before they fly out of their nests; and the better the bird is in mettle, the sooner she breeds in the spring: the young may be taken at four days old, if you intend they shall learn to whistle or hear any other bird sing, for they being then so young, have not the old bird's song, and so are more apt to take any thing than if you suffer them to be in the nest till they be almost quite fledged; but when they are taken out so young, care must be had to keep them warm, and to feed them but a little at a time; their meat must be rape-seed, soaked and bruised, to which put full as much white bread as seed; fresh also should be had every day, for if it be sour, it immediately makes them scour and die; neither must their meat be given them too dry, for in such a case it will make them vent-burnt, and that is as bad as if they had been scoured. If you intend to whistle them, let it be done when you feed them, for they will learn very much before they can crack hard seeds; and hang them under any bird you have a mind should learn his song. These birds, when young, are exceeding apt for any song or tune, nay, they may be even

L I N

tought to speak. The cocks may be known from the hens, *first*, by the colour of the back; for if it be of the dark coloured linnets, the cocks are much browner than the hens on the back, and on the pinion of the wing: and so of the white-thorn linnets, the hens are much lighter than the cocks: but this must be noted, that a hen linnet of the dark coloured, is darker than the cocks of the light coloured linnets. But the *second*, and surest way of all to know him, is by the white in his wing.

Whereas this bird is sometimes troubled with melancholy, when you find the end of his rump swelled, it must be pricked with a needle, and the corruption let out, and the same squeezed very well with the point of a needle, then anoint him with an ointment made of fresh butter and capon's grease, and for two or three days feed him with lettuce, beet-seeds, and leaves; you may also give him the seeds of melons chopped in pieces, which he will eat very greedily, but when you find him mend, take the melon seeds away, give him his old diet again, and put into his water two or three blades of saffron, and white sugar-candy, for a week or more, till you perceive him perfectly well.

2. The next disease he is infested with, is a scouring; the first sort thereof, which is very thin, and with a black or white substance in the middle, is not very injurious, nor dangerous; but the other, which is between black and white, not so thin as the former, but very clammy and sticking, is never good in a bird. In order to his recovery, give him at first, melon-seed shred with lettuce, and beet-feed bruised, and in his water, some liquorice and white sugar-candy, with a little flour of oatmeal therein; and diligence must be used to observe him at first when he is sick, that so he may have a stomach to eat, for in two or three days it will be quite gone, and then 'tis difficult to recover him again.

The worst of all is the *third*, the white clammy scouring, which is very bad, and mortal if it be not timely looked after; this proceeds from bad seeds, and many times for want of water; and the badness of the seeds may arise from damage taken at sea, by over-flowing, or lying in the wet too long before they have been housed: if the bird be not helped at the first appearance, it forthwith takes away his stomach, and makes him droop and fall from his meat; therefore to cure him, in the first place give him flax-seed, taking away all other seeds, then some plantain-seed, if it be green, or else it will do him no good; but if such cannot be got, give him some of the leaves shred very small, and some oatmeal bruised, with a few crumbs of bread; in his water give him some white sugar-candy and liquorice, with a blade or two of saffron.

3. Another

L I N

3. Another distemper is the phthisick, and may easily be perceived, by seeing the bird pant and heave his belly fast, and sit melancholy, with his feathers standing big and staring; it is likewise discovered by his belly, when it shews it self more puffed than ordinary, full of reddish veins, and his breast very lean and sharp; he will now also split and cast his seed about the cage, not caring to eat at all. This disease often befalls them for want of water, and having charlock seeds mingled among their rape-seeds, and for want of giving him a little green meat in the spring of the year. Now when you perceive your bird begin to be troubled with this evil, first cut the end of his rump, and give him white sugar-candy, with two or three bits of liquorice, or for want of such sugar-candy put in fine sugar; then for his meat, you should give him beets and lettice to feed on, or some of the herb *mercury*, which is very good against this distemper for any seed-bird. You may likewise give him melon-seed chopped small; and at the bottom of the cage lay some gravel, with a little powdered sugar, and a little ground oatmeal; you may also put in some loam, with which the country people daub their walls instead of mortar and sand, bruised small, and it will bring the bird to his stomach, if he be not too far gone, and past cure.

This bird is subject to the strains, or convulsions of the breast; for which you are to feed him with lettice, beet, and melon-seeds, bruised: dissolve sugar-candy in his water, and some of the nightingale's paste, with a little liquorice, so much that the water may taste of it; continue this course for the space of four or five days, now and then taking it away, and giving him plantain water; and the same day be sure to give him beet or lettice-leaf.

The linnet is subject to a hoarseness in his voice, which many times comes thro' his straining it in singing; and he often gets a husk in his throat, which is seldom helped, to come so clear off as at first: It frequently also happens, if he be a strong mettled bird, that he breaks somewhat within him, so that he will never come to sing again; and farther, the said hoarseness proceeds from his being kept up very hot, and on a sudden his cage opened to the air, which immediately strikes a cold to his breast and throat, and often kills him; for if you have a bird in the moult, you must not carry him to the air, but keep him at a stay till he is moulted off, then open him by degrees, that he may not take cold, and after his moult, give him beet leaves, or some liquorice in his water, to cleanse him. Now to cure his hoarseness, the best remedy is, to put some liquorice and a few annise-seeds in his water, and then to set him in a warm place. See PASTE.

LIPS

LOW

LIPS of a Horse; if these be thin and little, they contribute to a good mouth; but the contrary if they be large and thick.

LISTENING; a horse is said to go a listening pace. See **ECOUTE**.

LOCKS, are pieces of leather two fingers broad, turned round, and stuffed on the inside, to prevent their hurting the pastern of a horse, round which they are clapped.

LONG-JOINTED Horse, is one whose pastern is slender and pliant.

LOACH; tho' it is a small, yet it is a dainty fish: his breeding and feeding, is in little and clear swift brooks or rivulets, and in sharp streams; gravel is his usual food.

He is small and slender, seldom exceeding three inches in length; he is bearded like a barbel, having two fins at his sides, four at his belly, and only one at his tail, and is freckled with many black and brown spots.

The loach is commonly full of spawn, which is, with the flesh, a very grateful food to weak stomachs, affording great nourishment. He is to be taken with a very small worm, near the ground, for he delights to be near the gravel, and therefore is seldom seen on the top of the water.

To **LODGE**; [among Foresters], a buck is said to lodge, when he goes to rest.

LOW, to carry low. See **CARRY**.

LOW-BELL and HAND-NET; this term is derived from the Saxon word *Low*, which in Saxon and old English, signifies a flame of fire. With these instruments birds are taken in champain countries, as also in stubble fields, especially that of wheat, from the middle of *October* to the end of *March*, and after this manner; when the air is mild, about nine o'clock at night, the moon not shining, take the *low-bell*, which should be of a deep hollow sound, and of such a reasonable size as may be well carried in one hand, toll this bell just as a weather sheep does while he is feeding in pasture-ground: you must also have a box much like a lanthorn, about a foot and a half square, big enough to hold two or three great lights, let it be lined with tin, and one side open to send forth the light; fix this box to your breast to carry before you, and the light will cast at a great distance before you, very broad, by which means you may see any thing on the ground within the compass of the light, and consequently the birds that roost thereon.

For the taking of them you are to have two men with you, one on each side, but a little after you, that they may not be within the reflection of the light that the lanthorn or box casts forth; and each of them should be provided with a hand-net,

about

L U R

about three or four foot square, which must be fixed to a long stick, to carry in their hands, so that when either of them sees any birds on his side, he is to cast his net over them, and so take them up, with as little noise as may be; and let him that carries the light and *low-bell* be the foremost, to take them up, without being too hasty, for fear of raising others.

The sound of the *low-bell* causes the birds to lie close, and not to stir while you lay the net over them.

If you would practise this sport by your self, carry the *low-bell* in one hand, as before directed, and in the other a net, about two foot broad and three long, with a handle, which is to lay upon them as you espy them: But some persons, instead of holding the light to their breast, tie the *low-bell* to their girdle, and their motion causes the bell to strike; and as for the light they carry it in their hand, extending their arm before them; but then their lanthorn or box, is not so large as that which is hung at the breast.

LOYAL; a horse is said to be loyal that freely bends all his force, in obeying and performing any manage he is put to, does not defend himself or resist, notwithstanding his being ill treated.

A loyal mouth is an excellent mouth, of the nature of such mouths as we call mouths with a full rest upon the hand.

LUNES, } [*in Falconry*], leashes, or long lines to
LOWINGS, } call in hawks.

LUNETTS, a sort of leather spectacles for vicious horses.

LURCHER, a kind of hunting-dog much like a mongrel greyhound, with prickt ears, a shagged coat, and generally of a yellowish white colour: they are very swift runners, so that if they get between the burroughs and the conies, they seldom miss; and this is their common practice in hunting; yet they use other subtilties, as the *tumbler* does, some of them bringing in their game, and those are the best. It is also observable that a *lurcher* will run down a hare at stretch.

LURE [*in Falconry*], a device of leather, in the shape of two wings, stuck with feathers, and baited with a piece of flesh, to call back a hawk when at considerable distance.

MADNESS

M A D

MADNESS in Dogs, is accounted to be of seven kinds, two of which are also reckoned incurable, and five curable. The first of the curable madneffes, is called the *dumb madnefs*, and may be known as follows: the dog afflicted with it will not eat, but continually holds his mouth wide open, frequently putting his feet to his mouth, as if he had a bone in his throat.

For the cure. Put four ounces of *spathula putrida* into a pot, with the same quantity of the juice of *black bellebore*, and as much of the juice of *rue*; having strained them all well through a fine cloth, put them into a glass, then mingle two drams of *scammony*, unprepared, with the former juices, and pour it down the dog's throat with a horn or funnel, keeping his head upright, that he may not throw it up again: after this bleed him in the mouth, cutting three or four veins in his gums, that he may bleed the better, and you will in a short time find him to mend. Or,

You need only take eight drams of the juice of an herb, called *hart's-horn*, or *dog's-tooth*, which is an excellent medicine against any madnefs whatsoever.

2. The *falling madnefs*, which lies in the dog's head, and makes him reel as he goes, and fall.

The cure. Take the juices of *piony*, *briony*, and *cruciata*, of each four ounces, of *stave's-acre* pulverized, four drams, mingle all together, and give it the dog or hound, and afterwards bleed him in the ears, or the two veins which come down the shoulders; and if he be not cured by this method the first time, repeat it the second or third.

3. The *lank madnefs*, so called by reason of the leanness of their bodies, occasioned by skumming.

The cure. First purge the dog with the following purge; take an ounce and a half of *cassia fistularis*, well cleansed, two drams and a half of *staves-acre*, powdered, and the like quantity of *scammony*, prepared in white-wine vinegar, temper these with four ounces of olive oil, and having warmed them over the fire, give them to the dog.

In the morning put him into the following bath. Into six pails of water put the following ingredients, ten handfuls of *mugwort*, *rosemary*, *red sage*, the roots or leaves of *marsh-mallows*, the roots or leaves of *wall-wort*, the roots or stalks of *fennel*, the

M A D

the leaves and stalks of *elecampane*, *balm*, *rue*, *sorrel*, *bugloss*, and *melilot*; let these boil together in two thirds of water and the other of wine, until one third be consumed; then let this decoction stand till it is no hotter than the dog can bear it, and bathe him in it for the space of an hour, then take him out and put him in some warm place, that he may not take cold; repeat bathing him four or five times in the same bath, and it will cure him.

4. The *sleeping madness*, is caused by some little worms which breed in the mouth of the stomach, from corrupt humours, the vapours and fumes of which ascending into the head, make the dog sleep continually, so that frequently such dogs die sleeping.

The cure. Mingle together five ounces of the juice of *wormwood*, two ounces of the powder of burnt *hartshorn*, and two drams of *agaric*; and if they be too thick, thin them with white-wine, and give it to the dog to drink.

5. The *rheumatic* or *flavering madness*, is so called, because when a dog is infected with it, his head swells, his eyes grow as yellow as a kite's foot, and he commonly flavers at the mouth.

The cure. Take six ounces of the juice of *fennel roots*, and the like quantity of the juice of *mistletoe*, four ounces of the powder of the roots of *polipody*, boil these in white-wine, and give it the dog to drink as hot as he can bear it.

Here take notice, that when a dog has any of these kinds of *madnesses*, he will have no appetite to his food, frequently eating nothing for eight or nine days, and so starving himself to death. Nay if they are troubled with any distemper, they will refuse their meat, even the daintiest bit you can give them, until they have eaten grass and cleared their stomach of what did offend it, and then they will eat.

6. The *hot burning madness*, which is one of the incurable ones, and is known by these symptoms:

First, when they run they raise their tails bolt upright, and run upon any thing that stands before them, having no regard which way they run; also their mouths will be very black, having no foam in or about them: they will not continue thus above three or four days, after which time they die, their pain being so intolerable.

Where take notice, that all those dogs they have bitten and drew blood from, will be mad in like manner.

7. The second is called the *running madness*, and is less dangerous, but however incurable.

The dogs that are troubled with this madness, run not at men, but at dogs, and no other beasts: the symptoms are, they

M A L

they will smell at other dogs, and having smelt them, will shake and bite them, yet shaking their tails, and seeming to offer no harm, besides some other tokens.

The reason why the bite of a mad dog is more hurtful than that of a sound or well one, is plain, because in rage and anger, the teeth of every beast and creature receive venom and poison from the head, whereby when they bite at that time, they do much more harm.

Against the simple biting of a dog, take the urine of a dog, which is sufficient, since there is but little venom in those wounds: or,

Being bitten by a dog, take vinegar, and rub round the wound very well with it, with your hand, then pour into it vinegar mixt with water; or nitre, then wet a sponge in the same liquids and lay to it, and so let it remain bound up three days; then take *pellitory* of the wall, mingled and beaten with salt, or any other plaister for green wounds.

MAGPIES, GLEADS, and CROWS, to take: when you have found any carrion, upon which crows, pies, kites, &c. are preying, over night set your lime-twigs every where about the carrion, but let them be small, and not set too thick, if they are, they being subtle birds, they will suspect some danger or mischief designed against them. When you perceive one to be fast, advance not to him presently, for most commonly when they are surely caught, they are not sensible of it.

They may be taken another way, and that is by joining several nooses to a packthread, and pegging it down about a yard from the carrion; for oftentimes when they have gotten a piece of flesh, they are apt to run away to feed themselves, and if the nooses be thick, it is two to one but some of the nooses catch some of them by the leg.

MAILED, speckled, or full of specks, as the feathers of hawks, partridges, &c. or as the furs of some wild beasts are.

MAKE-HAWK, [*in Falconry*], an old staunch hawk, which being used to fly, will easily instruct a young one.

MALANDERS, a disease in horses, which takes it's

MALENDERS, name of *melandare*, *Italian*, to go ill.

They are certain chops or chinks, appearing on the inside of the fore-legs, just against the bending of the knee, which discharge a red sharp pungent water.

They are painful, and make a horse to go stiff, and sometimes to halt at his first setting out of the stable.

They are easy to be discovered, by the staring and bristly hairs growing about the affected part, and they are frequently attended

M A N

attended with a sort of scab, either bigger or lesser, according to the various degrees of this evil sorrhance.

They proceed sometimes from corrupt blood, hard labour, or being over-ridden; sometimes from want of clean keeping or rubbing; and most commonly such horses as have the most hairy legs (as the *Flanders* and *Friesland* horses have) are most subject to this disease.

Those things which are good for the *Scratches*, and *Selanders*, (which see) are also good for this.

Instead of a compleat cure, you ought rather only to endeavour to allay the humour, and qualify it's sharpness; and therefore content yourself with keeping the part very clean, by scouring off the corruption that sticks to the hair or skin, with *black soap*, and rubbing the *malanders* with it, and washing them with urine, or good lee, or oil of nuts shaken with water; or else to annoint them with butter, fried till it becomes black.

But the surest method of cure, is to mingle equal quantities of linseed oil and *aqua vitæ*, stirring them and shaking them till the mixture grows white, with which anoint the sorrhance once a-day, which will dry a little, and allay the sharpness of the humour, so thot the *malanders* will neither cause a swelling nor pain.

MALT-LONG, ? is a cankerous sorrhance about the
MALT-WORM, S hoof of an horse, just upon the coronet, which breaks out into knobs and bunches that run with a waterish, sharp lee, and humour, which will, if let alone, envenom the whole foot.

For the cure. If it be in summer-time, pound black snails and burdock roots together, and lay them on the sore; renewing the application once in twenty-four hours.

If in the winter-time, pound the scrapings of a pot or cauldron, with a handful of the inner rind of the elder tree, and apply it to the sorrhance; renewing the application once a-day. Or you may lay a like quantity of garlic, pepper, and honey, stamped together, on the part affected.

To **M A N** a Hawk [in Falconry], to make her tractable, gentle, and tame.

M A N A G E, is a word that signifies, not only the ground set a-part for the exercise of riding the great horse, but likewise the exercise itself. The manage, or ground proper for managing horses, is sometimes a covered place, as in your great Academies, for continuing the exercise in bad weather; sometimes 'tis open, in order to give more liberty and pleasure, both to the horse and horseman.

One way or other, we always suppose a center in the middle of the manage, for regulating the rounds and volts.

Sometimes

M A N

Sometimes this center is distinguished by a pillar fixed in it, to which they tie the horse when he begins to learn: Upon the side of the manage other pillars are placed, two by two, in order to teach horses to raise the fore quarters, by tying them with ropes. See PILLAR.

MANAGE, or exercise of a horse, is a particular way of working or riding him.

Make your horses work upon the air and the manage that you used to put them most to.

A horse is said to manage, when he works upon volts and airs, which supposes him broke and bred.

A horse is said to be thoroughly managed, or a finished horse, that is well broke and bred, and confirmed in a particular air or manage.

High manage, is the high or raised airs which are proper for leaping-horses.

In chusing a horse for the manage, make choice of a horse of a middle size, that is lively, full of spirit and action, short trussed, well coupled, having good feet and legs, and shoulders very easy and supple.

It ought also to be observed, that horses which have thick, stiff, and short joints, that is no ways flexible or pliant, are unfit for the manage; for glib and bending joints, If they be not too long, are one of the chief qualities requisite in a fine and delicate horse of manage.

As for the age most proper to begin to work a horse designed for the manage, he should not be too young, not only because his apprehension is not yet come to him, but also because a horse of three years old being but a gristle, *stopping and going back* will spoil him, by straining his back and stretching his hams.



End of the First Volume.

l
o
b
f
l
e
r
r
f
i
s
e
e
e
d
e
e
e
fe
ng
is
o
e
O
n
3
ol
lw
ora
A
and
cl
to